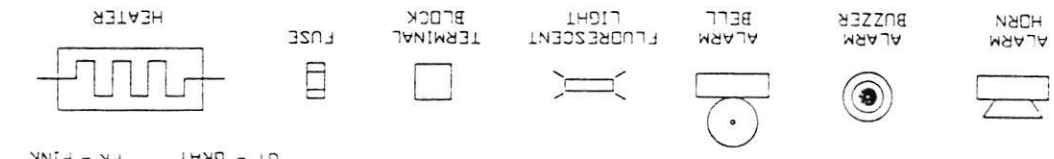
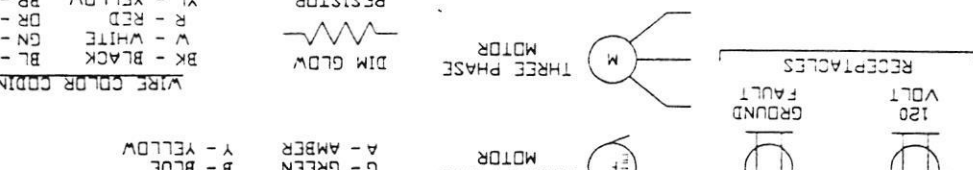
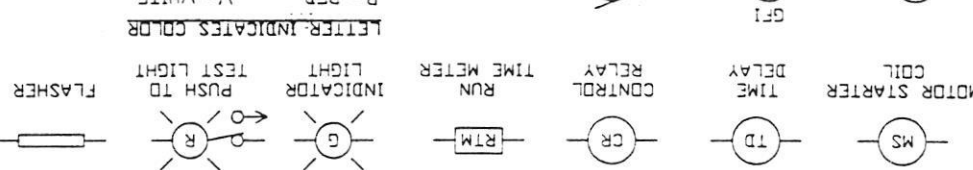
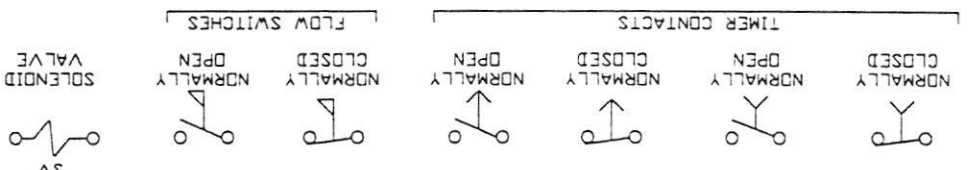
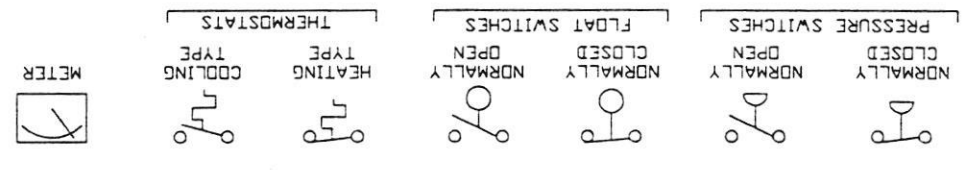
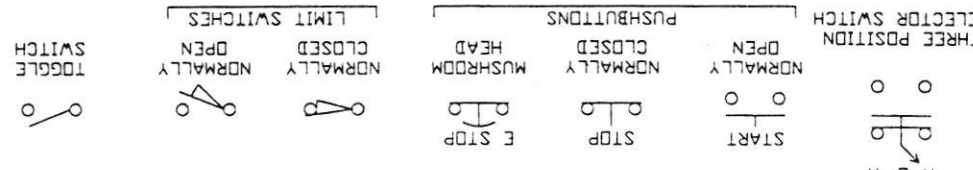
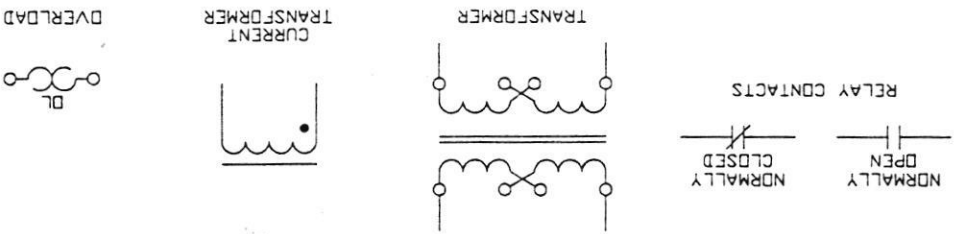
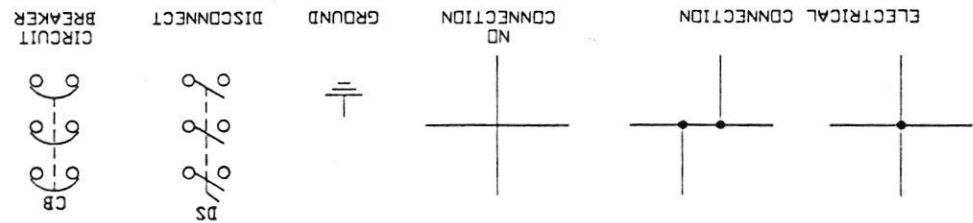


ELECTRIC CONTROL SYMBOLS

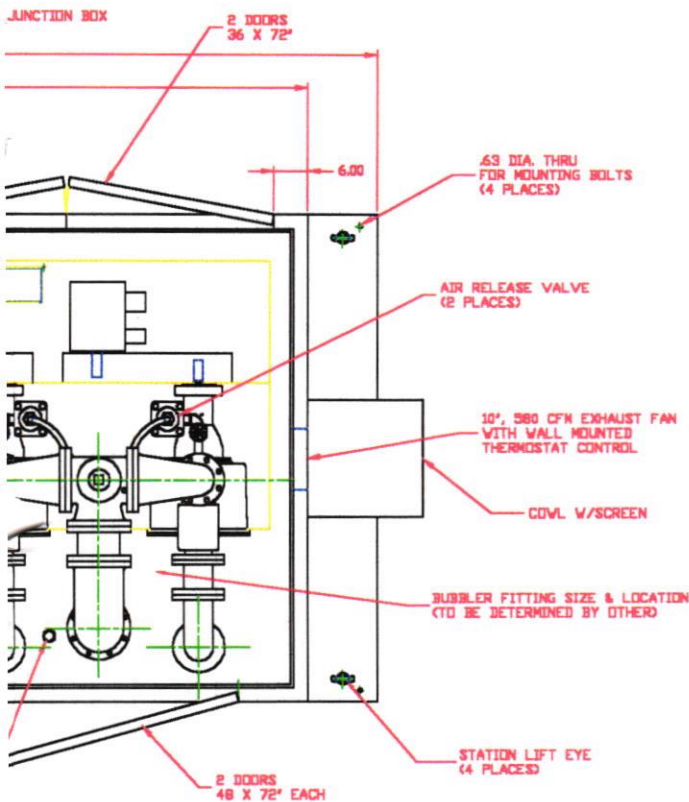


LETTER-INDICATES COLOR
 R - RED
 G - GREEN
 W - WHITE
 A - AMBER
 Y - YELLOW
 BK - BLACK
 BL - BLUE
 GN - GREEN
 OR - ORANGE
 DR - BROWN
 BR - BROWN
 YL - YELLOW
 CY - GRAY
 PK - PINK
WIRE COLOR CODING

USEMCO INCORPORATED

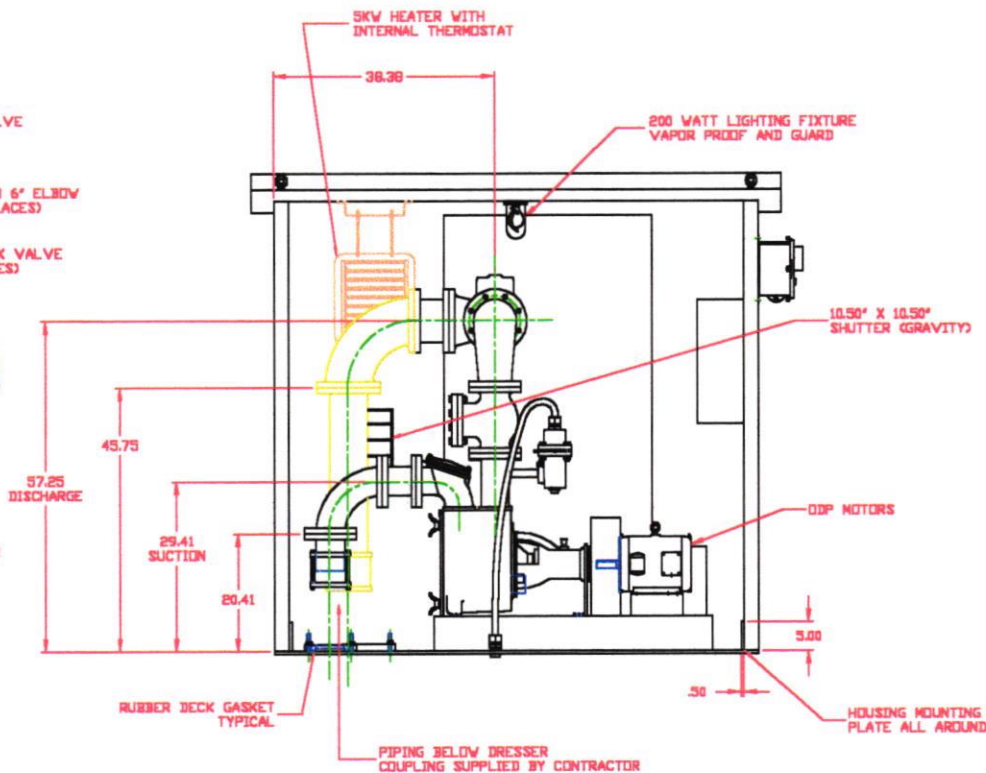
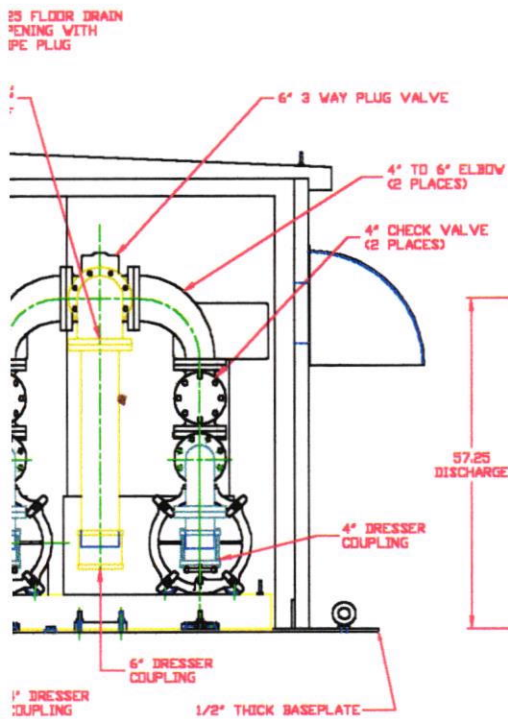
P.O. BOX 583 (608) 372-5911 TOMAH WI 54660
 J.B.Z. 9/16/92

REVISIONS			
REV	DESCRIPTION	DATE	APPROVED
A	00508-99 RELEASED.	4/21/99	
B	00692-99 CHANGED LOCATION OF HEATER, SIREN, COVL, SCREEN, & SHUTTER, AND ALL DOORS. ADDED SECOND JUNCTION BOX AND BUILDING DISTRIBUTION PANEL.	6/18/99	MEB
C	01109-99 REMOVED NOTE 4 & REMOVED JUNCTION BOX NOTE.	10/26/99	MEB



STATION INFORMATION

PUMPS	
MODEL	P04LB-8D
1550	R.P.M. RATED
320	G.P.M. AT 43 T.D.H.
MOTORS	
10	H.P. 1750 R.P.M.
MOTOR FRAME 215T	
SERVICE	
460	VOLTS 3 PHASE
60 Hz.	3 WIRE



OUT SIDE WALL

VIEW SHOWN WITHOUT END WALL

This print is and contains confidential proprietary information owned exclusively by CRANE PUMPS & SYSTEMS INC., and it is furnished on a strictly confidential basis. This restriction includes, but is not limited to the condition that this print will only be used as a record or to identify or inspect parts or for other information purposes, and will not be used to manufacture or procure the manufacture of the parts shown in this print by any source other than CRANE PUMPS & SYSTEMS INC.

UNLESS OTHERWISE SPECIFIED	SIGNATURES	DATE
DIMENSIONS ARE IN INCHES	DRAWN <i>AFSTALLARD</i>	4/19/99
TOLERANCES FOR MACH DIM	CHECKED <i>MEBELL</i>	4/19/99
2 PL DECIMALS ±.015	ENGRG	
3 PL DECIMALS ±.010	ISSUED	
ANGLES 41°		
FRACTIONS ±1/16		
TOLERANCES FOR CAST DIM	MATERIAL	
FROM 0.00-5.99 ±.030		
FROM 6.00-14.99 ±.045		
FROM 15.00-23.99 ±.060		
FROM 24.00 & UP ±.125	FINISH	
ANGLES 41°		
DO NOT SCALE PRINT		

CRANE PUMPS & SYSTEMS
 BUREAU PUMPS - DIVISION - SELLERS - PROGRAMS/OPS - DESIGN - DRAWING

BFP FEED PUMP STATION SUBMITTAL

SIZE	CAGE NO	DWG NO
D	96046	106347
SCALE	1=1	FILE
		106347
		SHEET 1 OF 1

5

6

7

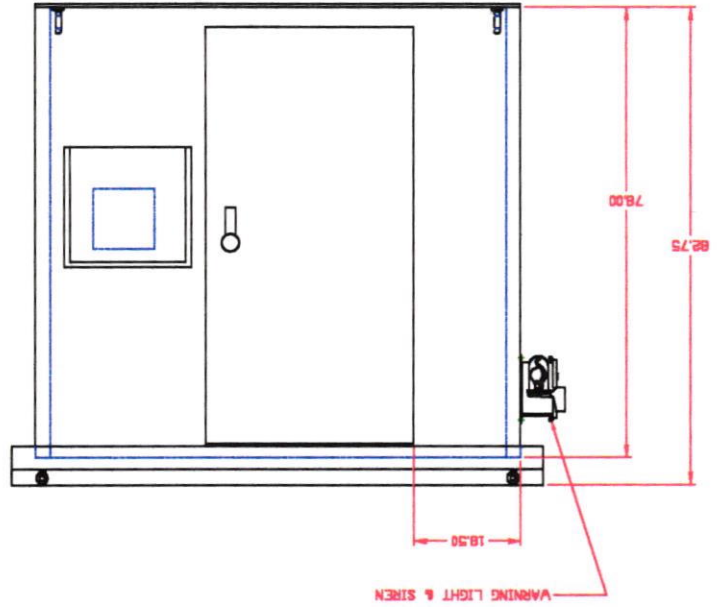
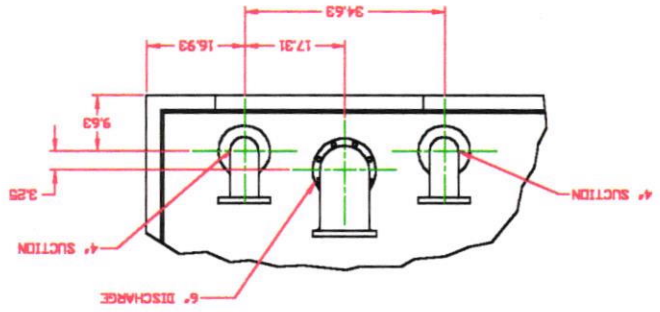
8

A

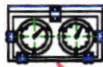
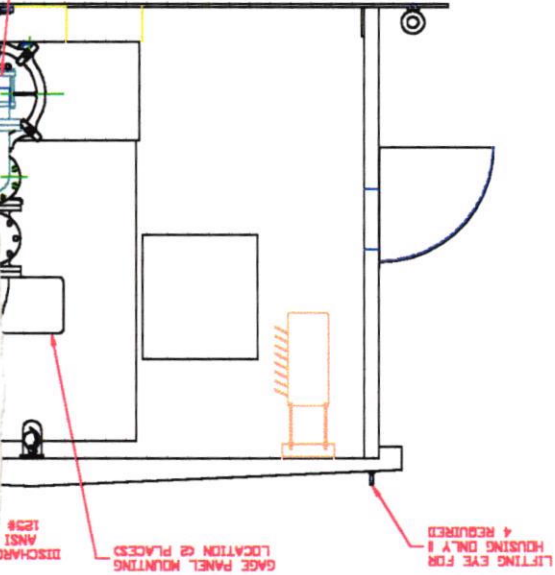
B

C

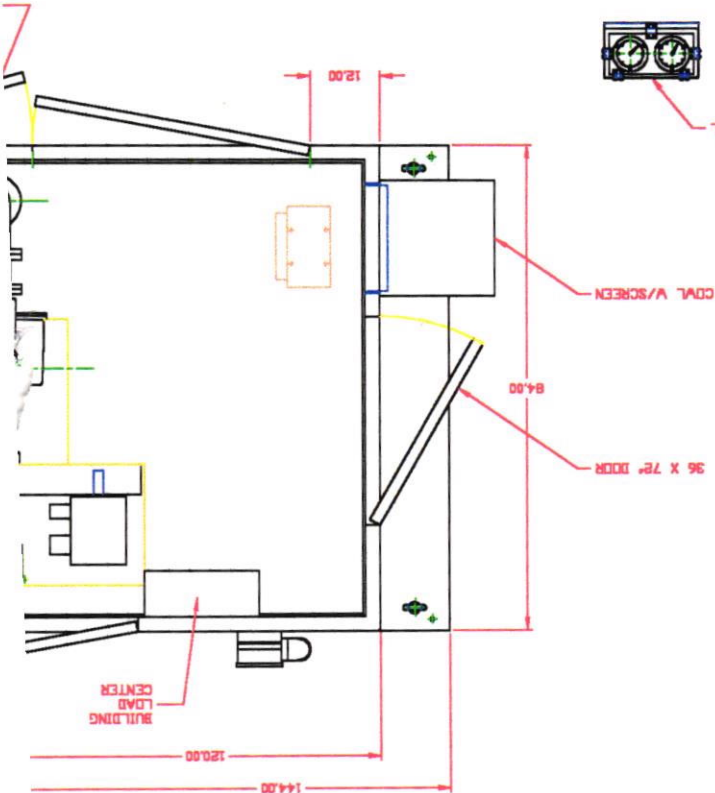
D



VIEW SHOWN WITH



GAGE PANEL



- NOTES:
1. RELATIONSHIP OF INFLUENT PIPE TO SUCTION PIPE MUST BE CONSIDERED TO PREVENT AIR FROM BEING DRAWN INTO THE SUCTION PIPE.
 2. AIR BLEED LINE IS RUN INTO WET WELL, IT MUST BE POSITIONED AS FAR FROM THE SUCTION PIPE AS POSSIBLE TO PREVENT AIR FROM BEING DRAWN INTO SUCTION PIPE.
 3. AIR BLEED LINES INSTALLED BY THE CONTRACTOR BELOW THE CONCRETE MUST BE DIRECTED TOWARD THE WET WALL AWAY FROM THE SUCTION LINES. TERMINATE BELOW LIQUID LEVEL.
 4. BUBBLER TO EXTEND INTO WET WELL.
 5. BUILDING ELECTRICAL SERVICE BY OTHERS.
 6. STATION INCLUDES - DUPLEX OUTLET (GFI) AND SWITCH LOCATION TO BE SPECIFIED BY OTHER.
 7. CUSTOMER TO SUPPLY WET WELL DETAILS AND OTHER ELEVATIONS.
 8. BASEPLATE OPENINGS MUST BE VAPOR TIGHT.
 9. ALL SUCTION AND DISCHARGE PIPING IS DUCTILE IRON WITH CLASS 150 FLANGES.

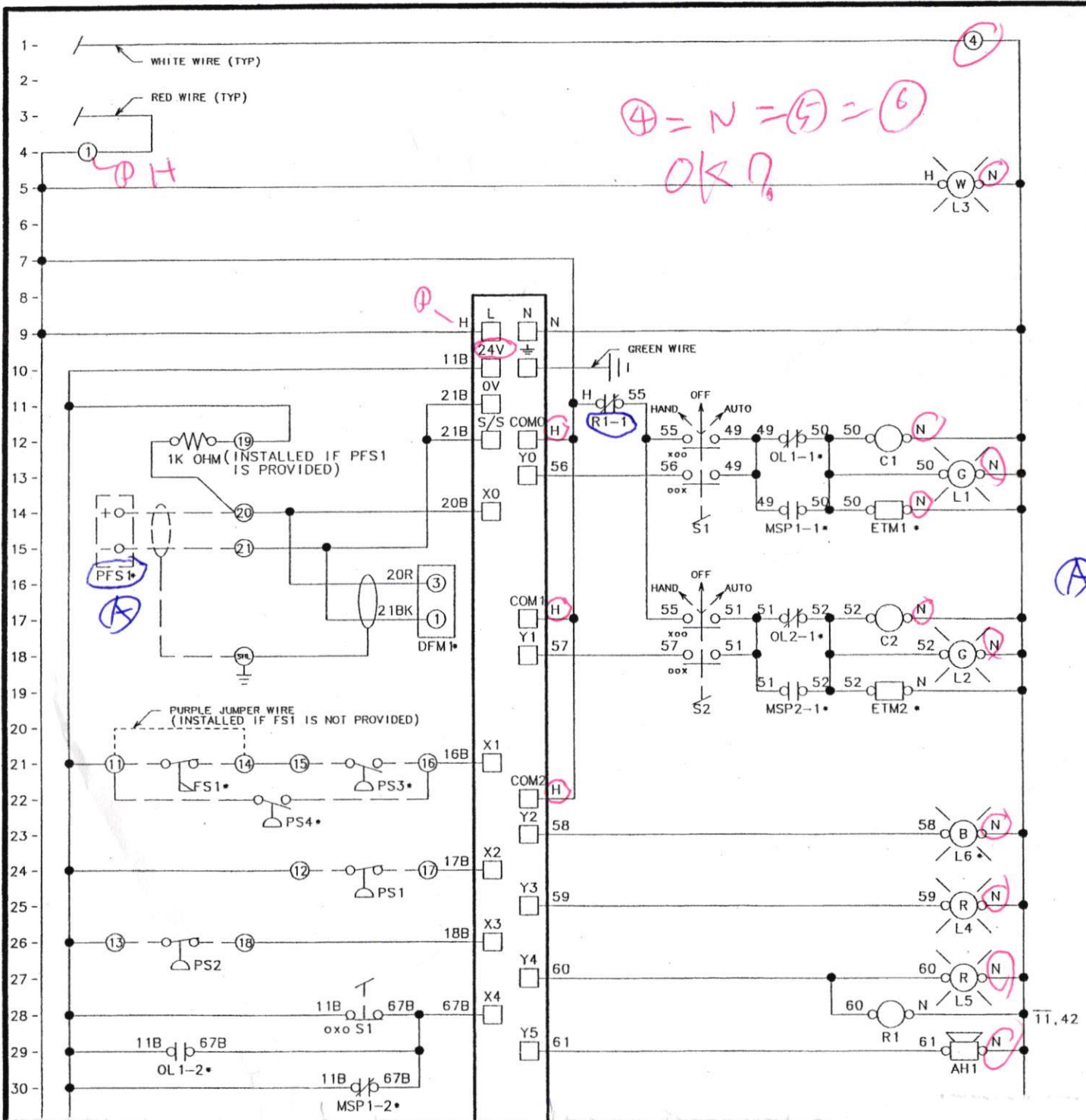
DIM CLASSIFICATION	MINOR DIM (REF)	MAJOR DIM	CRITICAL DIM
	#	#	#

5

6

7

8



COMPONENT DESCRIPTION	
AH1	ALARM HORN
C1	CONTACTOR-MOTOR STARTER
C2	CONTACTOR-MOTOR STARTER
* DFM1	DIGITAL FLOW METER
* ETM1	ELAPSED TIME METER
* ETM2	ELAPSED TIME METER
* FS1	FLOW SWITCH-MAXISTORE
L1	LIGHT-GREEN (NO. 1 PUMP)
L2	LIGHT-GREEN (NO. 2 PUMP)
L3	LIGHT-WHITE (CONTROL POWER)
L4	LIGHT-RED (LOW SYSTEM PRESSURE)
L5	LIGHT-RED (LOW SUCTION PRESSURE)
* L6	LIGHT-BLUE (ENERGY SAVINGS MODE)
* MSP1	MOTOR STARTER PROTECTOR-AUX. CONT. 1NO/1NC
* MSP2	MOTOR STARTER PROTECTOR-AUX. CONT. 1NO/1NC
* OL1	OVERLOAD-RELAY-AUX. CONTACTS 1NC/1NO
* OL2	OVERLOAD-RELAY-AUX. CONTACTS 1NC/1NO
PB1	PUSH BUTTON-(ALARM SILENCE/RESET)
PLC1	PROGRAMMABLE LOGIC CONTROLLER
(A) PFS1	PADDLEWHEEL FLOW SENSOR
PS1	PRESSURE SWITCH-(LOW SYSTEM) PRESSURE
PS2	PRESSURE SWITCH-(LOW SUCTION) PRESSURE
* PS3	PRESSURE SWITCH-(LEAD PUMP) CONTROL
* PS4	PRESSURE SWITCH-(HIGH SUCTION) PRESSURE
* PV1	PURGE VALVE
* PV2	PURGE VALVE
(B) R1	RELAY-LOW SUCTION PRESSURE
S1	SWITCH-(NO. 1 PUMP)
S2	SWITCH-(NO. 2 PUMP)
(TBC)	TERMINAL BOARD-30 POLE-CONTROL
* TP1	TEMPERATURE PROBE
* TP2	TEMPERATURE PROBE

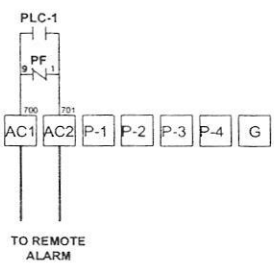
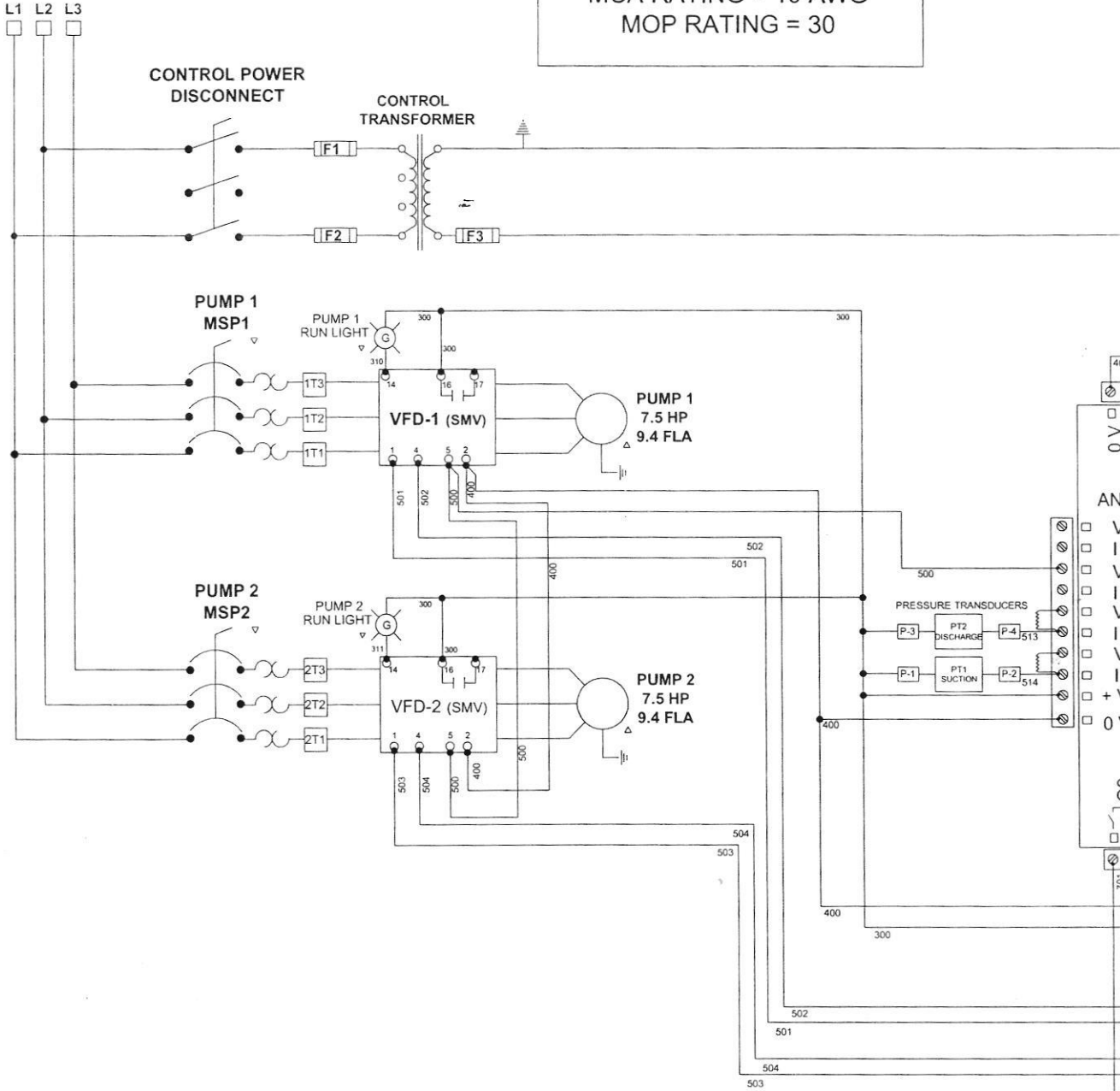
Branch Circuit Protection supplied by others

460V, 3Ø, 60Hz,
20 FULL LOAD AMPS

USE COPPER STRANDED WIRE ONLY

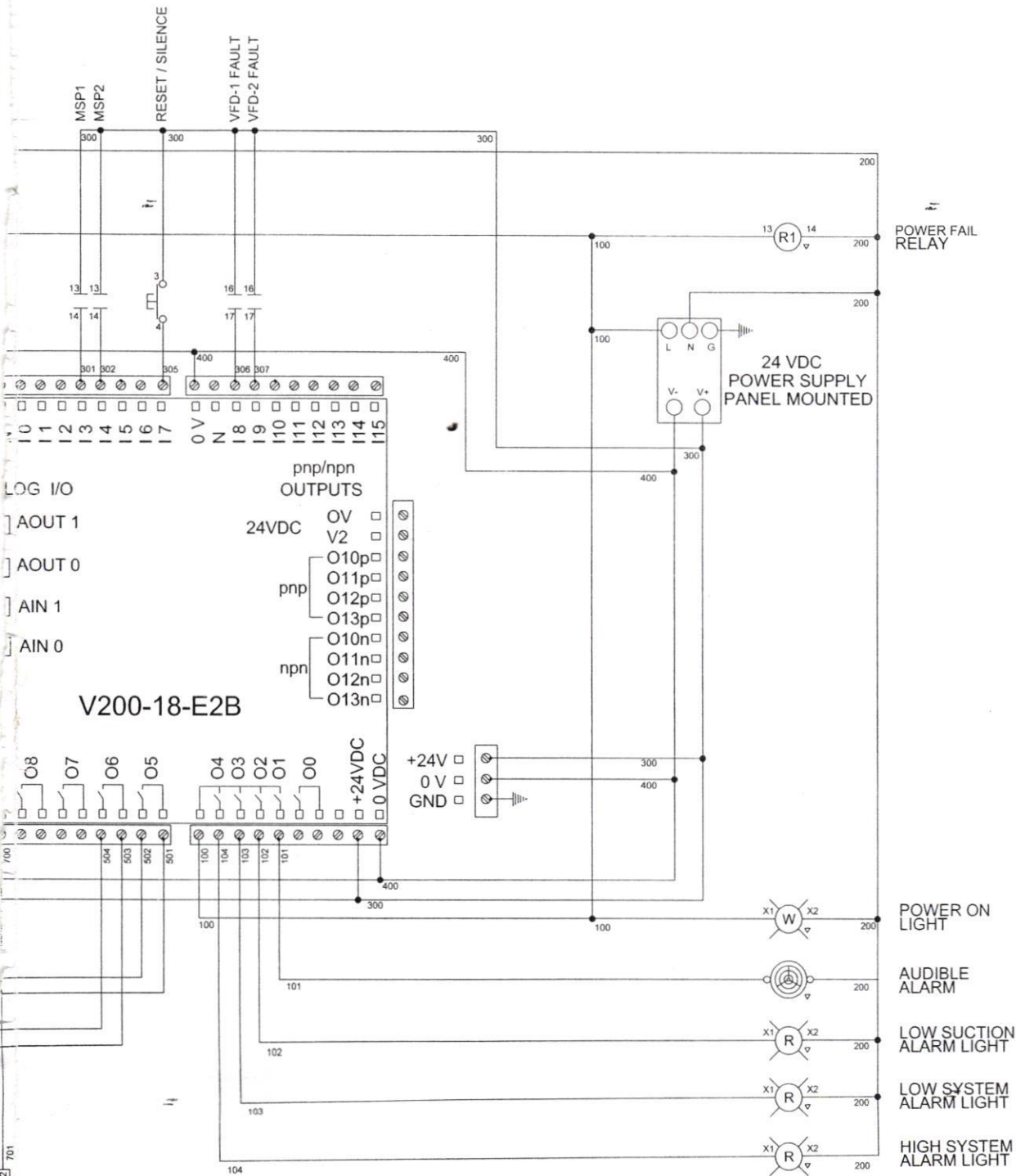
MCA RATING = 10 AWG
MOP RATING = 30

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18



ALA
CC

UL U.L. LISTED 508A (NITW)



L1, L2, L3 TIGHTENING TORQUE 35 lb-in
 TB1 TIGHTENING TORQUE 3.5 lb-in
 TB2 TIGHTENING TORQUE 18 lb-in
 = FIELD WIRING BY OTHERS
 BLACK WIRE = PRIMARY VOLTAGE
 RED WIRE = SECONDARY VOLTAGE
 BLUE WIRE = LOW VOLTAGE
 PURPLE WIRE = LOW VOLTAGE
 YELLOW WIRE = EXTERNAL VOLTAGE
 WHITE WIRE = COMMON OR NEUTRAL
 GREEN WIRE or GREY = GROUND

AWG size or Kcmil (mm ²)	Tightening Torque in Pounds-inches (N·m)	
	Slotted Head #10 (Length 1/2" or less)	Slotted Head #10 (Over 1/2" Length)
18-10 (0.82 - 2.5)	20 (2.3)	35 (4.0)
8 (2.4)	25 (2.8)	35 (4.0)
6-4 (1.73 - 21.2)	35 (4.0)	35 (4.0)
3 (4.26 - 7)	35 (4.0)	35 (4.0)

NOTE 1: SERVICE ENTRANCE DISCONNECT SWITCH MUST BE INSTALLED BETWEEN POWER SUPPLY AND THIS PANEL

NOTE 2: THIS PANEL SHALL BE INSTALLED IN ACCORDANCE WITH ALL APPLICABLE STATE AND LOCAL CODES AND AS PER LATEST REVISION OF NEC.

NOTE 3: USE ONLY COPPER CONDUCTOR WITH A MINIMUM INSULATION RATING OF 90° C.

PROJECT INFORMATION:
 Customers:
 Engineers:
 Contractor: Dynamic Plumbing

JDL Systems, Inc.
 Engineered Equipment
 Arcadia, CA 91006, Phone: (888) 668-9345

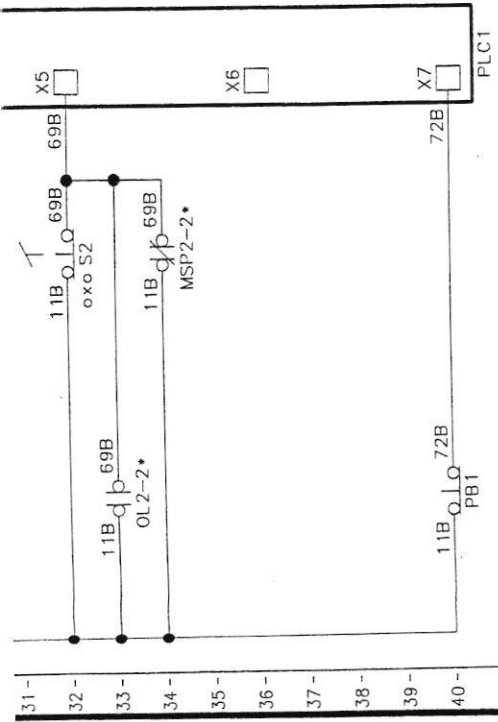


DESCRIPTION:
 SCHEMATIC WIRING DIAGRAM FOR DUPLEX BOOSTER SYSTEM WITH 2 VFD, ALTERNATING PUMPS, LOW SUCTION ALARM, THREE PHASE POWER

DATE: 9/19/08
 PROJECT No.: 27C-1034
 SERIAL No.: BH-264---
 DRAWN BY: JD
 TESTED BY: --
 DRAWING #: DVFD.dwg

PROJECT NAME:
SIERRA SUITES

EQUIPMENT SYMBOL:
 BP-1 & 2
 SHEET 1 of 1



AUXILIARY ALARM CONTACT

② 22Y d.p. 23Y R1-2 ③ LOW SUCTION PRESSURE



NOTES

THIS SCHEMATIC CONFORMS TO ALL APPLICABLE REQUIREMENTS OF THE NATIONAL ELECTRICAL CODE. SCHEMATIC DESIGNER DOES NOT WARRANT THAT IT WILL COMPLY WITH MORE RESTRICTIVE LOCAL ELECTRICAL CODES AND DOES NOT WARRANT THE DESIGN OR INSTALLATION OF CONNECTING CIRCUITS OR CIRCUIT DEVICES INSTALLED BY OTHERS WHETHER OR NOT REQUIRED BY NATIONAL OR LOCAL CODES OR BOTH.

ANY MODIFICATIONS OF OR ADDITIONS TO THESE CIRCUITS WITHOUT THE WRITTEN CONSENT OF THE DESIGNER WILL VOID ANY WRITTEN OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES.

ELECTRICAL SYMBOLS CONFORM TO NEMA STANDARDS.

ALL ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS SHOWN IN THE DE-ENERGIZED AND DE-PRESSURIZED POSITION.

CONTROL PANEL TO BE GROUNDED BY USER.

ALL WIRE TO BE TYPE THHN, THWN 600V. UNLESS OTHERWISE SPECIFIED.

* DENOTES OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT (SEE CONTROL PANEL DATA SHEET FOR WHICH ITEMS APPLY).

○ DENOTES TERMINAL NUMBER OF (TBC).

PROPRIETARY DRAWING
 THIS CONFIDENTIAL DOCUMENT
 IS THE PROPERTY OF
SyncroFlo, Inc.
 NORCROSS, GEORGIA
 NOT TO BE DUPLICATED WITHOUT
 WRITTEN PERMISSION OR USED
 IN ANY WAY DETRIMENTAL TO
 THE COMPANY

U. L. LISTED
ENCLOSED INDUSTRIAL
CONTROL PANEL

A804-2001-402
TWO PUMP
LOW SUCTION PRESSURE



SyncroFlo
 Pumping System Solutions
 6700 Best Friend Road - Norcross, GA 30071
 (770) 447-4443 - Fax (770) 447-0230

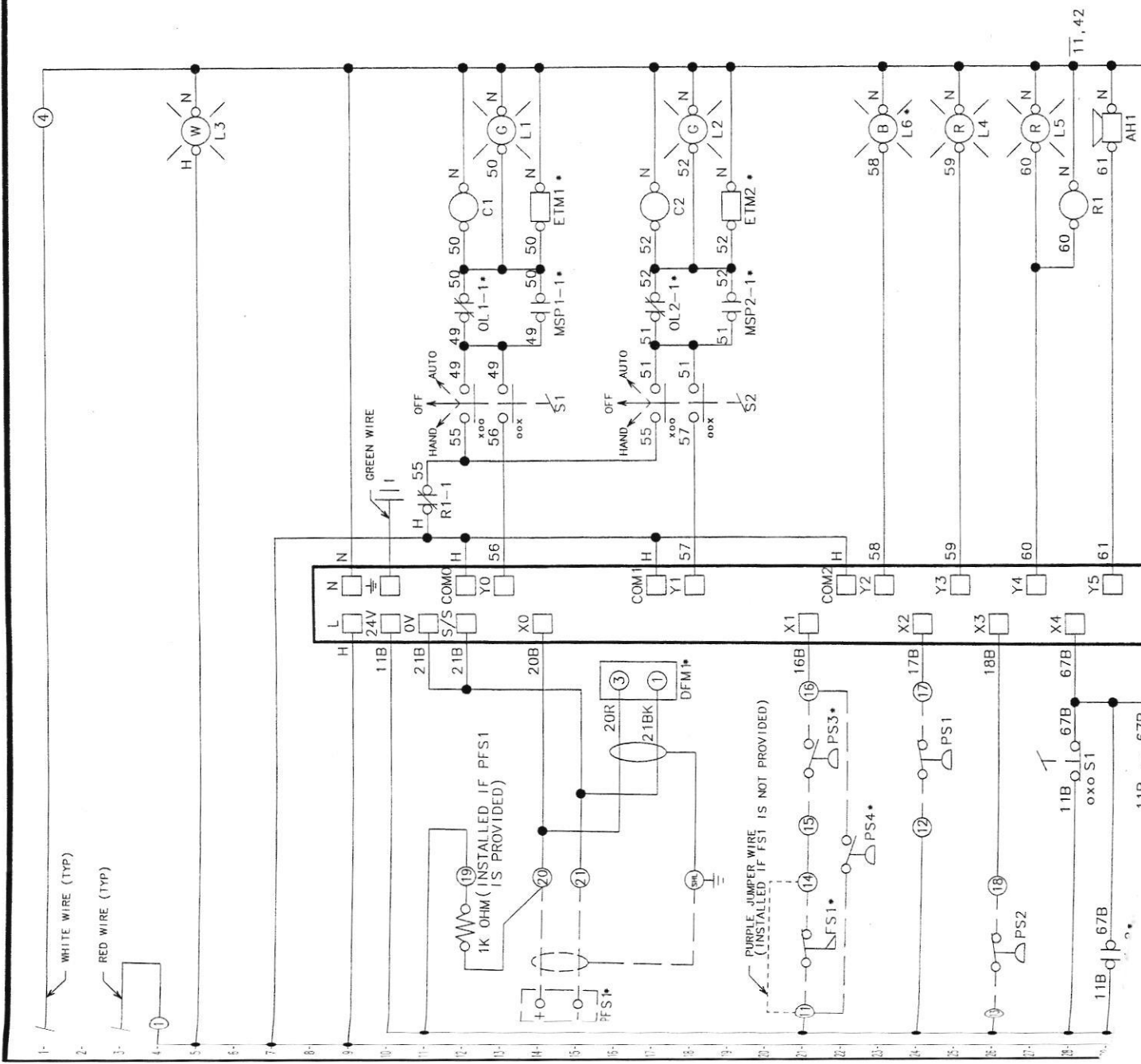
2 PUMP TYPE "PC"
WITH FX1s14

DATE:	SEP. 05, 2002
ENGINEER:	ACD <i>ACD</i>
DESIGNED BY:	RLM
CHECKED BY:	<i>RLM</i>
SCALE:	NONE
DRAWING NUMBER:	A804-2001-402
REV.:	

DATE/REV. REVISION

COMPONENT DESCRIPTION

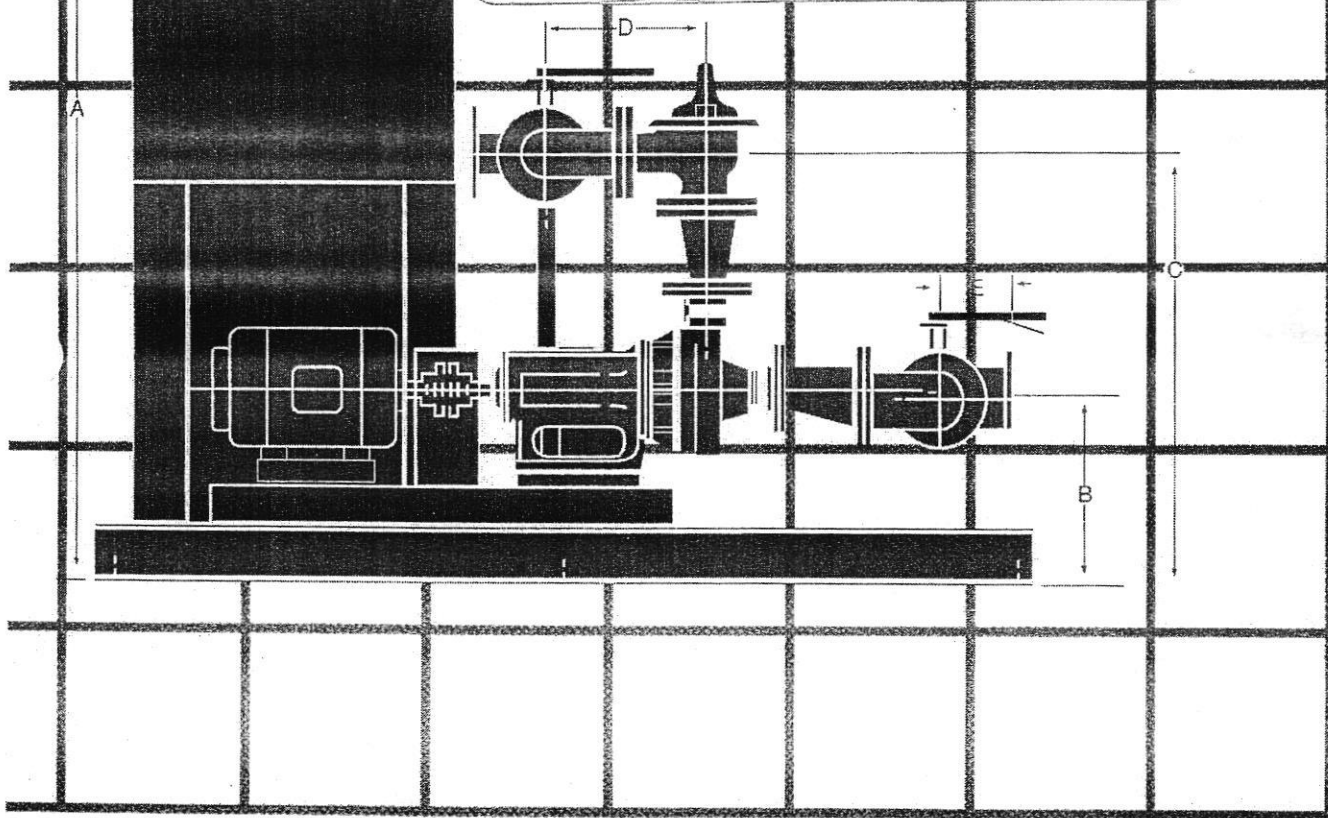
AH1	ALARM HORN
C1	CONTACTOR-MOTOR STARTER
C2	CONTACTOR-MOTOR STARTER
DFM1	DIGITAL FLOW METER
ETM1	ELAPSED TIME METER
ETM2	ELAPSED TIME METER
FS1	FLOW SWITCH-MAXI STORE
L1	LIGHT-GREEN (NO. 1 PUMP)
L2	LIGHT-GREEN (NO. 2 PUMP)
L3	LIGHT-WHITE (CONTROL POWER)
L4	LIGHT-RED (LOW SYSTEM PRESSURE)
L5	LIGHT-RED (LOW SUCTION PRESSURE)
L6	LIGHT-BLUE (ENERGY SAVINGS MODE)
MSP1	MOTOR STARTER PROTECTOR-AUX. CONT. INO/INC
MSP2	MOTOR STARTER PROTECTOR-AUX. CONT. INO/INC
OL1	OVERLOAD-RELAY-AUX. CONTACTS INC/INO
OL2	OVERLOAD-RELAY-AUX. CONTACTS INC/INO
PB1	PUSH BUTTON-(ALARM SILENCE/RESET)
PLC1	PROGRAMMABLE LOGIC CONTROLLER
PFS1	PADDLEWHEEL FLOW SENSOR
PS1	PRESSURE SWITCH-(LOW SYSTEM)
PS2	PRESSURE SWITCH-(LOW SUCTION)
PS3	PRESSURE SWITCH-(LEAD PUMP)
PS4	PRESSURE SWITCH-(HIGH SUCTION)
PV1	PURGE VALVE
PV2	PURGE VALVE
R1	RELAY-LOW SUCTION PRESSURE
S1	SWITCH-(NO. 1 PUMP)
S2	SWITCH-(NO. 2 PUMP)
(TBC)	TERMINAL BOARD-30 POLE-CONTROL
TP1	TEMPERATURE PROBE
TP2	TEMPERATURE PROBE



1- 2- 3- 4- 5- 6- 7- 8- 9- 10- 11- 12- 13- 14- 15- 16- 17- 18- 19- 20- 21- 22- 23- 24- 25- 26- 27- 28- 29- 30-

**PROJECT: PRESLEY
DETENTION CENTER
OPERATIONS
& MAINTENANCE**

**FLO-PAK REP: AIR TREATMENT
NO. C065277 October 1, 2007**



***Ultimate
Adaptability...***

FLO-PAK[®]
A business unit of Patterson Pump Company

3" suction, 2.5" discharge

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION 1

MECHANICAL & ELECTRICAL DATA

- System Installation, Operation & Maintenance Manual
- Maintenance Schedule for Packaged Pump Systems
- Sequence of Operation
- Bill of Materials
- Electrical Schematics
- Variable Frequency Drive
- Mechanical Drawing, D80-106556-0

SECTION 2

PUMP & MOTOR

- Patterson E2.5J7A-CC
- Baldor EJMM25 16T → Bowling BG 6309 B03
256JM Frame 6208 B03

SECTION 3

MISCELLANEOUS

- FNW Butterfly Valve model 732
- MATCO-NORCA Wafer Check Valve CVC
- Watts Ball Valve model WBV-3
- Mechanical Thermal Purge Valve
- Wika Pressure Gauge model 21.53

Heat Technology

714-549-0555

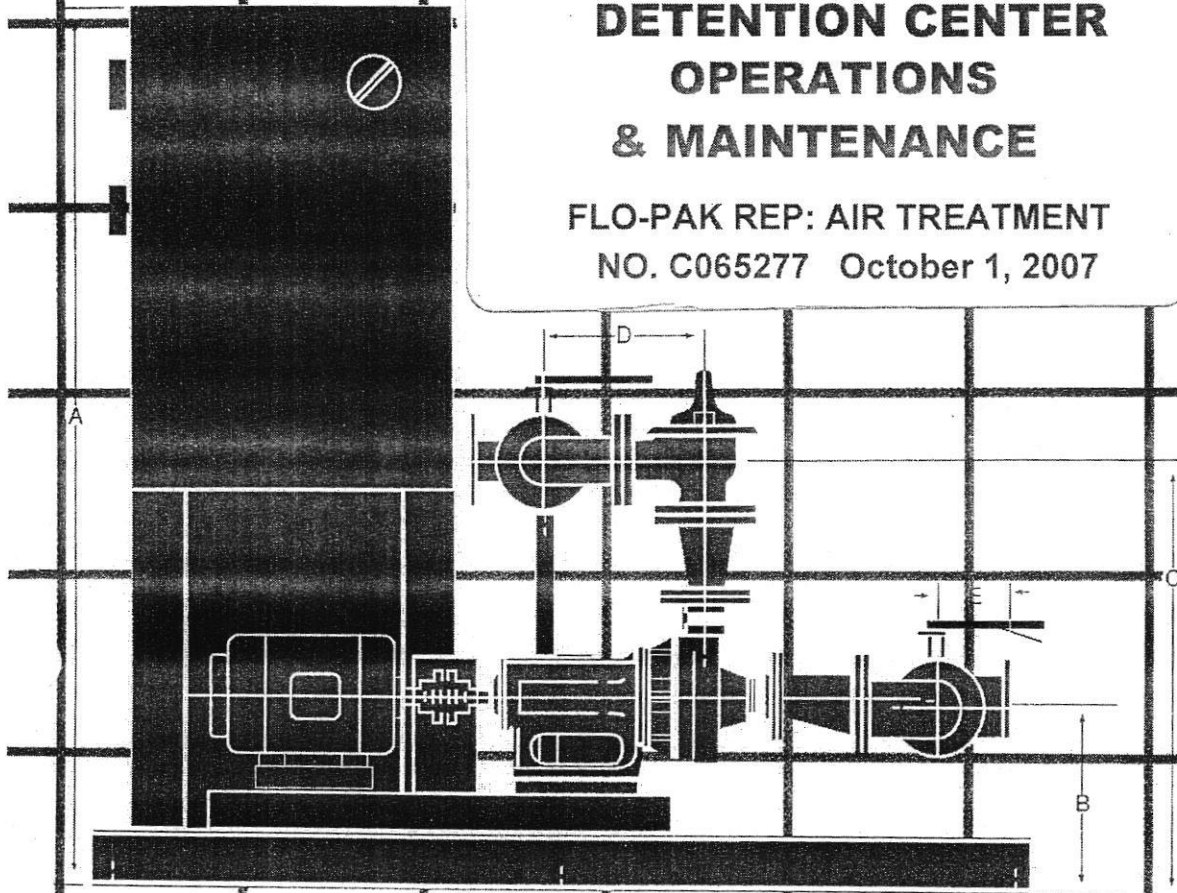
* Craig Greg or

Wayne

25HP.

**PROJECT: PRESLEY
DETENTION CENTER
OPERATIONS
& MAINTENANCE**

**FLO-PAK REP: AIR TREATMENT
NO. C065277 October 1, 2007**



**Ultimate
Adaptability...**

FLO-PAK[®]
A business unit of Patterson Pump Company



PATTERSON PUMP COMPANY
A Subsidiary of The Gorman-Rupp Co.

PO Box 790
2129 Ayersville Road
Toccoa, Georgia 30577
Telephone: 706.886.2101
Fax: 706.886.0023

LETTER OF TRANSMITTAL

TO: Air Treatment
957 Lawson Street
City of Industry, CA 91748

DATE: 10/3/07
PROJECT: Presley Detention Center
ORDER NUMBER: C065277
RE: Manuals

ATTENTION: Charles Gilliland 812-886-0245

WE ARE SENDING YOU: X HEREWITH DELIVERED BY HAND
VIA: UPS/NDA

THE FOLLOWING ITEMS

TEST/CURVE DATA MANUALS X SUBMITTALS OTHER

COPIES	DRAWING OR REV NUMBER	DESCRIPTION
6	C065277	Manuals

THESE ARE TRANSMITTED AS INDICATED BELOW

X FOR YOUR USE FOR REVIEW AND COMMENT
FOR APPROVAL - REQUESTED BY RETURN CORRECTED COPIES
AS REQUESTED

REMARKS

COPIES TO:

SIGNED: Kerry Clardy
KERRY CLARDY, ENGINEERING CLERK
Phone: (706) 297-2805

3" suction, 2.5" discharge

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION 1

MECHANICAL & ELECTRICAL DATA

- System Installation, Operation & Maintenance Manual
- Maintenance Schedule for Packaged Pump Systems
- Sequence of Operation
- Bill of Materials
- Electrical Schematics
- Variable Frequency Drive
- Mechanical Drawing, D80-106556-0

SECTION 2

PUMP & MOTOR

- Patterson E2.5J7A-CC
- Baldor EJMM25 16T → Bearing BG 6309 B03
256JM Frame 6208 B03

SECTION 3

MISCELLANEOUS

- FNW Butterfly Valve model 732
- MATCO-NORCA Wafer Check Valve CVC
- Watts Ball Valve model WBV-3
- Mechanical Thermal Purge Valve
- Wika Pressure Gauge model 21.53

Heat Technology

714-549-0535

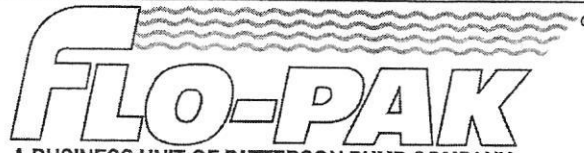
* Craig Greg or

Wayne

25HP.

SECTION I

MECHANICAL & ELECTRICAL DATA



A BUSINESS UNIT OF PATTERSON PUMP COMPANY

P.O. BOX 790

Toccoa, Georgia 30577

Telephone: 706-886-2101

Fax: 706-886-0023

www.flo-pak.com

INSTALLATION, OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL

Read this entire manual before proceeding.

SECTION I – INTRODUCTION

- 1-1** This manual provides general instructions for the installation and maintenance of the package pumping unit manufactured by Flo-Pak, Inc. / A Business Unit of Patterson Pump Company, Toccoa, Georgia.
- 1-2** After carefully uncrating or unpacking, check the equipment against the shipping papers, and inspect for any damage incurred during shipment. Immediately notify the carrier of any damage or shortage found.
- 1-3** The type and sizing of the unit was built to meet requirements provided by the purchaser. Among the more important requirements are the following:
- Liquid pumped
 - Flow in gallons-per-minute
 - Temperature of liquid pumped degree Fahrenheit
 - Suction condition, pressure or lift
 - Discharge pressure
 - Power supply characteristics
 - Location
- 1-4** If any of the requirements change after the order was placed, we suggest that each change be reviewed with the factory.

CAUTION: Operation of the package under conditions different from the design requirements may void the warranty!

SECTION II – INSTALLATION

2-1 Location

Select a location for the package which will be clean, well ventilated, properly drained, and provide accessibility for inspection and maintenance. Outdoor installation may require protection from the elements, particularly freezing.

PACKAGE PUMPING SYSTEMS

- *** Installation
- *** Operation
- *** Maintenance

Read the entire manual before attempting to install, operate or repair this equipment.

Properly installed your Flo-Pak package will give you satisfactory and dependable service. We urge that you carefully read these step-by-step instructions to simplify any problems of installation, operation or repair.

Failure to read and comply with installation and operation instruction will void the responsibility of the manufacturer and may also result in bodily injury, as well as property damage.

This manual is intended to be a permanent part of your package installation and should be preserved in a convenient location for ready reference. If these instructions should become soiled, obtain a new copy from Flo-Pak. Be sure to include the package serial number you request.

2-2 Foundation

Concrete (reinforcement as necessary or required) is most widely used for the foundation. In sufficient mass it provides rigid support which minimizes deflection and vibration. It may be located on soil, structural steel or building floors, provided the combined weight of the package, grout and foundation does not exceed the allowable bearing load of the support. Allowable bearing loads of structural steel and floors can be obtained from engineering handbooks, building codes or local communities which give the recommended allowable bearing loads for different types of soil.

- 2-3 Before pouring, roughen the top surface to provide a good bond. Ordinarily the proportions used are 1 part cement to 3 parts sand and 4 parts medium aggregate.

2-4 If vibration or noise will be objectionable, as in office building, it may be advisable to use vibration dampeners between the package unit and foundation in conjunction with suction and discharge piping vibration suppressor.

2-5 Mounting

Set the package unit on the foundation base. Level the unit and check the alignment on the bearing frame units; tighten the foundation bolts.

2-6 Alignment Bearing Frame Units Only

Reliable, trouble-free and efficient operation of the unit depends on the correct alignment of the pumps and driver shafts. Misalignment may be the cause of:

- a. Noisy pump operation
- b. Vibration
- c. Premature bearing failure
- d. Excessive coupling wear

Note: Complete units are aligned at the factory. Experience has shown that all bases, no matter how rugged or deep in section, will twist during shipment. At the very least, the alignment must be checked after mounting.

Factors which may change the alignment of the unit after the initial installation:

- a. Settling of the foundation
- b. Springing of the base
- c. Piping strain
- d. Settling of the building
- e. Shift of pump driver on the foundation

2-7 Grouting

Grouting compensates for unevenness in the foundation and the base, as well as distributes the weight of the unit uniformly over the foundation. It also helps to prevent the unit from shifting after mounting. It is essential that the unit be expertly grouted by use of non-shrinking grout. Grout the unit as follows:

- a. Build a form of plywood or thin planking around the foundation to contain the grout. Support adequately to prevent deformation.

- b. Soak the top of the concrete pad thoroughly with water before grouting. Remove all surface water before pouring.
- c. A recommended mix of grout satisfactory for most applications is as follows:
 - 1. One part of normal Portland Cement – 94#
 - 2. One part of Embeco Cement – 100#
 - 3. One part of coarse clean sand – 100#
 - 4. One and one-half parts of ¼" pea gravel (1½ cu. Ft.)
 - 5. approximately 5 ½ gallons water
- d. Pour the grout into the base and, while pouring, tamp liberally in order to fill cavities and prevent air pockets. In order to prevent the base from shifting, grout 4" out from all sides of the base. Slant outside edges of the grout to prevent chipping.
- e. Approximately fourteen days after the grout has been poured or when the grout is thoroughly dried, apply an oil base paint to all exposed surfaces of the grout to prevent air and moisture from coming in contact with the grout.

2-8 Piping

The suction and discharge piping should be arranged for the most simple, direct layout and be of sufficient size and internally free of foreign material. The piping must never be pulled into position by the flange bolts. It must be independently supported and arranged in order to not induce any strain on the package.

Note: Piping should be cleaned and flushed prior to installing the package. A large number of packing, mechanical seals and seizure troubles of the pumps are due to improperly cleaned system.

2-9 Electricity

Connect the power supply to the package conforming to the National Electrical and local codes. Line voltage and wire capacity must match the rating stamped on the control panel nameplate.

- a. Only when the coupling halves are disconnected (frame mounted pumps) and the water supply is to the suction of the pumps, momentarily energize the panel and check that rotation of the pumps is correct by setting the hand-off-auto switch into the hand position.

- b. If the rotation is inaccurate, correct by changing any two of the three power leads.

SECTION III – LUBRICATION

3-1 Couplings

Couplings with rubber drive parts do not require lubrication; however, most couplings do require some form of lubrication. After completion of installation and alignment, and before operating the unit, lubricate couplings in accordance with the manufacturer's specific instruction contained in the package installation manual.

3-2 Ball Bearings

Reasonable care and proper lubrication of bearings will result in many years of service. The lubricant provides a film between the balls, separator and races, giving low friction and preventing excessive temperature rise and corrosion.

3-3 The normal life of ball bearings is terminated only by fatigue. Improper lubrication practices are the primary cause of failure. Good practice includes the following:

- a. Keep lubricant clean; provide and use a dust-tight cover on the storage container.
- b. Use the oldest lubricant first.
- c. Clean lubrication fittings before re-lubrication.
- d. Use clean dispensing equipment.
- e. Use the proper amount of lubricant. Too much grease results in churning and unnecessary power consumption, rapid heating to high temperatures which break down the grease.
- f. Use the correct lubricant. Grease Lithium Soap Base, meeting National Lubricating Grease Institute Grade 2 specifications. This has a safe operating temperature higher than 300 degrees Fahrenheit.

3-4 Operating Temperature

Use of the lubricants and procedures given in this manual will allow safe operation at bearing temperatures to 250 degrees Fahrenheit. Past experience, however, indicates the normal temperature will not exceed 250 degrees if the pumped fluid is well below that temperature.

- 3-5** A high normal operating temperature is not a sign of bearing failure. Normal temperatures vary with the seasons and the environment and may range from 0 to approximately 200 degrees Fahrenheit. A continuous rise from established normal operating temperature indicates trouble and probable failure of the bearings. Shut down the unit immediately. Disassemble, clean and inspect the bearings. Replace if required.

3-6 Re-Lubrication

Grease that has been in service does not "wear away." It needs replacing only because of contamination by dust, metal particles, moisture or high temperature breakdown.

- a. Thoroughly clean greased fitting.
- b. Remove grease drain plug on equipment so equipped.
- c. Inject clean new grease.

SECTION IV – OPERATION

- 4-1** When making an initial start, after installation or major maintenance, check the following:

- a. Coupling alignment (if frame mounted).
- b. Bearing lubricant on pumps and drives.

- 4-2** Start the package as follows:

1. When possible, turn the pump shaft by hand to make sure parts do not bind.
2. Open suction valves.
3. Start drive in "hand" and check rotation. (Correct as necessary.)
4. With pump running in "hand" regulate system pressure by adjusting the pressure regulating valve. (See data sheet in manual.) Repeat this for all pumps on package.

SECTION V – MAINTENANCE

WARNING – DISCONNECT THE POWER TO ANY ROTATING OR ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS BEFORE STARTING ANY REPAIRS!

5-1 Regular consistent maintenance is the best way to avoid serious trouble which may require taking the unit out of service for extensive repair.

5-2 Bearings

It is essential to provide proper lubrication and keep bearings clean. Frequency of lubrication must be determined by experience as it depends upon bearing size, speed, operating conditions and location (environment). Table 1 should be used as a guide for grease re-lubrication.

TABLE 1

<u>Operating Conditions</u>	<u>Lubricate</u>
Normal, 8-hour day operation. Area free of dust and damaging atmosphere.	Every six (6) months.
Severe, 24-hour day operation. Area with moderate dust and/or damaging atmosphere or outdoor service.	Every month.
Light, approximately 10-hour week. Area relatively free of dust and damaging atmosphere.	Every year.

5-3 Alignment – (Bearing frame unit only) – Check alignment yearly.

TABLE 2

<u>Problems</u>	<u>Probable Cause</u>	<u>Remedy</u>
Failure to deliver liquid or sufficient pressure.	Control valve not adjusted correctly.	Adjust control valve. (See valve manual.)
	Incorrect pump rotation.	Change rotation.
	Discharge head too high.	Check that all discharge valves are open and discharge line is free from obstructions. In some cases the installation needs to be altered or pump of suitable rating supplied.
	Impeller passages restricted.	Disassemble the pump and clean the impeller.
	Pump not up to speed.	Check for low motor voltage or motor overload.
	Worn wearing rings.	Replace worn parts.
Overload of driver.	Damaged impeller.	Replace or repair impeller.
	Total head lower than rating	Check suction and discharge pressure and determine the total dynamic head. If TDH is lower than rated, throttle discharge valve to rated TDH.
	Mechanical problem in pump or driver.	See if unit turns freely.
Vibration or noise.	Misalignment bearing (frame units only).	Realign unit.
	Worn ball bearing.	Replace bearings.
	Cracked foundation.	Replace foundation.
* All pumps running lag units cycle off and back on again.	Control valve setting and start pressure switch not adjusted correctly in relation to one another.	Readjust.
	Too low setting on start delay timer.	Readjust.

**TABLE 2
(Continued)**

* All pumps running lag units cycle off and back on again.	Package undersized for load.	Verify operating flow and head.
* Low suction alarm tripping.	Low suction switch adjusted incorrectly or poorly.	Check adjustment.
	Actual low suction condition.	Check suction pressure with test gauge.
All other alarms.	Switches adjusted incorrectly.	Readjust.
	Actual alarm condition.	Verify and correct.
	→ Delay timer set too low.	Increase time delay.

5-4 Spare Parts

To keep delay to a minimum when package repairs are required, we suggest that the following spare parts be stocked:

Panel

- a. Spare set of fuses.
- b. Spare timer.
- c. Spare relay.
- d. Spare system pressure switch and suction pressure switch.

Pumps

- a. Spare mechanical seal for each size pump.
- b. Spare casing gasket for each size pump.
- c. Spare shaft sleeve for each size pump.
- d. Spare impeller for each size pump.

5-5 To obtain quick and accurate service when ordering spare parts, provide the following information:

- 1. Package serial number.
- 2. The name and number of parts shown on the data provided for the individual component.
- 3. Quantity required on each item.



PUMP COMPANY / A Subsidiary of The Gorman-Rupp Co.
 P.O. Box 790 / Toccoa, Georgia 30577 / (706) 886-2101 / FAX (706) 886-0023
 www.pattersonpumps.com

General Pump Inspection and Maintenance Schedule Packaged Pump Systems

Any additional inspections, maintenance, or tests required by NFPA- Standards for fire pumps are excluded.
 Refer to NFPA Standards for additional requirements for fire pumps.

Actions required only for specific pump types are so noted.
 The symbol (■) used in the table below indicates that the action indicated may not be applicable to a specific pump of a particular type.
 For more information regarding inspection and maintenance requirements refer to the Patterson O & M manual supplied with the pump.
 Contact Patterson Pump Company if assistance is needed to determine the inspection and service requirements for a specific pump.

Inspect (✓) or service (■) at the indicated calendar time or run time interval – whichever comes first	4 hours	Routinely	Monthly	2000 hours or 3 months	4000 hours or 6 months	8000 hours or 12 months
Replenish grease lubricated sleeve bearing grease per the O & M manual using the manual grease lubricator. Perform every 3 months while idle. (vertical wet pit pumps so equipped) ■	•					
Unusual noise		✓				
Unusual vibration		✓				
Unusual temperature		✓				
Leaks in pump or piping		✓				
Pressure gauge readings		✓				
Visual inspection of equipment general condition		✓				
Anytime a pump is opened, inspect the running clearances and restore them to original specifications if the running clearances have doubled (adjust ring clearances if so supplied or install new wear rings)		✓	•			
Anytime a pump is opened, inspect the impeller for corrosion or excessive wear.		✓	•			
Packing box – verify slight leakage (if excessive, adjust gland or seal water valve; replace packing if required) ■		✓	•			
Mechanical seal (should be no leakage) ■		✓				
Drain lines are working properly ■		✓				
Coupling integrity ■		✓				
Drive shaft integrity ■		✓				
Verify proper operation of oil drip lubricator (vertical wet pit pumps so equipped) ■			✓			
Verify proper operation of automatic grease lubricator (vertical wet pit pumps so equipped) ■			✓			
Operate the pump (note – for vertical wet pit pumps first verify proper lubrication)			✓			
Tightness of foundation and hold-down bolts				✓		
Check coupling alignment and integrity (maintain records) ■				✓		
Add grease to pump anti-friction bearings (maintain records) ■				•		
Add grease to universal joint shafting u-joint bearings, anti-friction steady bearings (maintain records) ■				•		
Add grease to coupling (maintain records) ■				•		
Change anti-friction bearing oil (maintain records) ■				•		
Replace packing (all packing; not just the outermost ring) ■					•	
Clean and oil gland bolts (packed pumps) ■					•	
Verify free movement of packing glands (packed pumps) ■					✓	
Universal joint shafting and steady bearings wear check (replace bearings if required) ■					✓	•
Clean packing box						•
Check and flush seal water and drain piping						•
Perform a comparative field test (flow, pressures, and power) with calibrated instruments. Restore internal running clearances if results are unsatisfactory (install new wear rings).						✓
Perform a comparative vibration test						✓
Remove packing and inspect sleeve(s). Replace if worn. (packed pumps) ■						✓
Realign coupled pumps (maintain records) ■						•
Remove pump handhole covers and inspect impeller for corrosion and excessive wear (sewage pumps) ■						✓
Remove handhole covers to inspect the wear ring clearances. When the wear ring clearances have doubled, adjust the ring clearances to original specifications if so supplied or install new wear rings (sewage pumps). ■						✓
Examine running clearance between propeller and propeller housing. When the running clearance has doubled, repair or replace the housing, housing liner, or propeller as appropriate. (model AFV axial flow pumps) ■						✓
Inspect the impeller running clearance. Inspect the impeller housing for excessive wear. If the wear is not excessive, perform impeller adjustment. If the wear is excessive, repair or replace the impeller housing. (open impeller mixed flow pumps, such as models SAF, SAFV, SAHF, or TMF) ■						✓
Inspect batteries & battery charger for proper charge.			✓			
Observe operation of fans & dampers such that the fans & dampers operate at set temperature, and damper opens upon operation of the diesel engine.			✓			
Jockey Pump – See manual for specific jockey maintenance requirements.			✓			
Engine Maintenance (Belts / Filters / Oil / Fuel Strainer) [See O&M manual for Engine]			✓	•		
Replace any worn caulk around pipe exits on buildings.					✓	
Building Heater - Inspect for proper operation.					✓	
Inspect operation of all valves in system.					✓	
Lights (Outside, Inside, Emergency) – Inspect for proper operation.					✓	

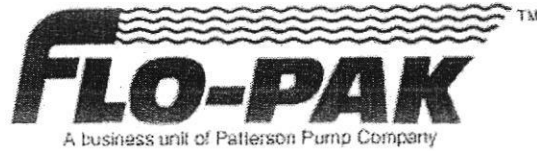
Aid may be obtained from the Flo-Pak representative in your area or from the factory.

Flo-Pak, Inc.
P.O. Box 790
Toccoa, Georgia 30577
Telephone: 706-886-2101
Fax: 706-886-0023
www.flo-pak.com

A Business Unit of Patterson Pump Company

5/28/04

SEQUENCE OF OPERATIONS



C065277 Presley Detention Center

Tri-plex Booster

Rev 1 07/25/2007

Basic Operation

The pumps are started and stopped according to an adjustable pressure set-point with the pressure being sensed by the remote pressure transducer (mounted and wired by others) and pressure being controlled by varying the VFD(s) speed by means of PID control. The remote pressure is displayed on the PLC/Display. A second pressure transducer is mounted on the discharge header in order to provide the discharge header pressure to the PLC/Display.

When the system is energized, the operator simply places the HOA and Speed Command switches in the "Auto" position and adjusting the desired pressure set-points by utilizing the Operator Interface on the door mounted PLC.

The operator can adjust the speed of the VFDs manually by placing the "speed command" selectors in the "keypad" position and pressing the up or down arrow keys on the VFD keypads.

The lead pump will start after an adjustable time delay when the remote pressure as sensed by the remote pressure transducer drops to adjustable start lead pump set-point.

Once the lead pump is started, it will run for the adjustable minimum run time.

The remaining 2 pumps act as standby units. (The total system design flow is 460 GPM and each pump is rated for 460GPM @ 165' TDH)

* All 3 pumps will be automatically rotated every time the lead shuts off or every 24 hours, whichever occurs first.

* The lead pump will stop when its minimum run timer has expired, the stop lead pump set-point pressure has been reached and the VFD speed (PID output) has dropped to or below an adjustable set-point.

* In the event of a low suction (supply) pressure condition, the pumps will be stopped and the Low Suction Pressure alarm will be initiated after a 10 second (adjustable) time delay. The alarm will automatically reset after 10 seconds when the suction pressure returns to a safe operating level and the pumps will be re-enabled.

* In the event of a low discharge pressure condition, Low Discharge Pressure alarm will be initiated after a 60 second (adjustable) time delay. The alarm will automatically reset after 10 seconds when the discharge pressure returns to the reset set-point.

In the event of a high discharge pressure condition, the pumps will be stopped and the High Discharge Pressure alarm will be initiated after a 10 second (adjustable) time delay. The alarm will automatically reset after 10 seconds when the discharge pressure returns to a safe operating level and the pumps will be re-enabled.

In the event of a remote pressure transducer failure or if the operator decides to set the VFD speeds manually, the Speed Command selector switches are placed in the "Keypad" position and the speed is adjusted by utilizing the up or down arrow keys on the VFD keypads. This can be helpful when initially filling the system discharge piping so as not to cause a water "hammer".

In the event of a pump failure due to VFD fault or if the pump(s) HOA switch is placed in the "Off" position, the PLC will ignore the failed pump in the starting/running sequence. The PLC will put the failed pump back into the starting/running sequence once the VFD fault has been cleared or when the HOA switch is put into the "Auto" position.

The operator can select a system enable and disable time per day via the real time clock in the PLC controller. If the operator decides to have the system enabled on a continuous basis for a given day, the enable and disable times are made equal.

Operator Interface

The operator may select the system status, alarm or setup screens with simple keypad button selections.

When the system is powered up, the system status (main) screen is displayed. This screen displays the remote pressure, pump sequence, etc. The operator can display this screen from any other screen by pressing the #1 button.

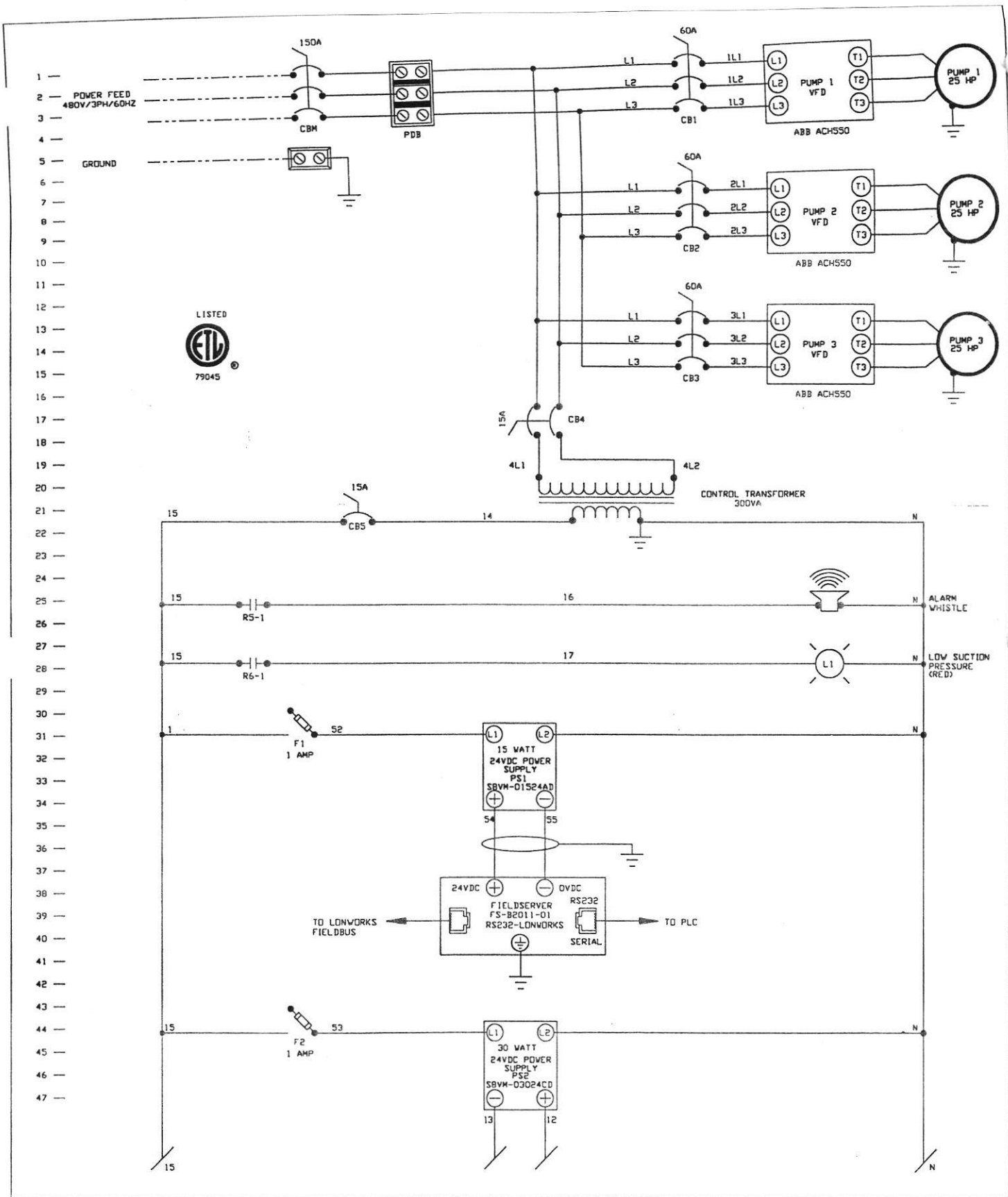
In order to display the alarm or setup screens, the operator must always first display the system status (main) screen by pressing the #1 button. Once the system status screen is displayed, the operator can go to the first alarm screen by pressing the #2 button or to the setup screens by pressing the #3 button. The setup screens will require the entry of a password.

To change setup data, the enter key is pressed to enter the change mode, once the desired data is entered, the enter key is pressed to accept the new data.

In the event of an alarm, the particular alarm screen will automatically be displayed.

In all areas, the right and left arrow keys are used to scroll through that area.

SYLINE #	QTY	DESCRIPTION	PART NUMBER	MANUF.	CATEGORY
	3	25 HP 480 Volt VFD NEMA 12		ABB	NPR
	1	Control Panel Enclosure 36H x 36W x 8D	ACH550-UH-038A-4	Wegmann	NPR
	1	MOUNTING PANEL FOR N412363608C	N412363608C	Wegmann	CONTROL PANEL
	1	Unitronics Analog PLC	NP3636C	Wegmann	CONTROL PANEL
	1	Unitronics	M91-2-UA2	Wegmann	CONTROL PANEL
	1	Fieldserver RS232 to Lonworks	FS-B2011-01	Fieldserver	CONTROL PANEL
	1	0-300 PSIG Discharge Pressure Transmitter	M5151-000005-300PG	MSI	NPR
	1	30 WATT 24 VDC POWER SUPPLY	S8VM-03024CD	Omnron	CONTROL PANEL
	1	15 WATT 24 VDC POWER SUPPLY	S8VM-01524AD	Omnron	CONTROL PANEL
	1	SWITCH, PRESSURE	836-C5A	Allen Bradley	NPR
	1	BLOCK, DISTRIBUTION, POWER	1423570	Marathon	CONTROL PANEL
	1	BREAKER, 3 POLE, 150 AMP	FXD63B150L	Siemens	CONTROL PANEL
	1	MECHANISM, OPERATOR, BREAKER	CRHOFVD	Siemens	CONTROL PANEL
	3	BREAKER, 3 POLE, 60 AMP	ED43B060L	Siemens	CONTROL PANEL
	1	BREAKER, 2 POLE, 15 AMP	ED42B015L	Siemens	CONTROL PANEL
	1	1 POLE 15 AMP DIN RAIL MOUNT BREAKER	THOC1115VM	GE	CONTROL PANEL
	1	300VA TRANSFORMER, POWER, CONTROL	C0300E2A	Cutler-Hammer	CONTROL PANEL
	3	RELAY, 4PDT, 120 VAC COIL, 700-HC24A1	700-HC24A1	Allen Bradley	CONTROL PANEL
	3	BASE, WIRING, FOR HC24A1, 700-HN103	700-HN103	Allen Bradley	CONTROL PANEL
	6	RELAY, DPDT, 24VDC COIL	G2R-2	Omnron	CONTROL PANEL
	6	BASE, WIRING, FOR G2R-2	P2RF-08	Omnron	CONTROL PANEL
	1	WHISTLE, ALARM, DOOR MOUNT	SC110	Mallory	CONTROL PANEL
	1	BLACK MOMENTARY PUSHBUTTON	800F-F2PX10	Allen Bradley	CONTROL PANEL
	3	3 POSITION MAINTAINED SELECTOR	800F-P-SM22	Allen Bradley	CONTROL PANEL
	3	2 POSITION MAINTAINED SELECTOR	800F-P-SM22	Allen Bradley	CONTROL PANEL
	3	LIGHT, PILOT, FULL VOLTAGE, GREEN	800F-P-3	Allen Bradley	CONTROL PANEL
	1	FULL VOLTAGE RED PILOT LIGHT	800F-P-4	Allen Bradley	CONTROL PANEL
	4	120VAC INCANDESCENT LAMP MODULE	800F-D5C	Allen Bradley	CONTROL PANEL
	7	CONTACT, NORMALLY OPEN, 800F-X10	800F-X10	Allen Bradley	CONTROL PANEL
	3	CONTACT, NORMALLY CLOSED, 800F-X01	800F-X01	Allen Bradley	CONTROL PANEL
	11	LATCH, MOUNTING, 3 WAY, 800E-A3L	800F-ALP	Allen Bradley	CONTROL PANEL
	1	Wireway 6" x 6" x 36" Nema 1		Wegmann	NPR
	1	Wireway End Cap 6"x6"		Wegmann	NPR
	1	Wireway Panel Adapter 6" x 6"		Wegmann	NPR



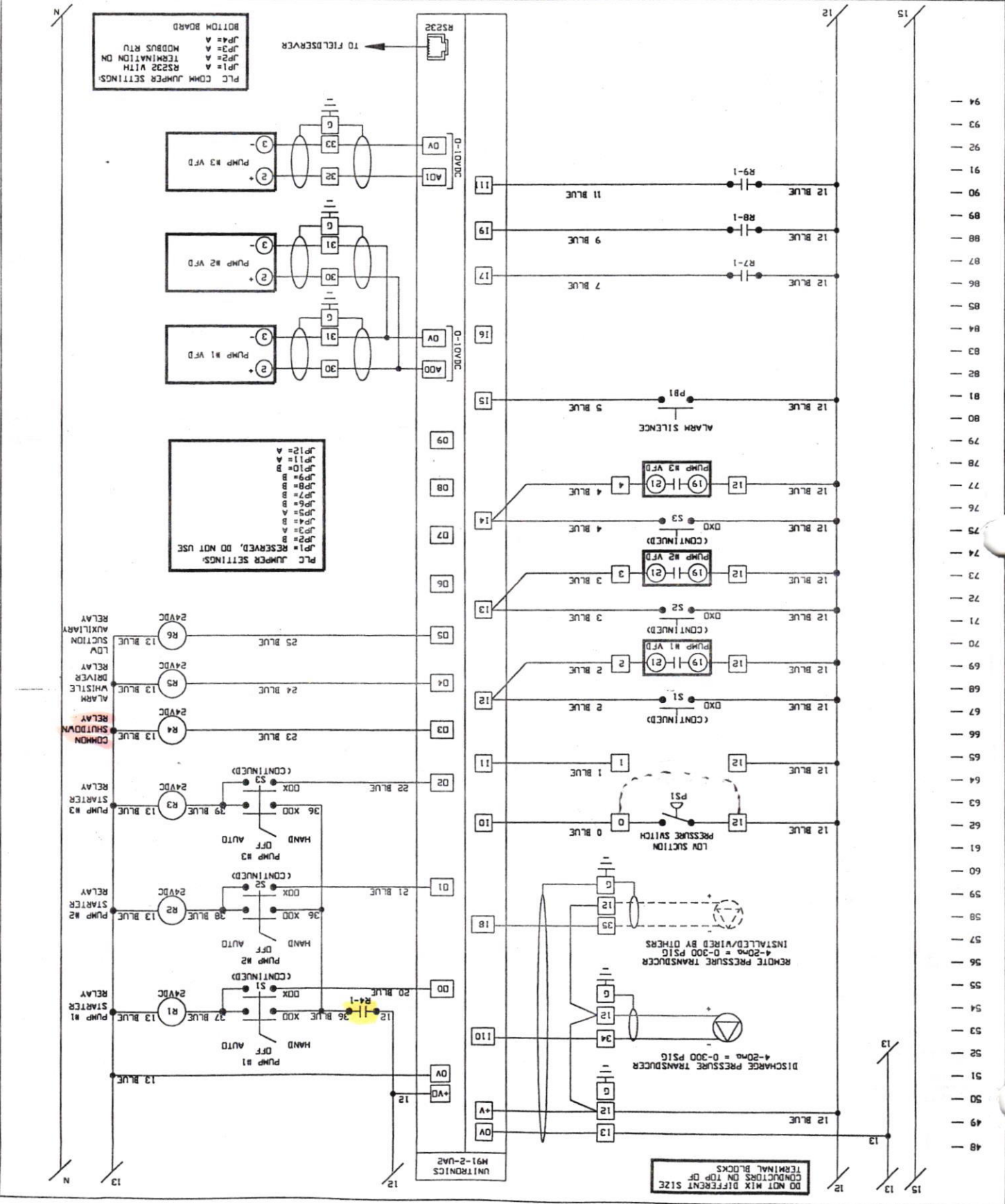
Presley Detention Center

PAGE #1



A business unit of Patterson Pump Company

PUMP #1	PUMP #2	PUMP #3	POWER FEED	Drawn By: WRW	DATE 07/25/2007
HP. 25	HP. 25	HP. 25	480V/3PH/60HZ	Dwg Number: A85-105696	As Built
FLA 34	FLA 34	FLA 34	MCA - 112		
BRKR: 60	BRKR: 60	BRKR: 60			

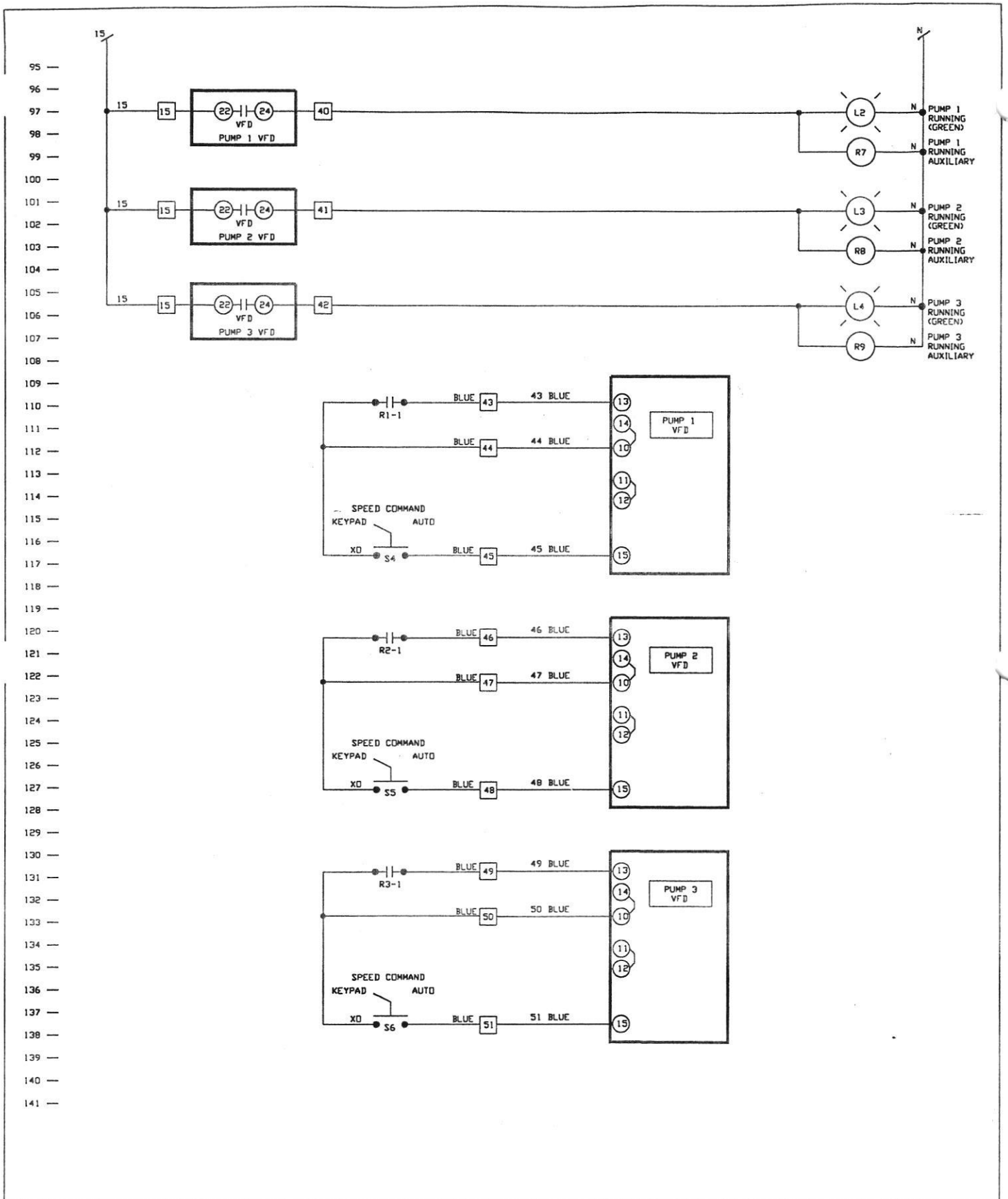


PLC COMB JUMPER SETTINGS
 JP1: A RS232 WITH TERMINATION ON
 JP2: A MODBUS RTU
 JP3: A
 JP4: A
BOTTOM BOARD

PLC JUMPER SETTINGS
 JP1: RESERVED, DO NOT USE
 JP2: B
 JP3: A
 JP4: B
 JP5: A
 JP6: B
 JP7: B
 JP8: B
 JP9: B
 JP10: B
 JP11: A
 JP12: A

DO NOT MIX DIFFERENT SIZE CONDUCTORS ON TOP OF TERMINAL BLOCKS

- 94 -
- 93 -
- 92 -
- 91 -
- 90 -
- 89 -
- 88 -
- 87 -
- 86 -
- 85 -
- 84 -
- 83 -
- 82 -
- 81 -
- 80 -
- 79 -
- 78 -
- 77 -
- 76 -
- 75 -
- 74 -
- 73 -
- 72 -
- 71 -
- 70 -
- 69 -
- 68 -
- 67 -
- 66 -
- 65 -
- 64 -
- 63 -
- 62 -
- 61 -
- 60 -
- 59 -
- 58 -
- 57 -
- 56 -
- 55 -
- 54 -
- 53 -
- 52 -
- 51 -
- 50 -
- 49 -
- 48 -



Presley Detention Center

PAGE #3



A business unit of Patterson Pump Company

Drawn By: WRW

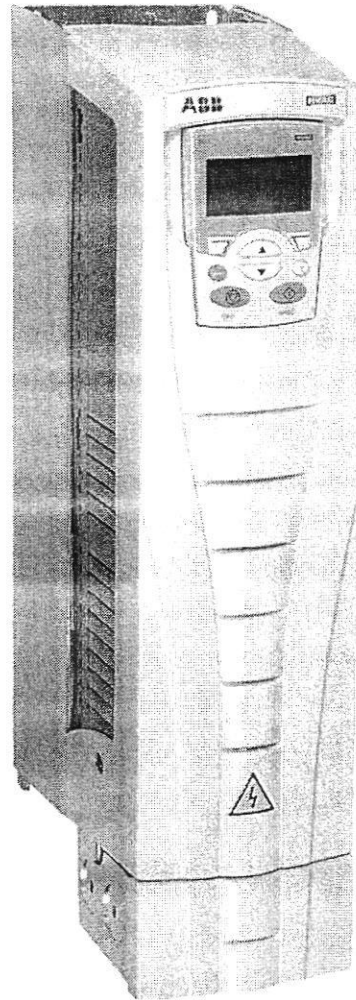
DATE 07/25/2007

Dwg Number: A85-105696

As Built

User's Manual

ACH550-UH HVAC Drives (1...550 HP)



ABB

ACH550 Drive Manuals

GENERAL MANUALS

ACH550-UH HVAC User's Manual (1...550 HP)

- Safety
- Installation
- Start-Up
- Embedded Fieldbus
- Fieldbus Adapter
- Diagnostics
- Maintenance
- Technical Data

ACH550-PC/PD Packaged Drive with Disconnect Supplement for ACH550-UH HVAC User's Manual

- Safety
- Installation
- Start-Up
- Maintenance
- Technical Data

E-Bypass Configurations (BC, BD, VC or VD) for ACH550 Drives (1...400 HP)

- Safety
- Installation
- Start-Up
- Technical Data

OPTION MANUALS

(Fieldbus Adapters, I/O Extension Modules etc., manuals delivered with optional equipment)

Relay Output Extension Module (typical title)

- Installation
- Programming
- Fault tracing
- Technical data

BACnet is a registered trademark of ASHRAE.

CANopen is a registered trademark of CAN in Automation e.V.

ControlNet is a registered trademark of ControlNet International.

DeviceNet is a registered trademark of Open DeviceNet Vendor Association.

DRIVECOM is a registered trademark of DRIVECOM User Organization.

Interbus is a registered trademark of Interbus Club.

LonWorks is a registered trademark of Echelon Corp.










Metasys is a registered trademark of Johnson Controls Inc.

Modbus and Modbus Plus are registered trademarks of Schneider Automation Inc.

Profibus is a registered trademark of Profibus Trade Org.

Profibus-DP is a registered trademark of Siemens AG.

Safety

-  **Warning!** The ACH550 adjustable speed AC drive should **ONLY** be installed by a qualified electrician.
-  **Warning!** Even when the motor is stopped, dangerous voltage is present at the Power Circuit terminals U1, V1, W1 and U2, V2, W2 and, where present, UDC+, UDC-, BRK+ and BRK-.
-  **Warning!** Dangerous voltage is present when input power is connected. After disconnecting the supply, wait at least 5 minutes (to let the intermediate circuit capacitors discharge) before removing the cover.
-  **Warning!** Even when power is removed from the input terminals of the ACH550, there may be dangerous voltage (from external sources) on the terminals of the relay outputs R01...R03.
-  **Warning!** When the control terminals of two or more drive units are connected in parallel, the auxiliary voltage for these control connections must be taken from a single source which can either be one of the units or an external supply.
-  **Warning!** The ACH550 will start up automatically after an input voltage interruption if the external run command is on.
-  **Warning!** The heat sink may reach a high temperature. See "Technical Data" on page 262.
-  **Warning!** If the drive will be used in a floating network, remove screws at EM1 and EM3 (Frame size R1...R4), or F1 and F2 (Frame size R5 or R6). See diagrams on page 17 and page 18 respectively. Also see "Unsymmetrically Grounded Networks" and "Floating Networks" on page 270.
-  **Warning!** Do not attempt to install or remove EM1, EM3, F1 or F2 screws while power is applied to the drive's input terminals.

Note! For more technical information, contact the factory or your local ABB sales representative.

Use of Warnings and Notes

There are two types of safety instructions throughout this manual:

- Notes draw attention to a particular condition or fact, or give information on a subject.
- Warnings caution you about conditions which can result in serious injury or death and/or damage to the equipment. They also tell you how to avoid the danger. The warning symbols are used as follows:



Dangerous voltage warning warns of high voltage which can cause physical injury and/or damage to the equipment.



General warning warns about conditions, other than those caused by electricity, which can result in physical injury and/or damage to the equipment

Table of Contents

Safety

Use of Warnings and Notes	4
---------------------------------	---

Table of Contents

Installation

Installation Flow Chart	7
Preparing for Installation	8
Installing the Drive	11

Start-Up

HVAC Control Panel Features	28
Start-Up	29
Modes	31
Application Macros	44
Parameter Descriptions	60

Embedded Fieldbus

Overview	154
Planning	155
Mechanical and Electrical Installation – EFB	156
Communication Set-up – EFB	157
Activate Drive Control Functions – EFB	160
Feedback from the Drive – EFB	165
Diagnostics – EFB	167
Modbus Protocol Technical Data	170
ABB Control Profiles Technical Data	178
N2 Protocol Technical Data	190
FLN Protocol Technical Data	198
BACnet Technical Data	212
BACnet Object Definitions	215

Fieldbus Adapter

Overview	224
Planning	226
Mechanical and Electrical Installation – FBA	227
Communication Set-up – FBA	228
Activate Drive Control Functions – FBA	228
Feedback from the Drive – FBA	231
Diagnostics – FBA	232
ABB Drives Profile Technical Data	234
Generic Profile Technical Data	242

Diagnostics	244
Diagnostic Displays	245
Correcting Faults	251
Correcting Alarms	251
Maintenance	254
Maintenance Intervals	254
Heatsink	254
Drive Module Fan Replacement	255
Enclosure Fan Replacement – UL Type 12 Enclosures	256
Enclosure Air Filter Replacement – UL Type 12 Enclosures	258
Capacitors	261
Control Panel	261
Technical Data	262
Ratings	262
Input Power Connections	266
Motor Connections	274
Control Connections	280
Efficiency	283
Cooling	283
Dimensions and Weights	285
Degrees of Protection	290
Ambient Conditions	291
Materials	292
Applicable Standards	293
Liability Limits	295
Index	

Installation

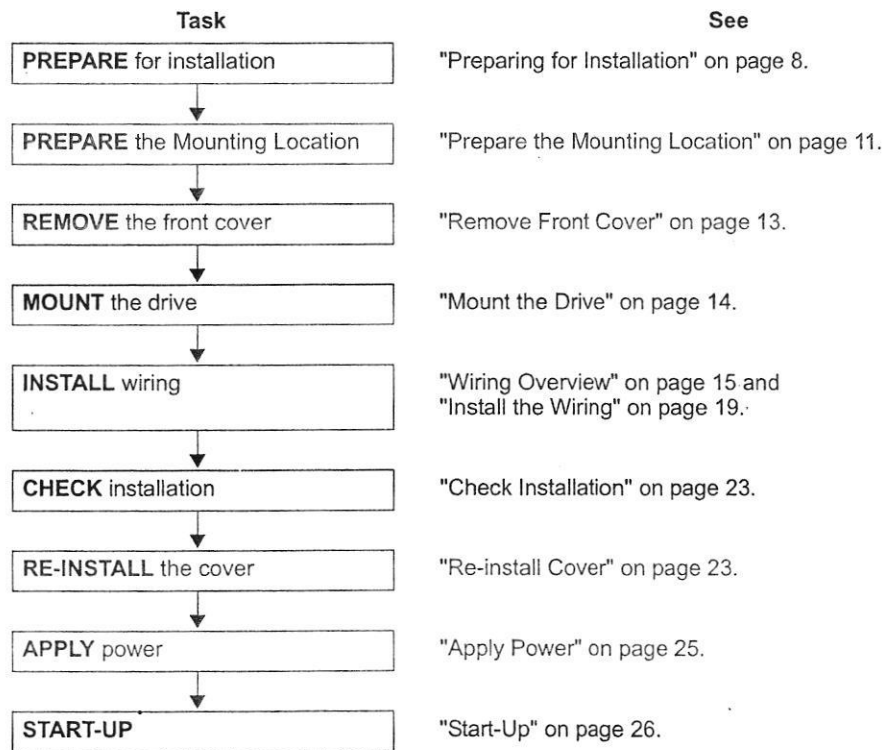
Study these installation instructions carefully before proceeding. **Failure to observe the warnings and instructions may cause a malfunction or personal hazard.**



Warning! Before you begin read "Safety" on page 3.

Installation Flow Chart

The installation of the ACH550 adjustable speed AC drive follows the outline below. The steps must be carried out in the order shown. At the right of each step are references to the detailed information needed for the correct installation of the unit.

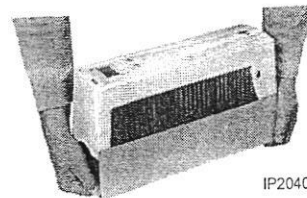


Preparing for Installation

Lifting the Drive

R1...R6

Lift the drive only by the metal chassis.



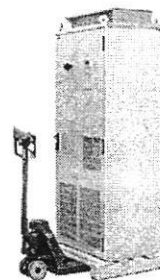
IP2040

R7...R8

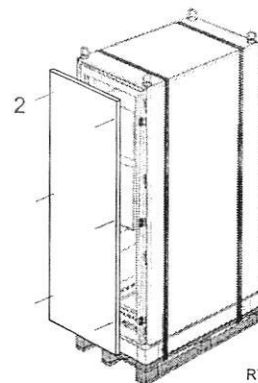


Warning! Handle and ship floor mounted enclosures only in the upright position. These units are not designed to be laid on their backs.

1. Use a pallet truck to move the transport package/ enclosure to the installation site.
2. Remove the cabinet side panels for access to the cabinet/pallet mounting bolts. (6 torx screws hold each cabinet side panel in place. Leave the side panels off until later.)
3. Remove the 4 bolts that secure the cabinet to the shipping pallet.



PC00005



R70010



Warning! Use the lifting lugs/bars at the top of the unit to lift R7/R8 drives.

4. Use a hoist to lift the drive. (Do not place drive in final position until mounting site is prepared.)



PC00003

Unpack the Drive

1. Unpack the drive.
2. Check for any damage and notify the shipper immediately if damaged components are found.
3. Check the contents against the order and the shipping label to verify that all parts have been received.

Drive Identification

Drive Labels

To determine the type of drive you are installing, refer to either:

- Serial number label attached on upper part of the chokeplate between the mounting holes.
- Type code label attached on the heat sink – on the right side of the enclosure.

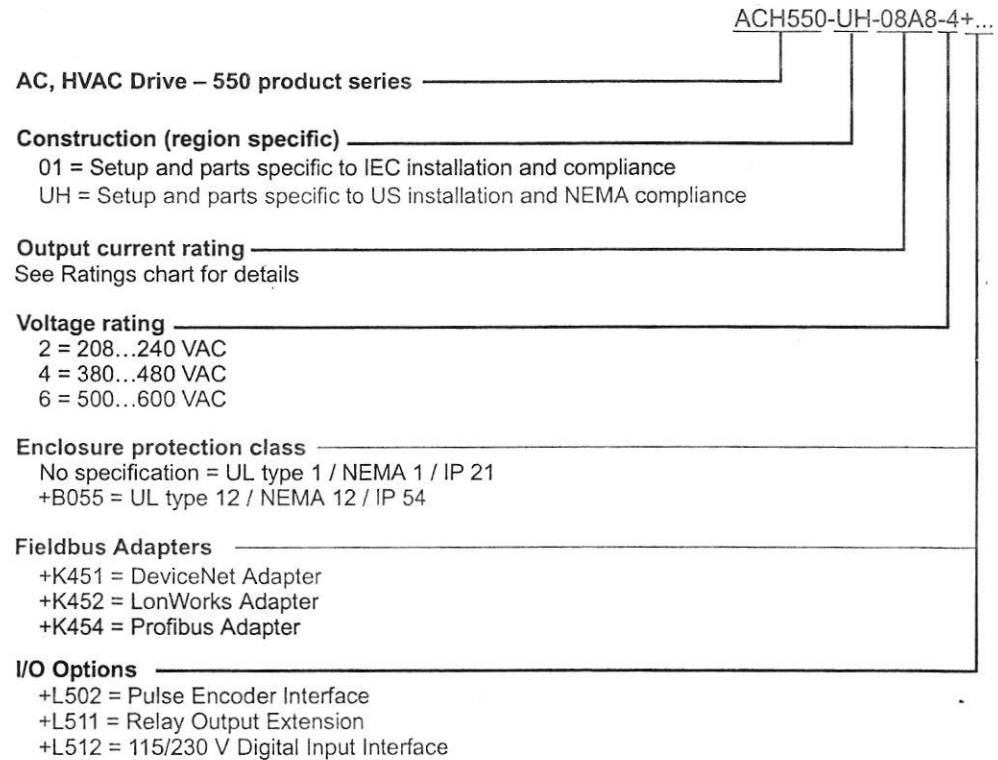


Input	3 PH 48...63 Hz Voltage (U1) Current (I1n)	1 PH 4...63 Hz 208...240 Vac 59.4 A	ABB Inc. Made in USA of foreign parts
Output	3 PH 0...500 Hz Voltage (U2) Current (I2n)	3 PH 0...500 Hz 0...U1 Vac 28 A	
Power (Pn)	20 HP	10 HP	Mfg. Date: 01-December-2005 Org. Firmware: V.2.06B S/N 2030700001

ACH550-UH-059A-2

Type Code

Use the following chart to interpret the type code found on either label.



Ratings and Frame Size

Tables in the "Ratings" section on page 262 lists technical specifications, and identifies the drive's frame size. To read the Ratings table, you need the "Output current rating" entry from the type code (see above). Also, when using the Ratings tables, note that there are different tables for each drive "Voltage rating".

Motor Compatibility

The motor, drive, and supply power must be compatible:

Motor Specification	Verify	Reference
Motor type	3-phase induction motor	–
Nominal current	Motor value is within this range: $0.15 \dots 1.5 * I_{2N}$ (I_{2N} = normal use current)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Type code label on drive, entry for Output I_{2N}, or Type code on drive and rating table in "Technical Data" on page 262.
Nominal frequency	10...500 Hz	–
Voltage range	Motor is compatible with the ACH550 voltage range.	208...240 V (for ACH550-xx-xxxx-2) or 380...480 V (for ACH550-xx-xxxx-4) 500...600 V (for ACH550-xx-xxxx-6)
Insulation	500...600 V drives: Either the motor complies with NEMA MG1 Part 31, or a du/dt filter is used between the motor and drive.	For ACH550-xx-xxxx-6

Tools Required

To install the ACH550 you need the following:

- Screwdrivers (as appropriate for the mounting hardware used)
- Wire stripper
- Tape measure
- Drill
- Frame sizes R5...R8 with UL type 12 enclosure: Punch for conduit mounting holes
- Frame sizes R7/R8: pallet truck and hoist
- For installations involving frame size R6...R8: The appropriate crimping tool for power cable lugs. See "Power Terminal Considerations – R6 Frame Size".
- Mounting hardware: screws or nuts and bolts, four each. The type of hardware depends on the mounting surface and the frame size:

Frame Size	Mounting Hardware		Note
R1...R4	M5	#10	
R5	M6	1/4 in	
R6	M8	5/16 in	
R7...R8	M10	7/16	Secures free standing cabinets if required.

- For installations involving frame size R7...R8: Hoist.

Suitable Environment and Enclosure

Confirm that the site meets the environmental requirements. To prevent damage prior to installation, store and transport the drive according to the environmental

requirements specified for storage and transportation. See "Ambient Conditions" on page 291.

Confirm that the enclosure is appropriate, based on the site contamination level:

- UL type 1 enclosure. The site must be free of airborne dust, corrosive gases or liquids, and conductive contaminants such as condensation, carbon dust, and metallic particles.
- UL type 12 enclosure. This enclosure provides protection from airborne dust and light sprays or splashing water from all directions.

Suitable Mounting Location

Confirm that the mounting location meets the following constraints:

- R1...R6: The drive must be mounted vertically on a smooth, solid surface, and in a suitable environment as defined above.
- The drive must be located in a suitable environment as defined above.
- The minimum space requirements for the drive are the outside dimensions (see "Outside Dimensions – R1...R6" on page 288 or "Outside Dimensions – R7...R8" on page 289), plus air flow space around the unit (see "Cooling" on page 283).
- The distance between the motor and the drive is limited by the maximum motor cable length. See either "Motor Connection Specifications" on page 274, or "EN 61800-3 Compliant Motor Cables" on page 277.
- The mounting site must support the drive's weight. See "Weight" on page 287.

Installing the Drive



Warning! Before installing the ACH550, ensure the input power supply to the drive is off.

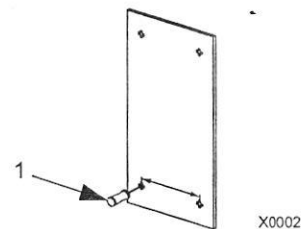


Warning! Metal shavings or debris in the enclosure can damage electrical equipment and create a hazardous condition. Where parts, such as conduit plates require cutting or drilling, first remove the part. If that is not practical, cover nearby electrical components to protect them from all shavings or debris.

Prepare the Mounting Location

The ACH550 should only be mounted where all of the requirements defined in "Preparing for Installation" on page 8 are met.

1. Mark the position of the mounting holes.



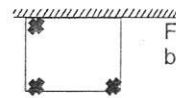
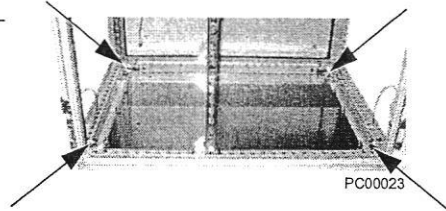
Note! Frame sizes R3 and R4 have four holes along the top. Use only two. If possible, use the two outside holes (to allow room to remove the fan for maintenance).

Note! ACH400 drives can be replaced using the original mounting holes. For R1 and R2 frame sizes, the mounting holes are identical. For R3 and R4 frame sizes, the inside mounting holes on the top of ACH550 drives match ACH400 mounts.

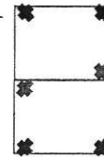
Note! Frame sizes R7 and R8 have mounting holes inside the enclosure base. See "Mounting Dimensions" on page 286.

Where it is not possible to use either mounting hole at the back of the base, use an L-bracket at the top of the enclosure to secure the cabinet to a wall or to the back of another enclosure. Bolt the L-bracket to the enclosure using the lifting lug bolt hole on the top of the enclosure.

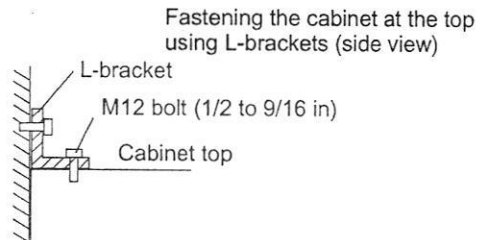
2. Drill holes of appropriate size in the mounting location.



Fastening points when installed back against a wall (Top view)



Fastening points when installed back against back

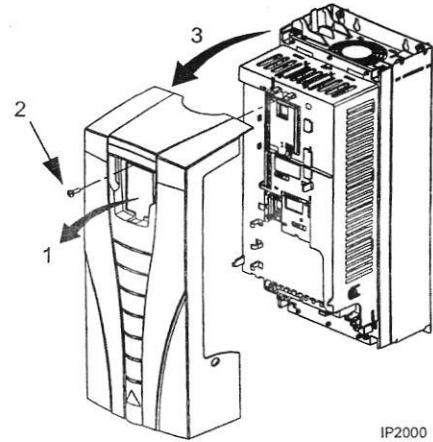


Fastening the cabinet at the top using L-brackets (side view)

Remove Front Cover

R1...R6, UL type 1

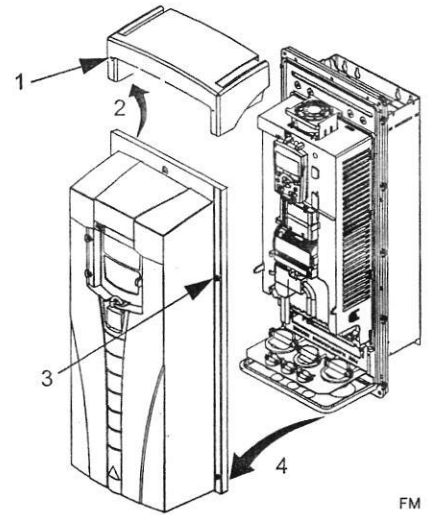
1. Remove the control panel, if attached.
2. Loosen the captive screw at the top.
3. Pull near the top to remove the cover.



IP2000

R1...R6, UL type 12

1. If hood is present: Remove screws (2) holding the hood in-place.
2. If hood is present: Slide hood up and off of the cover.
3. Loosen the captive screws around the edge of the cover.
4. Remove the cover.



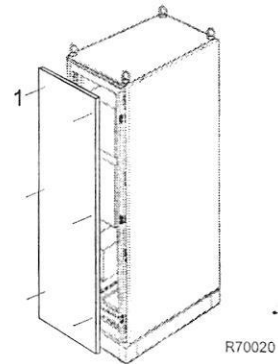
FM

R7...R8, Cabinet Door

1. To open the cabinet door, loosen the quarter-turn screws that hold the cabinet door closed.

R7...R8, Side Panels

The side panels were removed to take the cabinet off the pallet. Installation access is easier if these panels are kept off throughout the installation.



R70020

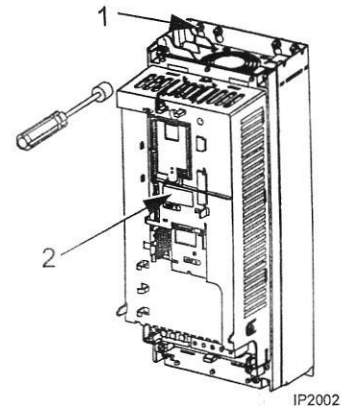
Mount the Drive

R1...R6, UL type 1

1. Position the ACH550 onto the mounting screws or bolts and securely tighten in all four corners.

Note! Lift the ACH550 by its metal chassis.

2. Non-English speaking locations: Add a warning sticker in the appropriate language over the existing warning on the top of the module.



IP2002

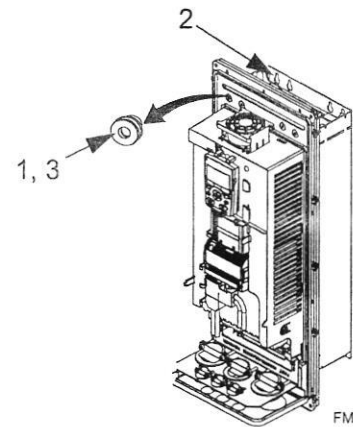
R1...R6, UL type 12

For the UL type 12 enclosures, rubber plugs are required in the holes provided for access to the drive mounting slots.

1. As required for access, remove the rubber plugs. Push plugs out from the back of the drive.
2. R5 & R6: Align the sheet metal hood (not shown) in front of the drive's top mounting holes. (Attach as part of next step.)
3. Position the ACH550 onto the mounting screws or bolts and securely tighten in all four corners.

Note! Lift the ACH550 by its metal chassis.

4. Re-install the rubber plugs.
5. Non-English speaking locations: Add a warning sticker in the appropriate language over the existing warning on the top of the module.



FM

R7...R8

1. Use a hoist to move the cabinet into position.

Note! If the cabinet location does not provide access to the cabinet sides, be sure to re-mount side panels before positioning cabinet.

2. Install and tighten mounting bolts.



PC00003

Wiring Overview

Conduit Kit

Wiring R1...R6 drives with the UL type 1 Enclosure requires a conduit kit with the following items:

- conduit box
- screws
- cover

The kit is included with UL type 1 Enclosures.

Wiring Requirements



Warning! Ensure the motor is compatible for use with the ACH550. The ACH550 must be installed by a competent person in accordance with the considerations defined in "Preparing for Installation" on page 8. If in doubt, contact your local ABB sales or service office.

As you install the wiring, observe the following:

- There are two sets of wiring instructions – one set for each enclosure type (UL type 1 and UL type 12). Be sure to select the appropriate procedure.
- For the power connection points on the drive see the "Connection Diagrams" section below.
- Use separate, metal conduit runs to keep these three classes of wiring apart:
 - Input power wiring.
 - Motor wiring.
 - Control/communications wiring.
- When installing input power and motor wiring, refer to the following, as appropriate:

Terminal	Description	Specifications and Notes
U1, V1, W1*	3-phase power supply input	"Input Power Connections" on page 266.
PE	Protective Ground	"Ground Connections" on page 270.
U2, V2, W2	Power output to motor	"Motor Connections" on page 274.

* The ACH550 -xx-xxxx-2 (208...240V series) can be used with a single phase supply, if output current is derated by 50%. For single phase supply voltage connect power at U1 and W1.

- To locate input power and motor connection terminals, see "Connection Diagrams" starting on page 17. For specifications on power terminals, see "Drive's Power Connection Terminals" on page 272.
- For frame sizes R1...R4 in unsymmetrically grounded networks, see "Unsymmetrically Grounded Networks" on page 270.
- For floating (or impedance grounded) networks, see "Floating Networks" on page 271.

- For frame size R6, see "Power Terminal Considerations – R6 Frame Size" on page 272 to install the appropriate cable lugs.
- For details on control connections, refer to the following sections:
 - "Control Connections" on page 280.
 - "Application Macros" starting on page 44.
 - "Parameter Descriptions" on page 60.
 - "Embedded Fieldbus" on page 154.
 - "Fieldbus Adapter" on page 224.
- For electro-magnetic compliance (EMC), follow local codes and the requirements in "Motor Cable Requirements for CE & C-Tick Compliance" on page 276. For example:
 - Properly ground the wire screen cable shields.
 - Keep individual un-screened wires between the cable clamps and the screw terminals as short as possible.
 - Route control cables away from power cables.

Connection Diagrams

The following diagrams show:

- The terminal layout for frame size R3, which, in general, applies to frame sizes R1...R6, except for the R5/R6 power and ground terminals.
- The R5/R6 power and ground terminals.
- The terminal layout for R7/R8.
R1...R4 (Diagram shows the R3 frame.)

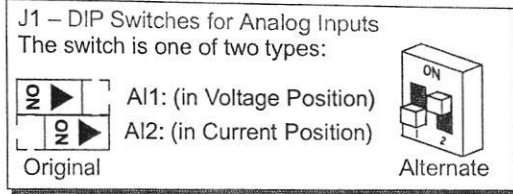
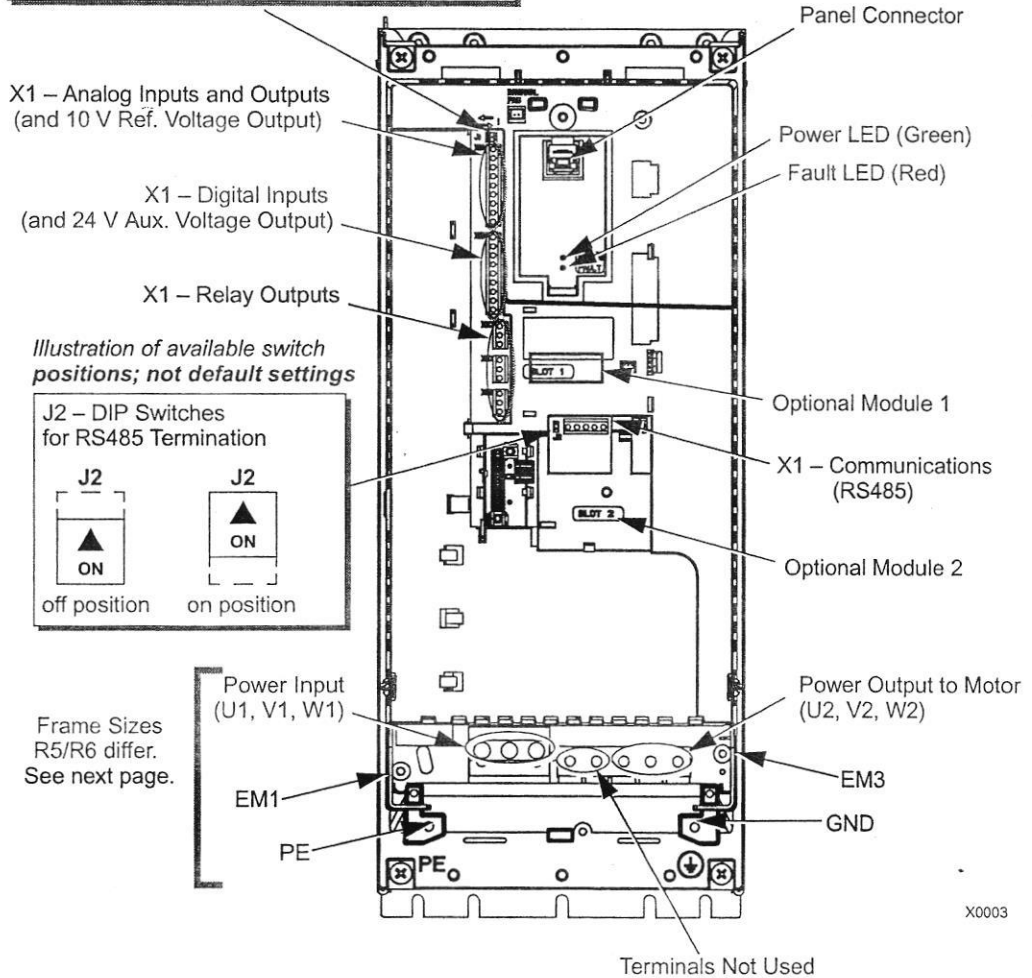


Illustration of available switch positions; not default settings



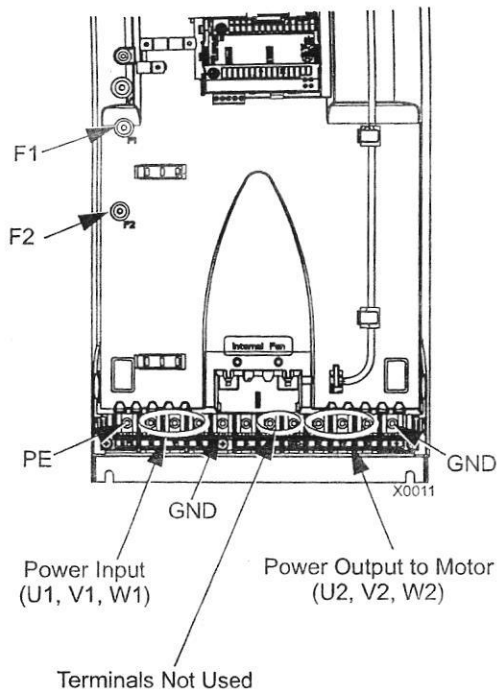
X0003



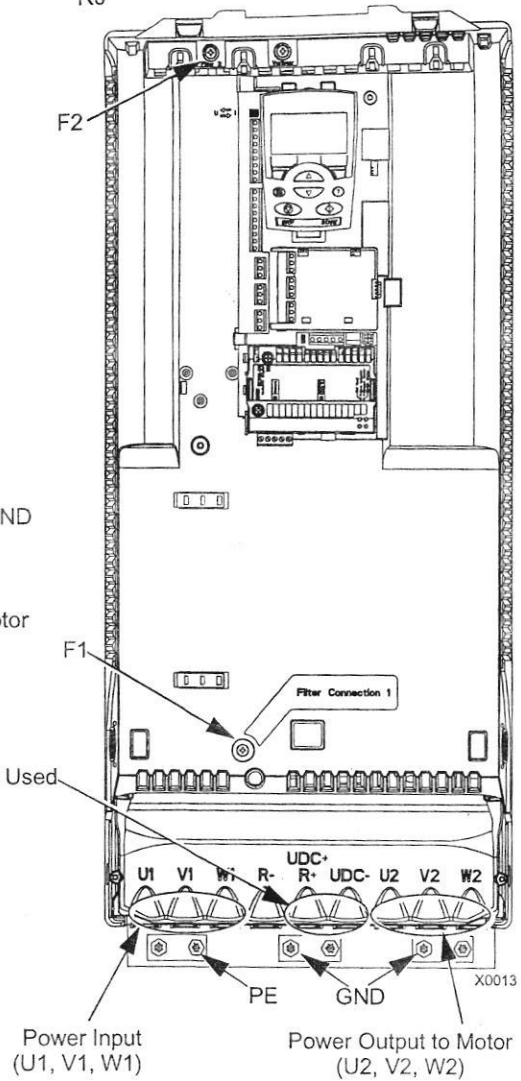
Warning! For floating, impedance grounded, or unsymmetrically grounded networks, disconnect the internal RFI filter by removing: screw EM1 (drive is shipped with EM3 already removed). See "Floating Networks" on page 271.

The following diagram shows the power and ground terminal layout for frame sizes R5 and R6

R5



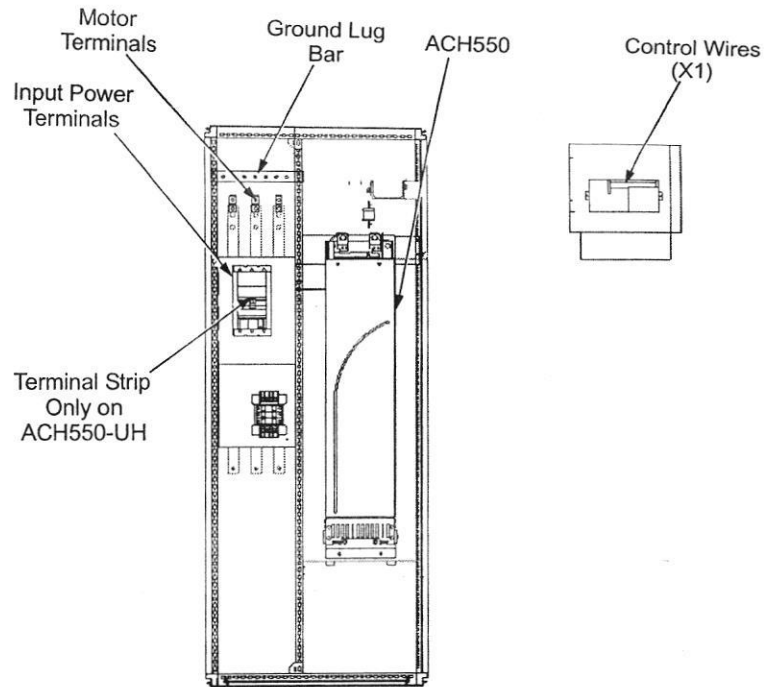
R6



Warning! For floating, impedance grounded, or unsymmetrically grounded networks, disconnect the internal RFI filter by removing screws: F1 and F2. See "Floating Networks" on page 271.

The following diagram shows the power and ground terminal layout for frame size R7 (R8 is similar).

R7



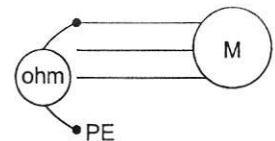
Install the Wiring

Checking Motor and Motor Cable Insulation



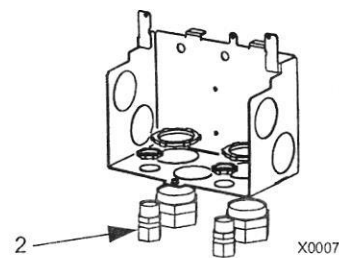
Warning! Check the motor and motor cable insulation before connecting the drive to input power. For this test, make sure that motor cables are NOT connected to the drive.

1. Complete motor cable connections to the motor, but NOT to the drive output terminals (U2, V2, W2).
2. At the drive end of the motor cable, measure the insulation resistance between each motor cable phase and Protective Earth (PE): Apply a voltage of 1 kV DC and verify that resistance is greater than 1 Mohm.

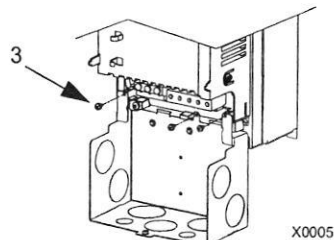


R1...R6, Wiring UL type 1 Enclosure

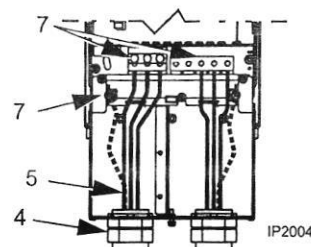
1. Open the appropriate knockouts in the conduit box. (See "Conduit Kit" above.)
2. Install thin-wall conduit clamps (not supplied).



3. Install conduit box.
4. Connect conduit runs for input power, motor and control cables to the box.

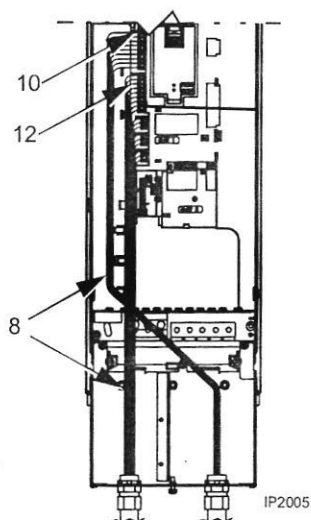


5. Route input power and motor wiring through separate conduits.
6. Strip wires.
7. Connect power, motor, and ground wires to the drive terminals. See "Wiring Requirements" on page 15.



Note! For R5 frame size, the minimum power cable size is 25 mm² (4 AWG). For R6 frame size, refer to "Power Terminal Considerations – R6 Frame Size" on page 272.

8. Route the control cables through the conduit (not the same conduit as either input power or motor wiring).
9. Strip the control cable sheathing and twist the copper screen into a pig-tail.
10. Connect the ground screen pig-tail for digital and analog I/O cables at X1-1. (Ground only at drive end.)
11. Connect the ground screen pig-tail for RS485 cables at X1-28 or X1-32. (Ground only at drive end.)
12. Strip and connect the individual control wires to the drive terminals. See "Wiring Requirements" on page 15.
13. Install the conduit box cover (1 screw).



R1...R6, Wiring UL type 12 Enclosure

1. Step depends on Frame Size:

- Frame Sizes R1...R4: Remove and discard the cable seals where conduit will be installed. (The cable seals are cone-shaped, rubber seals on the bottom of the drive.)
- Frame Sizes R4 and R5: Use punch to create holes for conduit connections as needed.

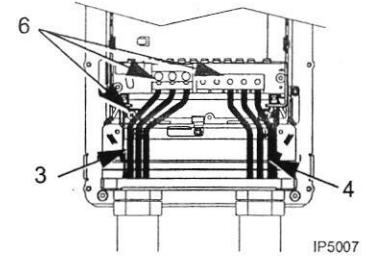
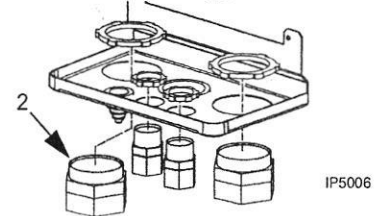
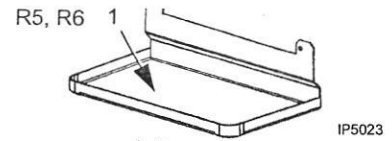
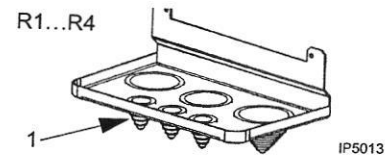
2. For each conduit run (input power, motor and control wiring must be separate), install water tight conduit connectors (not supplied).

3. Route the power wiring through conduit.

4. Route the motor wiring through conduit (not the same conduit as input power wiring run).

5. Strip the wires.

6. Connect the power, motor, and ground wires to the drive terminals. See "Wiring Requirements" on page 15, and "Connection Diagrams" on page 17.



Note! For R5 frame size, the minimum power cable size is 25 mm² (4 AWG). For R6 frame size, refer to "Power Terminal Considerations – R6 Frame Size" on page 272.

7. Route the control cables through the conduit (not the same conduit as either input power or motor wiring runs).

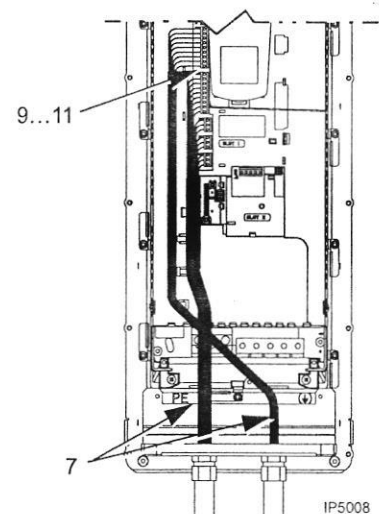
8. Strip the control cable sheathing and twist the copper screen into a pig-tail.

9. Connect the ground screen pig-tail for digital and analog I/O cables at X1-1. (Ground only at drive end.)

10. Connect the ground screen pig-tail for RS485 cables at X1-28 or X1-32. (Ground only at drive end.)

11. Strip and connect the individual control wires to the drive terminals. See "Wiring Requirements" on page 15.

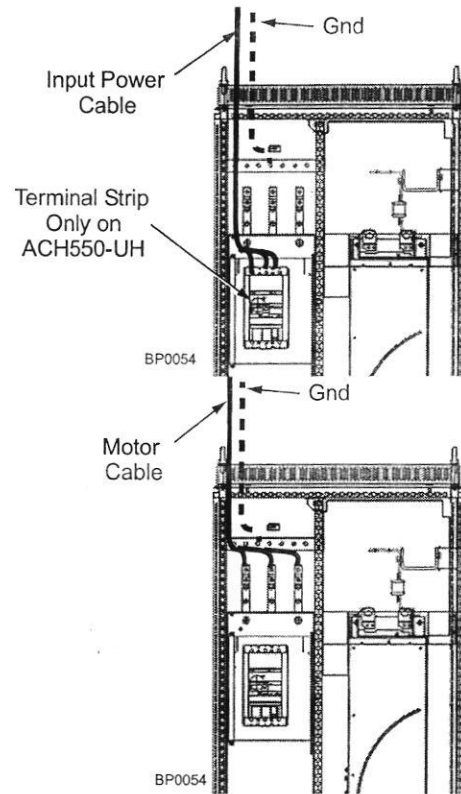
12. Install the conduit box cover (1 screw).



R7...R8, Wiring (Both Enclosure Types)

The figures show connections in the R7 cabinet, the R8 cabinet is similar.

1. Remove the conduit connection plate from the top of the left bay.
2. Route the input power, motor and control cables to the top of the cabinet. Each cable type (input power, motor, and control) must be in separate conduit.
3. Use punch to create holes for conduit connections as needed.
4. UL type 12 Enclosure: For each conduit run (input power, motor and control wiring must be separate), install water tight conduit connectors (not supplied).
5. Connect input power and motor cables to the bus terminals. See "Wiring Requirements" on page 15, and "Connection Diagrams" on page 17.
6. Connect grounds to ground bar.
7. Strip the control cable sheathing and twist the copper screen into a pig-tail.
8. Connect the ground screen pig-tail for digital and analog I/O cables at X1-1. (Ground only at drive end.)
9. Connect the ground screen pig-tail for RS485 cables at X1-28 or X1-32. (Ground only at drive end.)
10. Strip and connect the individual control wires to the drive terminals. See "Wiring Requirements" on page 15.



Check Installation

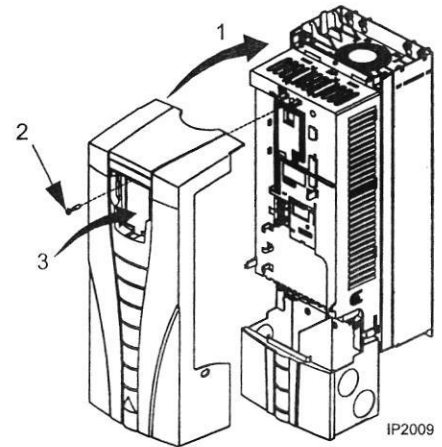
Before applying power, perform the following checks.

✓	Check
	Installation environment conforms to the drive's specifications for ambient conditions.
	The drive is mounted securely.
	Space around the drive meets the drive's specifications for cooling.
	The motor and driven equipment are ready for start.
	For floating networks (R1...R6): The internal RFI filter is disconnected (screws EM1 & EM3 or F1 & F2).
	The drive is properly grounded.
	The input power voltage matches the drive nominal input voltage range.
	The input power connections at U1, V1, and W1 are connected and tightened as specified.
	The input power branch circuit protection is installed.
	The motor connections at U2, V2, and W2 are connected and tightened as specified.
	The input power, motor and control wiring are routed through separate conduit runs.
	NO power factor compensation capacitors are in the motor cable.
	The control connections are connected and tightened as specified.
	NO tools or foreign objects (such as drill shavings) are inside the drive.
	NO alternate power source for the motor (such as a bypass connection) is connected – no voltage is applied to the output of the drive.

Re-install Cover

R1...R6, UL type 1

1. Align the cover and slide it on.
2. Tighten the captive screw.
3. Re-install the control panel.



R1...R6, UL type 12

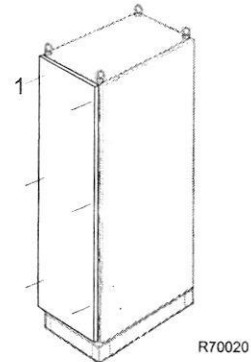
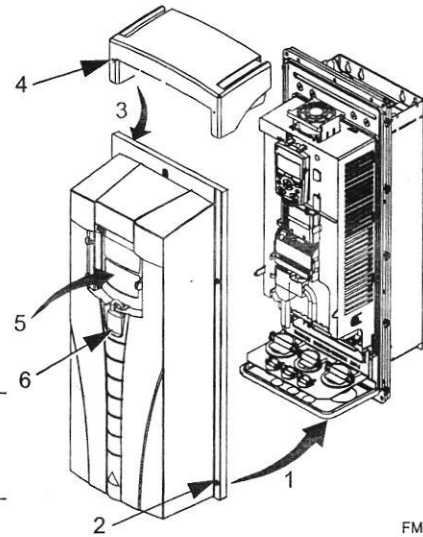
1. Align the cover and slide it on.
2. Tighten the captive screws around the edge of the cover.
3. R1...R4: Slide the hood down over the top of the cover.
4. R1...R4: Install the two screws that attach the hood.
5. Re-install the control panel.

Note! The control panel window must be closed to comply with UL type 12.

6. Optional: Add a lock (not supplied) to secure the control panel window.

R7...R8, Covers

1. If side panels were removed and not remounted, mount them now. Each panel requires 6 torx screws.
2. Re-mount all high voltage shields.
3. Close all internal swing-out panels and secure in place with the quarter-turn screws.
4. Close the cabinet door and secure in place with the quarter-turn screws.



Apply Power

Always re-install the covers before turning power on.

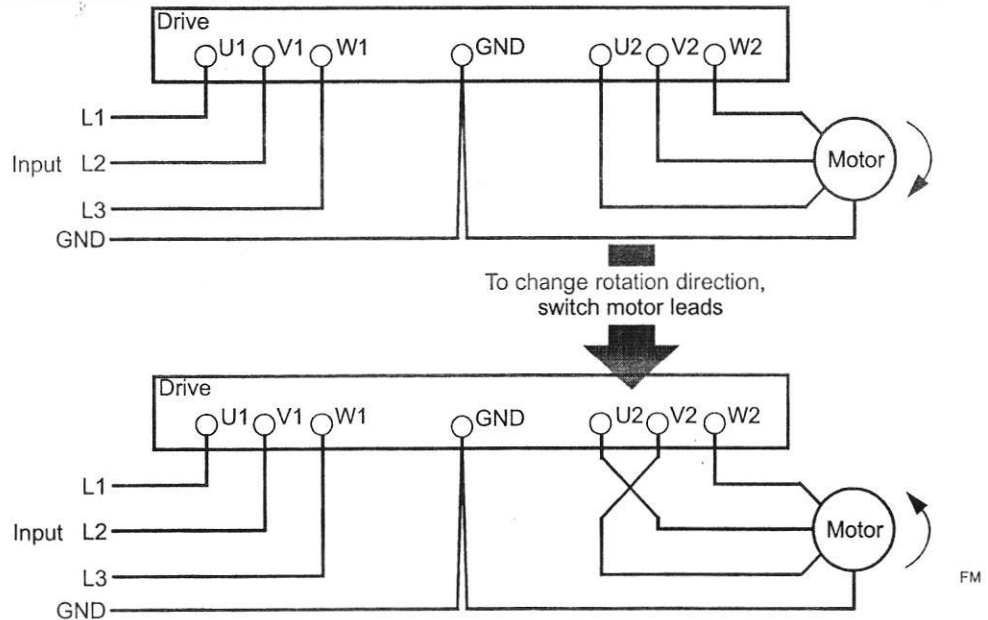


Warning! The ACH550 will start up automatically at power up, if the external run command is on.

1. Apply input power.

When power is applied to the ACH550, the green LED comes on.

Note! Before increasing motor speed, check that the motor is running in the desired direction. To change rotation direction, switch motor leads as shown below.



Start-Up

The ACH550 has default parameter settings that are sufficient for many situations. However, review the following situations. Perform the associated procedures as appropriate.

Spin Motor

When first installed and started the control panel displays a welcome screen with the following options.

- Press Exit to commission the drive as described in section "Start-Up by Changing the Parameters Individually" on page 29.
- Press Enter to move to the following options:
 - Select "Commission Drive" to commission the drive as described in section "Start-Up by Using the Start-Up Assistant" on page 29.
 - Select "Spin Motor" to operate the motor prior to commissioning. This option operates the motor without any commissioning, except entry of the motor data as described below. Spin Motor is useful, for example, to operate ventilation fans prior to commissioning.

Note! When using Spin Motor, the motor speed is limited to the range 1/3...2/3 of maximum speed. Also, no interlocks are activated. Finally, once the drive is commissioned, the welcome screen and this option no longer appear.

Motor Data

The motor data on the ratings plate may differ from the defaults in the ACH550. The drive provides more precise control and better thermal protection if you enter the rating plate data.

1. Gather the following from the motor ratings plate:
 - Voltage
 - Nominal motor current
 - Nominal frequency
 - Nominal speed
 - Nominal power
2. Edit parameters 9905...9909 to the correct values.
 - Assistant Control Panel: The Start-up Assistant walks you through this data entry (see page 34).
 - Basic Control Panel: Refer to "Parameters Mode" on page 32, for parameter editing instructions.

Macros

Note! Selecting the appropriate macro should be part of the original system design, since the control wiring installed depends on the macro used.

1. Review the macro descriptions in "Application Macros" on page 44. Use the macro that best fits system needs.
2. Edit parameter 9902 to select the appropriate macro. Use either of the following:
 - Use the Start-up Assistant, which displays the macro selection immediately after motor parameter setup.
 - Refer to "Parameters Mode" on page 32, for parameter editing instructions.

Tuning – Parameters

The system can benefit from one or more of the ACH550 special features, and/or fine tuning.

1. Review the parameter descriptions in "Parameter Descriptions" starting on page 60. Enable options and fine tune parameter values as appropriate for the system.
2. Edit parameters as appropriate.

Fault and Alarm Adjustments

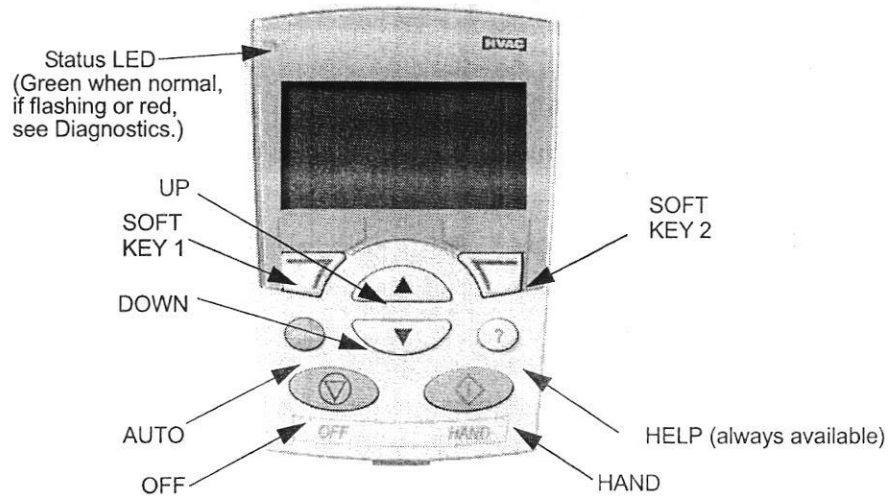
The ACH550 can detect a wide variety of potential system problems. For example, initial system operation may generate faults or alarms that indicate set-up problems.

1. Faults and alarms are reported on the control panel with a number. Note the number reported.
2. Review the description provided for the reported fault/alarm:
 - Use the fault and alarm listings on pages 245 and 251 respectively, or
 - Press the help key (Assistant Control Panel only) while fault or alarm is displayed.
3. Adjust the system or parameters as appropriate.

Start-Up

HVAC Control Panel Features

The ACH550 HVAC control panel (ACS-CP-B) features:



X0201




- Language selection for the display
- Drive connection that can be made or detached at any time
- Start-up assistant to facilitate drive commissioning
- Copy function for moving parameters to other ACH550 drives
- Backup function for saving parameter sets
- Context sensitive help
- Real-time clock

General Display Features

Soft Key Functions

The soft key functions are defined by text displayed just above each key.

Display Contrast

To adjust display contrast, simultaneously press  and  or , as appropriate.


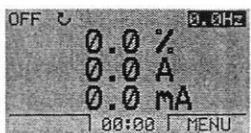




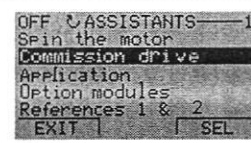


Start-Up

Start-Up can be performed in two ways:

- Using the Start-Up Assistant.
- Changing the parameters individually.

Start-Up by Using the Start-Up Assistant


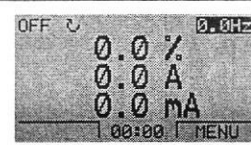





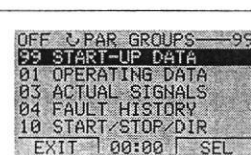
To start the Start-Up Assistant, follow these steps:




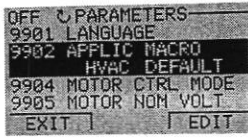


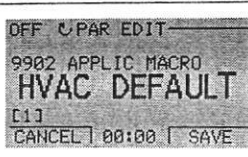

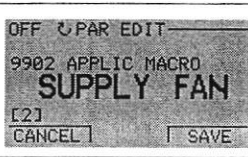


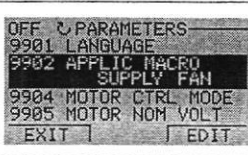
1	Select MENU to enter the main menu		
2	Select ASSISTANTS with the Up/Down buttons and select ENTER.	 	
3	Scroll to COMMISSION DRIVE with the Up/Down buttons.		
4	Change the values suggested by the assistant to your preferences and then press SAVE after every change.		

The Start-Up Assistant will guide you through the start-up.

Start-Up by Changing the Parameters Individually

To change the parameters, follow these steps:

1	Select MENU to enter the main menu.		
2	Select the Parameters mode with the UP/DOWN buttons and select ENTER to select the Parameters mode.	 	
3	Select the appropriate parameter group with the UP/DOWN buttons and select SEL	 	

4	Select the appropriate parameter in a group with the UP/DOWN buttons. Select EDIT to change the parameter value.	  	 <pre> OFF ▾ PARAMETERS 9901 LANGUAGE 9902 APPLIC MACRO HVAC DEFAULT 9904 MOTOR CTRL MODE 9905 MOTOR NOM VOLT EXIT EDIT </pre>
5	Press the UP/DOWN buttons to change the parameter value.	 	 <pre> OFF ▾ PAR EDIT 9902 APPLIC MACRO HVAC DEFAULT [1] CANCEL 00:00 SAVE </pre>
6	Select SAVE to store the modified value or select CANCEL to leave the set mode. Any modifications not saved are cancelled.		 <pre> OFF ▾ PAR EDIT 9902 APPLIC MACRO SUPPLY FAN [2] CANCEL SAVE </pre>
7	Select EXIT to return to the listing of parameter groups, and again to return to the main menu.	 	 <pre> OFF ▾ PARAMETERS 9901 LANGUAGE 9902 APPLIC MACRO SUPPLY FAN 9904 MOTOR CTRL MODE 9905 MOTOR NOM VOLT EXIT EDIT </pre>

To complete the control connections by manually entering the parameters, see "Parameters Mode" in this section.

For detailed hardware description, see the "Technical Data" section.

Note! The current parameter value appears below the highlighted parameter.

Note! To view the default parameter value, press the UP/DOWN buttons simultaneously.

Note! The most typical and necessary parameters to change are parameter groups 99 Start-up data, 10 Start/Stop/Dir, 11 Reference Select, 20 Limits, 21 Start/Stop, 22 Accel/Decel, 26 Motor Control and 30 Fault Functions.

Note! To restore the default factory settings, select the application macro HVAC default.

Modes

The HVAC control panel has several different modes for configuring, operating and diagnosing the drive. The modes are:


- **Standard display mode** – Shows drive status information and operates the drive.
- **Parameters mode** – Edits parameter values individually.
- **Start-up assistant mode** – Guides the start-up and configuration.
- **Changed parameters mode** – Shows changed parameters.
- **Fault logger mode** – Shows the drive fault history.
- **Drive parameter backup mode** – Stores or uploads the parameters.
- **Clock set mode** – Sets the time and date for the drive.
- **I/O settings mode** – Checks and edits the I/O settings.
- **Alarm mode** – Reporting mode triggered by drive alarms.

Standard Display Mode

Use the standard display mode to read information on the drive's status and to operate the drive. To reach the standard display mode, press EXIT until the LCD display shows status information as described below.

Status Information

Top. The top line of the LCD display shows the basic status information of the drive.

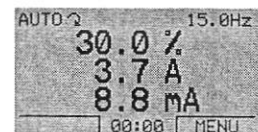
- **HAND** – Indicates that the drive control is local, that is, from the control panel.
- **AUTO** – Indicates that the drive control is remote, such as the basic I/O (X1) or fieldbus.
-  – Indicates the drive and motor rotation status as follows:

Control panel display	Significance
Rotating arrow (clockwise or counterclockwise)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Drive is running and at setpoint • Shaft direction is forward or reverse
Rotating dotted arrow blinking	Drive is running but not at setpoint
Stationary dotted arrow	Start command is present, but motor is not running. E.g. start enable is missing.

- **Upper right** – shows the active reference.

Middle. Using parameter group 34, the middle of the LCD display can be configured to display:

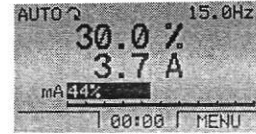
- **One to three parameter values** – The default display shows parameters 0103 (OUTPUT FREQ) in percentages, 0104 (CURRENT) in amperes and 0120 (AI1) in milliamperes.



- Use parameters 3401, 3408, and 3415 to select the parameters (from Group 01) to display. Entering “parameter” 0100 results in no parameter displayed. For example, if 3401 = 0100 and 3415 = 0100, then only the parameter

specified by 3408 appears in the Control Panel display.

- You can also scale each parameter in the display, for example, to convert the motor speed to a display of conveyor speed. Parameters 3402...3405 scale the parameter specified by 3401, parameters 3409...3412 scale the parameter specified by 3408, etc.
- A bar meter rather than one of the parameter values.
 - Enable bar graph displays using parameters 3404, 3411 and 3418.



Bottom. The bottom of the LCD display shows:

- Lower corners – show the functions currently assigned to the two soft keys.
- Lower middle – displays the current time (if configured to show the time).

Operating the Drive

AUTO/HAND – The very first time the drive is powered up, it is in the auto control (AUTO) mode, and is controlled from the Control terminal block X1.

To switch to hand control (HAND) and control the drive using the control panel, press and hold the  or  button.

- Pressing the HAND button switches the drive to hand control while keeping the drive running.
- Pressing the OFF button switches to hand control and stops the drive.

To switch back to auto control (AUTO), press and hold the  button.

Hand/Auto/Off – To start the drive press the HAND or AUTO buttons, to stop the drive press the OFF button.


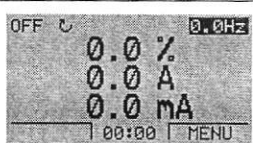
Reference – To modify the reference (only possible if the display in the upper right corner is in reverse video) press the UP or DOWN buttons (the reference changes immediately).












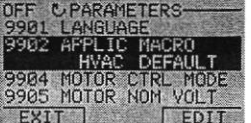


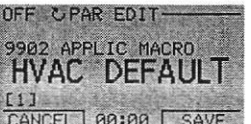

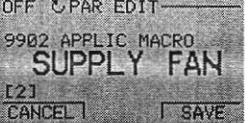



The reference can be modified in the local control mode, and can be parameterized (using Group 11 reference select) to also allow modification in the remote control mode.

Note! The Start/Stop, Shaft direction and Reference functions are only valid in local control (LOC) mode.

Parameters Mode

To change the parameters, follow these steps:

1	Select MENU to enter the main menu.		
---	-------------------------------------	--	---

2	Select the Parameters mode with the UP/DOWN buttons, and select ENTER to select the Parameters mode.	  	
3	Select the appropriate parameter group with the UP/DOWN buttons and select SEL	  	
4	Select the appropriate parameter in a group with the UP/DOWN buttons. Select EDIT to change the parameter.	  	
5	Press the UP/DOWN buttons to change the parameter value.	 	
6	Select SAVE to store the modified value or select CANCEL to leave the set mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Any modifications not saved are cancelled. Each individual parameter setting is valid immediately after pressing SAVE. 		
7	Select EXIT to return to the listing of parameter groups, and again to return to the main menu.	 	

To complete the control connections by manually entering the parameters, see "Parameters Mode" in the this section.

For detailed hardware description, see the Appendix.

Note! The current parameter value appears below the highlighted parameter.


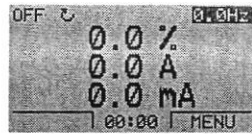



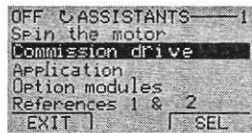

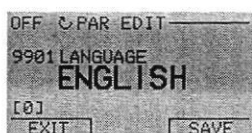
Note! To view the default parameter value, press the UP/DOWN buttons simultaneously.

Note! The most typical and necessary parameters to change are parameter groups 99 Start-up data, 10 Start/Stop/Dir, 11 Reference Select, 20 Limits, 21 Start/Stop, 22 Accel/Decel, 26 Motor Control and 30 Fault Functions.

Note! To restore the default factory settings, select the application macro HVAC default.

Start-Up Assistant Mode

To start the Start-Up Assistant, follow these steps:

1	Select MENU to enter the main menu		
2	Select ASSISTANTS with the Up/Down buttons and select ENTER.		
3	Scroll to COMMISSION DRIVE with the Up/Down buttons and select SEL.		
4	Change the values suggested by the assistant to your preferences and then press SAVE after every change.		

The Start-Up Assistant will guide you through the start-up.

The Start-Up Assistant guides you through the basic programming of a new drive. (You should familiarize yourself with basic control panel operation and follow the steps outlined above.) At the first start, the drive automatically suggests entering the first task, Language Select. The assistant also checks the values entered to prevent entries that are out of range.

The Start-Up Assistant is divided into tasks. You may activate the tasks one after the other, as the Start-Up Assistant suggests, or independently.

Note! If you want to set the parameters independently, use the Parameters mode.


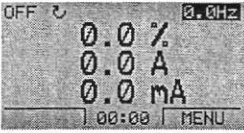




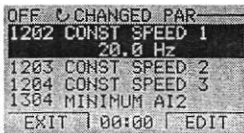
The order of tasks presented by the Start-up Assistant depends on your entries. The following task list is typical.

Task name	Description
Spin the motor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Prompts for control panel display language selection. Prompts for motor data. Guides user through rotation check.
Commission drive	Prompts for motor data.
Application	Prompts for application macro selection.

Task name	Description
References 1 & 2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Prompts for the source of speed references 1 and 2. Prompts for reference limits. Prompts for frequency (or speed) limits.
Start/Stop Control	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Prompts for the source for start and stop commands. Prompts for start and stop mode definition. Prompts for acceleration and deceleration times.
Protections	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Prompts for current and torque limits. Prompts for the use of Run enable and Start enable signals. Prompts for the use of emergency stop. Prompts for Fault function selection. Prompts for Auto reset functions selection.
Constant Speeds	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Prompts for the use of constant speeds. Prompts for constant speed values.
PID Control	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Prompts for PID settings. Prompts for the source of process reference. Prompts for reference limits. Prompts for source, limits and units for the process actual value. Defines the use of Sleep function.
Low Noise Setup	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Prompts for switching frequency. Prompts for definition of Flux optimization. Prompts for the use of Critical speeds.
Panel Display	Prompts for display variable and unit settings.
Timed Functions	Prompts for the use of Timed functions.
Output	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Prompts for the signals indicated through the relay outputs. Prompts for signals indicated through the analog outputs AO1 and AO2. Sets the minimum, maximum, scaling and inversion values.

Changed Parameters Mode

To view (and edit) a listing of all parameters that have been changed from macro default values, follow these steps:

1	Select MENU to enter the menu.		
2	Select CHANGED PAR with the UP/DOWN buttons and select ENTER.	 	
3	A list of changed parameters is displayed. Select EXIT to exit the parameters mode.		

Fault Logger Mode

Use the Fault Logger Mode to see drive fault history, fault state details and help for the faults.

1. Select FAULT LOGGER in the Main Menu.
2. Press ENTER to see the latest faults (up to 10 faults, maximum).
3. Press DETAIL to see details for the selected fault.
 - Details are available for the three latest faults.
4. Press DIAG to see the help description for the fault. See "Diagnostics" section.

Note! If a power off occurs, only the three latest faults will remain (with details only in the first fault).

Drive Parameter Backup Mode


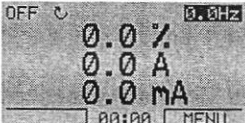


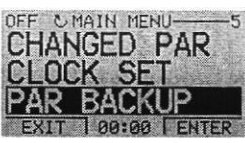


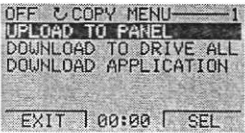
Use the parameter backup mode to export parameters from one drive to another. The parameters are uploaded from a drive to the control panel and downloaded from the control panel to another drive. Two options are available:


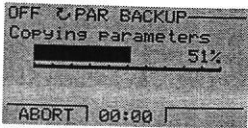

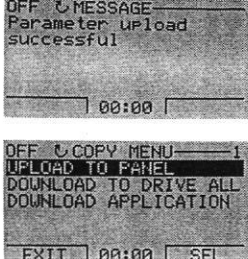
Par Backup Mode

The Assistant Control Panel can store a full set of drive parameters.

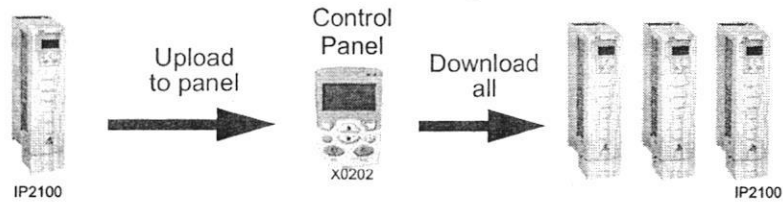
The Par Backup mode has these functions:

- **Upload to Panel** – Copies all parameters from the drive to the Control Panel. This includes user sets of parameters (if defined) and internal parameters such as those created by the Motor Id Run. The Control Panel memory is non-volatile and does not depend on the panel's battery. To upload parameters to control panel, follow these steps:


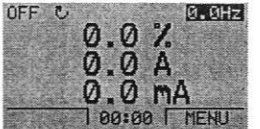




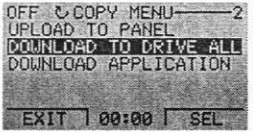

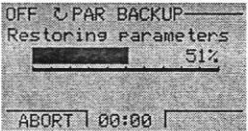
1	Select MENU to enter the main menu.		
2	Select PAR BACKUP with the UP/DOWN buttons and select ENTER.	 	
3	Scroll to Upload to Panel and select SEL.	 	


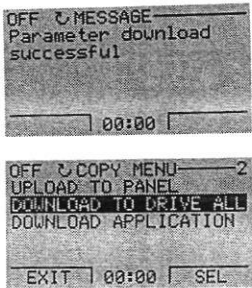
4	The text "Copying parameters" and a progress diagram is displayed. Select ABORT if you want to stop the process.		
5	The text "Parameter upload successful" is displayed and the control panel returns to the PAR BACKUP menu. Select EXIT to return to the main menu. Now you can disconnect the panel.		

- **Download Full Set** – Restores the full parameter set from the Control Panel to the drive. Use this option to restore a drive, or to configure identical drives. This download does not include user sets of parameters.



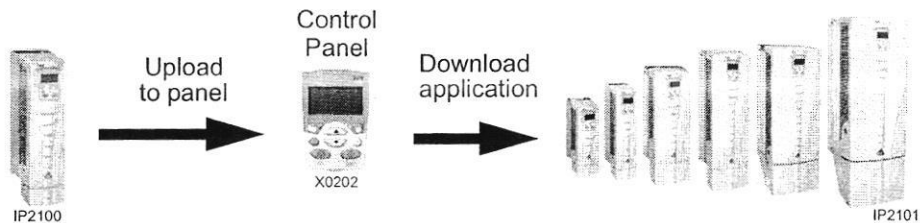
To download all parameters to drive, follow these steps:

1	Select MENU to enter the menu.		
2	Select PAR BACKUP with the UP/DOWN buttons.		
3	Scroll to Download to drive all and select SEL.	 	
4	The text "restoring parameters" is displayed. Select ABORT if you want to stop the process.		


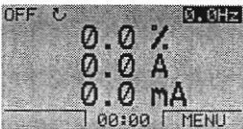



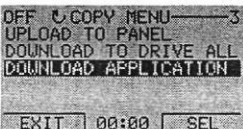

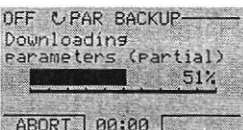
5	After the download stops, the message "Parameter download successful" is displayed and the control panel goes back to PAR BACKUP menu. Select EXIT to return to the main menu.		
---	--	--	---


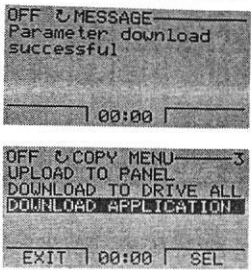
Note! Download Full Set writes all parameters to the drive, including motor parameters. Only use this function to restore a drive, or to transfer parameters to systems that are identical to the original system.

- **Download Application** – Copies a partial parameter set from the Control Panel to a drive. The partial set does not include internal motor parameters, parameters 9905...9909, 1605, 1607, 5201, nor any Group 51 and 53 parameters. Use this option to transfer parameters to systems that use similar configurations – the drive and motor sizes do not need to be the same.



To download application to drive, follow these steps:

1	Select MENU to enter the menu.		
2	Select PAR BACKUP with the UP/DOWN buttons.		
3	Scroll to DOWNLOAD APPLICATION and select SEL.		
4	The text "Downloading parameters (partial)" is displayed. Select ABORT if you want to stop the process.		

5	<p>The text "Parameter download successful" is displayed and the control panel returns to PAR BACKUP menu. Select EXIT to return to the main menu.</p>		
---	--	---	---

- **Download User Set 1** - Copies USER S1 parameters (user sets are saved using parameter 9902 APLIC MACRO) from the Control Panel to the drive.
- **Download User Set 2** - Copies USER S2 parameters from the Control Panel to the drive.


Handling Inexact Downloads

In some situations, an exact copy of the download is not appropriate for the target drive. Some examples:

- A download to an old drive specifies parameters/values that are not available on the old drive.
- A download (from an old drive) to a new drive does not have definitions for the new parameters – parameters that did not originally exist.
- A download can include an illegal value for the target drive, e.g. a backup from a small drive can have a switching frequency of 12 kHz whereas a big drive can only handle 8k Hz.


As a default, the control panel handles these situations by:

- Discarding parameters/values not available on the target drive.
- Using parameter default values when the download provides no values or invalid values.
- Providing a Differences List – A listing of the type and number of items that the target cannot accept exactly as specified.

LOC  DIFFERENCES ----	
VALUES UNDER MIN	3
VALUES OVER MAX	2
INVALID VALUES	1
EXTRA PARS	5
MISSING VALUES	7
READY	SEL

You can either accept the default edits by pressing READY, or view and edit each item as follows:

1. Highlight an item type in the Differences List (left screen below) and press SEL to see the details for the selected type (right screen below).

LOC  DIFFERENCES ----	
VALUES UNDER MIN	3
VALUES OVER MAX	2
INVALID VALUES	1
EXTRA PARS	5
MISSING VALUES	7
READY	SEL



LOC  INVALID VAL	
9902 APLIC MACRO	
2606*SWITCHING FREQ	
12 kHz	
8 kHz	
3401*DISP 1 SEL	
EXIT	EDIT

In the above-right "details" screen:

- The first item that requires editing is automatically highlighted and includes details: In general, the first item listed in the details is the value defined by the backup file. The second item listed is the "default edit."
 - For tracking purposes, an asterisk initially appears by each item. As edits are made, the asterisks disappear.
2. In the illustrated example, the backup specifies a switching frequency of 12 kHz, but the target drive is limited to 8 kHz.
 3. Press EDIT to edit the parameter. The display is the target drive's standard edit screen for the selected parameter.
 4. Highlight the desired value for the target drive.
 5. Press SAVE to save setting.
 6. Press EXIT to step back to the differences view and continue for each remaining exception.
 7. When your editing is complete, press READY in the Differences List and then select "Yes, save parameters."

Download Failures

In some situations, the drive may be unable to accept a download. In those cases, the control panel display is: "Parameter download failed" plus one of the following causes:


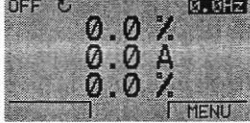





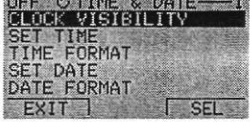


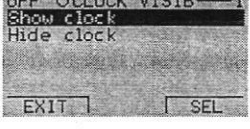


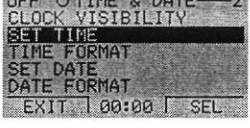


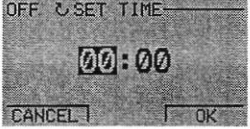


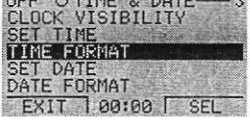


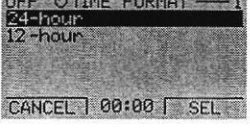


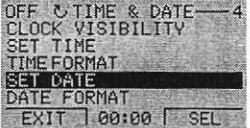
- Set not found – You are attempting to download a data set that was not defined in the backup. The remedy is to manually define the set, or upload the set from a drive that has the desired set definitions.
- Par lock – The remedy is to unlock the parameter set (parameter 1602).
- Incompat drive/model – The remedy is to perform backups only between drives of the same type (ACS/industrial or ACH/HVAC) and the same model (all ACH550).
- Too many differences – The remedy is to manually define a new set, or upload the set from a drive that more closely resembles the target drive.




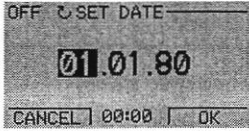







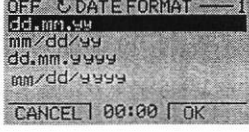

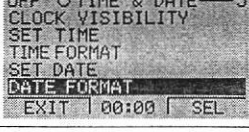
Note! If upload or download of parameters is aborted, the partial parameter set is not implemented.

Clock Set Mode

The clock set mode is used for setting the time and date for the internal clock of the ACH550. In order to use the timer functions of the ACH550, the internal clock has to be set first. Date is used to determine weekdays and is visible in Fault logs.


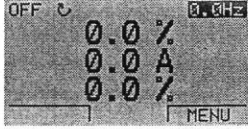





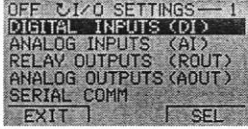


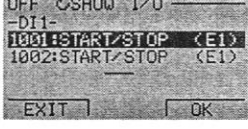



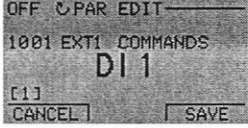

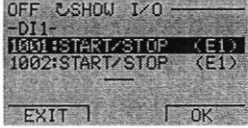
To set the clock, follow these steps:

1	Select MENU to enter the main menu.		
2	Scroll to Clock Set with the UP/DOWN buttons and select ENTER to enter the Clock Set mode.	 	
3	Scroll to Clock Visibility with the UP/DOWN buttons and select SEL to change the visibility of the clock.	 	
4	Scroll to Show Clock with the UP/DOWN buttons and select SEL to make the clock visible.	 	
5	Scroll to Set Time with the UP/DOWN buttons and select SEL.	 	
6	Change the hours and minutes with the UP/DOWN buttons and select OK to save the values. The active value is displayed in inverted color.	 	
7	Scroll to Time Format with the UP/DOWN buttons and select SEL.	 	
8	The different formats are displayed. Select a format with the UP/DOWN buttons and select SEL to confirm the selection.	 	
9	Scroll to Set Date with the UP/DOWN buttons and select SEL.	 	

10	Change the days, months and year with the UP/DOWN buttons and select OK to save the values. The active value is displayed in inverted color.	  	
11	Scroll to Date Format with the UP/DOWN buttons and select SEL.	  	
12	The Date formats are displayed. Select a date format with the UP/DOWN buttons and select OK to confirm the selection.	  	
13	Select EXIT twice to return to the main menu.		

I/O Settings Mode

To view and edit the I/O settings, follow these steps:

1	Select MENU to enter the main menu.		
2	Scroll to I/O Settings with the UP/DOWN buttons and select ENTER.	 	
3	Scroll to the I/O setting you want to view with the UP/DOWN buttons and select SEL.	 	
4	Select the setting you want to view with the UP/DOWN buttons and select OK.	 	
5	You can change the value with the UP/DOWN buttons and save it by selecting SAVE. If you do not want to change the setting, select CANCEL.	  	
6	Select EXIT to return to the main menu.		

Application Macros

Overview

Macros change a group of parameters to new, predefined values designed for specific applications. Use macros to minimize the need for manual editing of parameters. Selecting a macro sets all other parameters to their default values, except:

- Group 99: Start-up Data parameters
- The PARAMETER LOCK 1602
- The PARAM SAVE 1607
- The COMM FAULT FUNC 3018 and COMM FAULT TIME 3019
- The COMM PROT SEL 9802
- Groups 50...53 serial communication parameters
- Group 29: Maintenance triggers

After selecting a macro, additional parameter changes can be made manually using the control panel.

Application macros are enabled by setting the value for parameter 9902 APPLIC MACRO. By default, HVAC default (value 1) is the enabled macro.

General Considerations

The following considerations apply for all macros:

- When using a direct speed reference in AUTO mode, connect the speed reference to analog input 1 (AI1), and provide the START command using digital input 1 (DI1). In HAND/OFF mode, the control panel provides the speed reference and START command.
- When using process PID, connect the feedback signal to analog input 2 (AI2). As a default, the control panel sets the Setpoint, but analog input 1 can be used as an alternate source. You can set up process PID using parameters (Group 40) or using the PID control assistant (recommended).


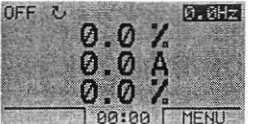







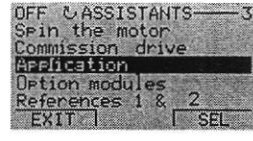



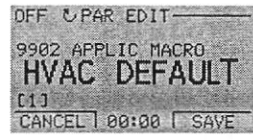
Application / Macro Listing

This section describes the following macros:

9902 Value	Macro	9902 Value	Macro
1	HVAC default	8	Internal timer
2	Supply fan	9	Internal timer with constant speeds
3	Return fan	10	Floating point
4	Cooling tower fan	11	Dual setpoint PID
5	Condenser	12	Dual setpoint PID with constant speeds
6	Booster pump	13	E-bypass
7	Pump alternation	14	Hand Control

Selecting an Application Macro

To select a macro, follow these steps:

1	Select MENU to enter the main menu.		
2	Select ASSISTANTS with the Up/Down buttons and select ENTER.	  	
3	Scroll to APPLICATION and select ENTER.	  	
4	Select a macro with the Up/Down buttons and select SAVE.	  	

Restoring Defaults

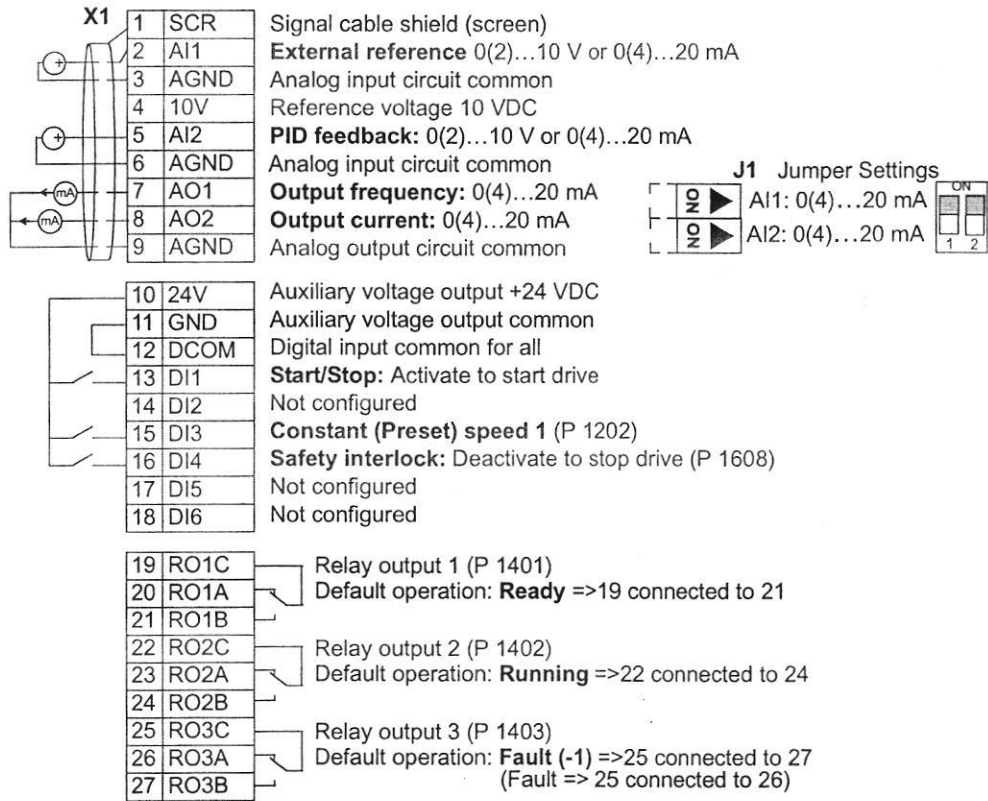
To restore the factory default settings, select the application macro HVAC Default.

Control Wiring

Each macro has specific requirements for control wiring. For general details about the ACH550 control wiring terminals, see "Control Terminal Descriptions" on page 281. Specific wiring requirements are included with each macro description.

HVAC Default

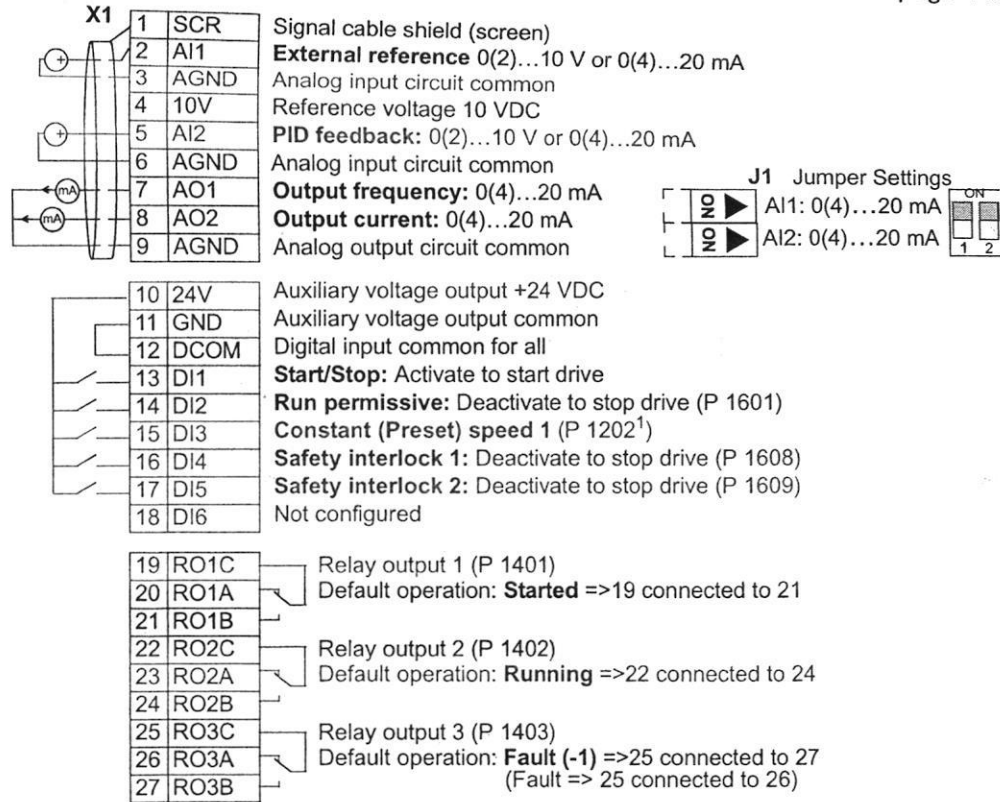
This macro provides the factory default parameter settings for the ACH550-UH. Factory defaults can be restored at any time by setting parameter 9902 to 1. The diagram below shows typical wiring using this macro. When using direct speed reference in AUTO mode or process PID, see "General Considerations" on page 44.



Parameters Changed Relative to HVAC Default			
Parameter	Value	Parameter	Value
None (Default macro)			

Supply Fan

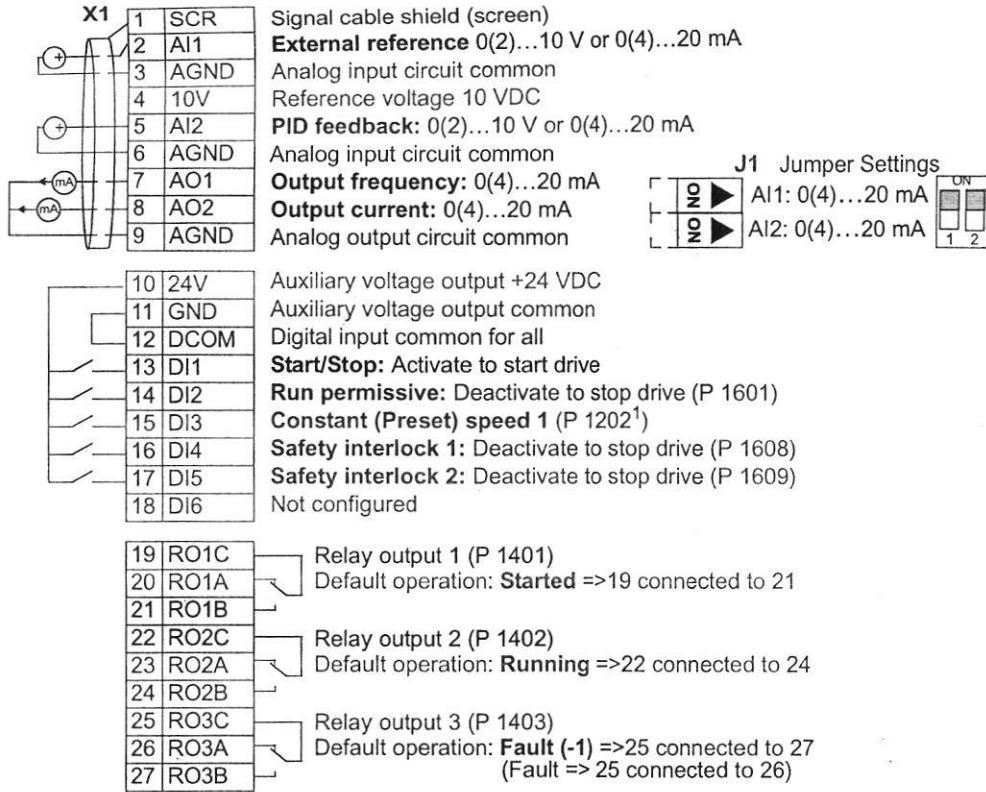
This macro configures for supply fan applications where the supply fan brings fresh air in according to signals received from a transducer. When using direct speed reference in AUTO mode or process PID, see "General Considerations" on page 44.



Parameters Changed Relative to HVAC Default			
Parameter	Value	Parameter	Value
9902 APPLIC MACRO	2 (SUPPLYFAN)	3207 SUPERV 3 PARAM	0103 (OUTPUT FREQ)
1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1	7 (STARTED)	4001 GAIN	0.7
1601 RUN ENABLE	2 (DI2)	4002 INTEGRATION TIME	10.0 s
1609 START ENABLE 2	5 (DI5)	4101 GAIN	1.0
2202 ACCELER TIME 1	15.0 s	4102 INTEGRATION TIME	60.0 s
2203 DECELER TIME 1	15.0 s		

Return Fan

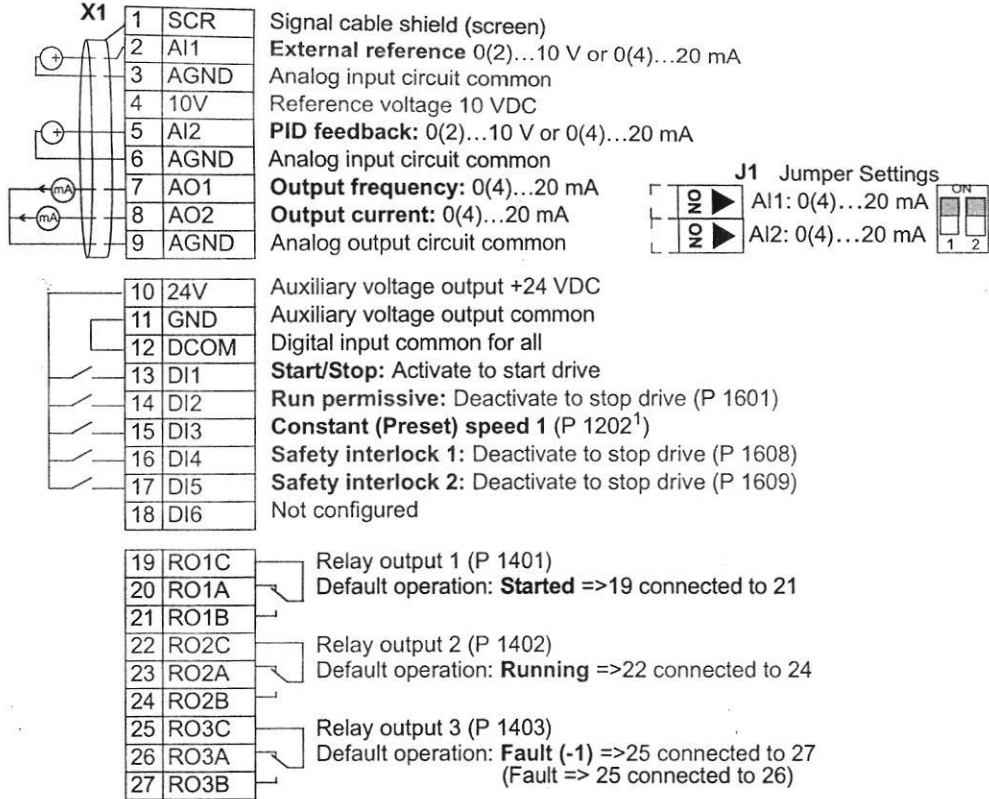
This macro configures for return fan applications where the return fan removes air according to signals received from a transducer. When using direct speed reference in AUTO mode or process PID, see "General Considerations" on page 44.



Parameters Changed Relative to HVAC Default					
Parameter	Value	Parameter	Value		
9902	APPLIC MACRO	3 (RETURNFAN)	3207	SUPERV 3 PARAM	0103 (OUTPUT FREQ)
1401	RELAY OUTPUT 1	7 (STARTED)	4001	GAIN	0.7
1601	RUN ENABLE	2 (DI2)	4002	INTEGRATION TIME	10.0 s
1609	START ENABLE 2	5 (DI5)	4101	GAIN	1.0
2202	ACCELER TIME 1	15.0 s	4102	INTEGRATION TIME	60.0 s
2203	DECELER TIME 1	15.0 s			

Cooling Tower Fan

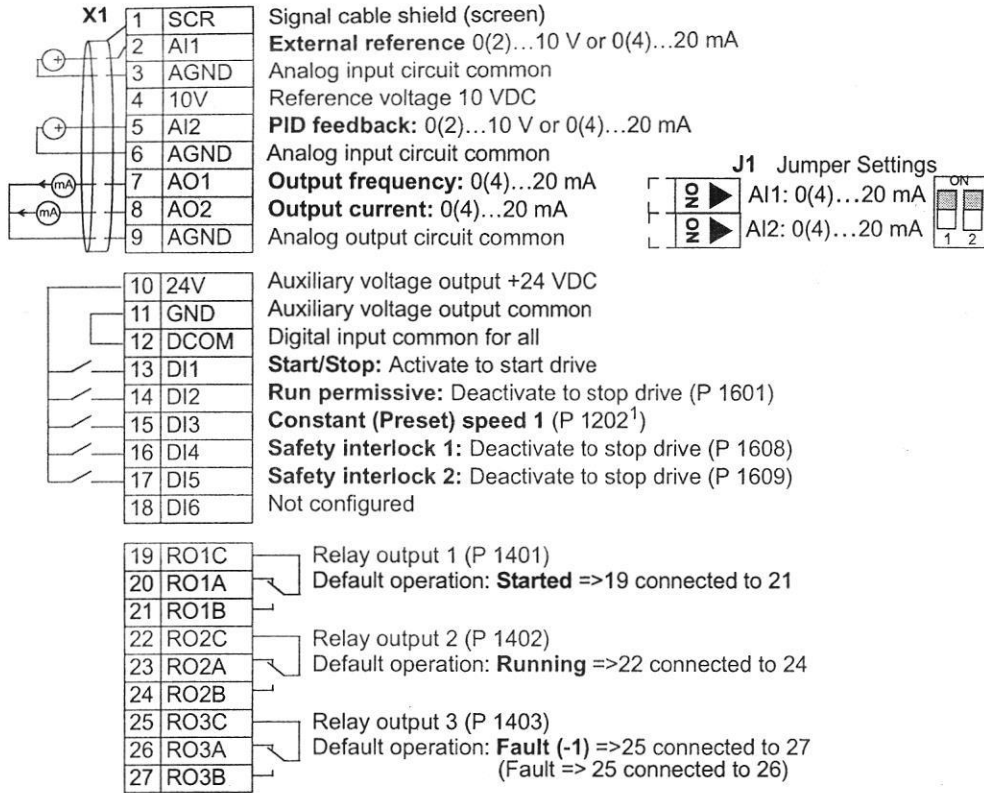
This macro configures for cooling tower fan applications where the fan speed is controlled according to the signals received from a transducer. When using direct speed reference in AUTO mode or process PID, see "General Considerations" on page 44.



Parameters Changed Relative to HVAC Default				
Parameter	Value	Parameter	Value	
9902	APPLIC MACRO	4 (CLNGTWRFAN)	3207 SUPERV 3 PARAM	0103 (OUTPUT FREQ)
1401	RELAY OUTPUT 1	7 (STARTED)	4101 GAIN	1.0
1601	RUN ENABLE	2 (DI2)	4102 INTEGRATION TIME	60.0 s
1609	START ENABLE 2	5 (DI5)		

Condenser

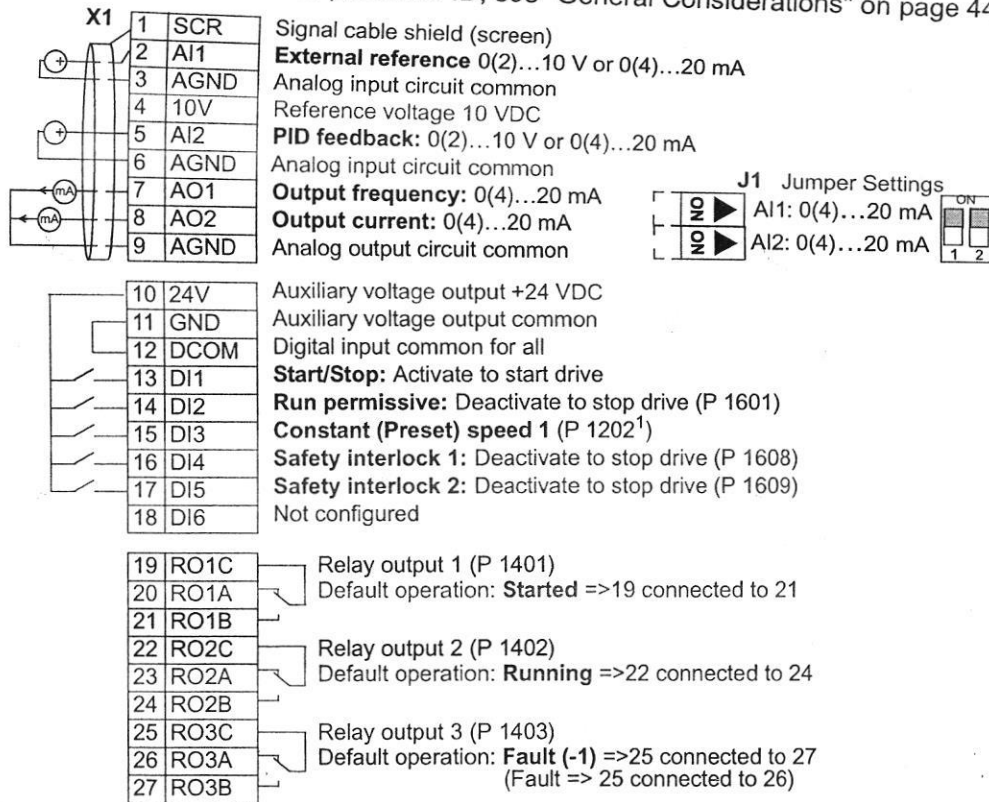
This macro configures for condenser and liquid cooler applications where fan speed is controlled according to signals received from a transducer. When using direct speed reference in AUTO mode or process PID, see "General Considerations" on page 44.



Parameters Changed Relative to HVAC Default					
Parameter	Value	Parameter	Value		
9902	APPLIC MACRO	5 (CONDENSER)	2203	DECELER TIME 1	10.0 s
1401	RELAY OUTPUT 1	7 (STARTED)	3207	SUPERV 3 PARAM	0103 (OUTPUT FREQ)
1601	RUN ENABLE	2 (DI2)	4005	ERROR VALUE INV	1 (YES)
1609	START ENABLE 2	5 (DI5)	4101	GAIN	1.0
2202	ACCELER TIME 1	10.0 s	4102	INTEGRATION TIME	60.0 s

Booster Pump

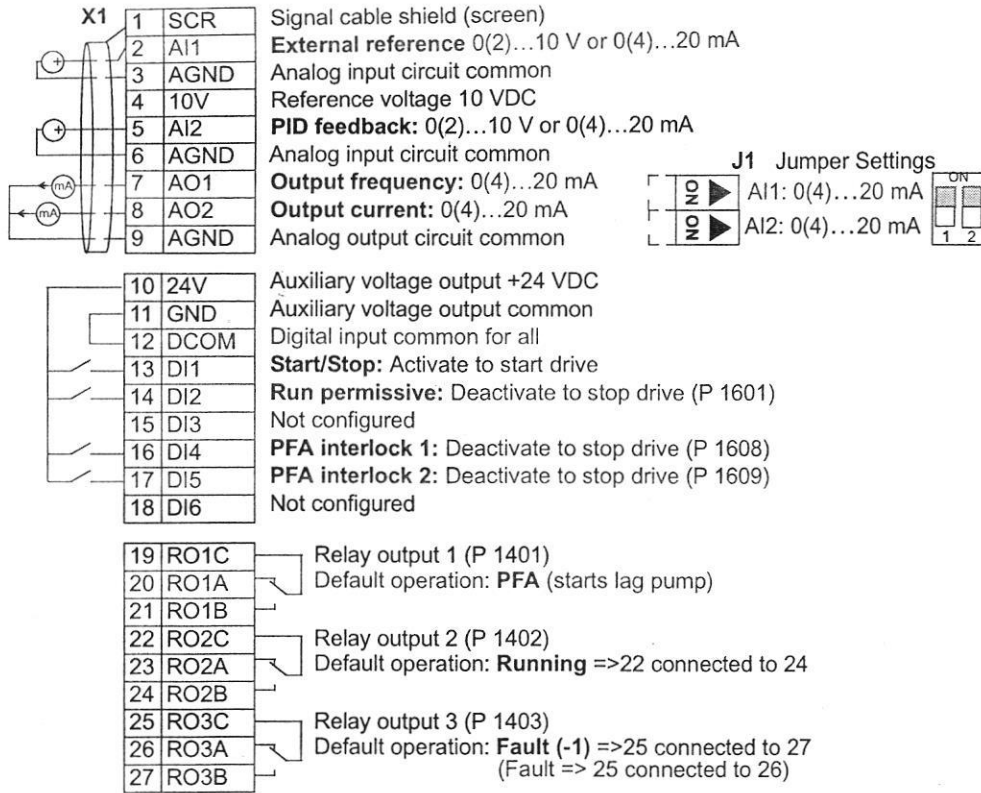
This macro configures for booster pump applications where the pump speed is controlled according to a signal received from a transducer. When using direct speed reference in AUTO mode or process PID, see "General Considerations" on page 44.



Parameters Changed Relative to HVAC Default					
Parameter	Value	Parameter	Value		
9902	APPLIC MACRO	6 (BOOSTERPUMP)	2203	DECELER TIME 1	5.0 s
1401	RELAY OUTPUT 1	7 (STARTED)	3207	SUPERV 3 PARAM	0103 (OUTPUT FREQ)
1601	RUN ENABLE	2 (DI2)	4001	GAIN	1.0
1609	START ENABLE 2	5 (DI5)	4002	INTEGRATION TIME	60.0 s
2202	ACCELER TIME 1	5.0 s			

Pump Alternation

This macro configures for pump alternation applications, usually used in booster stations. To adjust/maintain pressure in the network, the speed of the one pump changes according to a signal received from a pressure transducer. When the variable speed pump reaches a maximum speed limit, auxiliary pumps start as needed. When using process PID, see "General Considerations" on page 44. To use more than one (the default) Auxiliary pump, see parameter group 81.

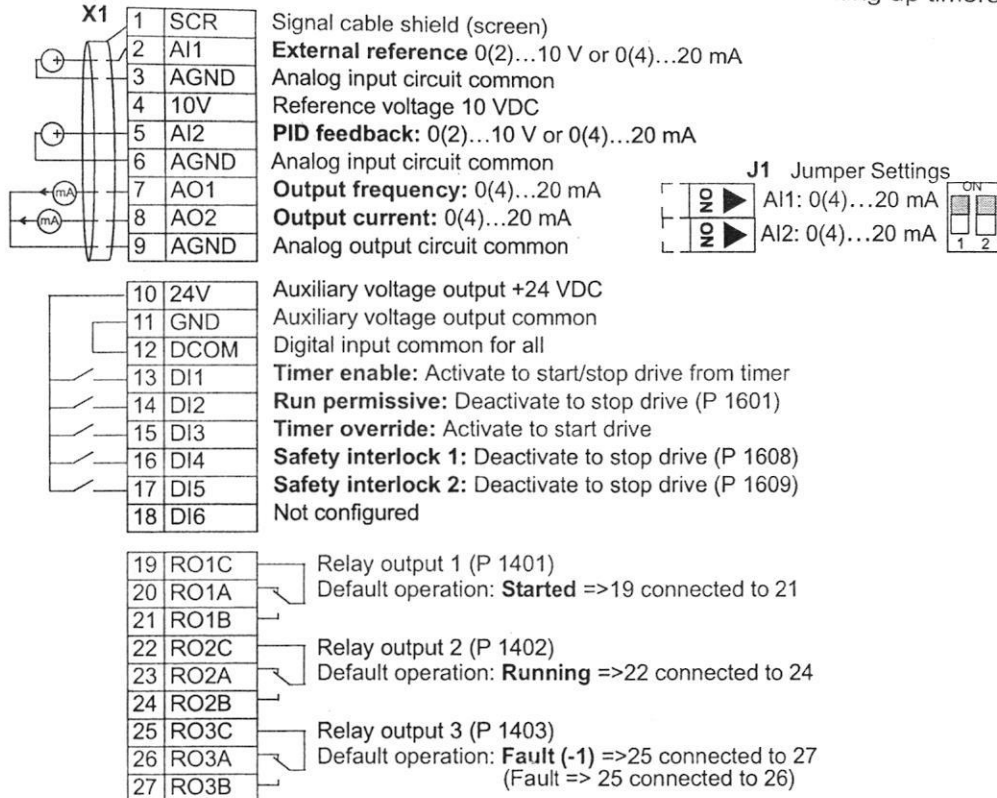


Parameters Changed Relative to HVAC Default				
Parameter	Value	Parameter	Value	
9902	APPLIC MACRO	7 (PUMPALTERN)		
1105	REF1 MAX	62Hz/1860rpm		
1201	CONST SPEED SEL	0 (NOT SEL)		
1401	RELAY OUTPUT 1	31 (PFA)		
1503	AO1 CONTENT MAX	62HZ		
1508	AO2 CONTENT MIN	0.0%		
1509	AO2 CONTENT MAX	100.0%		
1601	RUN ENABLE	2 (DI2)		
1608	START ENABLE 1	0 (NOT SEL)		
		1609	START ENABLE 2	5 (DI5)
		2208	EM DEC TIME	62HZ
		2202	ACCELER TIME 1	5.0 s
		2203	DECELER TIME 1	5.0 s
		3207	SUPERV 3 PARAM	0103 (OUTPUT FREQ)
		4101	GAIN	1.0
		4102	INTEGRATION TIME	60.0 s
		8123	PFA ENABLE	1 (ACTIVE)

Internal Timer

This macro configures for applications where a built-in timer starts and stops the motor. When the variable speed pump reaches a maximum speed limit, auxiliary pumps start as needed. When using direct speed reference in AUTO mode or process PID, see "General Considerations" on page 44.

Momentarily activating digital input 3 (DI3) provides a boost function which operates the motor. See group 36, Timer Functions, for more information on setting up timers.

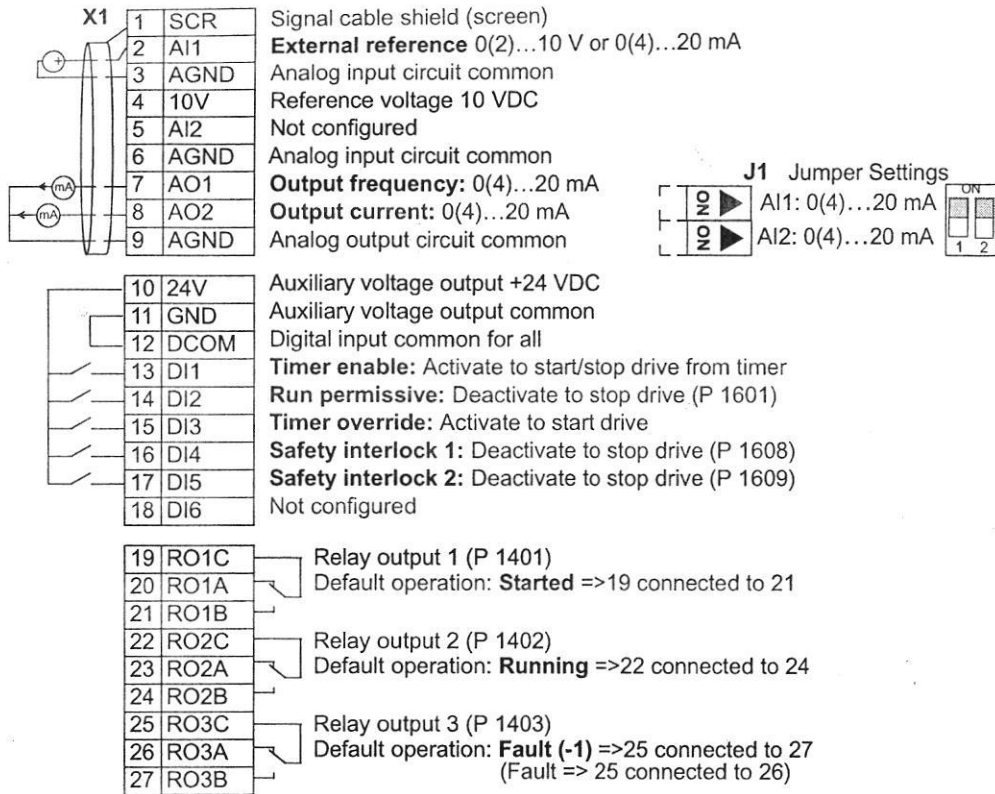


Parameters Changed Relative to HVAC Default			
Parameter	Value	Parameter	Value
9902 APPLIC MACRO	8 (INT TIMER)	1609 START ENABLE 2	5 (DI5)
1001 EXT1 COMMANDS	11 (TIMER1)	3207 SUPERV 3 PARAM	0103 (OUTPUT FREQ)
1002 EXT2 COMMANDS	11 (TIMER1)	3601 TIMERS ENABLE	1 (DI1)
1201 CONST SPEED SEL	0 (NOT SEL)	3622 BOOST SEL	3 (DI3)
1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1	7 (STARTED)	3626 TIMER 1 SRC	23 (B+P3+P2+P1)
1601 RUN ENABLE	2 (DI2)		

Internal Timer with Constant Speeds / PRV

This macro configures for applications such as a timed powered roof ventilator (PRV) which alternates between two constant speeds (constant speed 1 and 2) based on a built-in timer.

Momentarily activating digital input 3 (DI3) provides a boost function which operates the motor. See group 36, Timer Functions, for more information on setting up timers.

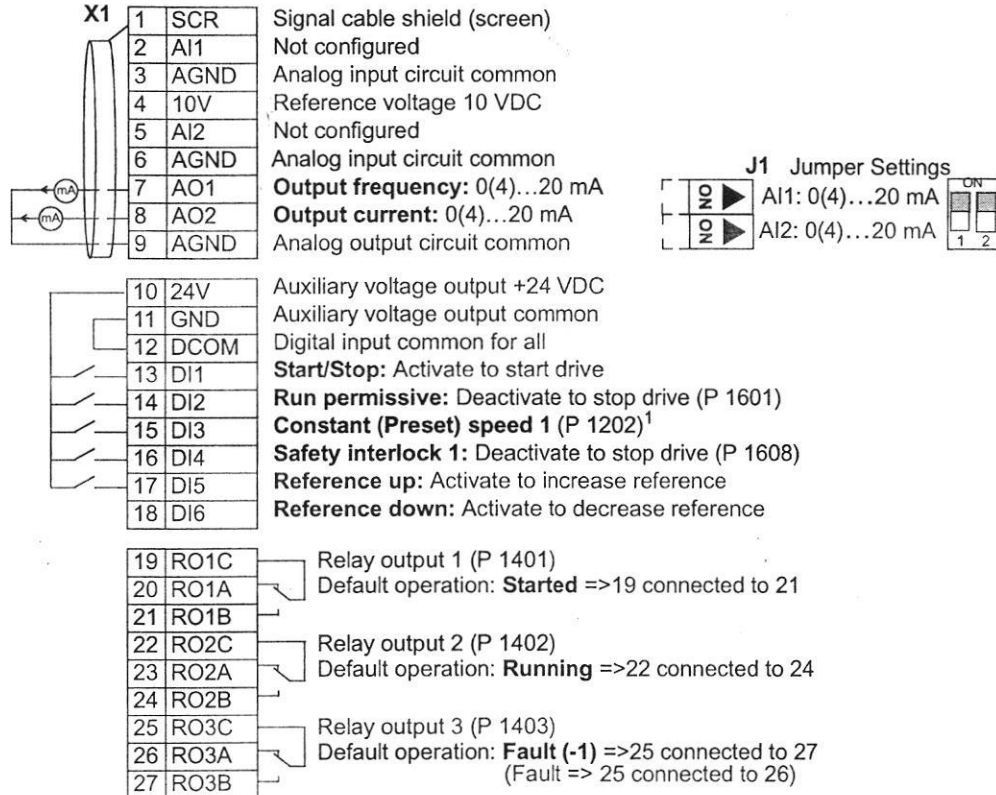


Parameters Changed Relative to HVAC Default				
Parameter	Value	Parameter	Value	
9902	APPLIC MACRO	9 (INT TIMER CS)	3416	SIGNAL 3 MIN -200.0%
1002	EXT2 COMMANDS	0 (NOT SEL)	3417	SIGNAL 3 MAX 200.0%
1103	REF1 SEL	0 (KEYPAD)	3419	OUTPUT 3 DSP UNIT 4 (%)
1106	REF3 SEL	2 (AI2)	3420	OUTPUT 3 MIN -200.0%
1201	CONST SPEED SEL	15 (TIMER1)	3421	OUTPUT 3 MAX 200.0%
1301	MINIMUM AI1	0.0%	3622	BOOST SEL 3 (DI3)
1401	RELAY OUTPUT 1	7 (STARTED)	4001	GAIN 1.0
1601	RUN ENABLE	2 (DI2)	4002	INTEGRATION TIME 60.0 s
1609	START ENABLE 2	5 (DI5)	4101	GAIN 1.0
3207	SUPERV 3 PARAM	0103 (OUTPUT FREQ)	4102	INTEGRATION TIME 60.0 s
3415	SIGNAL 3 PARAM	0105 (TORQUE)	4110	SETPOINT SEL 1 (AI1)

Floating Point

This application macro is for applications where speed reference needs to be controlled through digital inputs (DI5 & DI6). By activating digital input 5, the speed reference increases, by activating digital input 6, the speed reference decreases. If both digital inputs are active or inactive, the reference does not change.

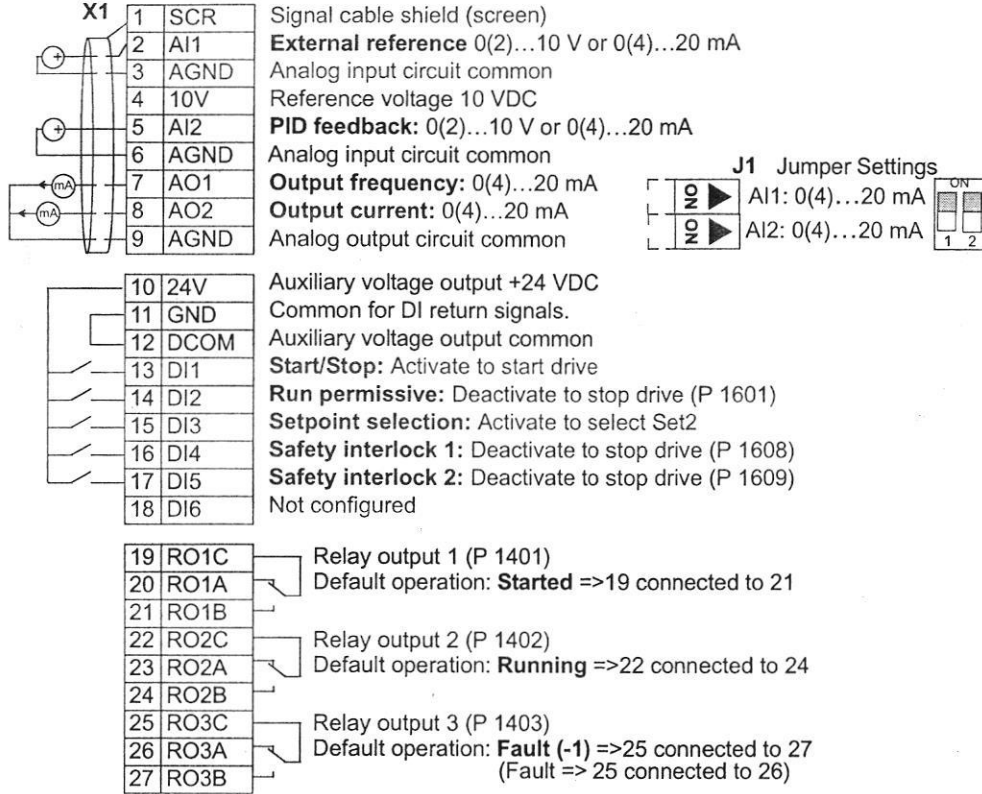
Note! When constant speed 1 is activated using digital input 3 (DI3), the reference speed is the value of parameter 1202. The value remains as the reference speed when digital input 3 is deactivated.



Parameters Changed Relative to HVAC Default					
Parameter	Value	Parameter	Value		
9902	APPLIC MACRO	10 (FLOATINGPNT)	3416	SIGNAL 3 MIN	-200.0%
1103	REF1 SEL	7 (DI5U, 6D)	3417	SIGNAL 3 MAX	200.0%
1401	RELAY OUTPUT 1	7 (STARTED)	3419	OUTPUT 3 DSP UNIT	4 (%)
1601	RUN ENABLE	2 (DI2)	3420	OUTPUT 3 MIN	-200.0%
3207	SUPERV 3 PARAM	0103 (OUTPUT FREQ)	3421	OUTPUT 3 MAX	200.0%
3415	SIGNAL 3 PARAM	0105 (TORQUE)			

Dual Setpoint with PID

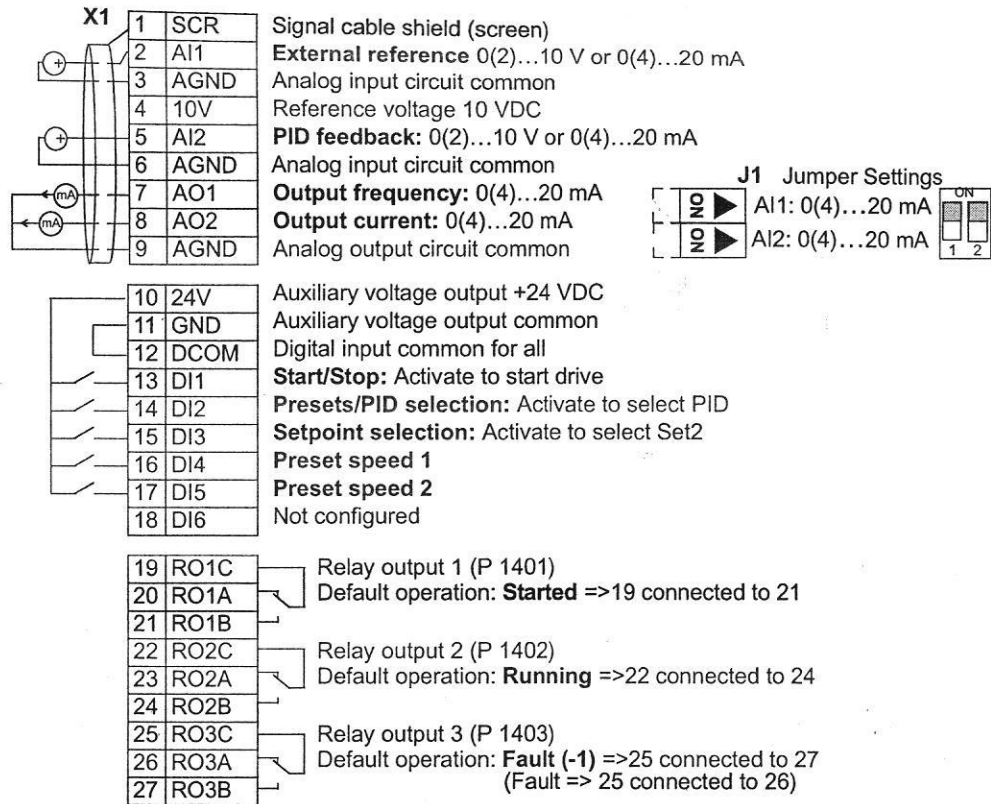
This macro configures for dual setpoint PID applications, where activating digital input 3 (DI3) changes the process PID controller's setpoint to another value. When using direct speed reference in AUTO mode or process PID, see "General Considerations" on page 44. Set process PID setpoints (internal to the drive) using parameters 4011 (SET1) and 4111 (SET2).



Parameters Changed Relative to HVAC Default					
Parameter	Value	Parameter	Value		
9902	APPLIC MACRO	11 (DUAL SETPNT)	4010	SETPOINT SEL	19 (INTERNAL)
1201	CONST SPEED SEL	0 (NOT SEL)	4011	INTERNAL SETPNT	50.0%
1401	RELAY OUTPUT 1	7 (STARTED)	4027	PID 1 PARAM SET	3 (DI3)
1601	RUN ENABLE	2 (DI2)	4110	SETPOINT SEL	19 (INTERNAL)
1609	START ENABLE 2	5 (DI5)	4111	INTERNAL SETPNT	100.0%
3207	SUPERV 3 PARAM	0103 (OUTPUT FREQ)			

Dual Setpoint with PID and Constant Speeds

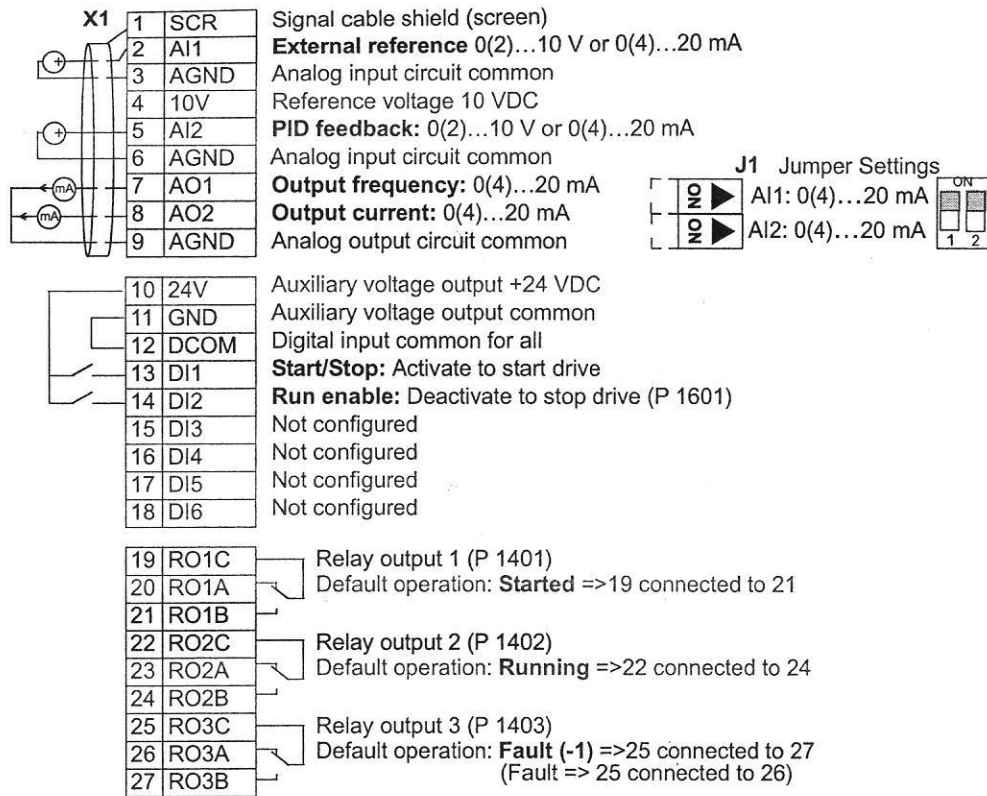
This macro configures for applications with 2 constant speeds, active PID and PID alternating between two setpoints using digital inputs. Set PID setpoints (internal to the drive) using parameters 4011 (SET1) and 4111 (SET2). The digital input DI3 selects the setpoints.



Parameters Changed Relative to HVAC Default					
Parameter	Value	Parameter	Value		
9902	APPLIC MACRO	12 (DUAL SPNTCS)	3207 SUPERV 3 PARAM	0103 (OUTPUT FREQ)	
1102	EXT1/EXT2 SEL	2 (DI2)	4001	GAIN	0.7
1201	CONST SPEED SEL	11 (DI5, 6)	4002	INTEGRATION TIME	10.0 s
1401	RELAY OUTPUT 1	7 (STARTED)	4010	SETPOINT SEL	19 (INTERNAL)
1608	START ENABLE 1	0 (NOT SEL)	4011	INTERNAL SETPNT	50.0%
2108	START INHIBIT	1 (ON)	4027	PID 1 PARAM SET	3 (DI3)
2202	ACCELER TIME 1	10.0 s	4101	GAIN	0.7
2203	DECELER TIME 1	10.0 s	4102	INTEGRATION TIME	10.0 s
3105	AR OVERVOLTAGE	0 (DISABLE)	4110	SETPOINT SEL	19 (INTERNAL)
3107	AR AI<MIN	0 (DISABLE)	4111	INTERNAL SETPNT	100.0%

E-bypass

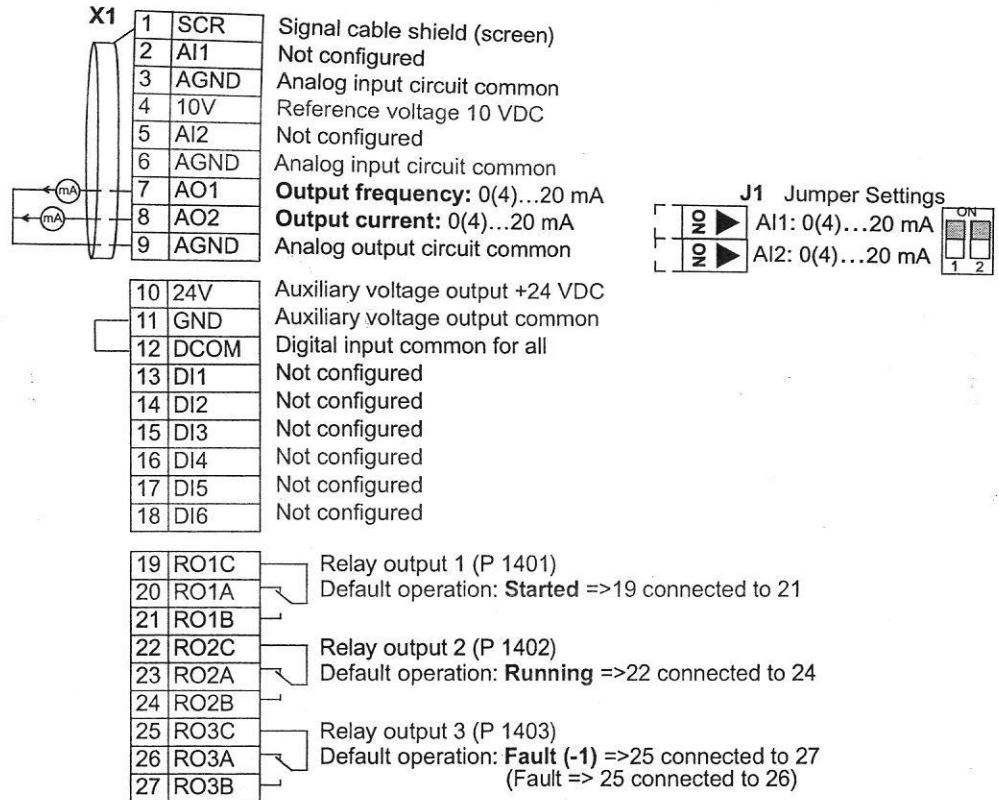
This macro configures for an Electronic Bypass device which can bypass the drive and connect the motor direct on-line. When using direct speed reference in AUTO mode or process PID, see "General Considerations" on page 44.



Parameters Changed Relative to HVAC Default					
Parameter	Value	Parameter	Value		
9902	APPLIC MACRO	13 (E-BYPASS)	1608	START ENABLE 1	0 (NOT SEL)
1201	CONST SPEED SEL	0 (NOT SEL)	2108	START INHIBIT	1 (ON)
1401	RELAY OUTPUT 1	7 (STARTED)	3207	SUPERV 3 PARAM	0103 (OUTPUT FREQ)
1601	RUN ENABLE	2 (DI2)			

Hand Control

This macro configures for drive control using only the control panel with no automated control. Typically, this is a temporary configuration used prior to control wiring.



Parameters Changed Relative to HVAC Default					
Parameter	Value	Parameter	Value		
9902	APPLIC MACRO	14 (HAND CONTROL)	3415	SIGNAL 3 PARAM	100 (NOT SEL)
1001	EXT1 COMMANDS	0 (NOT SEL)	3416	SIGNAL 3 MIN	(-)
1002	EXT2 COMMANDS	0 (NOT SEL)	3417	SIGNAL 3 MAX	(-)
1106	REF3 SEL	2 (AI2)	3418	OUTPUT 3 DSP FORM	(-)
1201	CONST SPEED SEL	0 (NOT SEL)	3419	OUTPUT 3 DSP UNIT	(-)
1301	MINIMUM AI1	0.0%	3420	OUTPUT 3 MIN	(-)
1304	MINIMUM AI2	0.0%	3421	OUTPUT 3 MAX	(-)
1401	RELAY OUTPUT 1	7 (STARTED)	4001	GAIN	1.0
1504	MINIMUM AO1	0.0mA	4002	INTEGRATION TIME	60.0 s
1510	MINIMUM AO2	0.0mA	4010	SETPOINT SEL	1 (AI1)
1601	RUN ENABLE	2 (DI2)	4101	GAIN	1.0
1608	START ENABLE 1	0 (NOT SEL)	4102	INTEGRATION TIME	60.0 s
2108	START INHIBIT	1 (ON)	4110	SETPOINT SEL	1 (AI1)
3207	SUPERV 3 PARAM	0103 (OUTPUT FREQ)	4210	SETPOINT SEL	1 (AI1)

Parameter Descriptions

Parameter data is specific to ACH550 firmware version 1.51.

Group 99: Start-up Data

This group defines special Start-up data required to:

- Set up the drive.
- Enter motor information

Note! Parameters checked under the heading "S" can be modified only when the drive is stopped.

Group 99: Start-up Data					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
9901	LANGUAGE Selects the display language. 0 = ENGLISH 1 = ENGLISH (AM) 2 = DEUTSCH 3 = ITALIANO 4 = ESPAÑOL 5 = PORTUGUES 6 = NEDERLANDS 7 = FRANCAIS 8 = DANSK 9 = SUOMI 10 = SVENSKA 11 = RUSSKI 12 = POLSKI 13 = TÜRKCE	0...13	1	0	
9902	APPLIC MACRO 31 = LOAD FD SET – FlashDrop parameter values as defined by the FlashDrop file. Parameter view is selected by parameter 1611 PARAMETER VIEW.				
9904	MOTOR CTRL MOD Selects the motor control mode. 1 = VECTOR: SPEED – sensorless vector control mode. • Reference 1 is speed reference in rpm. • Reference 2 is speed reference in % (100% is absolute maximum speed, equal to the value of parameter 2002 MAXIMUM SPEED, or 2001 MINIMUM SPEED if the absolute value of the minimum speed is greater than the maximum speed). 3 = SCALAR: FREQ – scalar control mode. • Reference 1 is frequency reference in Hz. • Reference 2 is frequency reference in % (100% is absolute maximum frequency, equal to the value of parameter 2008 MAXIMUM FREQUENCY, or 2007 MINIMUM FREQUENCY if the absolute value of the minimum speed is greater than the maximum speed).	1, 3	1	3	✓
9905	MOTOR NOM VOLT Defines the nominal motor voltage. • Must equal the value on the motor rating plate. • Sets the maximum drive output voltage supplied to the motor. • The ACH550 cannot supply the motor with a voltage greater than the mains voltage.	115...345 V (200 V, US) 1 V 230...690 V (400 V, US) 1 V 288...862 V (600 V, US) 1 V	1 V	230 V 460 V 575 V	✓
9906	MOTOR NOM CURR Defines the nominal motor current. • Must equal the value on the motor rating plate. • Range allowed: $(0.2...2.0) \cdot I_N$ (where I_N is drive current).	$0.15 \cdot I_{2N}...1.5 \cdot I_{2N}$	0.1 A	$1.5 \cdot I_{2N}$	✓

Group 99: Start-up Data					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
9907	MOTOR NOM FREQ Defines the nominal motor frequency. • Range: 10...500 Hz (typically 50 or 60 Hz) • Sets the frequency at which output voltage equals the MOTOR NOM VOLT. • Field weakening point = Norm freq * Supply Volt / Mot Nom Volt	10.0...500 Hz	0.1 Hz	60 Hz (US)	✓
9908	MOTOR NOM SPEED Defines the nominal motor speed. • Must equal the value on the motor rating plate.	50...30000 rpm	1 rpm	Size dependent	✓
9909	MOTOR NOM POWER Defines the nominal motor power. • Must equal the value on the motor rating plate.	0.15...1.5*P _N	0.1 Hp	0.2 HP (US)	✓
9910	MOTOR ID RUN This parameter controls a self-calibration process called the Motor ID Run. During this process, the drive operates the motor and makes measurements in order to identify motor characteristics and create a model used for internal calculations. An ID Run is especially effective when: • Operation point is near zero speed. • Operation requires a torque range above the motor nominal torque, over a wide speed range, and without any measured speed feedback (i.e. without a pulse encoder). First Start. If no Motor ID Run is performed, the drive estimates motor characteristics when the drive is first run. This "First Start" occurs automatically* at the next run command after any motor parameter is changed. In order to estimate characteristics and create a motor model, the First Start magnetizes the motor for 10 to 15 seconds at zero speed. * Activating the "First Start" does require that: • 9904 = 1 (VECTOR: SPEED), or 9904 = 3 (SCALAR: SPEED) and • 2101 = 3 (SCALAR FLYSTART) or 5 (FLYSTART + TORQ BOOST). Note: If you change motor parameters after running a Motor ID Run, repeat the Motor ID Run. 0 = NO ID RUN – Motor ID Run process is not running. 1 = ID RUN – Enables a Motor ID Run at the next start command. After run completion, this value automatically changes to 0.	0, 1	1	0	✓

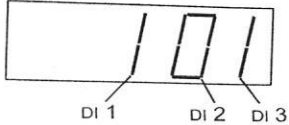
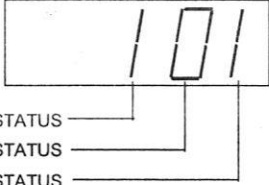
To perform a Motor Id Run:

1. De-couple load from motor (or otherwise reduce load to near zero).
2. Verify that motor operation is safe:
 - The run automatically operates the motor in the forward direction – confirm that forward rotation is safe.
 - The run automatically operates the motor at 50...80% of nominal speed – confirm that operation at these speeds is safe.
3. Check following parameters (if changed from factory settings):
 - 2001 MINIMUM SPEED ≤ 0
 - 2002 MAXIMUM SPEED > 80% of motor rated speed.
 - 2003 MAX CURRENT ≥ 130% of I_{2N} value.
 - The maximum torque (parameters 2014, 2017 and/ or 2018) > 50%.
4. At the Control Panel, select:
 - Select Parameters
 - Select Group 99
 - Select Parameter 9910

Group 01: Operating Data

This group contains drive operating data, including actual signals. The drive sets the values for actual signals, based on measurements or calculations. You cannot set these values.

Group 01: Operating Data					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
0101	SPEED & DIR The calculated speed of the motor (rpm) & motor direction.				
0102	SPEED The calculated speed of the motor (rpm).	0...30000 rpm	1 rpm	-	
0103	OUTPUT FREQ The frequency (Hz) applied to the motor. (Also shown by default in OUTPUT display.)	0.0...500.0 Hz	0.1 Hz	-	
0104	CURRENT The motor current, as measured by the ACH550. (Also shown by default in OUTPUT display.)	0.0...1.5*I _{2N}	0.1 A	-	
0105	TORQUE Output torque. Calculated value of torque on motor shaft in % of motor nominal torque.	-200%...200%	0.1%	-	
0106	POWER The measured motor power in kW.	-1.5...1.5*P _N	0.1 kW	-	
0107	DC BUS VOLTAGE The DC bus voltage in VDC, as measured by the ACH550.	0 V...2.5*V _{dN}	1 V	-	
0109	OUTPUT VOLTAGE The voltage applied to the motor.	0 V...2.0*V _{dN}	1 V	-	
0110	DRIVE TEMP The temperature of the drive power transistors in Centigrade.	0 °C...150 °C	0.1 °C	-	
0111	EXTERNAL REF 1 External reference, REF1, in rpm or Hz – units determined by parameter 9904.	0...30000 rpm / 0...500 Hz	1 rpm / 0.1 Hz	-	
0112	EXTERNAL REF 2 External reference, REF2, in %.	0%...100% (torque: 0%...600%)	0.1%	-	
0113	CTRL LOCATION Active control location. Alternatives are: 0 = HAND 1 = EXT1 2 = EXT2	0...2	1	-	
0114	RUN TIME (R) The drive's accumulated running time in hours (h). • Can be reset by pressing UP and DOWN buttons simultaneously when in parameter set mode.	0...9999 h	1 h	0 h	
0115	KWH COUNTER (R) The drive's accumulated power consumption in kilowatt hours. • Can be reset by pressing UP and DOWN buttons simultaneously when in parameter set mode.	0...9999 kWh	1 kWh	-	
0116	APPL BLK OUTPUT Application block output signal. Value is from either: • PFA control, if PFA Control is active, or • Parameter 0112 EXTERNAL REF 2.	0...100% (torque: 0...600%)	0.1%	-	

Group 01: Operating Data					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
0118	DI1-3 STATUS Status of the three digital inputs. • Status is displayed as a binary number. • 1 indicates that the input is activated. • 0 indicates that the input is deactivated.	000...111 (0...7 decimal)	1	-	
					
0119	DI4-6 STATUS Status of the three digital inputs. • See parameter 0118 DI1-3 STATUS.	000...111 (0...7 decimal)	1	-	
0120	AI1 Relative value of analog input 1 in %.	0...100%	0.1%	-	
0121	AI2 The relative value of analog input 2 in %.	0...100%	0.1%	-	
0122	RO1-3 STATUS Status of the three relay outputs. • 1 indicates that the relay is energized. • 0 indicates that the relay is de-energized.	0...111 (0...7 decimal)	1	-	
					
0123	RO4-6 STATUS Status of the three relay outputs. See parameter 0122.	0...111 (0...7 decimal)	1	-	
0124	AO1 The analog output 1 value in milliamperes.	0...20 mA	0.1 mA	-	
0125	AO2 The analog output 2 value in milliamperes.	0...20 mA	0.1 mA	-	
0126	PID 1 OUTPPUT The PID Controller 1 output value in %.	-1000...1000%	0.1%	-	
0127	PID 2 OUTPUT The PID Controller 2 output value in %.	-100...100%	0.1%	-	
0128	PID 1 SETPNT The PID 1 controller setpoint signal. • Units and scale defined by PID parameters 4006/4106 & 4007/4107.	-	-	-	
0129	PID 2 SETPNT The PID 2 controller setpoint signal. • Units and scale defined by PID parameters 4206 & 4207.	-	-	-	
0130	PID 1 FBK The PID 1 controller feedback signal. • Units and scale defined by PID parameters 4006/4106 & 4007/4107.	-	-	-	

Group 01: Operating Data					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
0131	PID 2 FBK The PID 2 controller feedback signal. • Units and scale defined by PID parameters 4206 & 4207.	-	-	-	
0132	PID 1 DEVIATION The difference between the PID 1 controller reference value and actual value. • Units and scale defined by PID parameters 4006/4106 & 4007/4107.	-	-	-	
0133	PID 2 DEVIATION The difference between the PID 2 controller reference value and actual value. • Units and scale defined by PID parameters 4206 & 4207.	-	-	-	
0134	COMM RO WORD Free data location that can be written from serial link. • Used for relay output control. • See parameter 1401.	0...65535	1	0	
0135	COMM VALUE 1 Free data location that can be written from serial link.	-32768...+32767	1	0	
0136	COMM VALUE 2 Free data location that can be written from serial link.	-32768...+32767	1	0	
0137	PROCESS VAR 1 Process variable 1 • Defined by parameters in Group 34: Panel Display / Process Variables.	-	1		
0138	PROCESS VAR 2 Process variable 2 • Defined by parameters in Group 34: Panel Display / Process Variables.	-	1		
0139	PROCESS VAR 3 Process variable 3 • Defined by parameters in Group 34: Panel Display / Process Variables.	-	1		
0140	RUN TIME The drive's accumulated running time in thousands of hours (kh).	0...499.99 kh	0.01 kh	0 kh	
0141	MWH COUNTER The drive's accumulated power consumption in megawatt hours. Can not be reset.	0...9999 MWh	1 MWh	-	
0142	REVOLUTION CNTR The motor's accumulated revolutions in millions of revolutions.	0...9999	1	0	
0143	DRIVE ON TIME (HI) The drive's accumulated power on time in days.	0...65535 days	1 day	0	
0144	DRIVE ON TIME (LO) The drive's accumulated power on time in 2 second ticks (30 ticks = 60 seconds).	0...43200hh:mm:ss	2 s	0	
0145	MOTOR TEMP Motor temperature in degrees centigrade / PTC resistance in Ohms. • Applies only if motor temperature sensor is set up. See parameter 3501.	-10...200 °C/ 0...5000 Ohm / 0...1	1	0	

Group 01: Operating Data				
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default
0146	MECH ANGLE Defines the motor shaft's angular position to about 0.01° (32,768 divisions for 360°). The position is defined as 0 at power up. During operation the zero position can be set by: • A Z-pulse input, if parameter 5010 Z PLS ENABLE = 1 (ENABLE) • Parameter 5011 POSITION RESET, if parameter 5010 Z PLS ENABLE = 2 (DISABLE) • Any status change of parameter 5002 ENCODER ENABLE	0...32767	1 (~0.01°)	0
0147	MECH REVS A signed integer that counts full revolutions of the motor shaft. The value: • Increments when parameter 0146 MECH ANGLE changes from 32767 to 0 • Decrements when parameter 0146 MECH ANGLE changes from 0 to 32767	-32767...32767	1	0
0148	Z PLS DETECTED When a Z-pulse defines the zero position, the shaft must pass through the zero position to trigger a Z-pulse. Until then, the shaft position is unknown (the drive uses the shaft position at power up as zero). This parameter signals when parameter 0146 MECH ANGLE is valid. This parameter starts at zero on power-up and changes to 1 only if: • Parameter 5010 Z PLS ENABLE = ENABLE and • An encoder Z-pulse has been detected.	0, 1	1	0
0150	CB TEMP Temperature of the drive control board in degrees Celsius/Fahrenheit. Note: Some drives have a control board (OMIO) that does not support this feature. These drives always show the constant value of 25.0 °C.			
0151	INPUT KWH (R) The drives accumulated input power consumption in kilowatt hours. • Can be reset by pressing UP and DOWN buttons simultaneously when in parameter set mode.			
0152	INPUT MWH The drives accumulated input power consumption in megawatt hours. • Cannot be reset			
0158	PID COMM VALUE 1 Data received from fieldbus for PID control (PID1 and PID2).			
0159	PID COMM VALUE 2 Data received from fieldbus for PID control (PID1 and PID2).			

Group 03: Actual Signals

This group monitors fieldbus communications.

Group 03: Actual Signals																																																							
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S																																																		
0301	FB CMD WORD 1 Read-only copy of the Fieldbus Command Word 1. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The fieldbus command is the principal means for controlling the drive from a fieldbus controller. The command consists of two Command Words. Bit-coded instructions in the Command Words switch the drive between states. To control the drive, using the Command Words, an external location (EXT1 or EXT2) must be active and set to COMM. (See parameters 1001 and 1002.) The control panel displays the word in hex. For example, all zeros and a 1 in Bit 0 displays as 0001. All zeros and a 1 in Bit 15 displays as 8000 	-	-	-																																																			
	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Bit #</th> <th>0301, FB CMD WORD 1</th> <th>0302, FB CMD WORD 2</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>0</td><td>STOP</td><td>FBLOCAL_CTL</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>START</td><td>FBLOCAL_REF</td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>REVERSE</td><td>START_DISABLE1</td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>LOCAL</td><td>START_DISABLE2</td></tr> <tr><td>4</td><td>RESET</td><td>Reserved</td></tr> <tr><td>5</td><td>EXT2</td><td>Reserved</td></tr> <tr><td>6</td><td>RUN_DISABLE</td><td>Reserved</td></tr> <tr><td>7</td><td>STPMODE_R</td><td>Reserved</td></tr> <tr><td>8</td><td>STPMODE_EM</td><td>Reserved</td></tr> <tr><td>9</td><td>STPMODE_C</td><td>Reserved</td></tr> <tr><td>10</td><td>RAMP_2</td><td>Reserved</td></tr> <tr><td>11</td><td>RAMP_OUT_0</td><td>REF_CONST</td></tr> <tr><td>12</td><td>RAMP_HOLD</td><td>REF_AVE</td></tr> <tr><td>13</td><td>RAMP_IN_0</td><td>LINK_ON</td></tr> <tr><td>14</td><td>RREQ_LOCALLOC</td><td>REQ_STARTINH</td></tr> <tr><td>15</td><td>TORQLIM2</td><td>OFF_INTERLOCK</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Bit #	0301, FB CMD WORD 1	0302, FB CMD WORD 2	0	STOP	FBLOCAL_CTL	1	START	FBLOCAL_REF	2	REVERSE	START_DISABLE1	3	LOCAL	START_DISABLE2	4	RESET	Reserved	5	EXT2	Reserved	6	RUN_DISABLE	Reserved	7	STPMODE_R	Reserved	8	STPMODE_EM	Reserved	9	STPMODE_C	Reserved	10	RAMP_2	Reserved	11	RAMP_OUT_0	REF_CONST	12	RAMP_HOLD	REF_AVE	13	RAMP_IN_0	LINK_ON	14	RREQ_LOCALLOC	REQ_STARTINH	15	TORQLIM2	OFF_INTERLOCK			
Bit #	0301, FB CMD WORD 1	0302, FB CMD WORD 2																																																					
0	STOP	FBLOCAL_CTL																																																					
1	START	FBLOCAL_REF																																																					
2	REVERSE	START_DISABLE1																																																					
3	LOCAL	START_DISABLE2																																																					
4	RESET	Reserved																																																					
5	EXT2	Reserved																																																					
6	RUN_DISABLE	Reserved																																																					
7	STPMODE_R	Reserved																																																					
8	STPMODE_EM	Reserved																																																					
9	STPMODE_C	Reserved																																																					
10	RAMP_2	Reserved																																																					
11	RAMP_OUT_0	REF_CONST																																																					
12	RAMP_HOLD	REF_AVE																																																					
13	RAMP_IN_0	LINK_ON																																																					
14	RREQ_LOCALLOC	REQ_STARTINH																																																					
15	TORQLIM2	OFF_INTERLOCK																																																					
0302	FB CMD WORD 2 Read-only copy of the Fieldbus Command Word 2. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> See parameter 0301. 	-	-	-																																																			

Group 03: Actual Signals																																																								
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S																																																			
0303	FB STS WORD 1	-	1	- hex	S																																																			
	Read-only copy of the Status Word 1. • The drive sends status information to the fieldbus controller. The status consists of two Status Words.																																																							
	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Bit #</th> <th>0303, STS CMD WORD 1</th> <th>0304, FB STS WORD 2</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>0</td><td>READY</td><td>ALARM</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>ENABLED</td><td>REQ_MAINT</td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>STARTED</td><td>DIRLOCK</td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>RUNNING</td><td>LOCALLOCK</td></tr> <tr><td>4</td><td>ZERO_SPEED</td><td>CTL_MODE</td></tr> <tr><td>5</td><td>ACCELERATE</td><td>Reserved</td></tr> <tr><td>6</td><td>DECELERATE</td><td>Reserved</td></tr> <tr><td>7</td><td>AT_SETPOINT</td><td>Reserved</td></tr> <tr><td>8</td><td>LIMIT</td><td>Reserved</td></tr> <tr><td>9</td><td>SUPERVISION</td><td>Reserved</td></tr> <tr><td>10</td><td>REV_REF</td><td>REQ_CTL</td></tr> <tr><td>11</td><td>REV_ACT</td><td>REQ_REF1</td></tr> <tr><td>12</td><td>PANEL_LOCAL</td><td>REQ_REF2</td></tr> <tr><td>13</td><td>FIELDBUS_LOCAL</td><td>REQ_REF2EXT</td></tr> <tr><td>14</td><td>EXT2_ACT</td><td>ACK_STARTINH</td></tr> <tr><td>15</td><td>FAULT</td><td>ACK_OFF_ILCK</td></tr> </tbody> </table>					Bit #	0303, STS CMD WORD 1	0304, FB STS WORD 2	0	READY	ALARM	1	ENABLED	REQ_MAINT	2	STARTED	DIRLOCK	3	RUNNING	LOCALLOCK	4	ZERO_SPEED	CTL_MODE	5	ACCELERATE	Reserved	6	DECELERATE	Reserved	7	AT_SETPOINT	Reserved	8	LIMIT	Reserved	9	SUPERVISION	Reserved	10	REV_REF	REQ_CTL	11	REV_ACT	REQ_REF1	12	PANEL_LOCAL	REQ_REF2	13	FIELDBUS_LOCAL	REQ_REF2EXT	14	EXT2_ACT	ACK_STARTINH	15	FAULT	ACK_OFF_ILCK
Bit #	0303, STS CMD WORD 1	0304, FB STS WORD 2																																																						
0	READY	ALARM																																																						
1	ENABLED	REQ_MAINT																																																						
2	STARTED	DIRLOCK																																																						
3	RUNNING	LOCALLOCK																																																						
4	ZERO_SPEED	CTL_MODE																																																						
5	ACCELERATE	Reserved																																																						
6	DECELERATE	Reserved																																																						
7	AT_SETPOINT	Reserved																																																						
8	LIMIT	Reserved																																																						
9	SUPERVISION	Reserved																																																						
10	REV_REF	REQ_CTL																																																						
11	REV_ACT	REQ_REF1																																																						
12	PANEL_LOCAL	REQ_REF2																																																						
13	FIELDBUS_LOCAL	REQ_REF2EXT																																																						
14	EXT2_ACT	ACK_STARTINH																																																						
15	FAULT	ACK_OFF_ILCK																																																						
0304	FB STS WORD 2	-	1	- hex																																																				
	Read-only copy of the Status Word 2. • See parameter 0303.																																																							

Group 03: Actual Signals																																																																									
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S																																																																				
0305	FAULT WORD 1 Read-only copy of the Fault Word 1. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When a fault is active, the corresponding bit for the active fault is set in the Fault Words. Each fault has a dedicated bit allocated within Fault Words. See "Fault Listing" in section "Diagnostics" for a description of the faults. The control panel displays the word in hex. For example, all zeros and a 1 in Bit 0 displays a 0001. All zeros and a 1 in Bit 15 displays as 8000. <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Bit #</th> <th>0305, FAULT WORD 1</th> <th>0306, FAULT WORD 2</th> <th>0307, FAULT WORD 3</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>0</td><td>OVERCURRENT</td><td>UNDERLOAD</td><td>EFB 1</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>DC OVERVOLT</td><td>THERM FAIL</td><td>EFB 2</td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>DEV OVERTEMP</td><td>OPEX LINK</td><td>EFB 3</td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>SHORT CIRC</td><td>OPEX PWR</td><td>Incompatible software type</td></tr> <tr><td>4</td><td>Reserved</td><td>CURR MEAS</td><td>Reserved</td></tr> <tr><td>5</td><td>DC UNDERVOLT</td><td>SUPPLY PHASE</td><td>Reserved</td></tr> <tr><td>6</td><td>AI1 LOSS</td><td>ENCODER ERROR</td><td>Reserved</td></tr> <tr><td>7</td><td>AI2 LOSS</td><td>OVERSPEED</td><td>Reserved</td></tr> <tr><td>8</td><td>MOT OVERTEMP</td><td>Reserved</td><td>Reserved</td></tr> <tr><td>9</td><td>PANEL LOSS</td><td>DRIVE ID</td><td>Reserved</td></tr> <tr><td>10</td><td>ID RUN FAIL</td><td>CONFIG FILE</td><td>System Error</td></tr> <tr><td>11</td><td>MOTOR STALL</td><td>SERIAL 1 ERR</td><td>System Error</td></tr> <tr><td>12</td><td>Reserved</td><td>EFB CON FILE</td><td>System Error</td></tr> <tr><td>13</td><td>EXT FLT 1</td><td>FORCE TRIP</td><td>System Error</td></tr> <tr><td>14</td><td>EXT FLT 2</td><td>MOTOR PHASE</td><td>Hardware Error</td></tr> <tr><td>15</td><td>EARTH FAULT</td><td>OUTPUT WIRING</td><td>Param. Setting Fault</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Bit #	0305, FAULT WORD 1	0306, FAULT WORD 2	0307, FAULT WORD 3	0	OVERCURRENT	UNDERLOAD	EFB 1	1	DC OVERVOLT	THERM FAIL	EFB 2	2	DEV OVERTEMP	OPEX LINK	EFB 3	3	SHORT CIRC	OPEX PWR	Incompatible software type	4	Reserved	CURR MEAS	Reserved	5	DC UNDERVOLT	SUPPLY PHASE	Reserved	6	AI1 LOSS	ENCODER ERROR	Reserved	7	AI2 LOSS	OVERSPEED	Reserved	8	MOT OVERTEMP	Reserved	Reserved	9	PANEL LOSS	DRIVE ID	Reserved	10	ID RUN FAIL	CONFIG FILE	System Error	11	MOTOR STALL	SERIAL 1 ERR	System Error	12	Reserved	EFB CON FILE	System Error	13	EXT FLT 1	FORCE TRIP	System Error	14	EXT FLT 2	MOTOR PHASE	Hardware Error	15	EARTH FAULT	OUTPUT WIRING	Param. Setting Fault	-	1	0000 hex	
Bit #	0305, FAULT WORD 1	0306, FAULT WORD 2	0307, FAULT WORD 3																																																																						
0	OVERCURRENT	UNDERLOAD	EFB 1																																																																						
1	DC OVERVOLT	THERM FAIL	EFB 2																																																																						
2	DEV OVERTEMP	OPEX LINK	EFB 3																																																																						
3	SHORT CIRC	OPEX PWR	Incompatible software type																																																																						
4	Reserved	CURR MEAS	Reserved																																																																						
5	DC UNDERVOLT	SUPPLY PHASE	Reserved																																																																						
6	AI1 LOSS	ENCODER ERROR	Reserved																																																																						
7	AI2 LOSS	OVERSPEED	Reserved																																																																						
8	MOT OVERTEMP	Reserved	Reserved																																																																						
9	PANEL LOSS	DRIVE ID	Reserved																																																																						
10	ID RUN FAIL	CONFIG FILE	System Error																																																																						
11	MOTOR STALL	SERIAL 1 ERR	System Error																																																																						
12	Reserved	EFB CON FILE	System Error																																																																						
13	EXT FLT 1	FORCE TRIP	System Error																																																																						
14	EXT FLT 2	MOTOR PHASE	Hardware Error																																																																						
15	EARTH FAULT	OUTPUT WIRING	Param. Setting Fault																																																																						
0306	FAULT WORD 2 Read-only copy of the Fault Word 2. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> See parameter 0305. 	-	1	0000 hex																																																																					
0307	FAULT WORD 3 Read-only copy of the Fault Word 3. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> See parameter 0305. 	-	1	0000 hex																																																																					

Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
0308	ALARM WORD 1	-	1	0000 hex	
<p>Read-only copy of the ALARM word 1.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When a fault is active, the corresponding bit for the active fault is set in the Fault Words. Each fault has a dedicated bit allocated within Fault Words. Bits remain set until the whole alarm word is reset. (Reset by writing zero to the word). The control panel displays the word in hex. For example, all zeros and a 1 in Bit 0 displays a 0001. All zeros and a 1 in Bit 15 displays as 8000. 					
Bit #	0308, ALARM word 1	0309, ALARM word 2	Reserved	OVERCURRENT	Reserved
0	OVERCURRENT	Reserved	Reserved	PID SLEEP	Reserved
1	OVERVOLTAGE	Reserved	Reserved	ID RUN	Reserved
2	UNDERVOLTAGE	Reserved	Reserved	DIRLOCK	Reserved
3	DIRLOCK	Reserved	Reserved	START ENABLE 1 MISSING	Reserved
4	I/O COMM	Reserved	Reserved	START ENABLE 2 MISSING	Reserved
5	A11 LOSS	Reserved	Reserved	EMERGENCY STOP	Reserved
6	A12 LOSS	Reserved	Reserved	PANEL LOSS	Reserved
7	PANEL LOSS	Reserved	Reserved	ENCODER ERROR	Reserved
8	DEVICE OVERTEMP	Reserved	Reserved	FIRST START	Reserved
9	MOT OVERTEMP	Reserved	Reserved	UNDERLOAD	Reserved
10	UNDERLOAD	Reserved	Reserved	MOTOR STALL	Reserved
11	MOTOR STALL	Reserved	Reserved	AUTORESET	Reserved
12	AUTORESET	Reserved	Reserved	PFA AUTOCHANGE	Reserved
13	PFA AUTOCHANGE	Reserved	Reserved	PFC INTERLOCK	Reserved
14	PFC INTERLOCK	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
15	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
0309	ALARM WORD 2	-	1	0000 hex	
<p>Read-only copy of the ALARM word 3.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> See parameter 0308. 					

Group 04: Fault History

This group stores a recent history of the faults reported by the drive.

Group 04: Fault History					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
0401	LAST FAULT 0 = Clear the fault history (on panel = NO RECORD). n = Fault code of the last recorded fault.	Fault code text	1	0	
0402	FAULT TIME 1 The day on which the last fault occurred. Either as: • A date – if real time clock is operating. • The number of days after power on – if real time clock is not used, or was not set.	Date dd.mm.yy / power-on days	1	0	
0403	FAULT TIME 2 The time at which the last fault occurred. Either as: • Real time, in format hh:mm:ss – if real time clock is operating. • The time since power on (less the whole days reported in 0402), in format hh:mm:ss – if real time clock is not used, or was not set.	Time hh:mm:ss	2 s	0	
0404	SPEED AT FLT The motor speed (rpm) at the time the last fault occurred.	-	1 rpm	0	
0405	FREQ AT FLT The frequency (Hz) at the time the last fault occurred.	-	0.1 Hz	0.0	
0406	VOLTAGE AT FLT The DC bus voltage (V) at the time the last fault occurred.	-	0.1 V	0.0	
0407	CURRENT AT FLT The motor current (A) at the time the last fault occurred.	-	0.1 A	0.0	
0408	TORQUE AT FLT The motor torque (%) at the time the last fault occurred.	-	0.1%	0.0	
0409	STATUS AT FLT The drive status (hex code word) at the time the last fault occurred.	-	1	0000 hex	
0410	DI 1-3 AT FLT The status of digital inputs 1...3 at the time the last fault occurred.	000...111 (0...7 decimal)	1	000 bin	
0411	DI 4-6 AT FLT The status of digital inputs 4...6 at the time the last fault occurred.	000...111 (0...7 decimal)	1	000 bin	
0412	PREVIOUS FAULT 1 Fault code of the second last fault. Read-only.	Fault code text	1	0	
0413	PREVIOUS FAULT 2 Fault code of the third last fault. Read-only.	Fault code text	1	0	

Group 10: Start/Stop/Dir

This group:

- Defines external sources (EXT1, and EXT2) for commands that enable start, stop and direction changes.
- Locks direction or enables direction control. To select between the two external locations use the next group, parameter 1102.

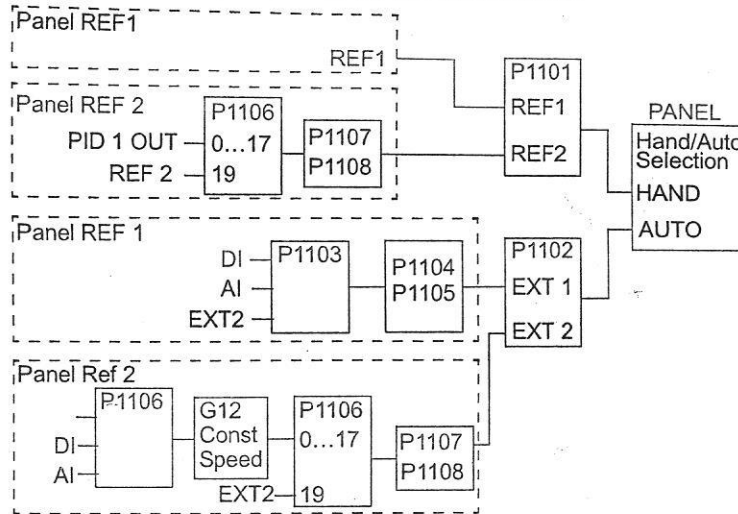
Group 10: AcStart/Stop/Dir					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
1001	EXT1 COMMANDS Defines external control location 1 (EXT1) – the configuration of start, stop and direction commands. 0 = NOT SEL – No external start, stop and direction command source. 1 = DI1 – Two-wire Start/Stop. • Start/Stop is through digital input DI1 (DI1 activated = Start; DI1 de-activated = Stop). • Parameter 1003 defines the direction. Selecting 1003 = 3 (request) is the same as 1003 = 1 (fwd). 2 = DI1, 2 – Two-wire Start/Stop, Direction. • Start/Stop is through digital input DI1 (DI1 activated = Start; DI1 de-activated = Stop). • Direction control (requires parameter 1003 = 3 (request)) is through digital input DI2 (DI2 activated = Reverse; de-activated = Forward). 3 = DI1P, 2P – Three-wire Start/Stop. • Start/Stop commands are through momentary push-buttons (the P stands for “pulse”). • Start is through a normally open push-button connected to digital input DI1. In order to start the drive, the digital input DI2 must be activated prior the pulse in DI1. • Connect multiple Start push-buttons in parallel. • Stop is through a normally closed push-button connected to digital input DI2. • Connect multiple Stop push-buttons in series. • Parameter 1003 defines the direction. Selecting 1003 = 3 (REQUEST) is the same as 1003 = 1 (FWD). 4 = DI1P, 2P, 3 – Three-wire Start/Stop, Direction. • Start/Stop commands are through momentary push-buttons, as described for DI1P, 2P. • Direction control (requires parameter 1003 = 3 (REQUEST)) is through digital input DI3 (DI3 activated = Reverse; de-activated = Forward). 5 = DI1P, 2P, 3P – Start Forward, Start Reverse, and Stop. • Start and Direction commands are given simultaneously with two separate momentary push-buttons (the P stands for “pulse”). • Start Forward command is through a normally open push-button connected to digital input DI1. In order to start the drive, the digital input DI3 must be activated during the pulse in DI1. • Start Reverse command is through a normally open push-button connected to digital input DI2. In order to start the drive, the digital input DI3 must be activated prior the pulse in DI2. • Connect multiple Start push-buttons in parallel. • Stop is through a normally closed push-button connected to digital input DI3. • Connect multiple Stop push-buttons in series. • Requires parameter 1003 = 3 (REQUEST). 6 = DI6 – Two-wire Start/Stop. • Start/Stop is through digital input DI6 (DI6 activated = Start; DI6 de-activated = Stop). • Parameter 1003 defines the direction. Selecting 1003 = 3 (REQUEST) is the same as 1003 = 1 (FWD). 7 = DI6, 5 – Two-wire Start/Stop/Direction. • Start/Stop is through digital input DI6 (DI6 activated = Start; DI6 de-activated = Stop). • Direction control (requires parameter 1003 = 3 (REQUEST)) is through digital input DI5 (DI5 activated = Reverse; de-activated = Forward). 8 = KEYPAD – Control Panel. • Start/Stop and Direction commands are through the control panel when EXT1 is active. • Direction control requires parameter 1003 = 3 (REQUEST). 9 = DI1F, 2R – Start/Stop/Direction commands through DI1 and DI2 combinations. • Start forward = DI1 activated and DI2 de-activated. • Start reverse = DI1 de-activated and DI2 activated. • Stop = both DI1 and DI2 activated, or both de-activated. • Requires parameter 1003 = 3 (REQUEST).	0...14	1	1	✓

Group 10: AcStart/Stop/Dir					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
	<p>10 = COMM – Assigns the fieldbus Command Word as the source for the start/stop and direction commands.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Bits 0,1, 2 of Command Word 1 (parameter 0301) activates the start/stop and direction commands. • See Fieldbus user's manual for detailed instructions. <p>11 = TIMER 1. – Assigns Start/Stop control to Timer 1 (Timer activated = START; Timer de-activated = STOP). See Group 36, Timer Functions.</p> <p>12...14 = TIMER 2... 4 – Assigns Start/Stop control to Timer 2...4. See Timer Function 1 above.</p>				
1002	<p>EXT2 COMMANDS</p> <p>Defines external control location 2 (EXT2) – the configuration of start, stop and direction commands.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • See parameter 1001 EXT1 COMMANDS above. 	0...14	1	1	✓
1003	<p>DIRECTION</p> <p>Defines the control of motor rotation direction.</p> <p>1 = FORWARD – Rotation is fixed in the forward direction.</p> <p>2 = REVERSE – Rotation is fixed in the reverse direction.</p> <p>3 = REQUEST – Rotation direction can be changed on command.</p>	1...3	1	1	✓

Group 11: Reference Select

This group defines:

- How the drive selects between command sources.
- Characteristics and sources for REF1 and REF2.



Group 11: Reference Select					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
1101	KEYPAD REF SEL Selects the reference controlled in local control mode. 1 = REF1 (Hz/rpm) – Reference type depends on parameter 9904 MOTOR CTRL MODE. • Speed reference (rpm) if 9904 = 1 (VECTOR: SPEED). • Frequency reference (Hz) if 9904 = 3 (SCALAR; FREQ). 2 = REF2 (%)	1...2	1	1	
1102	EXT1/EXT2 SEL Defines the source for selecting between the two external control locations EXT1 or EXT2. Thus, defines the source for Start/Stop/Direction commands and reference signals. 0 = EXT1 – Selects external control location 1 (EXT1). • See parameter 1001 EXT1 COMMANDS for EXT1's Start/Stop/Dir definitions. • See parameter 1103 REF1 SELECT for EXT1's reference definitions. 1 = DI1 – Assigns control to EXT1 or EXT2 based on the state of DI1 (DI1 activated = EXT2; DI1 de-activated = EXT1). 2...6 = DI2...DI6 – Assigns control to EXT1 or EXT2 based on the state of the selected digital input. See DI1 above. 7 = EXT2 – Selects external control location 2 (EXT2). • See parameter 1002 EXT2 COMMANDS for EXT2's Start/Stop/Dir definitions. • See parameter 1106 REF2 SELECT for EXT2's reference definitions. 8 = COMM – Assigns control of the drive via external control location EXT1 or EXT2 based on the fieldbus control word. • Bit 5 of the Command Word 1 (parameter 0301) defines the active external control location (EXT1 or EXT2). • See Fieldbus user's manual for detailed instructions. 9 = TIMER 1 – Assigns control to EXT1 or EXT2 based on the state of the Timer (Timer activated = EXT2; Timer de-activated = EXT1). See Group 36, Timer Functions. 10...12 = TIMER 2... 4 – Assigns control to EXT1 or EXT2 based on the state of the Timer. See Timer 1 above. -1 = DI1(INV) – Assigns control to EXT1 or EXT2 based on the state of DI1 (DI1 activated = EXT1; DI1 de-activated = EXT2). -2...-6 = DI2(INV)...DI6(INV) – Assigns control to EXT1 or EXT2 based on the state of the selected digital input. See DI1(INV) above.	-6...12	1	0	✓

Group 11: Reference Select					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
1103	REF1 SELECT 20 = KEYPAD(RNC) – Defines the control panel as the reference source. A Stop command resets the reference to zero (R stands for reset.). Changing the control source (EXT1 to EXT2, EXT2 to EXT1) does not copy the reference. 21 = KEYPAD(NC) – Defines the control panel as the reference source. A Stop command does not reset the reference to zero. The reference is stored. Changing the control source (EXT1 to EXT2, EXT2 to EXT1) does not copy the reference.				
1104	REF1 MIN Sets the minimum for external reference 1. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The minimum analog input signal (as a percent of the full signal in volts or amps) corresponds to REF1 MIN in Hz/ rpm. Parameter 1301 MINIMUM AI1 or 1304 MINIMUM AI2 sets the minimum analog input signal. These parameters (reference and analog min. and max. settings) provide scale and offset adjustment for the reference. 	0.0...500.0 Hz 0...30000 rpm	0.1 Hz 1 rpm	0.0 Hz 0 rpm	
1105	REF1 MAX Sets the maximum for external reference 1. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The maximum analog input signal (as a percent of full the signal in volts or amps) corresponds to REF1 MAX in Hz/ rpm. Parameter 1302 MAXIMUM AI1 or 1305 MAXIMUM AI2 sets the maximum analog input signal. 	0.0...500.0 Hz 0...30000 rpm	0.1 Hz 1 rpm	60.0 Hz (US) 1800 rpm (US)	
1106	REF2 SELECT Selects the signal source for external reference REF2. 0...17 – Same as for parameter 1103 REF1 SELECT. 19 = PID1OUT – The reference is taken from the PID1 output. See Groups 40 and 41.	0...19	1	19	✓
1107	REF2 MIN Sets the minimum for external reference 2. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The minimum analog input signal (in volts or amps) corresponds to REF2 MIN in %. Parameter 1301 MINIMUM AI1 or 1304 MINIMUM AI2 sets the minimum analog input signal. This parameter sets the minimum frequency reference. The value is a percentage of the: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> maximum frequency or speed maximum process reference nominal torque 	0.0...100.0% (torque: 0...600%)	0.1%	0.0%	

Group 11: Reference Select					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
1108	REF2 MAX	0.0...100.0% (torque: 0...600%)	0.1%	100.0%	S
	Sets the maximum for external reference 2. <ul style="list-style-type: none">• The maximum analog input signal (in volts or amps) corresponds to REF2 MAX in %.• Parameter 1302 MAXIMUM AI1 or 1305 MAXIMUM AI2 sets the maximum analog input signal.• This parameter sets the maximum frequency reference.• The value is a percentage of the:<ul style="list-style-type: none">– maximum frequency or speed– maximum process reference– nominal torque				

Group 12: Constant Speeds

This group defines a set of constant speeds. In general:

- You can program up to 7 constant speeds, ranging from 0...500 Hz or 0...30000 rpm.
- Values must be positive (No negative speed values for constant speeds).
- Constant speed selections are ignored if:
 - the torque control is active, or
 - the process PID reference is followed, or
 - the drive is in local control mode, or
 - PFA (Pump and Fan Alternation) is active

Note! Parameter 1208 CONST SPEED 7 acts also as a so-called fault speed which may be activated if the control signal is lost. For example, see parameters 3001 AI<MIN FUNCTION, 3002 PANEL COMM ERROR and 3018 COMM FAULT FUNC.

Group 12: Constant Speeds																				
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S															
1201	CONST SPEED SEL Defines the digital inputs used to select Constant Speeds. See general comments in the introduction. 0 = NOT SEL – Disables the constant speed function. 1 = DI1 – Selects Constant Speed 1 with digital input DI1. • Digital input activated = Constant Speed 1 activated. 2...6 = DI2...DI6 – Selects Constant Speed 1 with digital input DI2...DI6. See above. 7 = DI1,2 – Selects one of three Constant Speeds (1...3) using DI1 and DI2. • Uses two digital inputs, as defined below (0 = DI de-activated, 1 = DI activated): <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>DI1</th> <th>DI2</th> <th>Function</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>No constant speed</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>Constant speed 1 (1202)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>Constant speed 2 (1203)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>Constant speed 3 (1204)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> • Can be set up as a so-called fault speed, which is activated if the control signal is lost. Refer to parameter 3001 AI<MIN function and parameter 3002 PANEL COMM ERR. 8 = DI2,3 – Selects one of three Constant Speeds (1...3) using DI2 and DI3. • See above (DI1,2) for code. 9 = DI3,4 – Selects one of three Constant Speeds (1...3) using DI3 and DI4. • See above (DI1,2) for code. 10 = DI4,5 – Selects one of three Constant Speeds (1...3) using DI4 and DI5. • See above (DI1,2) for code. 11 = DI5,6 – Selects one of three Constant Speeds (1...3) using DI5 and DI6. • See above (DI1,2) for code.	DI1	DI2	Function	0	0	No constant speed	1	0	Constant speed 1 (1202)	0	1	Constant speed 2 (1203)	1	1	Constant speed 3 (1204)	-14 ...19	1	3	✓
DI1	DI2	Function																		
0	0	No constant speed																		
1	0	Constant speed 1 (1202)																		
0	1	Constant speed 2 (1203)																		
1	1	Constant speed 3 (1204)																		

Group 12: Constant Speeds																																							
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default																																			
12	<p>D11,2,3 – Selects one of seven Constant Speeds (1...7) using D11, D12 and D13.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Uses three digital inputs, as defined below (0 = DI de-activated, 1 = DI activated): <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>D11</th> <th>D12</th> <th>D13</th> <th>Function</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>No constant speed</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>Constant speed 1 (1202)</td></tr> <tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>Constant speed 2 (1203)</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>Constant speed 3 (1204)</td></tr> <tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>Constant speed 4 (1205)</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>Constant speed 5 (1206)</td></tr> <tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>Constant speed 6 (1207)</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>Constant speed 7 (1208)</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	D11	D12	D13	Function	0	0	0	No constant speed	1	0	0	Constant speed 1 (1202)	0	1	0	Constant speed 2 (1203)	1	1	0	Constant speed 3 (1204)	0	0	1	Constant speed 4 (1205)	1	0	1	Constant speed 5 (1206)	0	1	1	Constant speed 6 (1207)	1	1	1	Constant speed 7 (1208)		S
D11	D12	D13	Function																																				
0	0	0	No constant speed																																				
1	0	0	Constant speed 1 (1202)																																				
0	1	0	Constant speed 2 (1203)																																				
1	1	0	Constant speed 3 (1204)																																				
0	0	1	Constant speed 4 (1205)																																				
1	0	1	Constant speed 5 (1206)																																				
0	1	1	Constant speed 6 (1207)																																				
1	1	1	Constant speed 7 (1208)																																				
13	<p>D13,4,5 – Selects one of seven Constant Speeds (1...7) using D13, D14 and D15.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • See above (D11,2,3) for code. 																																						
14	<p>D14,5,6 – Selects one of seven Constant Speeds (1...7) using D15, D16 and D17.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • See above (D11,2,3) for code. 																																						
15...18	<p>TIMER 1...4 – Specifies the timer used to select a Constant Speed as the reference. The reference selection depends on the state of the selected timer, and the value of 1209 TIMED MODE SEL. See table. To enable and set timers, see Group 36, Timer Functions.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>1201 =</th> <th>15</th> <th>16</th> <th>17</th> <th>18</th> <th colspan="2">Reference</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Timer:</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> <td>3</td> <td>4</td> <td>1209 = 1</td> <td>1209 = 2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Timer State</td> <td colspan="4">0</td> <td>External reference</td> <td>Constant Speed 1</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td colspan="4">1</td> <td>Constant Speed 1</td> <td>Constant Speed 2</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	1201 =	15	16	17	18	Reference		Timer:	1	2	3	4	1209 = 1	1209 = 2	Timer State	0				External reference	Constant Speed 1		1				Constant Speed 1	Constant Speed 2										
1201 =	15	16	17	18	Reference																																		
Timer:	1	2	3	4	1209 = 1	1209 = 2																																	
Timer State	0				External reference	Constant Speed 1																																	
	1				Constant Speed 1	Constant Speed 2																																	
15...18	<p>TIMER FUNCTION 1...4 – Selects Constant speed 1 when Timer Function is active. See Group 36, Timer Functions.</p>																																						
19	<p>TIMER 1 & 2 – Selects a constant depending on the state of Timers 1 & 2. See parameter 1209.</p>																																						
-1	<p>D11(INV) – Selects Constant Speed 1 with digital input D11.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Inverse operation: Digital input de-activated = Constant Speed 1 activated. 																																						
-2...-6	<p>D12(INV)...D16(INV) – Selects Constant Speed 1 with digital input. See above.</p>																																						
-7	<p>D11,2(INV) – Selects one of three Constant Speeds (1...3) using D11 and D12.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Inverse operation uses two digital inputs, as defined below (0 = DI de-activated, 1 = DI activated): <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>D11</th> <th>D12</th> <th>Function</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>No constant speed</td></tr> <tr><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>Constant speed 1 (1202)</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>Constant speed 2 (1203)</td></tr> <tr><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>Constant speed 3 (1204)</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	D11	D12	Function	1	1	No constant speed	0	1	Constant speed 1 (1202)	1	0	Constant speed 2 (1203)	0	0	Constant speed 3 (1204)																							
D11	D12	Function																																					
1	1	No constant speed																																					
0	1	Constant speed 1 (1202)																																					
1	0	Constant speed 2 (1203)																																					
0	0	Constant speed 3 (1204)																																					
-8	<p>D12,3(INV) – Selects one of three Constant Speeds (1...3) using D12 and D13.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • See above (D11,2(INV)) for code. 																																						
-9	<p>D13,4(INV) – Selects one of three Constant Speeds (1...3) using D13 and D14.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • See above (D11,2(INV)) for code. 																																						
-10	<p>D14,5(INV) – Selects one of three Constant Speeds (1...3) using D14 and D15.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • See above (D11,2(INV)) for code. 																																						
-11	<p>D15,6(INV) – Selects one of three Constant Speeds (1...3) using D15 and D16.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • See above (D11,2(INV)) for code. 																																						

Group 12: Constant Speeds					S																																				
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default																																					
	-12 = DI1,2,3(INV) – Selects one of seven Constant Speeds (1...7) using DI1, DI2 and DI3. • Inverse operation uses three digital inputs, as defined below (0 = DI de-activated, 1 = DI activated):																																								
	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>DI1</th> <th>DI2</th> <th>DI3</th> <th>Function</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>No constant speed</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>Constant speed 1 (1202)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>Constant speed 2 (1203)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>Constant speed 3 (1204)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>Constant speed 4 (1205)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>Constant speed 5 (1206)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>Constant speed 6 (1207)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>Constant speed 7 (1208)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>					DI1	DI2	DI3	Function	1	1	1	No constant speed	0	1	1	Constant speed 1 (1202)	1	0	1	Constant speed 2 (1203)	0	0	1	Constant speed 3 (1204)	1	1	0	Constant speed 4 (1205)	0	1	0	Constant speed 5 (1206)	1	0	0	Constant speed 6 (1207)	0	0	0	Constant speed 7 (1208)
DI1	DI2	DI3	Function																																						
1	1	1	No constant speed																																						
0	1	1	Constant speed 1 (1202)																																						
1	0	1	Constant speed 2 (1203)																																						
0	0	1	Constant speed 3 (1204)																																						
1	1	0	Constant speed 4 (1205)																																						
0	1	0	Constant speed 5 (1206)																																						
1	0	0	Constant speed 6 (1207)																																						
0	0	0	Constant speed 7 (1208)																																						
	-13 = DI3,4,5(INV) – Selects one of seven Constant Speeds (1...3) using DI3, DI4 and DI5. • See above (DI1,2,3(INV)) for code.																																								
	-14 = DI4,5,6(INV) – Selects one of seven Constant Speeds (1...3) using DI4, DI5 and DI6. • See above (DI1,2,3(INV)) for code.																																								
1202	CONST SPEED 1	0...30000 rpm / 0.0...500.0 Hz	1 rpm / 0.1 Hz	360 (US)/ 6.0 (US)																																					
	Sets value for Constant Speed 1. • The range and units depend on parameter 9904 MOTOR CTRL MODE. • Range: 0...30000 rpm when 9904 = 1 (VECTOR: SPEED). • Range: 0...500 Hz when 9904 = 3 (SCALAR: FREQ).																																								
1203	CONST SPEED 2	0...30000 rpm / 0.0...500.0 Hz	1 rpm / 0.1 Hz	360 (US)/ 12.0 (US)																																					
	Sets a value for a Constant Speed. (See CONST SPEED 1 above.)																																								
1204	CONST SPEED 3	0...30000 rpm / 0.0...500.0 Hz	1 rpm / 0.1 Hz	720 (US)/ 18.0 (US)																																					
1205	CONST SPEED 3	0...30000 rpm / 0.0...500.0 Hz	1 rpm / 0.1 Hz	1080 (US)/ 18.0 (US)																																					
	Sets a value for a Constant Speed. (See CONST SPEED 1 above.)																																								
1206	CONST SPEED 3	0...30000 rpm / 0.0...500.0 Hz	1 rpm / 0.1 Hz	1440 (US)/ 24.0 (US)																																					
	Sets a value for a Constant Speed. (See CONST SPEED 1 above.)																																								
1207	CONST SPEED 3	0...30000 rpm / 0.0...500.0 Hz	1 rpm / 0.1 Hz	1800 (US)/ 30.0 (US)																																					
	Sets a value for a Constant Speed. (See CONST SPEED 1 above.)																																								
1208	CONST SPEED 3	0...30000 rpm / 0.0...500.0 Hz	1 rpm / 0.1 Hz	2880 (US)/ 48.0 (US)																																					
	Sets a value for a Constant Speed. (See CONST SPEED 1 above.)																																								

Group 12: Constant Speeds																			
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default															
1209	TIMED MODE SEL	1...2	1	2															
	Defines timer activated, constant speed mode. Timer can be used to change between external reference and a maximum of three constant speeds, or to change between a maximum of 4 selectable speeds, i.e. constant speeds 1,2,3 and 4.																		
	1 = EXT/cs1/2/3 – Selects an external speed when no timer is active, selects Constant speed 1 when Timer 1 is active, Selects Constant speed 2 when Timer 2 is active and selects Constant speed 3 when both Timers 1 and 2 are active.																		
	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>TIMER1</th> <th>TIMER2</th> <th>Function</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>External reference</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>Constant speed 1 (1202)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>Constant speed 2 (1203)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>Constant speed 3 (1204)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	TIMER1	TIMER2	Function	0	0	External reference	1	0	Constant speed 1 (1202)	0	1	Constant speed 2 (1203)	1	1	Constant speed 3 (1204)			
TIMER1	TIMER2	Function																	
0	0	External reference																	
1	0	Constant speed 1 (1202)																	
0	1	Constant speed 2 (1203)																	
1	1	Constant speed 3 (1204)																	
	2 = cs1/2/3/4 – Selects Constant speed 1 when no timer is active, selects Constant speed 2 when Timer 1 is active, selects Constant speed 3 when Timer 2 is active, selects Constant speed 4 when both timers are active.																		
	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>TIMER1</th> <th>TIMER2</th> <th>Function</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0</td> <td>Constant speed 1 (1202)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0</td> <td>Constant speed 2 (1203)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>1</td> <td>Constant speed 3 (1204)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1</td> <td>Constant speed 4 (1205)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	TIMER1	TIMER2	Function	0	0	Constant speed 1 (1202)	1	0	Constant speed 2 (1203)	0	1	Constant speed 3 (1204)	1	1	Constant speed 4 (1205)			
TIMER1	TIMER2	Function																	
0	0	Constant speed 1 (1202)																	
1	0	Constant speed 2 (1203)																	
0	1	Constant speed 3 (1204)																	
1	1	Constant speed 4 (1205)																	

Group 13: Analog Inputs

This group defines the limits and the filtering for analog inputs.

Group 13: Analog Inputs					S
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	
1301	MINIMUM AI1 Defines the minimum value of the analog input. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Define value as a percent of the full analog signal range. See example below. The minimum analog input signal corresponds to 1104 REF1 MIN or 1107 REF2 MIN. MINIMUM AI cannot be greater than MAXIMUM AI. These parameters (reference and analog min. and max. settings) provide scale and offset adjustment for the reference. See figure at parameter 1104. Example. To set the minimum analog input value to 4 mA: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Configure the analog input for 0...20 mA current signal. Calculate the minimum (4 mA) as a percent of full range (20 mA) = 4 mA / 20 mA * 100% = 20% 	0.0...100.0%	0.1%	20.0%	
1302	MAXIMUM AI1 Defines the maximum value of the analog input. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Define value as a percent of the full analog signal range. The maximum analog input signal corresponds to 1105 REF1 MAX or 1108 REF2 MAX. See figure at parameter 1104. 	0.0...100.0%	0.1%	100.0%	
1303	FILTER AI1 Defines the filter time constant for analog input 1 (AI1). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The filtered signal reaches 63% of a step change within the time specified. 	0.0...10.0 s	0.1 s	0.1 s	
1304	MINIMUM AI2 Defines the minimum value of the analog input. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> See MINIMUM AI1 above. 	0.0...100.0%	0.1%	20.0%	
1305	MAXIMUM AI2 Defines the maximum value of the analog input. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> See MAXIMUM AI1 above. 	0.0...100.0%	0.1%	100.0%	
1306	FILTER AI2 Defines the filter time constant for analog input 2 (AI2). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> See FILTER AI1 above. 	0.0...10.0 s	0.1 s	0.1 s	

Group 14: Relay Outputs

This group defines the condition that activates each of the relay outputs.

Group 14: Relay Outputs				
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default
1401	RELAY OUTPUT 1	0...45	1	1
	<p>Defines the event or condition that activates relay 1 – what relay output 1 means.</p> <p>0 = NOT SEL – Relay is not used and is de-energized.</p> <p>1 = READY – Energize relay when drive is ready to function. Requires:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Run enable signal present. • No faults exist. • Supply voltage is within range. • Emergency Stop command is not on. <p>2 = RUN – Energize relay when the drive is running.</p> <p>3 = FAULT (-1) – Energize relay when power is applied. De-energizes when a fault occurs.</p> <p>4 = FAULT – Energize relay when a fault is active.</p> <p>5 = ALARM – Energize relay when an alarm is active.</p> <p>6 = REVERSED – Energize relay when motor rotates in reverse direction.</p> <p>7 = STARTED – Energize relay when drive receives a start command (even if Run Enable signal is not present). De-energized relay when drive receives a stop command or a fault occurs.</p> <p>8 = SUPRV1 OVER – Energize relay when first supervised parameter (3201) exceeds the limit (3203).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • See "Group 32: Supervision" starting on page 111. <p>9 = suprv1 under – Energize relay when first supervised parameter (3201) drops below the limit (3202).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • See "Group 32: Supervision" starting on page 111. <p>10 = suprv2 over – Energize relay when second supervised parameter (3204) exceeds the limit (3206).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • See "Group 32: Supervision" starting on page 111. <p>11 = suprv2 under – Energize relay when second supervised parameter (3204) drops below the limit (3205).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • See "Group 32: Supervision" starting on page 111. <p>12 = suprv3 over – Energize relay when third supervised parameter (3207) exceeds the limit (3209).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • See "Group 32: Supervision" starting on page 111. <p>13 = suprv3 under – Energize relay when third supervised parameter (3207) drops below the limit (3208).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • See "Group 32: Supervision" starting on page 111. <p>14 = AT SET POINT – Energize relay when the output frequency is equal to the reference frequency.</p> <p>15 = FAULT (RST) – Energize relay when the drive is in a fault condition and will reset after the programmed auto-reset delay.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • See parameter 3103 delay time. <p>16 = FLT/ALARM – Energize relay when fault or alarm occurs.</p> <p>17 = EXT CTRL – Energize relay when external control is selected.</p> <p>18 = REF 2 SEL – Energize relay when EXT2 is selected.</p> <p>19 = CONST FREQ – Energize relay when a constant speed is selected.</p> <p>20 = REF LOSS – Energize relay when reference or active control place is lost.</p> <p>21 = OVERCURRENT – Energize relay when an overcurrent alarm or fault occurs.</p> <p>22 = OVERVOLTAGE – Energize relay when an overvoltage alarm or fault occurs.</p> <p>23 = DRIVE TEMP – Energize relay when a drive overtemperature alarm or fault occurs.</p> <p>24 = UNDERVOLTAGE – Energize relay when an undervoltage alarm or fault occurs.</p> <p>25 = AI1 LOSS – Energize relay when AI1 signal is lost.</p> <p>26 = AI2 LOSS – Energize relay when AI2 signal is lost.</p> <p>27 = MOTOR TEMP – Energize relay when a motor overtemperature alarm or fault occurs.</p> <p>28 = STALL – Energize relay when a stall alarm or fault exists.</p> <p>30 = PID SLEEP – Energize relay when the PID sleep function is active.</p> <p>31 = PFA – Use relay to start/stop motor in PFA control (See Group 81: PFA Control).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use this option only when PFA control is used. • Selection activated / deactivated when drive is not running. <p>32 = AUTOCHANGE – Energize relay when PFA autochange operation is performed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use this option only when PFA control is used. <p>33 = FLUX READY – Energize relay when the motor is magnetized and able to supply nominal torque (motor has reached nominal magnetizing).</p> <p>34 = USER S2 – Energize relay when User Parameter Set 2 is active.</p>			

Group 14: Relay Outputs																																																																							
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S																																																																		
	35 = COMM – Energize relay based on input from fieldbus communication. • Fieldbus writes binary code in parameter 0134 that can energizes relay 1...relay 6 according to the following:																																																																						
	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Par. 0134</th> <th>Binary</th> <th>RO6</th> <th>RO5</th> <th>RO4</th> <th>RO3</th> <th>RO2</th> <th>RO1</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>0</td><td>000000</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>000001</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>000010</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>000011</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td></tr> <tr><td>4</td><td>000100</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td></tr> <tr><td>5...62</td><td>...</td><td>...</td><td>...</td><td>...</td><td>...</td><td>...</td><td>...</td></tr> <tr><td>63</td><td>111111</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Par. 0134	Binary	RO6	RO5	RO4	RO3	RO2	RO1	0	000000	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	000001	0	0	0	0	0	1	2	000010	0	0	0	0	1	0	3	000011	0	0	0	0	1	1	4	000100	0	0	0	1	0	0	5...62	63	111111	1	1	1	1	1	1						
Par. 0134	Binary	RO6	RO5	RO4	RO3	RO2	RO1																																																																
0	000000	0	0	0	0	0	0																																																																
1	000001	0	0	0	0	0	1																																																																
2	000010	0	0	0	0	1	0																																																																
3	000011	0	0	0	0	1	1																																																																
4	000100	0	0	0	1	0	0																																																																
5...62																																																																
63	111111	1	1	1	1	1	1																																																																
	• 0 = De-energize relay, 1 = Energize relay.																																																																						
	36 = COMM(-1) – Energize relay based on input from fieldbus communication. • Fieldbus writes binary code in parameter 0134 that can energizes relay 1...relay 6 according to the following:																																																																						
	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Par. 0134</th> <th>Binary</th> <th>RO6</th> <th>RO5</th> <th>RO4</th> <th>RO3</th> <th>RO2</th> <th>RO1</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>0</td><td>000000</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td></tr> <tr><td>1</td><td>000001</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>000010</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>000011</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>0</td></tr> <tr><td>4</td><td>000100</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td></tr> <tr><td>5...62</td><td>...</td><td>...</td><td>...</td><td>...</td><td>...</td><td>...</td><td>...</td></tr> <tr><td>63</td><td>111111</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Par. 0134	Binary	RO6	RO5	RO4	RO3	RO2	RO1	0	000000	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	000001	1	1	1	1	1	0	2	000010	1	1	1	1	0	1	3	000011	1	1	1	1	0	0	4	000100	1	1	1	0	1	1	5...62	63	111111	0	0	0	0	0	0						
Par. 0134	Binary	RO6	RO5	RO4	RO3	RO2	RO1																																																																
0	000000	1	1	1	1	1	1																																																																
1	000001	1	1	1	1	1	0																																																																
2	000010	1	1	1	1	0	1																																																																
3	000011	1	1	1	1	0	0																																																																
4	000100	1	1	1	0	1	1																																																																
5...62																																																																
63	111111	0	0	0	0	0	0																																																																
	• 0 = De-energize relay, 1 = Energize relay.																																																																						
	37 = TIMER 1 – Energize relay when timer 1 is activated. See Group 36, Timer Functions.																																																																						
	38...40 = TIMER 2...4 – Energize relay when Timer 2...4 is active. See Timer 1 above.																																																																						
	41 = M.TRIG FAN – Energize relay when cooling fan counter is triggered. See group 29, Maintenance Trig.																																																																						
	42 = M.TRIG REV – Energize relay when revolutions counter is triggered. See group 29, Maintenance Trig.																																																																						
	43 = M. TRIG RUN – Energize relay when run time counter is triggered. See group 29, Maintenance Trig.																																																																						
	44 = M.TRIG MWH – Energize relay when power consumption counter is triggered. See group 29, Maintenance Trig.																																																																						
	45 = OVERRIDE – Energize relay when override is activated.																																																																						
	47 = USER LOAD C – Energize relay when a user load curve fault or alarm occurs..																																																																						
1402	RELAY OUTPUT 2	0...45	1	2																																																																			
	Defines the event or condition that activates relay 2 – what relay output 2 means. • See 1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1.																																																																						
1403	RELAY OUTPUT 3	0...45	1	3																																																																			
	Defines the event or condition that activates relay 3 – what relay output 3 means. • See 1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1.																																																																						
1404	RO 1 ON DELAY	0.0...3600.0 s	0.1 s	0.0 s																																																																			
	Defines the switch-on delay for relay 1. • On / off delays are ignored when relay output 1401 is set to PFA.																																																																						
1405	RO 1 OFF DELAY	0.0...3600.0 s	0.1 s	0.0 s																																																																			
	Defines the switch-off delay for relay 1. • On / off delays are ignored when relay output 1401 is set to PFA.																																																																						

Group 14: Relay Outputs					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
1406	RO 2 ON DELAY Defines the switch-on delay for relay 2. • See RO 1 ON DELAY.	0.0...3600.0 s	0.1 s	0.0 s	
1407	RO 2 OFF DELAY Defines the switch-off delay for relay 2. • See RO 1 OFF DELAY.	0.0...3600.0 s	0.1 s	0.0 s	
1408	RO 3 ON DELAY Defines the switch-on delay for relay 3. • See RO 1 ON DELAY.	0.0...3600.0 s	0.1 s	0.0 s	
1409	RO 3 OFF DELAY Switch-off delay for relay 3. • See RO 1 OFF DELAY.	0.0...3600.0 s	0.1 s	0.0 s	
1410... 1412	RELAY OUTPUT 4...6 Defines the event or condition that activates relay 4...6 – what relay output 4...6 means. • See 1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1.	0...45	1	0	
1413	RO 4 ON DELAY Defines the switch-on delay for relay 4. • See RO 1 ON DELAY.	0.0...3600.0 s	0.1 s	0.0 s	
1414	RO 4 OFF DELAY Defines the switch-off delay for relay 4. • See RO 1 OFF DELAY.	0.0...3600.0 s	0.1 s	0.0 s	
1415	RO 5 ON DELAY Defines the switch-on delay for relay 5. • See RO 1 ON DELAY.	0.0...3600.0 s	0.1 s	0.0 s	
1416	RO 5 OFF DELAY Defines the switch-off delay for relay 5. • See RO 1 OFF DELAY.	0.0...3600.0 s	0.1 s	0.0 s	
1417	RO 6 ON DELAY Defines the switch-on delay for relay 6. • See RO 1 ON DELAY.	0.0...3600.0 s	0.1 s	0.0 s	
1418	RO 6 OFF DELAY Defines the switch-off delay for relay 6. • See RO 1 OFF DELAY.	0.0...3600.0 s	0.1 s	0.0 s	

Group 15: Analog Outputs

This group defines the drive's analog (current signal) outputs. The drive's analog outputs can be:

- Any parameter of the Operating Data group (Group 01).
- Limited to programmable minimum and maximum values of output current.
- Scaled (and/or inverted) by defining the minimum and maximum values of the source parameter (or content). Defining an maximum value (parameter 1503 or 1509) that is less than the content minimum value (parameter 1502 or 1508) results in an inverted output.
- Filtered

Group 15: Analog Outputs					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
1501	AO1 CONTENT SEL Defines the content for analog output AO1. 99 = EXCITE PTC – Provides a current source for sensor type PTC. Output = 1.6 mA. See Group 35. 100 = EXCITE PT100 – Provides a current source for sensor type Pt100. Output = 9.1 mA. See Group 35. 101...145 – Output corresponds to a parameter in the Operating Data group (Group 01). • Parameter defined by value (value 102 = parameter 0102) 146...199 – Not assigned.	99...199	1	103	
1502	AO1 CONTENT MIN Sets the minimum content value. • Content is the parameter selected by parameter 1501. • Minimum value refers to the minimum content value that will be converted to an analog output. • These parameters (content and current min. and max. settings) provide scale and offset adjustment for the output. See figure.	Depends on selection	-	0.0 Hz	
1503	AO1 CONTENT MAX Sets the maximum content value. • Content is the parameter selected by parameter 1501. • Maximum value refers to the maximum content value that will be converted to an analog output.	Depends on selection	-	60.0 Hz	
1504	MINIMUM AO1 Sets the minimum output current.	0.0...20.0 mA	0.1 mA	4.0 mA	
1505	MAXIMUM AO1 Sets the maximum output current.	0.0...20.0 mA	0.1 mA	20.0 mA	

Group 15: Analog Outputs				
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default
1506	FILTER AO1 Defines the filter time constant for AO1. • The filtered signal reaches 63% of a step change within the time specified. • See figure in parameter 1303.	0...10 s	0.1 s	0.1 s
1507	AO2 CONTENT SEL Defines the content for analog output AO2. See AO1 CONTENT above.	99...199	1	104
1508	AO2 CONTENT MIN Sets the minimum content value. See AO1CONTENT MIN above.	Depends on selection	-	0.0 A
1509	AO2 CONTENT MAX Sets the maximum content value. See AO1 CONTENT MAX above.	Depends on selection	-	4.6 A
1510	MINIMUM AO2 Sets the minimum output current. See MINIMUM AO1 above.	0.0...20.0 mA	0.1 mA	4.0 mA
1511	MAXIMUM AO2 Sets the maximum output current. See MAXIMUM AO1 above.	0.0...20.0 mA	0.1 mA	20.0 mA
1512	FILTER AO2 Defines the filter time constant for AO2. See FILTER AO1 above.	0.0...10.0 s	0.1 s	0.1 s

Group 16: System Controls

This group defines a variety of system level locks, resets and enables.

Group 16: System Controls					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
1601	RUN ENABLE Selects the source of the run enable signal. 0 = NOT SEL – Allows the drive to start without an external run enable signal. 1 = DI1 – Defines digital input DI1 as the run enable signal. • This digital input must be activated for run enable. • If the voltage drops and de-activates this digital input, the drive will coast to stop and not start until the run enable signal resumes. 2...6 = DI2...DI6 – Defines digital input DI2...DI6 as the run enable signal. • See DI1 above. 7 = COMM – Assigns the fieldbus Command Word as the source for the run enable signal. • Bit 6 of the Command Word 1 (parameter 0301) activates the run disable signal. • See fieldbus user's manual for detailed instructions. -1 = DI1(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI1 as the run enable signal. • This digital input must be de-activated for run enable. • If this digital input activates, the drive will coast to stop and not start until the run enable signal resumes. -2...-6 = DI2(INV)...DI6(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI2...DI6 as the run enable signal. • See DI1(INV) above.	-6...7	1	0	✓
1602	PARAMETER LOCK Determines if the control panel can change parameter values. • This lock does not limit parameter changes made by macros. • This lock does not limit parameter changes written by fieldbus inputs. • This parameter value can be changed only if the correct pass code is entered. See parameter 1603, PASS CODE. 0 = LOCKED – You cannot use the control panel to change parameter values. • The lock can be opened by entering the valid pass code to parameter 1603. 1 = OPEN – You can use the control panel to change parameter values. 2 = NOT SAVED – You can use the control panel to change parameter values, but they are not stored in permanent memory. • Set parameter 1607 PARAM SAVE to 1 (SAVE) to store changed parameter values to memory.	0...2	1	1	
1603	PASS CODE Entering the correct pass code allows you to change the parameter lock. • See parameter 1602 above. • The code 358 allows you to change the value of the parameter 1602 once. • This entry reverts back to 0 automatically.	0...65535	1	0	
1604	FAULT RESET SEL Selects the source for the fault reset signal. The signal resets the drive after a fault trip if the cause of the fault no longer exists. 0 = KEYPAD – Defines the control panel as the only fault reset source. • Fault reset is always possible with control panel. 1 = DI1 – Defines digital input DI1 as a fault reset source. • Activating the digital input resets the drive. 2...6 = DI2...DI6 – Defines digital input DI2...DI6 as a fault reset source. • See DI1 above. 7 = START/STOP – Defines the Stop command as a fault reset source. • Do not use this option when fieldbus communication provides the start, stop and direction commands. 8 = COMM – Defines the fieldbus as a fault reset source. • The Command Word is supplied through fieldbus communication. • The bit 4 of the Command Word 1 (parameter 0301) resets the drive. -1 = DI1(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI1 as a fault reset source. • De-activating the digital input resets the drive. -2...-6 = DI2(INV)...DI6(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI2...DI6 as a fault reset source. • See DI1(INV) above.	-6...8	1	0	

Group 16: System Controls					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
1605	<p>USER PAR SET CHG</p> <p>Defines control for changing the user parameter set.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> See parameter 9902 (APPLIC MACRO). The drive must be stopped to change User Parameter Sets. During a change, the drive will not start. <p>Note: Always save the User Parameter Set after changing any parameter settings, or performing a motor identification.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Whenever the power is cycled, or parameter 9902 (APPLIC MACRO) is changed, the drive loads the last settings saved. Any unsaved changes to a user parameter set are lost. <p>Note: The value of this parameter (1605) is not included in the User Parameter Sets, and does not change if User Parameter Sets change.</p> <p>Note: You can use a relay output to supervise the selection of User Parameter Set 2.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> See parameter 1401. <p>0 = NOT SEL – Defines the control panel (using parameter 9902) as the only control for changing User Parameter Sets.</p> <p>1 = DI1 – Defines digital input DI1 as a control for changing User Parameter Sets.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The drive loads User Parameter Set 1 on the falling edge of the digital input. The drive loads User Parameter Set 2 on the rising edge of the digital input. The User Parameter Set changes only when the drive is stopped. <p>2...6 = DI2...DI6 – Defines digital input DI2...DI6 as a control for changing User Parameter Sets.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> See DI1 above. <p>-1 = DI1(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI1 as a control for changing User Parameter Sets.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The drive loads User Parameter Set 1 on the rising edge of the digital input. The drive loads User Parameter Set 2 on the falling edge of the digital input. The User Parameter Set changes only when the drive is stopped. <p>-2...-6 = DI2(INV)...DI6(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI2...DI6 as a control for changing User Parameter Sets.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> See DI1(INV) above. 	-6...6	1	0	S
1606	<p>LOCAL LOCK</p> <p>Defines control for the use of the HAND mode. The HAND mode allows drive control from the control panel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When LOCAL LOCK is active, the control panel cannot change to HAND mode. <p>0 = NOT SEL – Disables the lock. The control panel can select HAND and control the drive.</p> <p>1 = DI1 – Defines digital input DI1 as the control for setting the local lock.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Activating the digital input locks out local control. De-activating the digital input enable the HAND selection. <p>2...6 = DI2...DI6 – Defines digital input DI2...DI6 as the control for setting the local lock.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> See DI1 above. <p>7 = ON – Sets the lock. The control panel cannot select HAND, and cannot control the drive.</p> <p>8 = COMM – Defines bit 14 of the Command Word 1 as the control for setting the local lock.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Command Word is supplied through fieldbus communication. The Command Word is 0301. <p>-1 = DI1(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI1 as the control for setting the local lock.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> De-activating the digital input locks out local control. Activating the digital input enable the HAND selection. <p>-2...-6 = DI2(INV)...DI6(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI2...DI6 as the control for setting the local lock.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> See DI1(INV) above. 	-6...8	1	0	
1607	<p>PARAM. SAVE</p> <p>Saves all altered parameters to permanent memory.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Parameters altered through a fieldbus are not automatically saved to permanent memory. To save, you must use this parameter. If 1602 PARAMETER LOCK = 2 (NOT SAVED), parameters altered from the control panel are not saved. To save, you must use this parameter. If 1602 PARAMETER LOCK = 1 (OPEN), parameters altered from the control panel are stored immediately to permanent memory. <p>0 = DONE – Value changes automatically when all parameters are saved.</p> <p>1 = SAVE – Saves altered parameters to permanent memory.</p>	0, 1	1	0	

Group 16: System Controls					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
1608	<p>START ENABLE 1</p> <p>Selects the source of the start enable 1 signal. Note: Start enable functionality differs from the run enable functionality.</p> <p>0 = NOT SEL – Allows the drive to start without an external start enable signal. 1 = DI1 – Defines digital input DI1 as the start enable 1 signal. – This digital input must be activated for start enable 1 signal. – If the voltage drops and de-activates this digital input, the drive will coast to stop and show alarm 2021 on panel display. The drive will not start until start enable 1 signal resumes.</p> <p>2...6 = DI2...DI6 – Defines digital input DI2...DI6 as the start enable 1 signal. – See DI1 above.</p> <p>7 = COMM – Assigns the fieldbus Command Word as the source for the start enable 1 signal. – Bit 2 of the Command word 2 (parameter 0302) activates the start disable 1 signal. – See fieldbus user's manual for detailed instructions.</p> <p>(-1) = DI1(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI1 as the start enable 1 signal. (-2)...(-6) = DI2(INV)...DI6(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI2...DI6 as the start enable 1 signal. – See DI1(INV) above.</p>	-6...7	1	4	S

The diagram illustrates the timing sequence for damper operation. It shows the relationship between several signals and time intervals:

- Drive Started:** A step function that transitions from low to high.
- START/STOP COMMAND (Par Group 10):** A step function that transitions from low to high.
- START ENABLE SIGNAL (Params. 1608 & 1609):** A step function that transitions from low to high.
- Relay De-energized:** A step function that transitions from high to low.
- Relay Energized:** A step function that transitions from low to high.
- STARTED RELAY STATUS (Par Group 14):** A step function that transitions from low to high.
- Damper Closed:** A signal that transitions from high to low.
- Damper Open:** A signal that transitions from low to high.
- DAMPER STATUS:** A signal that transitions from low to high.
- RUN ENABLE SIGNAL from the damper end switch when the damper is fully opened. (Parameter 1601):** A signal that transitions from low to high.
- MOTOR STATUS:** A signal that transitions from low to high.

Time intervals are marked with double-headed arrows:

- Damper Opening Time:** The duration from the start of the damper opening signal to the point where the damper is fully open.
- Acceleration Time (Par 2202):** The duration from the start of the motor status signal to the point where the motor is fully accelerated.
- Deceleration Time (Par 2203):** The duration from the point where the motor is fully decelerated to the end of the motor status signal.
- Damper Closing Time:** The duration from the point where the damper is fully closed to the end of the damper closing signal.

Group 16: System Controls					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
1609	START ENABLE 2 Selects the source of the start enable 2 signal. Note: Start enable functionality differs from the run enable functionality. 0 = NOT SEL – Allows the drive to start without an external start enable signal. 1 = DI1 – Defines digital input DI1 as the start enable 2 signal. This digital input must be activated for start enable 2 signal. If the voltage drops and de-activates this digital input, the drive will coast to stop and show alarm 2022 on panel display. The drive will not start until start enable 2 signal resumes. 2...6 = DI2...DI6 – Defines digital input DI2...DI6 as the start enable 2 signal. See DI1 above. 7 = COMM – Assigns the fieldbus Command Word as the source for the start enable 2 signal. Bit 3 of the Command word 2 (parameter 0302) activates the start disable 2 signal. See fieldbus user's manual for detailed instructions. (-1) = DI1(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI1 as the start enable 2 signal. (-2)...(-6) = DI2(INV)...DI6(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI2...DI6 as the start enable 2 signal. • See DI1(INV) above.	-6...7	1	0	S
1610	DISPLAY ALARMS Controls the visibility of the following alarms: • 2001, Overcurrent alarm • 2002, Overvoltage alarm • 2003, Undervoltage alarm • 2009, Device overtemperature alarm. For more information, see section <i>Alarm listing</i> . 0 = NO – The above alarms are suppressed. 1 = YES – All of the above alarms are enabled.				
1611	PARAMETER VIEW Selects the parameter view, i.e. which parameters are shown. Note: This parameter is visible only when it is activated by the optional FlashDrop device. FlashDrop allows fast customization of the parameter list, e.g. selected parameters can be hidden. For more information, see <i>MFD-01 FlashDrop User's Manual</i> [3AFE68591074 (English)]. FlashDrop parameter values are activated by setting parameter 9902 to 31 (LOAD FD SET). 0 = DEFAULT – Complete long and short parameter lists are shown. 1 = FLASHDROP – FlashDrop parameter list is shown. Does not include short parameter list. Parameters that are hidden by the FlashDrop device are not visible.				

Group 17: Override

This group defines the source for the override activation signal, the override speed/frequency and pass code and how the override is enabled and disabled.

When override DI is activated, the drive stops and then accelerates to the preset speed or frequency. When the DI is deactivated the drive stops and reboots. If the start command, run enable and start enables are active in the AUTO mode the drive starts automatically and continues normally after override mode. In the HAND mode the drive returns to OFF mode.

When override is active:

- Drive runs at preset speed
- Drive ignores all keypad commands
- Drive ignores all commands from communication links
- Drive ignores all digital inputs except override activation/deactivation, RUN ENABLE and START ENABLE
- Drive displays alarm message "2020 OVERRIDE MODE"

The following faults are ignored:

3	DEVICE OVERTEMP
5	OVERLOAD
6	DC UNDERVOLT
7	AI1 LOSS
8	AI2 LOSS
9	MOTOR TEMP
10	PANEL LOSS
12	MOTOR STALL
14	EXTERNAL FLT 1
15	EXTERNAL FLT 2
17	UNDERLOAD
18	THERM FAIL
21	CURR MEAS
22	SUPPLY PHASE
24	OVERSPEED
28	SERIAL 1 ERR
29	EFB CONFIG FILE
30	FORCE TRIP
31	EFB 1
32	EFB 2
33	EFB 3
34	MOTOR PHASE
1001	PAR PFC REFNEG

1002	PAR PFC IOCONF
1003	PAR AI SCALE
1004	PAR AO SCALE
1006	PAR EXTROMISSING
1007	PAR FBUSMISSING
1008	PAR PFCWOSCALAR

Commissioning the Override Mode:

1. Enter the parameters in all groups as needed, except group 17.
2. Select the digital input that will activate override mode P1701.
3. Enter the frequency or speed reference for override mode, P1702 and P1703, according to the motor control mode P9904.
4. Enter the pass code P1704 (358).
5. Enable the override mode P1705.

Changing the Override Parameters:

1. If override mode is already enabled, disable it:
 - Enter the pass code P1704.
 - Disable the override mode P1705.
2. If needed, load the override parameter set P9902.
3. Change the parameters as needed, except group 17.
4. Change the parameters in group 17 as needed:
 - Digital input for override mode P1701.
 - Frequency or speed reference, P1702 or P1703.
5. Enter the pass code P1704.
6. Enable the override mode P1705. The drive replaces the override parameter set with new values of all parameters.

Group 17: Override				
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	DefaultS
1701	OVERRIDE SEL Selects the source of the override activation signal. 0 = NOT SEL – Override activation signal not selected. 1 = DI1 – Defines digital input DI1 as the override activation signal. • This digital input must be activated for override activation signal. 2...6 = DI2...DI6 – Defines digital input DI2...DI6 as the override activation signal. • See DI1 above. (-1) = DI1(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI1 as the override activation signal. (-2)...(-6) = DI2(INV)...DI6(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI2...DI6 as the override activation signal. • See DI1(INV) above.	-6...6	1	0
1702	OVERRIDE FREQ Defines a preset frequency for the override. Note! Set this value if motor control mode (Par. 9904) is SCALAR: FREQ (3).	-500...500 Hz	0.1	0.0

Group 17: Override				
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	DefaultS
1703	OVERRIDE SPEED Defines a preset speed for the override. Note! Set this value if motor control mode (Par.9904) is VECTOR: SPEED (1).	-30.000...30.000 rpm	1	0
1704	OVERR PASS CODE Entering the correct override pass code unlocks parameter 1705 for one change. • Enter the pass code always before changing the value of the parameter 1705. • See parameter 1705 below. • The pass code is 358. • The entry reverts back to zero automatically.	0...65535	1	0
1705	OVERRIDE ENABLE Selects whether the override is enabled or disabled. 0 = OFF – Override disabled. 1 = ON – Override enabled. • When enabled, the drive stores the values of all parameters into an override parameter set (see parameter 9902) and the parameters in Group 17 will be write protected (except parameter 1704). To change the other parameters in the Group 17, override has to be disabled.	0...1	1	0
1706	OVERRIDE DIR Selects the source of the override direction signal. 0 = FORWARD – Assigns forward as the override direction. 1 = DI1 – Defines digital input DI1 as the override direction signal. • Activating the digital input selects the forward direction. • De-activating the digital input selects the reverse direction. 2...6 = DI2...DI6 – Defines digital input DI2...DI6 as the override direction signal. • See DI1 above. 7 = REVERSE – Assigns reverse as the override direction. -1 = DI1(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI1 as the override direction signal. • De-activating the digital input selects the forward direction. • Activating the digital input selects the reverse direction. -2...-6 = DI2(INV)...DI6(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI2...DI6 as the override direction signal. • See DI1(INV) above.			
1707	OVERRIDE REF Selects the source of the override reference. 1 = CONSTANT – Selects a preset frequency or speed for the override. The frequency value is defined by parameter 1702 OVERRIDE FREQ and the speed value by parameter 1703 OVERRIDE SPEED. 2 = PID – The reference is taken from the PID output, see group 40 PROCESS PID SET 1. • Note: The following conditions must be met when using PID in the override mode: • PID1 set point (parameter 4010 SET POINT SEL) can be either A1, A2 or INTERNAL. • PID1 parameter set 1 must be active (parameter 4027 PID 1 PARAM SET = SET 1). • Override direction (parameter 1706 OVERRIDE DIR) can be either 0 = FORWARD or 7 = REVERSE.			

Group 20: Limits

This group defines minimum and maximum limits to follow in driving the motor – speed, frequency, current, torque, etc.

Group 20: Limits					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
2001	<p>MINIMUM SPEED</p> <p>Defines the minimum speed (rpm) allowed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A positive (or zero) minimum speed value defines two ranges, one positive and one negative. • A negative minimum speed value defines one speed range. • See figure. 	-30000...30000 rpm	1 rpm	0 rpm	✓
	<p>The figure consists of two graphs. The top graph is titled '2001 value is < 0'. The vertical axis is labeled 'Speed' and has points '0', 'P 2001', and 'P 2002' marked. A shaded horizontal bar labeled 'Speed range allowed' is shown between the '0' and 'P 2001' marks. The bottom graph is titled '2001 value is ≥ 0'. The vertical axis is labeled 'Speed' and has points 'P 2002', 'P 2001', '0', '-(P 2001)', and '-(P 2002)' marked. Two shaded horizontal bars labeled 'Speed range allowed' are shown: one between 'P 2001' and '0', and another between '-(P 2001)' and '-(P 2002)'. Both graphs have a horizontal axis labeled 'Time' with an arrow pointing right.</p>				
2002	<p>MAXIMUM SPEED</p> <p>Defines the maximum speed (rpm) allowed.</p>	0...30000 rpm	1 rpm	1800 (US)	✓
2003	<p>MAX CURRENT</p> <p>Defines the maximum output current (A) supplied by the drive to the motor.</p>	0.0... 1.3 * I _{2N}	0.1 A	1.3 * I _{2N}	✓
2006	<p>UNDERVOLT CTRL</p> <p>Sets the DC undervoltage controller on or off. When on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the DC bus voltage drops due to loss of input power, the undervoltage controller decreases the motor speed in order to keep the DC bus voltage above the lower limit. • When the motor speed decreases, the inertia of the load causes regeneration back into the drive, keeping the DC bus charged, and preventing an undervoltage trip. • The DC undervoltage controller increases power loss ride-through on systems with a high inertia, such as a centrifuge or a fan. <p>0 = DISABLE – Disables controller. 1 = ENABLE (TIME) – Enables controller with 500 ms time limit for operation. 2 = ENABLE – Enables controlled without maximum time limit for operation.</p>	0...2	1	1	

Group 20: Limits					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
2007	<p>MINIMUM FREQ</p> <p>Defines the minimum limit for the drive output frequency.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A positive or zero minimum speed frequency defines two ranges, one positive and one negative. A negative minimum speed frequency defines one speed range. See figure. <p>Note! Keep MINIMUM FREQ ≤ MAXIMUM FREQ.</p>	-500.0...500.0 Hz	0.1 Hz	0.0 Hz	✓
2008	<p>MAXIMUM FREQ</p> <p>Defines the maximum limit for the drive output frequency.</p>	0.0...500.0 Hz	0.1 Hz	60.0 Hz (US)	✓
2013	<p>MIN TORQUE SEL</p> <p>Defines control of the selection between two minimum torque limits (2015 MIN TORQUE 1 and 2016 MIN TORQUE 2).</p> <p>0 = MIN TORQUE 1 – Selects 2015 MIN TORQUE 1 as the minimum limit used.</p> <p>1 = DI1 – Defines digital input DI1 as the control for selecting the minimum limit used.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Activating the digital input selects MIN TORQUE 2 value. De-activating the digital input selects MIN TORQUE 1 value. <p>2...6 = DI2...DI6 – Defines digital input DI2...DI6 as the control for selecting the minimum limit used.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> See DI1 above. <p>7 = COMM – Defines bit 15 of the Command Word 1 as the control for selecting the minimum limit used.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Command Word is supplied through fieldbus communication. The Command Word is a parameter 0301. <p>-1 = DI1(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI1 as the control for selecting the minimum limit used.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Activating the digital input selects MIN TORQUE 1 value. De-activating the digital input selects MIN TORQUE 2 value. <p>-2...-6 = DI2(INV)...DI6(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI2...DI6 as the control for selecting the minimum limit used.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> See DI1(INV) above. 	-6...7	1	0	
2014	<p>MAX TORQUE SEL</p> <p>Defines control of the selection between two maximum torque limits (2017 MAX TORQUE 1 and 2018 MAX TORQUE 2).</p> <p>0 = MAX TORQUE 1 – Selects 2017 MAX TORQUE 1 as the maximum limit used.</p> <p>1 = DI1 – Defines digital input DI1 as the control for selecting the maximum limit used.</p> <p>Activating the digital input selects MAX TORQUE 2 value.</p> <p>De-activating the digital input selects MAX TORQUE 1 value.</p> <p>2...6 = DI2...DI6 – Defines digital input DI2...DI6 as the control for selecting the maximum limit used.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> See DI1 above. <p>7 = COMM – Defines bit 15 of the Command Word 1 as the control for selecting the maximum limit used.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Command Word is supplied through fieldbus communication. The Command Word is a parameter 0301. <p>-1 = DI1(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI1 as the control for selecting the maximum limit used.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Activating the digital input selects MAX TORQUE 1 value. De-activating the digital input selects MAX TORQUE 2 value. <p>-2...-6 = DI2(INV)...DI6(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI2...DI6 as the control for selecting the maximum limit used.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> See DI1(INV) above. 	-6...7	1	0	

Group 20: Limits			
Code	Description	Range	Resolution
2015	MIN TORQUE 1	-600.0%...0.0%	0.1%
	Sets the first minimum limit for torque (%). Value is a percent of the motor nominal torque.		
2016	MIN TORQUE 2	-600.0%...0.0%	0.1%
	Sets the second minimum limit for torque (%). Value is a percent of the motor nominal torque.		
2017	MAX TORQUE 1	0.0%...600.0%	0.1%
	Sets the first maximum limit for torque (%). Value is a percent of the motor nominal torque.		
2018	MAX TORQUE 2	0.0%...600.0%	0.1%
	Sets the second maximum limit for torque (%). Value is a percent of the motor nominal torque.		
		300.0%	

21: Start/Stop

This group defines how the motor starts and stops. The ACH550 supports several start and stop modes.

Group 21: Start/Stop					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
2101	<p>START FUNCTION Selects the motor start method.</p> <p>1 = AUTO – Selects the automatic start mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • VECTOR control modes: Optimal start in most cases. The drive automatically selects the correct output frequency to start a rotating motor. • SCALAR: FREQ mode: Immediate start from zero frequency. <p>2 = DC MAGN – Selects the DC Magnetizing start mode.</p> <p>Note! The DC Magnetizing start mode cannot start a rotating motor.</p> <p>Note! The drive starts when the set pre-magnetizing time (param. 2103) has passed, even if motor magnetization is not complete.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • VECTOR control modes: Magnetizes the motor within the time determined by the parameter 2103 DC MAGN TIME using DC current. The normal control is released exactly after the magnetizing time. This selection guarantees the highest possible break-away torque. • SCALAR SPEED mode: Magnetizes the motor within the time determined by the parameter 2103 DC MAGN TIME using DC current. The normal control is released exactly after the magnetizing time. <p>3 = SCALAR FLYSTART – Selects the flying start mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • VECTOR control modes: Not applicable. • SCALAR control mode: The drive automatically selects the correct output frequency to start a rotating motor – useful if the motor is already rotating and if the drive will start smoothly at the current frequency. <p>4 = TORQ BOOST – Selects the automatic torque boost mode (SCALAR SPEED mode only).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • May be necessary in drives with high starting torque. • Torque boost is only applied at start, ending when output frequency exceeds 20 Hz or when output frequency is equal to reference. • In the beginning the motor magnetizes within the time determined by the parameter 2103 DC MAGN TIME using DC current. • See parameter 2110 TORQ BOOST CURR. <p>5 = FLYSTART + TORQ BOOST – Selects both the flying start and the torque boost mode (SCALAR SPEED mode only).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Flying start routine is performed first and the motor is magnetized. If the speed is found to be zero, the torque boost is done. <p>8 = RAMP – Immediate start from zero frequency.</p>	1...8	1	1	
2102	<p>STOP FUNCTION Selects the motor stop method.</p> <p>1 = COAST – Selects cutting off the motor power as the stop method. The motor coasts to stop.</p> <p>2 = RAMP – Selects using a deceleration ramp</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Deceleration ramp is defined by 2203 DECELER TIME 1 or 2206 DECELER TIME 2 (whichever is active). 	1, 2	1	1	
2103	<p>DC MAGN TIME Defines the pre-magnetizing time for the DC Magnetizing start mode.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use parameter 2101 to select the start mode. • After the start command, the drive pre-magnetizes the motor for the time defined here, and then starts the motor. • Set the pre-magnetizing time just long enough to allow full motor magnetization. Too long a time heats the motor excessively. 	0.00...10.00 s	0.01 s	0.30 s	

Group 21: Start/Stop				
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default
2104	DC CURR CTL Selects whether DC current is used for braking. 0 = NOT SEL – Disables the DC current operation. 1 = DC HOLD – Enables the DC Hold function. See diagram. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Requires parameter 9904 MOTOR CTRL MODE = 1 (VECTOR SPEED) Stops generating sinusoidal current and injects DC into the motor when both the reference and the motor speed drop below the value of parameter 2105. When the reference rises above the level of parameter 2105 the drive resumes normal operation. 2 = DC BRAKING – Enables the DC Injection Braking after modulation has stopped. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If parameter 2102 STOP FUNCTION is 1 (COAST), braking is applied after start is removed. If parameter 2102 STOP FUNCTION IS 2 (RAMP), braking is applied after ramp. 	0...2	-	0
				S
2105	DC HOLD SPEED Sets the speed for DC Hold. Requires that parameter 2104 DC CURR CTL = 1 (DC HOLD).	0...360	1 rpm	5 rpm
2106	DC CURR REF Defines the DC current control reference as a percentage of parameter 9906 (MOTOR NOM CURR).	0...100%	1%	30%
2107	DC BRAKE TIME Defines the DC brake time after modulation has stopped, if parameter 2104 is 2 (DC BRAKING).	0...250 s	0.1 s	0 s
2108	START INHIBIT Sets the Start inhibit function on or off. The Start inhibit function ignores a pending start command in any of the following situations (a new start command is required): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A fault is reset. Run Enable (parameter 1601) activates while start command is active. Mode changes from local to remote. Mode changes from remote to local. Control switches from EXT1 to EXT2. Control switches from EXT2 to EXT1. 0 = OFF – Disables the Start inhibit function. 1 = ON – Enables the Start inhibit function.	0, 1	1	0
2109	EM STOP SEL Defines control of the Emergency stop command. When activated: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Emergency stop decelerates the motor using the emergency stop ramp (parameter 2208 EM DEC TIME). Requires an external stop command and removal of the emergency stop command before drive can restart. 0 = NOT SEL – Disables the Emergency stop function through digital inputs. 1 = DI1 – Defines digital input DI1 as the control for Emergency stop command. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Activating the digital input issues an Emergency stop command. De-activating the digital input removes the Emergency stop command. 2...6 = DI2...DI6 – Defines digital input DI2...DI6 as the control for Emergency stop command. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> See DI1 above. -1 = DI1(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI1 as the control for Emergency stop command. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> De-activating the digital input issues an Emergency stop command. Activating the digital input removes the Emergency stop command. -2...-6 = DI2(INV)...DI6(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI2...DI6 as the control for Emergency stop command. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> See DI1(INV) above. 	-6...6	1	0
2110	TORQ BOOST CURR Sets the maximum supplied current during torque boost. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> See parameter 2101 START FUNCTION. 	15...300%	1	100%
2113	START DELAY Defines the Start delay. After the conditions for start have been fulfilled, the drive waits until the delay has elapsed and then starts the motor. Start delay can be used with all start modes. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If START DELAY = zero, the delay is disabled. 			

Group 22: Accel/Decel

This group defines ramps that control the rate of acceleration and deceleration. You define these ramps as a pair, one for acceleration and one for deceleration. You can define two pairs of ramps and use a digital input to select one or the other pair.

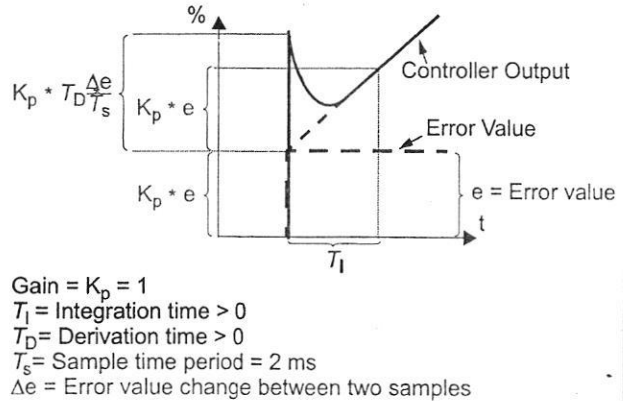
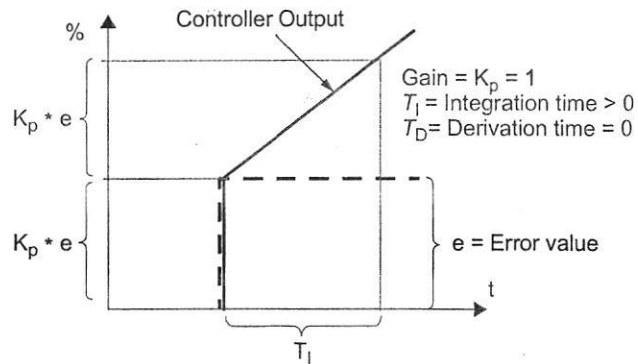
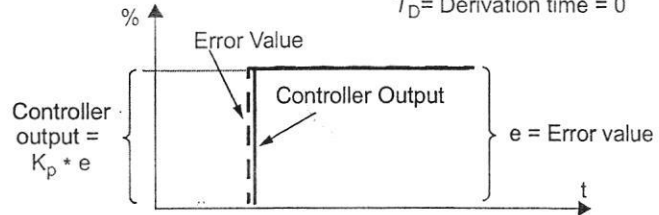
Group 22: Accel/Decel					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
2201	<p>ACC/DEC 1/2 SEL</p> <p>Defines control for selection of acceleration/deceleration ramps.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Ramps are defined in pairs, one each for acceleration and deceleration. See below for the ramp definition parameters. <p>0 = NOT SEL – Disables selection, the first ramp pair is used.</p> <p>1 = DI1 – Defines digital input DI1 as the control for ramp pair selection.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Activating the digital input selects ramp pair 2. De-activating the digital input selects ramp pair 1. <p>2...6 = DI2...DI6 – Defines digital input DI2...DI6 as the control for ramp pair selection.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> See DI1 above. <p>7 = COMM – Defines serial communication as the control for ramp pair selection.</p> <p>-1 = DI1(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI1 as the control for ramp pair selection.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> De-activating the digital input selects ramp pair 2 Activating the digital input selects ramp pair 1. <p>-2...-6 = DI2(INV)...DI6(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI2...DI6 as the control for ramp pair selection.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> See DI1(INV) above. 	-6...7	1	0	
2202	<p>ACCELER TIME 1</p> <p>Sets the acceleration time for zero to maximum frequency for ramp pair 1. See A in figure.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Actual acceleration time also depends on 2204 RAMP SHAPE. See 2008 MAXIMUM FREQUENCY. 	0.0...1800.0 s	0.1 s	30.0 s	
2203	<p>DECELER TIME 1</p> <p>Sets the deceleration time for maximum frequency to zero for ramp pair 1.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Actual deceleration time also depends on 2204 RAMP SHAPE. See 2008 MAXIMUM FREQUENCY. 	0.0...1800.0 s	0.1 s	30.0 s	
2204	<p>RAMP SHAPE 1</p> <p>Selects the shape of the acceleration/deceleration ramp for ramp pair 1. See B in figure.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Shape is defined as a ramp, unless additional time is specified here to reach the maximum frequency. A longer time provides a softer transition at each end of the slope. The shape becomes an s-curve. Rule of thumb: 1/5 is a suitable relation between the ramp shape time and the acceleration ramp time. <p>0.0 = LINEAR – Specifies linear acceleration/deceleration ramps for ramp pair 1.</p> <p>0.1...1000.0 = S-CURVE – Specifies s-curve acceleration/deceleration ramps for ramp pair 1.</p>	0...1000.0 s	0.1 s	0.0	<p>A = 2202 ACCELERATION TIME B = 2204 RAMP SHAPE</p>
2205	<p>ACCELER TIME 2</p> <p>Sets the acceleration time (s) for zero to maximum frequency for ramp pair 2. See 2002 ACCELER TIME 1.</p>	0.0...1800.0 s	0.1 s	60.0 s	
2206	<p>DECELER TIME 2</p> <p>Sets the deceleration time for maximum frequency to zero for ramp pair 2. See 2003 DECELER TIME 1.</p>	0.0...1800.0 s	0.1 s	60.0 s	

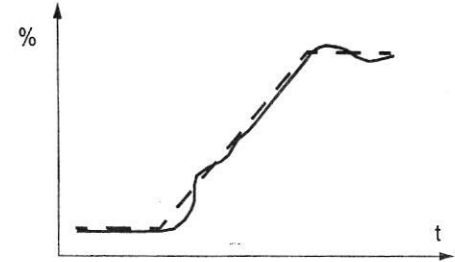
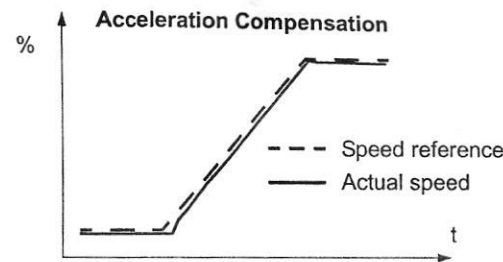
Group 22: Accel/Decel					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
2207	RAMP SHAPE 2	0...1000.0 s	0.1 s	0.0	S
	Selects the shape of the acceleration/deceleration ramp for ramp pair 2. See 2004 RAMP SHAPE 1.				
2208	EM DEC TIME	0.0...1800 s	0.1 s	1.0 s	
	Sets the deceleration time for maximum frequency to zero for an emergency. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • See parameter 2109 EM STOP SEL. • Ramp is linear. 				
2209	RAMP INPUT 0	-6...6	1	0	
	<p>Defines control for forcing the ramp input to 0.</p> <p>0 = NOT SEL –</p> <p>1 = DI1 – Defines digital input DI1 as the control for forcing the ramp input to 0.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Activating the digital input forces ramp input to 0. Ramp output will ramp to 0 according to the currently used ramp time, after which it will stay at 0. • De-activating the digital input: ramp resumes normal operation. <p>2...6 = DI2...DI6 – Defines digital input DI2...DI6 as the control for forcing the ramp input to 0.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • See DI1 above. <p>-1 = DI1(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI1 as the control for forcing the ramp input to 0.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • De-activating the digital input forces ramp input to 0. • Activating the digital input: ramp resumes normal operation. <p>-2...-6 = DI2(INV)...DI6(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI2...DI6 as the control for forcing the ramp function generator input to 0.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • See DI1(INV) above. 				

Group 23: Speed Control

This group defines variables used for speed control operation.

Group 23: Speed Control					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
2301	<p>PROP GAIN</p> <p>Sets the relative gain for the speed controller.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Larger values may cause speed oscillation. The figure shows the speed controller output after an error step (error remains constant). <p>Note! You can use parameter 2305, AUTOTUNE RUN, to automatically set proportional gain.</p>	0.00...200.00	0.01	3.00	
2302	<p>INTEGRATION TIME</p> <p>Sets the integration time for the speed controller.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The integration time defines the rate at which the controller output changes for a constant error value. Shorter integration times correct continuous errors faster. Control becomes unstable if the integration time is too short. The figure shows the speed controller output after an error step (error remains constant). <p>Note! You can use parameter 2305, AUTOTUNE RUN, to automatically set proportional gain.</p>	0.00...600.00 s	0.01 s	2.50	
2303	<p>DERIVATION TIME</p> <p>Sets the derivation time for the speed controller.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Derivative action makes the control more responsive to error value changes. The longer the derivation time, the more the speed controller output is boosted during the change. If the derivation time is set to zero, the controller works as a PI controller, otherwise as a PID controller. <p>The figure shows the speed controller output after an error step when the error remains constant.</p>	0...10000 ms	1 ms	0	

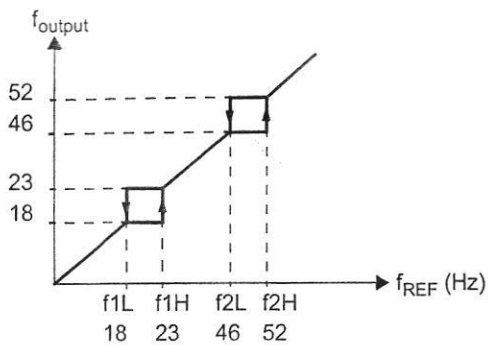


Group 23: Speed Control				
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default
2304	<p>ACC COMPENSATION</p> <p>Sets the derivation time for acceleration compensation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Adding a derivative of the reference to the output of the speed controller compensates for inertia during acceleration. 2303 DERIVATION TIME describes the principle of derivative action. Rule of thumb: Set this parameter between 50 and 100% of the sum of the mechanical time constants for the motor and the driven machine. The figure shows the speed responses when a high inertia load is accelerated along a ramp. <p>No Acceleration Compensation</p>  <p>Acceleration Compensation</p>  <p>*Note! You can use parameter 2305 AUTOTUNE RUN to automatically set acceleration compensation.</p>	0.00...600.00 s	0.01 s	0.00
2305	<p>AUTOTUNE RUN</p> <p>Starts automatic tuning of the speed controller.</p> <p>0 = OFF-- Disables the Autotune creation process. (Does not disable the operation of Autotune settings.)</p> <p>1 = ON – Activates speed controller autotuning. Automatically reverts to OFF.</p> <p>Procedure:</p> <p>Note! The motor load must be connected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Run the motor at a constant speed of 20 to 40% of the rated speed. Change the autotuning parameter 2305 to ON. <p>The drive:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Accelerates the motor. Calculates values for proportional gain, integration time and acceleration compensation. Changes parameters 2301, 2302 and 2304 to these values. Resets 2305 to OFF. 	0...1	1	0

Group 25: Critical Speeds

This group defines up to three critical speeds or ranges of speeds that are to be avoided due, for example, to mechanical resonance problems at certain speeds.

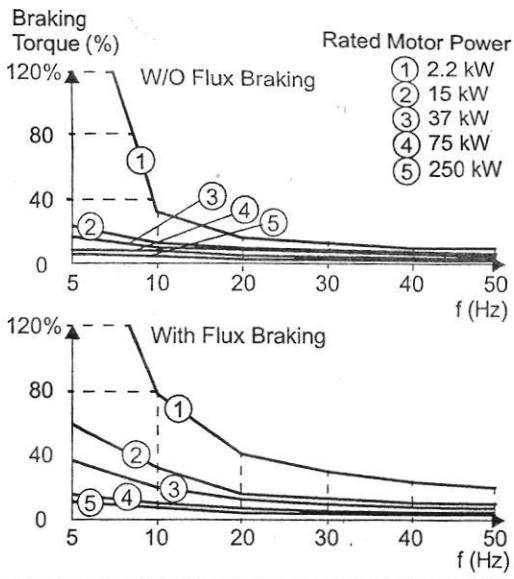
Group 25: Critical Speeds					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
2501	CRIT SPEED SEL Sets the critical speeds function on or off. The critical speed function avoids specific speed ranges. 0 = OFF – Disables the critical speeds function. 1 = ON – Enables the critical speeds function. Example: To avoid speeds at which a fan system vibrates badly: • Determine problem speed ranges. Assume they are found to be: 18...23 Hz and 46...52 Hz. • Set 2501 CRIT SPEED SEL = 1. • Set 2502 CRIT SPEED 1 LO = 18 Hz. • Set 2503 CRIT SPEED 1 HI = 23 Hz. • Set 2504 CRIT SPEED 2 LO = 46 Hz. • Set 2505 CRIT SPEED 2 HI = 52 Hz.	0, 1	1	0	
2502	CRIT SPEED 1 LO Sets the minimum limit for critical speed range 1. • The value must be less than or equal to 2503 CRIT SPEED 1 HI. • Units are rpm, unless 9904 MOTOR CTRL MODE = 3 (SCALAR SPEED), then units are Hz.	0...30000 rpm / 0.0...500.0 Hz	1 rpm / 0.1 Hz	0 rpm / 0.0 Hz	
2503	CRIT SPEED 1 HI Sets the maximum limit for critical speed range 1. • The value must be greater than or equal to 2502 CRIT SPEED 1 LO. • Units are rpm, unless 9904 MOTOR CTRL MODE = 3 (SCALAR SPEED), then units are Hz.	0...30000 rpm / 0.0...500.0 Hz	1 rpm / 0.1 Hz	0 rpm / 0.0 Hz	
2504	CRIT SPEED 2 LO Sets the minimum limit for critical speed range 2. • See parameter 2502.	0...30000 rpm / 0.0...500.0 Hz	1 rpm / 0.1 Hz	0 rpm / 0.0 Hz	
2505	CRIT SPEED 2 HI Sets the maximum limit for critical speed range 2. • See parameter 2503.	0...30000 rpm / 0.0...500.0 Hz	1 rpm / 0.1 Hz	0 rpm / 0.0 Hz	
2506	CRIT SPEED 3 LO Sets the minimum limit for critical speed range 3. • See parameter 2502.	0...30000 rpm / 0.0...500.0 Hz	1 rpm / 0.1 Hz	0 rpm / 0.0 Hz	
2507	CRIT SPEED 3 HI Sets the maximum limit for critical speed range 3. • See parameter 2503.	0...30000 rpm / 0.0...500.0 Hz	1 rpm / 0.1 Hz	0 rpm / 0.0 Hz	



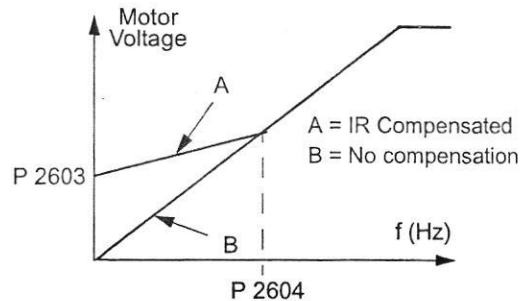
Group 26: Motor Control

This group provides controls for fine-tuning the motor control.

Group 26: Motor Control				
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default
2601	FLUX OPTIMIZATION Changes the magnitude of the flux depending on the actual load. Flux Optimization can reduce the total energy consumption and noise, and should be enabled for drives that usually operate below nominal load. 0 = OFF – Disables the feature. 1 = ON – Enables the feature.	0...1	1	0
2602	FLUX BRAKING Provides faster deceleration by raising the level of magnetization in the motor when needed, instead of limiting the deceleration ramp. By increasing the flux in the motor, the energy of the mechanical system is changed to thermal energy in the motor. 0 = OFF – Disables the feature. 1 = ON – Enables the feature.	0...1	1	0
2603	IR COMP VOLT Sets the IR compensation voltage used for 0 Hz. • Requires parameter 9904 MOTOR CTRL MODE = 3 (SCALAR SPEED). • Keep IR compensation as low as possible to prevent overheating. • Typical IR compensation values are:	0...100 V	1 V	size dependent
2604	IR COMP FREQ Sets the frequency at which IR compensation is 0 V (in % of motor frequency).	0...100%	1	80%
2605	U/f RATIO Selects the form for the U/f (voltage to frequency) ratio below field weakening point. 1 = LINEAR – Preferred for constant torque applications. 2 = SQUARED – Preferred for centrifugal pump and fan applications. (Square is more silent for most operating frequencies.)	1, 2	1	1



P _N (kW)	3	7.5	15	37	132
IR comp (V)	18	15	12	8	3



Group 26: Motor Control				
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default
2606	SWITCHING FREQ Sets the switching frequency for the drive. Also see parameter 2607 SW FREQ CTRL and "Switching Frequency Derating" on page 265. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Higher switching frequencies mean less noise. 12 kHz switching frequency is available only if parameter 9904 MOTOR CTRL MODE = 3 (SCALAR:SPEED). The 12 kHz switching frequency is available only on frame sizes R1...R6 	1, 4, 8, 12 kHz	-	4 kHz
2607	SW FREQ CTRL The switching frequency may be reduced if the ACH550 internal temperature rises above a limit. See Figure. This function allows the highest possible switching frequency to be used based on operating conditions. Higher switching frequency results in lower acoustic noise. 0 = OFF – The function is disabled. 1 = ON – The switching frequency is limited according to the figure.	0, 1	-	1
2608	SLIP COMP RATIO Sets gain for slip compensation (in %). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A squirrel-cage motor slips under load. Increasing the frequency as the motor torque increases compensates for the slip. Requires parameter 9904 MOTOR CTRL MODE = SCALAR SPEED. 0 = No slip compensation. 1...200 = Increasing slip compensation. 100% means full slip compensation.	0...200%	1	0
2609	NOISE SMOOTHING This parameter introduces a random component to the switching frequency. Noise smoothing distributes the acoustic motor noise over a range of frequencies instead of a single tonal frequency resulting in lower peak noise intensity. The random component has an average of 0Hz and is added to the switching frequency set by parameter 2606 (SWITCHING FREQ). This parameter has no effect if parameter 2606 = 12kHz. 0 = DISABLE 1 = ENABLE	0, 1	1	0
2619	DC STABILIZER Enables or disables the DC voltage stabilizer. The DC stabilizer is used in scalar control mode to prevent possible voltage oscillations in the drive DC bus caused by motor load or weak supply network. In case of voltage variation the drive tunes the frequency reference to stabilize the DC bus voltage and therefore the load torque oscillation. 0 = DISABLE – Disables DC stabilizer. 1 = ENABLE – Enables DC stabilizer.			

Group 29: Maintenance Trig

This group contains usage levels and trigger points. When usage reaches the set trigger point, a notice displayed on the control panel signals that maintenance is due.

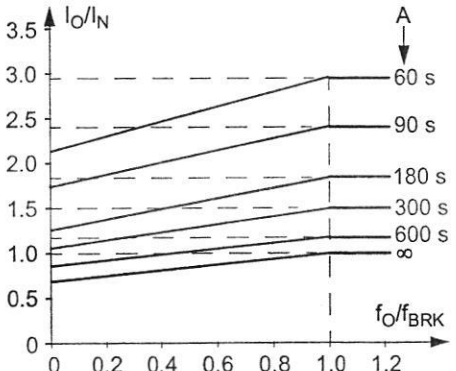
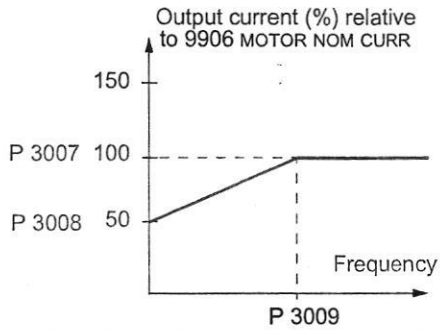
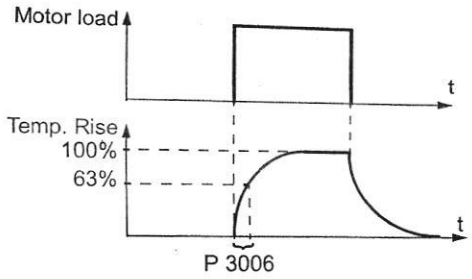
Group 29: Maintenance Trig					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
2901	COOLING FAN TRIG Sets the trigger point for the drive's cooling fan counter. 0.0 = NOT SEL	0.0...6553.5 kh	0.1 kh	0.0	
2902	COOLING FAN ACT Defines the actual value of the drive's cooling fan counter. • The parameter is reset by writing 0.0 to it.	0.0...6553.5 kh	0.1 kh	0.0	
2903	REVOLUTION TRIG Sets the trigger point for the motor's accumulated revolutions counter. 0.0 = NOT SEL	0...65535 MRev	1 MRev	0	
2904	REVOLUTION ACT Defines the actual value of the motor's accumulated revolutions counter. • The parameter is reset by writing 0 to it.	0...65535 MRev	1 MRev	0	
2905	RUN TIME TRIG Sets the trigger point for the drive's run time counter. 0.0 = NOT SEL	0.0...6553.5 kh	0.1 kh	0.0	
2906	RUN TIME ACT Defines the actual value of the drive's run time counter. • The parameter is reset by writing 0.0 to it.	0.0...6553.5 kh	0.1 kh	0.0	
2907	USER MWh TRIG Sets the trigger point for the drive's accumulated power consumption (in megawatt hours) counter. 0.0 = NOT SEL	0.0...6553.5 MWh	0.1 MWh	0.0	
2908	USER MWh ACT Defines the actual value of the drive's accumulated power consumption (in megawatt hours) counter. • The parameter is reset by writing 0.0 to it.	0.0...6553.5 MWh	0.1 MWh	0.0	

Group 30: Fault Functions

This group defines situations that the drive should recognize as potential faults and defines how the drive should respond if the fault is detected.

Group 30: Fault Functions					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
3001	AI<MIN FUNCTION Defines the drive response if the analog input (AI) signal drops below the fault limits and AI is used in reference chain. • 3021 AI1 FAULT LIMIT and 3022 AI2 FAULT LIMIT set the fault limits 0 = NOT SEL – No response. 1 = FAULT – Displays a fault (7, AI1 LOSS or 8, AI2 LOSS) and the drive coasts to stop. 2 = CONST SP7 – Displays a warning (2006, AI1 LOSS or 2007, AI2 LOSS) and sets speed using 1208 CONST SPEED 7. 3 = LAST SPEED – Displays a warning (2006, AI1 LOSS or 2007, AI2 LOSS) and sets speed using the last operating level. This value is the average speed over the last 10 seconds. Warning! If you select CONST SP7 or LAST SPEED, make sure that continued operation is safe when the analog input signal is lost.	0...3	1	0	
3002	PANEL COMM ERR Defines the drive response to a control panel communication error. 1 = FAULT – Displays a fault (10, PANEL LOSS) and the drive coasts to stop. 2 = CONST SP7 – Displays a warning (2008, PANEL LOSS) and sets speed using 1208 CONST SPEED 7. 3 = LAST SPEED – Displays a warning (2008, PANEL LOSS) and sets speed using the last operating level. This value is the average speed over the last 10 seconds. Warning! If you select CONST SP7 or LAST SPEED, make sure that continued operation is safe when the control panel communication is lost.	1...3	1	1	
3003	EXTERNAL FAULT 1 Defines the External Fault 1 signal input and the drive response to an external fault. 0 = NOT SEL – External fault signal is not used. 1 = DI1 – Defines digital input DI1 as the external fault input. • Activating the digital input indicates a fault. The drive displays a fault (14, EXTERNAL FAULT 1) and the drive coasts to stop. 2...6 = DI2...DI6 – Defines digital input DI2...DI6 as the external fault input. • See DI1 above. -1 = DI1(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI1 as the external fault input. • De-activating the digital input indicates a fault. The drive displays a fault (14, EXTERNAL FAULT 1) and the drive coasts to stop. -2...-6 = DI2(INV)...DI6(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI2...DI6 as the external fault input. • See DI1(INV) above.	-6...6	1	0	
3004	EXTERNAL FAULT 2 Defines the External Fault 2 signal input and the drive response to an external fault. • See parameter 3003 above.	-6...6	1	0	
3005	MOT THERM PROT Defines the drive response to motor overheating. 0 = NOT SEL – No response and/or motor thermal protection not set up. 1 = FAULT – When the calculated motor temperature exceeds 90 C, displays a warning (2010, MOT OVERTEMP). When the calculated motor temperature exceeds 110 C displays a fault (9, MOT OVERTEMP) and the drive coasts to stop. 2 = WARNING – When the calculated motor temperature exceeds 90 C, displays a warning (2010, MOT OVERTEMP).-	0, 2	1	1	

Group 30: Fault Functions				
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default
3006	MOT THERM TIME Sets the motor thermal time constant for the motor temperature model. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> This is the time required for the motor to reach 63% of the final temperature with steady load. For thermal protection according to UL requirements for NEMA class motors, use the rule of thumb: MOTOR THERM TIME equals 35 times t6, where t6 (in seconds) is specified by the motor manufacturer as the time that the motor can safely operate at six times its rated current. The thermal time for a Class 10 trip curve is 350 s, for a Class 20 trip curve 700 s, and for a Class 30 trip curve 1050 s. 	256...9999 s	1	1050 s
3007	MOT LOAD CURVE Sets the maximum allowable operating load of the motor. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When set to 100%, the maximum allowable load is equal to the value of Start-up Data parameter 9906 MOTOR NOM CURRENT. Adjust the load curve level if the ambient temperature differs from nominal. 	50...150%	1	100%
3008	ZERO SPEED LOAD Sets the maximum allowable current at zero speed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Value is relative to 9906 MOTOR NOM CURR. 	25...150%	1	70%
3009	BREAK POINT FREQ Sets the break point frequency for the motor load curve. Example: Thermal protection trip times when parameters 3006 MOT THERM TIME, 3007 MOT LOAD CURVE and 3008 ZERO SPEED LOAD have default values.	1...250 Hz	1	35 Hz



I_O = Output current
 I_N = Nominal motor current
 f_O = Output frequency
 f_{BRK} = Break point frequency
 A = Trip time

Group 30: Fault Functions					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
3010	<p>STALL FUNCTION</p> <p>This parameter defines the operation of the Stall function. This protection is active if the drive operates in the stall region (see figure) for the time defined by 3012 STALL TIME. The "User Limit" is defined in Group 20 by 2017 MAX TORQUE 1, 2018 MAX TORQUE 2, or the limit on the COMM input.</p> <p>0 = NOT SEL – Stall protection is not used. 1 = FAULT – When the drive operates in the stall region for the time set by 3012 STALL TIME:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The drive coasts to stop. A fault indication is displayed. <p>2 = WARNING – When the drive operates in the stall region for the time set by 3012 STALL TIME:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A warning indication is displayed. The warning disappears when the drive is out of the stall region for half the time set by parameter 3012 STALL TIME. 	0...2	1	0	
3011	<p>STALL FREQUENCY</p> <p>This parameter sets the frequency value for the Stall function. Refer to Figure.</p>	0.5...50.0 Hz	0.1 Hz	20.0 Hz	
3012	<p>STALL TIME</p> <p>This parameter sets the time value for the Stall function.</p>	10...400 s	1 s	20 s	
3017	<p>EARTH FAULT</p> <p>Defines the drive response if the drive detects a ground fault in the motor or motor cables. The drive monitors for ground faults while the drive is running, and while the drive is not running. Also see parameter 3023 WIRING FAULT.</p> <p>0 = DISABLE – No drive response to ground faults. 1 = ENABLE – Ground faults display fault 16 (EARTH FAULT), and (if running) the drive coasts to stop.</p>	0...1	1	1	
3018	<p>COMM FAULT FUNC</p> <p>Defines the drive response if the fieldbus communication is lost.</p> <p>0 = NOT SEL – No response. 1 = FAULT – Displays a fault (28, SERIAL 1 ERR) and the drive coasts to stop. 2 = CONST SP7 – Displays a warning (2005, IO COMM) and sets speed using 1208 CONST SPEED 7. This "alarm speed" remains active until the fieldbus writes a new reference value. 3 = LAST SPEED – Displays a warning (2005, IO COMM) and sets speed using the last operating level. This value is the average speed over the last 10 seconds. This "alarm speed" remains active until the fieldbus writes a new reference value.</p> <p>Caution: If you select CONST SP7, or LAST SPEED, make sure that continued operation is safe when fieldbus communication is lost.</p>	0...3	1	0	
3019	<p>COMM FAULT TIME</p> <p>Sets the communication fault time used with 3018 COMM FAULT FUNC.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Brief interruptions in the fieldbus communication are not treated as faults if they are less than the COMM FAULT TIME value. 	0.0...60.0 s	0.1 s	10.0 s	
3021	<p>AI1 FAULT LIMIT</p> <p>Sets a fault level for analog input 1. See 3001 AI<MIN> FUNCTION.</p>	0.0...100.0%	0.1%	0.0%	
3022	<p>AI2 FAULT LIMIT</p> <p>Sets a fault level for analog input 2. See 3001 AI<MIN> FUNCTION.</p>	0.0...100.0%	0.1%	0.0%	
3023	<p>WIRING FAULT</p> <p>Defines the drive response to cross wiring faults and to ground faults detected when the drive is NOT running. When the drive is not running it monitors for:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Improper connections of input power to the drive output (the drive can display fault 35, OUTPUT WIRING if improper connections are detected). Ground faults (the drive can display fault 16, EARTH FAULT if a ground fault is detected). Also, see parameter 3017 EARTH FAULT. <p>0 = DISABLE – No drive response to either of the above monitoring results. 1 = ENABLE – The drive displays faults when this monitoring detects problems.</p>	0, 1	1	1	

Group 30: Fault Functions	
Code	Description
3024	CB TEMP FAULT
	Defines the drive response to control board overheating.
	0 = DISABLE - No response
	1 = ENABLE - Displays fault 37 (CB OVERTEMP) and the drive coasts to stop.

Group 31: Automatic Reset

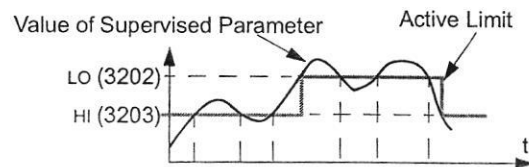
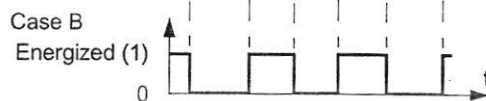
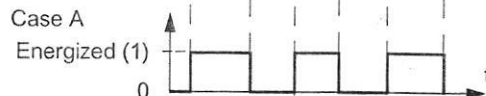
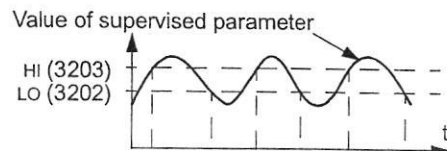
This group defines conditions for automatic resets. An automatic reset occurs after a particular fault is detected. The drive holds for a set delay time, then automatically restarts. You can limit the number of resets in a specified time period, and you can set up automatic resets for a variety of faults.

Group 31: Automatic Reset						
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S	
3101	<p>NR OF TRIALS</p> <p>Sets the number of allowed automatic resets within a trial period defined by 3102 TRIAL TIME.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If the number of automatic resets exceeds this limit (within the trial time), the drive prevents additional automatic resets and remains stopped. Starting then requires a successful reset performed from the control panel or from a source selected by 1604 FAULT RESET SEL. <p>Example: Three faults have occurred in the trial time. The last is reset only if the value for 3101 NR OF TRIALS is 3 or more.</p>	0...5	1	5		
3102	<p>TRIAL TIME</p> <p>Sets the time period used for counting and limiting the number of resets.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> See 3101 NR OF TRIALS. 	1.0...600.0 s	0.1 s	30.0 s		
3103	<p>DELAY TIME</p> <p>Sets the delay time between a fault detection and attempted drive restart.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If DELAY TIME = zero, the drive resets immediately. 	0.0...120.0 s	0.1 s	0.0 s		
3104	<p>AR OVERCURRENT</p> <p>Sets the automatic reset for the overcurrent function on or off.</p> <p>0 = DISABLE – Disables automatic reset. 1 = ENABLE – Enables automatic reset.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Automatically resets the fault (OVERCURRENT) after the delay set by 3103 DELAY TIME, and the drive resumes normal operation. 	0, 1	1	0		
3105	<p>AR OVERVOLTAGE</p> <p>Sets the automatic reset for the overvoltage function on or off.</p> <p>0 = DISABLE – Disables automatic reset. 1 = ENABLE – Enables automatic reset.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Automatically resets the fault (DC OVERVOLT) after the delay set by 3103 DELAY TIME, and the drive resumes normal operation. 	0, 1	1	0		
3106	<p>AR UNDERVOLTAGE</p> <p>Sets the automatic reset for the undervoltage function on or off.</p> <p>0 = DISABLE – Disables automatic reset. 1 = ENABLE – Enables automatic reset.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Automatically resets the fault (DC UNDERVOLTAGE) after the delay set by 3103 DELAY TIME, and the drive resumes normal operation. 	0, 1	1	0		
3107	<p>AR AI<MIN</p> <p>Sets the automatic reset for the analog input less than minimum value function on or off.</p> <p>0 = DISABLE – Disables automatic reset. 1 = ENABLE – Enables automatic reset.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Automatically resets the fault (AI<MIN) after the delay set by 3103 DELAY TIME, and the drive resumes normal operation. <p>Warning! When the analog input signal is restored, the drive may restart, even after a long stop. Make sure that automatic, long delayed starts will not cause physical injury and/or damage equipment.</p>	0, 1	1	0		
3108	<p>AR EXTERNAL FLT</p> <p>Sets the automatic reset for external faults function on or off.</p> <p>0 = DISABLE – Disables automatic reset. 1 = ENABLE – Enables automatic reset.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Automatically resets the fault (EXTERNAL FAULT 1 or EXTERNAL FAULT 2) after the delay set by 3103 DELAY TIME, and the drive resumes normal operation. 	0, 1	1	0		

Group 32: Supervision

This group defines supervision for up to three signals from Group 01, Operating Data. Supervision monitors a specified parameter and energizes a relay output if the parameter passes a defined limit. Use Group 14, Relay Outputs, to define the relay and whether the relay activates when the signal is too low or too high.

Group 32: Supervision					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
3201	<p>SUPERV 1 PARAM</p> <p>Selects the first supervised parameter.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Must be a parameter number from Group 01 Operating Data. If the supervised parameter passes a limit, a relay output is energized. The supervision limits are defined in this group. The relay outputs are defined in Group 14 Relay Outputs (definition also specifies which supervision limit is monitored). <p>LO ≤ HI</p> <p>Operating data supervision using relay outputs, when LO ≤ HI.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Case A = Parameter 1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1 (or 1402 RELAY OUTPUT 2, etc.) value is SUPRV1 OVER or SUPRV2 OVER. Use for monitoring when/if the supervised signal exceeds a given limit. The relay remains active until the supervised value drops below the low limit. Case B = Parameter 1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1 (or 1402 RELAY OUTPUT 2, etc.) value is SUPRV 1 UNDER or SUPRV 2 UNDER. Use for monitoring when/if the supervised signal falls below a given limit. The relay remains active until the supervised value rises above the high limit. <p>Note! Case LO ≤ HI represents a normal hysteresis.</p> <p>LO > HI</p> <p>Operating data supervision using relay outputs, when LO > HI.</p> <p>The lowest limit (HI 3203) is active initially, and remains active until the supervised parameter goes above the highest limit (LO 3202), making that limit the active limit. That limit remains active until the supervised parameter goes below the lowest limit (HI 3203), making that limit active.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Case A = Parameter 1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1 (or 1402 RELAY OUTPUT 2, etc.) value is SUPRV1 OVER or SUPRV2 OVER. Initially the relay is de-energized. It is energized whenever the supervised parameter goes above the active limit. Case B = Parameter 1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1 (or 1402 RELAY OUTPUT 2, etc.) value is SUPRV1 UNDER or SUPRV2 UNDER. Initially the relay is energized. It is de-energized whenever the supervised parameter goes below the active limit. <p>Note! Case LO > HI represents a special hysteresis with two separate supervision limits.</p>	101...199	1	103	S
3202	<p>SUPERV 1 LIM LO</p> <p>Depends on selection -</p> <p>60.0 Hz</p> <p>Sets the low limit for the first supervised parameter. See 3201 SUPERV 1 PARAM above.</p>				
3203	<p>SUPERV 1 LIM HI</p> <p>Depends on selection -</p> <p>60.0 Hz</p> <p>Sets the high limit for the first supervised parameter. See 3201 SUPERV 1 PARAM above.</p>				
3204	<p>SUPERV 2 PARAM</p> <p>Selects the second supervised parameter. See 3201 SUPERV 1 PARAM above.</p>	101...199	1	104	



Group 32: Supervision					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
3205	SUPERV 2 LIM LO Sets the low limit for the second supervised parameter. See 3204 SUPERV 2 PARAM above.	Depends on selection		4.6 A	
3206	SUPERV 2 LIM HI Sets the high limit for the second supervised parameter. See 3204 SUPERV 2 PARAM above.	Depends on selection		4.6 A	
3207	SUPERV 3 PARAM Selects the third supervised parameter. See 3201 SUPERV 1 PARAM above.	101...199	1	105	
3208	SUPERV 3 LIM LO Sets the low limit for the third supervised parameter. See 3207 SUPERV 3 PARAM above.	Depends on selection		100.0%	
3209	SUPERV 3 LIM HI Sets the high limit for the third supervised parameter. See 3207 SUPERV 3 PARAM above.	Depends on selection		100.0%	

Group 33: Information

This group provides access to information about the drive's current programs: versions and test date.

Group 33: Information					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
3301	FW VERSION Contains the version of the drive's firmware.	0000...FFFF hex	1	Firmware ver.	
3302	LP VERSION Contains the version of the loading package.	0000...FFFF hex	1	0	
3303	TEST DATE Contains the test date (yy.ww).	yy.ww	1	0	
3304	DRIVE RATING Indicates the drive's current and voltage rating. The format is XXXY, where: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • XXX =The nominal current rating of the drive in amps. If present, an "A" indicates a decimal point in the rating for the current. For example XXX = 8A8 indicates a nominal current rating of 8.8 Amps. • Y = The voltage rating of the drive, where Y = : <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 2 indicates a 208...240 Volt rating. • 4 indicates a 380...480 Volt rating. . • 6 indicates a 500...600 Volt rating. 	-	-	-	
3305	PARAMETER TABLE Contains the parameter table version of the drive's firmware				

Group 34: Panel Display Process Variables

This group defines the content for control panel display (middle area), when the control panel is in the output mode.

Group 34: Panel Display Process Variables																										
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S																					
3401	<p>SIGNAL1 PARAM</p> <p>Selects the first parameter (by number) displayed on the control panel.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Definitions in this group define display content when the control panel is in the control mode. Any Group 01 parameter number can be selected. Using the following parameters, the display value can be scaled, converted to convenient units, and/or displayed as a bar graph. The figure identifies selections made by parameters in this group. <p>100 = not selected – First parameter not displayed. 101...199 = Displays parameter 0101...0199. If parameter does not exist, the display shows "n.a."</p>	100...199	1	103																						
3402	<p>SIGNAL1 MIN</p> <p>Defines the minimum expected value for the first display parameter. Use parameters 3402, 3403, 3406, and 3407, for example to convert a Group 01 parameter, such as 0102 SPEED (in rpm) to the speed of a conveyor driven by the motor (in ft/min). For such a conversion, the source values in the figure are the min. and max. motor speed, and the display values are the corresponding min. and max. conveyor speed. Use parameter 3405 to select the proper units for the display. Note! Selecting units does not convert values.</p>	Depends on selection -		0.0 Hz																						
3403	<p>SIGNAL1 MAX</p> <p>Defines the maximum expected value for the first display parameter.</p>	Depends on selection -		600.0 Hz																						
3404	<p>OUTPUT1 DSP FORM</p> <p>Defines the decimal point location for the first display parameter.</p> <p>1...7 – Defines the decimal point location.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Enter the number of digits desired to the right of the decimal point. See table for example using pi (3.14159). <p>8 = BAR METER – Specifies a bar meter display. 9 = DIRECT – Decimal point location and units of measure are identical to the source signal. See Group 01 parameter listing in "Complete Parameter List" for resolution (which indicates the decimal point location) and the units of measure.</p>	0...9	1	9																						
	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>3404 Value</th> <th>Display</th> <th>Range</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>+ 3</td> <td rowspan="4">-32768...+32767 (Signed)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>+ 3.1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>+ 3.14</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>+ 3.142</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td> <td>3</td> <td rowspan="4">0...65535 (Unsigned)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5</td> <td>3.1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6</td> <td>3.14</td> </tr> <tr> <td>7</td> <td>3.142</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>					3404 Value	Display	Range	0	+ 3	-32768...+32767 (Signed)	1	+ 3.1	2	+ 3.14	3	+ 3.142	4	3	0...65535 (Unsigned)	5	3.1	6	3.14	7	3.142
3404 Value	Display	Range																								
0	+ 3	-32768...+32767 (Signed)																								
1	+ 3.1																									
2	+ 3.14																									
3	+ 3.142																									
4	3	0...65535 (Unsigned)																								
5	3.1																									
6	3.14																									
7	3.142																									

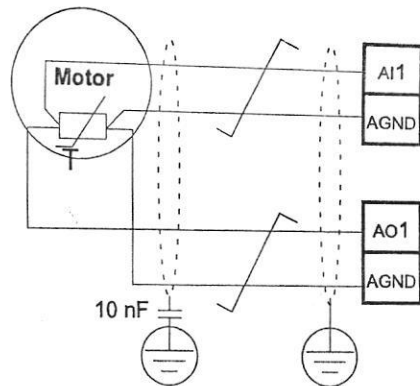
Group 34: Panel Display Process Variables					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
3405	OUTPUT1 DSP UNIT Selects the units used with the first display parameter.	0...127	1	-	
	0 = NOT SEL 9 = °C 18 = MWh 27 = ft 36 = l/s 45 = Pa 54 = lb/m 63 = Mrev 1 = A 10 = lb ft 19 = m/s 28 = MGD 37 = l/min 46 = GPS 55 = lb/h 64 = d 2 = V 11 = mA 20 = m ³ /h 29 = inHg 38 = l/h 47 = gal/s 56 = FPS 65 = inWC 3 = Hz 12 = mV 21 = dm ³ /s 30 = FPM 39 = m ³ /s 48 = gal/m 57 = ft/s 66 = m/min 4 = % 13 = kW 22 = bar 31 = kb/s 40 = m ³ /m 49 = gal/h 58 = inH ₂ O 5 = s 14 = W 23 = kPa 32 = kHz 41 = kg/s 50 = ft ³ /s 59 = in wg 6 = h 15 = kWh 24 = GPM 33 = Ohm 42 = kg/m 51 = ft ³ /m 60 = ft wg 7 = rpm 16 = °F 25 = PSI 34 = ppm 43 = kg/h 52 = ft ³ /h 61 = lbsi 8 = kh 17 = hp 26 = CFM 35 = pps 44 = mbar 53 = lb/s 62 = ms 117 = %ref 119 = %dev 121 = % SP 123 = Iout 125 = Fout 127 = Vdc 118 = %act 120 = % LD 122 = %FBK 124 = Vout 126 = Tout				
3406	OUTPUT1 MIN Sets the minimum value displayed for the first display parameter.	Depends on selection	1	-	
3407	OUTPUT1 MAX Sets the maximum value displayed for the first display parameter.	Depends on selection	1	-	
3408	SIGNAL 2 PARAM Selects the second parameter (by number) displayed on the control panel. See parameter 3401.	100...199	1	104	
3409	SIGNAL 2 MIN Defines the minimum expected value for the second display parameter. See parameter 3402.	Depends on selection	1	-	
3410	SIGNAL 2 MAX Defines the maximum expected value for the second display parameter. See parameter 3403.	Depends on selection	1	-	
3411	OUTPUT 2 DSP FORM Defines the decimal point location for the second display parameter. See parameter 3404.	0...8	1	-	
3412	OUTPUT 2 DSP UNIT Selects the units used with the second display parameter. See parameter 3405.	-128...127	1	-	
3413	OUTPUT 2 MIN Sets the minimum value displayed for the second display parameter. See parameter 3406.	Depends on selection	1	-	
3414	OUTPUT 2 MAX Sets the maximum value displayed for the second display parameter. See parameter 3407.	Depends on selection	1	-	
3415	SIGNAL 3 PARAM Selects the third parameter (by number) displayed on the control panel. See parameter 3401.	100...199	1	120	
3416	SIGNAL 3 MIN Defines the minimum expected value for the third display parameter. See parameter 3402.	Depends on selection	1	-	
3417	SIGNAL 3 MAX Defines the maximum expected value for the third display parameter. See parameter 3403.	Depends on selection	1	-	
3418	OUTPUT 3 DSP FORM Defines the decimal point location for the third display parameter. See parameter 3404.	0...8	1	-	
3419	OUTPUT 3 DSP UNIT Selects the units used with the third display parameter. See parameter 3405.	-128...127	1	-	
3420	OUTPUT 3 MIN Sets the minimum value displayed for the third display parameter. See parameter 3406.	Depends on selection	1	-	

Group 34: Panel Display Process Variables					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
3421	OUTPUT 3 MAX	Depends on selection	1	-	
	Sets the maximum value displayed for the third display parameter. See parameter 3407.				

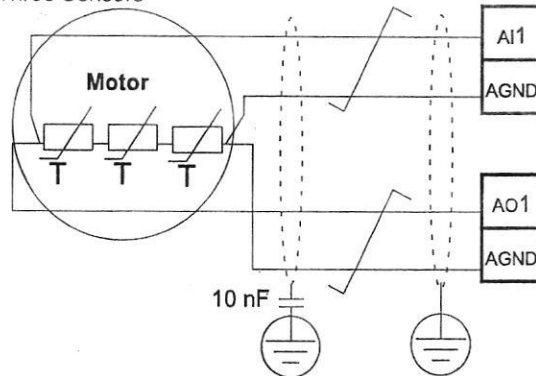
Group 35: Motor Temp Meas

This group defines the detection and reporting for a particular potential fault – motor overheating, as detected by a temperature sensor. Typical connections are defined below.

One Sensor



Three Sensors

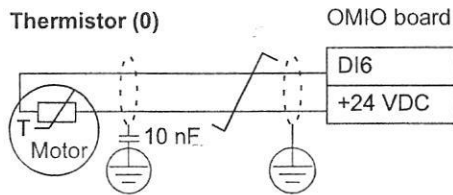
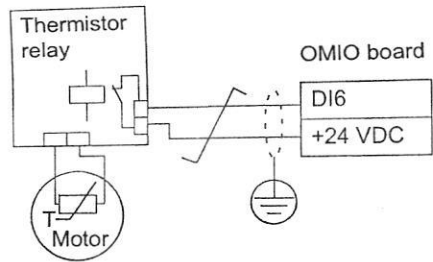


Warning! IEC 60664 requires double or reinforced insulation between live parts and the surface of accessible parts of electrical equipment which are either non-conductive or conductive but not connected to the protective earth.

To fulfil the insulation requirement, connect a thermistor (and other similar components) to the drive's control terminals using any of these alternatives:

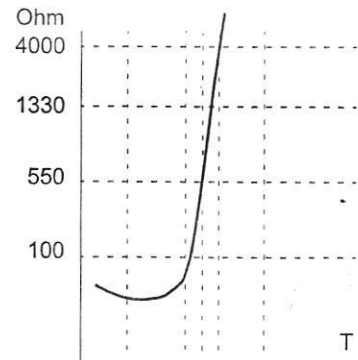
- Separate the thermistor from live parts of the motor with double reinforced insulation.
- Protect all circuits connected to the drive's digital and analog inputs. Protect against contact, and insulate from other low voltage circuits with basic insulation (rated for the same voltage level as the drive's main circuit).
- Use an external thermistor relay. The relay insulation must be rated for the same voltage level as the drive's main circuit.

The figure below shows alternate thermistor connections. At the motor end the cable shield should be earthed through a 10 nF capacitor. If this is not possible, leave the shield unconnected.



For other faults, or for anticipating motor overheating using a model, see Group 30: Fault Functions.

Group 35: Motor Temp Meas											
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S						
3501	<p>SENSOR TYPE</p> <p>Identifies the type of motor temperature sensor used, PT100 (°C) or PTC (ohms). See parameters 1501 and 1507.</p> <p>0 = NONE</p> <p>1 = 1 x PT100 – Sensor configuration uses one PT 100 sensor.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Analog output AO1 or AO2 feeds constant current through the sensor. The sensor resistance increases as the motor temperature rises, as does the voltage over the sensor. The temperature measurement function reads the voltage through analog input AI1 or AI2 and converts it to degrees centigrade. <p>2 = 2 x PT100 – Sensor configuration uses two PT 100 sensors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Operation is the same as for above 1 x PT100. <p>3 = 3 x PT100 – Sensor configuration uses three PT 100 sensors.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Operation is the same as for above 1 x PT100. <p>4 = PTC – Sensor configuration uses one PTC.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The analog output feeds a constant current through the sensor. The resistance of the sensor increases sharply as the motor temperature rises over the PTC reference temperature (T_{ref}), as does the voltage over the resistor. The temperature measurement function reads the voltage through analog input AI1 and converts it into ohms. The figure shows typical PTC sensor resistance values as a function of the motor operating temperature. <table border="1" style="margin-left: 20px;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Temperature</th> <th>Resistance</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Normal</td> <td>0 ... 1.5 kohm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Excessive</td> <td>≥ 4 kohm</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Temperature	Resistance	Normal	0 ... 1.5 kohm	Excessive	≥ 4 kohm	0...6	1	0	
Temperature	Resistance										
Normal	0 ... 1.5 kohm										
Excessive	≥ 4 kohm										



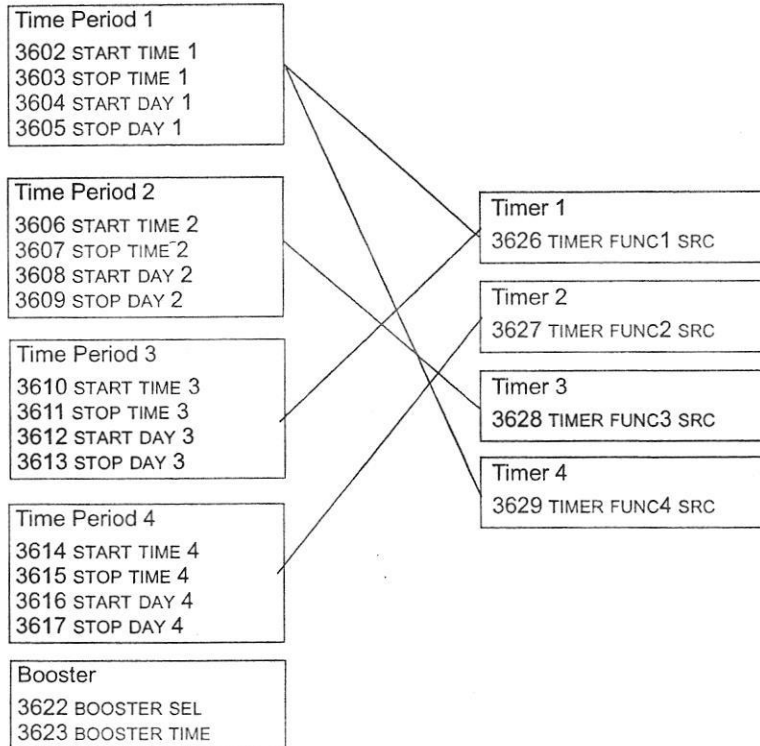
Group 35: Motor Temp Meas					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
	<p>5 = THERMISTOR (0) – Sensor configuration uses a thermistor.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Motor thermal protection is activated through a digital input. Connect either a PTC sensor or a normally closed thermistor relay to a digital input. The drive reads the digital input states as shown in the above table. • When the digital input is '0' the motor is overheated. • See the figures in the introduction to this Group. <p>6 = THERMISTOR (1) – Sensor configuration uses a thermistor.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Motor thermal protection is activated through a digital input. Connect a normally open thermistor relay to a digital input. The drive reads the digital input states as shown in the above table. • When the digital input is '1' the motor is overheated. • See the figures in the introduction to this Group. 				
3502	<p>INPUT SELECTION</p> <p>Defines the input used for the temperature sensor.</p> <p>1 = AI1 – PT100 and PTC. 2 = AI2 – PT100 and PTC. 3...8 = DI1...DI6 – Thermistor</p>	1...8	1	1	
3503	<p>ALARM LIMIT</p> <p>Defines the alarm limit for motor temperature measurement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • At motor temperatures above this limit, the drive displays an alarm (2010, MOTOR OVERTEMP) <p>For thermistors: 0 = de-activated 1 = activated</p>	<p>-10...200 °C / 0...5000 Ohm / 0...1</p>	1	<p>110 °C / 1500 Ohm / 0</p>	
3504	<p>FAULT LIMIT</p> <p>Defines the fault limit for motor temperature measurement.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • At motor temperatures above this limit, the drive displays a fault (9, MOTOR OVERTEMP) and stops the drive. <p>For thermistors: 0 = de-activated 1 = activated</p>	<p>-10...200 °C / 0...5000 Ohm / 0...1</p>	1	<p>130 °C / 4000 Ohm / 0</p>	

Group 36: Timer Functions

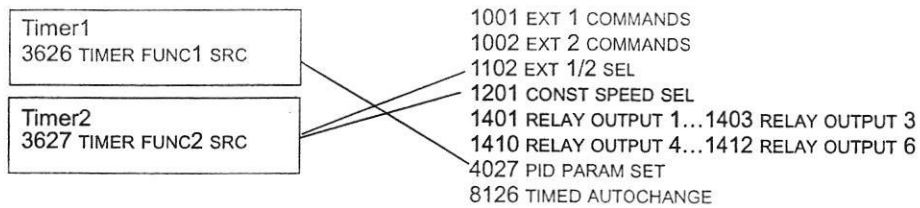
This group defines the timer functions. The timer functions include:

- Four daily start and stop times.
- Four weekly start, stop and boost times.
- Four timers for collecting selected periods together.

A timer can be connected to multiple time periods and a time period can be in multiple timers.

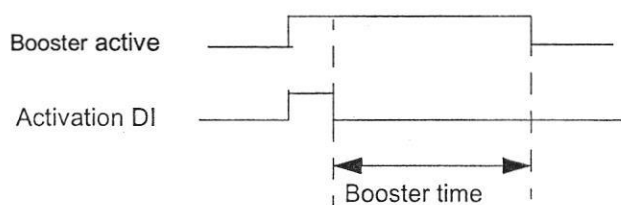


A parameter can be connected to only one time.



Group 36: Timer Functions					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
3601	<p>TIMERS ENABLE</p> <p>Selects the source for the timer enable signal.</p> <p>0 = NOT SEL – Timed functions are disabled.</p> <p>1 = DI1- Defines digital input DI1 as the timed function enable signal.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The digital input must be activated for timed functions enable. <p>2...6 = DI2...DI6 – Defines digital input DI2...DI6 as the timed function enable signal.</p> <p>7 = ENABLED – Timed functions are enabled.</p> <p>-1 = DI1(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI1 as the timed function enable signal.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> This digital input must be de-activated for timed function enable. <p>-2...-6 = DI2(INV)...DI6(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI2...DI6 as the timed function enable signal.</p>	-6...7	1	0	S
3602	<p>START TIME 1</p> <p>Defines the daily start time.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The time can be changed in steps of 2 seconds. If parameter value is 07:00:00, then the period will be activated at 7 a.m. The figure shows multiple periods on different weekdays. <p>When editing parameters to set times:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Use arrow keys to select desired hour setting. Press NEXT to advance to minutes. Use arrow keys to select desired minutes setting. Press NEXT to advance to minutes. Use arrow keys to select desired seconds setting. Press SAVE. 	00:00:00...23:59:58	2 s	12:00:00	
3603	<p>STOP TIME 1</p> <p>Defines the daily stop time.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The time can be changed in steps of 2 seconds. If the parameter value is 09:00:00, then the period will be deactivated at 9 a.m. 	00:00:00...23:59:58	2 s	12:00:00	
3604	<p>START DAY 1</p> <p>Defines the weekly start day.</p> <p>1 = Monday...7 = Sunday.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If parameter value is 1, then period 1 weekly is active from Monday midnight (00:00:00). 	1...7	1	1	
3605	<p>STOP DAY 1</p> <p>Defines weekly stop day.</p> <p>1 = Monday...7 = Sunday.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> If parameter value is 5, then timer 1 weekly will be deactivated on Friday midnight (23:59:58). 	1...7	1	1	
3606	<p>START TIME 2</p> <p>Defines timer2 daily start time.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> See parameter 3602 	00:00:00...23:59:58	2 s	12:00:00	
3607	<p>STOP TIME 2</p> <p>Defines timer2 daily stop time.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> See parameter 3603 	00:00:00...23:59:58	2 s	12:00:00	
3608	<p>START DAY 2</p> <p>Defines timer 2 weekly start day.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> See parameter 3604 	1...7	1	1	

Group 36: Timer Functions					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
3609	STOP DAY 2 Defines timer 2 weekly stop day. • See parameter 3605	1...7	1	1	
3610	START TIME 3 Defines timer 3 daily start time. • See parameter 3602	00:00:00...23:59:58	2 s	12:00:00	
3611	STOP TIME 3 Defines timer 3 daily stop time. • See parameter 3603	00:00:00...23:59:58	2 s	12:00:00	
3612	START DAY 3 Defines timer 3 weekly start day. • See parameter 3604	1...7	1	1	
3613	STOP DAY 3 Defines timer 3 weekly stop day. • See parameter 3605	1...7	1	1	
3614	START TIME 4 Defines timer 4 daily start time. • See parameter 3602	00:00:00...23:59:58	2 s	12:00:00	
3615	STOP TIME 4 Defines timer 4 daily stop time. • See parameter 3603	00:00:00...23:59:58	2 s	12:00:00	
3616	START DAY 4 Defines timer 4 weekly start day. • See parameter 3604	1...7	1	1	
3617	STOP DAY 4 Defines timer 4 weekly stop day. • See parameter 3605	1...7	1	1	
3622	BOOSTER SEL Selects the source for the booster signal. 0 = NOT SEL – Booster signal is disabled. 1 = DI1 – Defines DI1 as the booster signal. 2...6 = DI2...DI6 – Defines DI2...DI6 as the booster signal. -1 = DI1(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI1 as the booster signal. -2...-6 = DI2(INV)...DI6(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI2...DI6 as the booster signal.	-6...6	1	0	
3623	BOOSTER TIME Defines the booster ON time. Time is started when booster sel signal is released. If parameter range is 01:30:00, then booster is active for 1 hour and 30 minutes after activation DI is released.	00:00:00-23:59:58	2 s	00:00:00	



Group 36: Timer Functions				
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default
3626	TIMER 1 SRC Defines the time periods used by the timer. 0 = NOT SEL- No timers have been selected. 1 = P1 – Time Period 1 selected in the timer. 2 = P2 – Time Period 2 selected in the timer. 3 = P2 + P1 – Time Periods 1 and 2 selected in the timer. 4 = P3 – Time Period 3 selected in the timer. 5 = P3 + P1 – Time Periods 1 and 3 selected in the timer. 6 = P3 + P2 – Time Periods 2 and 3 selected in the timer. 7 = P3 + P2 + P1 – Time Periods 1, 2 and 3 selected in the timer. 8 = P4 – Time Period 4 selected in the timer. 9 = P4 + P1 – Time Periods 4 and 1 selected in the timer. 10 = P4 + P2 – Time Periods 4 and 2 selected in the timer. 11 = P4 + P2 + P1 – Time Periods 4, 2 and 1 selected in the timer. 12 = P4 + P3 – Time Periods 4 and 3 selected in the timer. 13 = P4 + P3 + P1 – Time Periods 4, 3 and 1 selected in the timer. 14 = P4 + P3 + P2 – Time Periods 4, 3 and 2 selected in the timer. 15 = P4 + P3 + P2 + P1 – Time Periods 4, 3, 2 and 1 selected in the timer. 16 = BOOSTER (B) – Booster selected in the timer. 17 = B + P1 – Booster and Time Period 1 selected in the timer. 18 = B + P2 – Booster and Time Period 2 selected in the timer. 19 = B + P2 + P1 – Booster and Time Periods 1 and 2 selected in the timer. 20 = B + P3 – Booster and Time Period 3 selected in the timer function. 21 = B + P3 + P1 – Booster and Time Period 3 and 1 selected in the timer. 22 = B + P3 + P2 – Booster and Time Periods 3 and 2 selected in the timer. 23 = B + P3 + P2 + P1 – Booster and Time Periods 3, 2 and 1 selected in the timer. 24 = B + P4 – Booster and Time Periods 4 selected in the timer. 25 = B + P4 + P1 – Booster and Time Period 4 and Timer 1 selected in the timer. 26 = B + P4 + P2 – Booster and Time Period 4 and 2 selected in the timer. 27 = B + P4 + P2 + P1 – Booster and Time Periods 4, 2 and 1 selected in the timer. 28 = B + P4 + P3 – Booster and Time Periods 4 and 3. 29 = B + P4 + P3 + P1 – Booster and Time Periods 4, 3 and 1 selected in the timer. 30 = B + P4 + P3 + P2 – Booster and Time Periods 4, 3 and 2 selected. 31 = B + P4 + P3 + P2 + P1 – Booster and Time Periods 4, 3, 2 and 1 selected.	0...31	1	0
3627	TIMER 2 SRC • See parameter 3626.	0...31	1	0
3628	TIMER 3 SRC • See parameter 3626.	0...31	1	0
3629	TIMER 4 SRC • See parameter 3626.	0...31	1	0

Group 37: User Load Curve

This new group defines supervision of user adjustable load curves (motor torque as a function of frequency). The curve is defined by five points. - The function replaces deleted underload parameters 3013...3015

3701	<p>USER LOAD C MODE Supervision mode for the user adjustable load curves. This functionality replaces the former underload supervision in <i>Group 30: FAULT FUNCTIONS</i>. 0 = NOT SEL – Supervision is not active. 1 = UNDERLOAD – Supervision for the torque dropping below the underload curve. 2 = OVERLOAD – Supervision for the torque exceeding the overload curve. 3 = BOTH – Supervision for the torque dropping below the underload curve or exceeding the overload curve.</p>	
3702	<p>USER LOAD C FUNC Action wanted during load supervision. 1 = FAULT – A fault is generated when the condition defined by 3701 USER LOAD C MODE has been valid longer than the time set by 3703 USER LOAD C TIME. 2 = ALARM – An alarm is generated when the condition defined by 3701 USER LOAD C MODE has been valid longer than half of the time defined by 3703 USER LOAD C TIME.</p>	
3703	<p>USER LOAD C TIME Defines the time limit for generating a fault. Half of this time is used as the limit for generating an alarm.</p>	
3704	<p>LOAD FREQ 1 Defines the frequency value of the first curve definition point. Must be smaller than 3707 LOAD FREQ 2.</p>	
3705	<p>LOAD TORQ LOW 1 Defines the torque value of the first underload curve definition point. Must be smaller than 3706 LOAD TORQ HIGH 1.</p>	
3706	<p>LOAD TORQ HIGH 1 Defines the torque value of the first overload curve definition point.</p>	
3707	<p>LOAD FREQ 2 Defines the frequency value of the second curve definition point. Must be smaller than 3710 LOAD FREQ 3.</p>	
3708	<p>LOAD TORQ LOW 2 Defines the torque value of the second underload curve definition point. Must be smaller than 3709 LOAD TORQ HIGH 2.</p>	
3709	<p>LOAD TORQ HIGH 2 Defines the torque value of the second overload curve definition point.</p>	
3710	<p>LOAD FREQ 3 Defines the frequency value of the third load curve definition point.</p>	
3711	<p>LOAD TORQ LOW 3 Defines the torque value of the third underload curve definition point. Must be smaller than 3712 LOAD TORQ HIGH 3.</p>	
3712	<p>LOAD TORQ HIGH 3 Defines the torque value of the third overload curve definition point.</p>	
3713	<p>LOAD FREQ 4 Defines the frequency value of the fourth load curve definition point.</p>	
3714	<p>LOAD TORQ LOW 4 Defines the torque value of the fourth underload curve definition point. Must be smaller than 3715 LOAD TORQ HIGH 4.</p>	

3715	LOAD TORQ HIGH 4 Defines the torque overvalue of the fourth load curve definition point.
3716	LOAD FREQ 5 Defines the frequency value of fifth load curve definition point.
3717	LOAD TORQ LOW 5 Defines the torque value of the fifth underload curve definition point. Must be smaller than 3718 LOAD TORQ HIGH 5.
3718	LOAD TORQ HIGH 5 Defines the torque value of the fifth overload curve definition point.

Group 40: Process PID Set 1

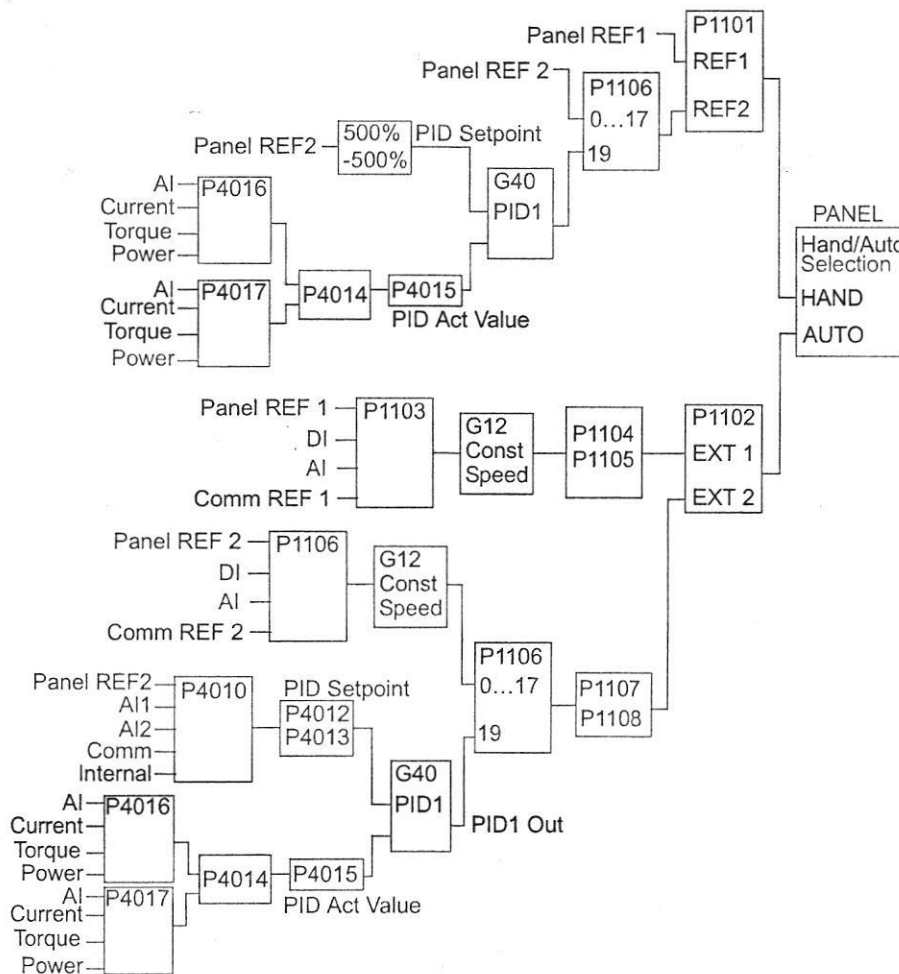
This group defines a set of parameters used with the Process PID (PID1) controller. Typically only parameters in this group are needed.

PID Controller – Basic Set-up

In PID control mode, the drive compares a reference signal (setpoint) to an actual signal (feedback), and automatically adjusts the speed of the drive to match the two signals. The difference between the two signals is the error value.

Typically PID control mode is used, when the speed of a fan or pump needs to be controlled based on pressure, flow or temperature. In most cases – when there is only 1 transducer signal wired to the ACH550 – only parameter group 40 is needed.

A Schematic of setpoint/feedback signal flow using parameter group 40 is presented.



Note! In order to activate and use the PID controller Parameter 1106 must be set to value 19.

PID Controller – Advanced

ACH550 has 2 separate PID Controllers:

- Process PID (PID1) and
- External PID (PID2)

Process PID (PID1) has 2 separate sets of parameters:

- Process PID (PID1) SET1, defined in Group 40 and
- Process PID (PID1) SET2, defined in Group 41

You can select between the 2 different sets by using parameter 4027.

Typically two different PID-Controller sets are used when the load of the motor changes considerably from one situation to another.

You can use External PID (PID2), defined in Group 42, in 2 different ways:

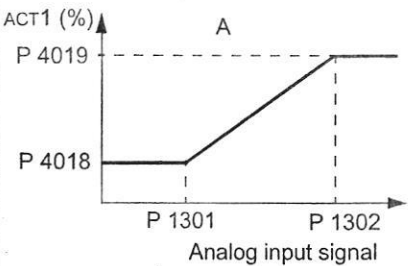
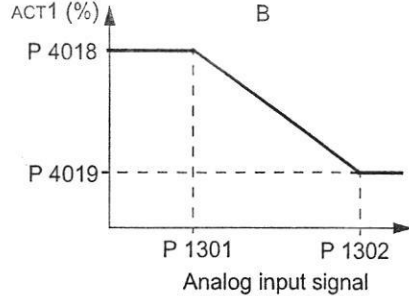
- Instead of using additional PID-controller hardware, you can set outputs of the ACH550 to control a field instrument like a damper or a valve. In this case, set Parameter 4230 to value 0. (0 is the default value.)
- You can use External PID (PID2) as an additional PID-controller to Process PID (PID1) to trim or fine-tune the speed of the ACH550.

An example of the trimming is a return fan that follows the speed of the supply fan. As the return fan needs to run faster or slower than the supply fan in order to create under- or overpressure, correction factors to the supply fan speed are needed. Use External PID (PID2) in the return fan drive to provide these corrections.

Group 40: Process PID Set 1					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
4001	<p>GAIN</p> <p>Defines the PID Controller's gain.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The setting range is 0.1... 100. • At 0.1, the PID Controller output changes one-tenth as much as the error value. • At 100, the PID Controller output changes one hundred times as much as the error value. <p>Use the proportional gain and integration time values to adjust the responsiveness of the system.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A low value for proportional gain and a high value for integral time ensures stable operation, but provides sluggish response. <p>If the proportional gain value is too large or the integral time too short, the system can become unstable.</p> <p>Procedure:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Initially, set: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 4001 GAIN = 0.1. • 4002 INTEGRATION TIME = 20 seconds. • Start the system and see if it reaches the set point quickly while maintaining stable operation. If not, increase GAIN (4001) until the actual signal (or drive speed) oscillates constantly. It may be necessary to start and stop the drive to induce this oscillation. • Reduce GAIN (4001) until the oscillation stops. • Set GAIN (4001) to 0.4 to 0.6 times the above value. • Decrease the INTEGRATION TIME (4002) until the feedback signal (or drive speed) oscillates constantly. It may be necessary to start and stop the drive to induce this oscillation. • Increase INTEGRATION TIME (4002) until the oscillation stops. • Set INTEGRATION TIME (4002) to 1.15 to 1.5 times the above value. • If the feedback signal contains high frequency noise, increase the value of Parameter 1303 FILTER AI1 or 1306 FILTER AI2 until the noise is filtered from the signal. 	0.1...100.0	0.1	2.5	

Group 40: Process PID Set 1																				
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S															
4002	<p>INTEGRATION TIME</p> <p>Defines the PID Controller's integration time.</p> <p>Integration time is, by definition, is the time required to increase the output by the error value:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Error value is constant and 100%. • Gain = 1. • Integration time of 1 second denotes that a 100% change is achieved in 1 second. <p>0.0 = NOT SEL – Disables integration (I-part of controller). 0.1...3600.0 = Integration time (seconds). See 4001 for adjustment procedure.</p>	0.0...3600.0 s	0.1 s	60.0 s																
				<p>A = Error B = Error value step C = Controller output with Gain = 1 D = Controller output with Gain = 10</p>																
4003	<p>DERIVATION TIME</p> <p>Defines the PID Controller's derivation time.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • You can add the derivative of the error to the PID controller output. The derivative is the error value's rate of change. For example, if the process error value changes linearly, the derivative is a constant added to the PID controller output. • The error-derivative is filtered with a 1-pole filter. The time constant of the filter is defined by parameter 4004 PID DERIV FILTER. <p>0.0 = NOT SEL – Disables the error-derivative part of the PID controller output 0.1...10.0 = Derivation time (seconds)</p>	0.0...10.0 s	0.1 s	0.0 s																
				<p>Error 100% 0% Process Error Value t</p> <p>PID output Gain P 401 D-part of controller output t</p>																
4004	<p>PID DERIV FILTER</p> <p>Defines the filter time constant for the error-derivative part of the PID controller output.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Before being added to the PID controller output, the error-derivative is filtered with a 1-pole filter. • Increasing the filter time smooths the error-derivative, reducing noise. <p>0.0 = NOT SEL – Disables the error-derivative filter. 0.1...10.0 = Filter time constant (seconds).</p>	0.0...10.0 s	0.1 s	1.0 s																
4005	<p>ERROR VALUE INV</p> <p>Selects either a normal or inverted relationship between the feedback signal and the drive speed.</p> <p>0 = NO – Normal, a decrease in feedback signal increases drive speed. Error = Ref - Fbk 1 = YES – Inverted, a decrease in feedback signal decreases drive speed. Error = Fbk - Ref</p>	0, 1	-	0																
4006	<p>UNITS</p> <p>Selects the unit for the PID controller actual values. (PID1 parameters 0128, 0130, and 0132).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • See parameter 3405 for list of available units. 	0...31	-	4																
4007	<p>UNIT SCALE</p> <p>Defines the decimal point location in PID controller actual values.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enter the decimal point location counting in from the right of the entry. • See table for example using pi (3.14159). 	0...4	1	1																
					<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>4007 Value</th> <th>Entry</th> <th>Display</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>0003</td> <td>3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>0031</td> <td>3.1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2</td> <td>0314</td> <td>3.14</td> </tr> <tr> <td>3</td> <td>3142</td> <td>3.142</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	4007 Value	Entry	Display	0	0003	3	1	0031	3.1	2	0314	3.14	3	3142	3.142
4007 Value	Entry	Display																		
0	0003	3																		
1	0031	3.1																		
2	0314	3.14																		
3	3142	3.142																		

Group 40: Process PID Set 1					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
4008	<p>0 % VALUE</p> <p>Defines (together with the next parameter) the scaling applied to the PID controller's actual values (PID1 parameters 0128, 0130, and 0132).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Units and scale are defined by parameters 4006 and 4007. 	-1000.0...1000.0%	0.1%	0.0%	
4009	<p>100 % VALUE</p> <p>Defines (together with the previous parameter) the scaling applied to the PID controller's actual values.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Units and scale are defined by parameters 4006 and 4007. 	-1000.0...1000.0%	0.1%	100.0%	
4010	<p>SET POINT SEL</p> <p>20 = PID2OUT – Defines PID controller 2 output (parameter 0127 PID 2 OUTPUT) as the reference source.</p>				
4011	<p>INTERNAL SETPNT</p> <p>Sets a constant value used for the process reference.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Units and scale are defined by parameters 4006 and 4007. 	-1000.0...1000.0%	0.1%	40.0%	
4012	<p>SETPOINT MIN</p> <p>Sets the minimum value for the reference signal source. See parameter 4010.</p>	-500.0...500.0%	0.1%	0.0%	
4013	<p>SETPOINT MAX</p> <p>Sets the maximum value for the reference signal source. See parameter 4010.</p>	-500.0...500.0%	0.1%	100.0%	
4014	<p>FBK SEL</p> <p>11 = COMM FBK 1 – Signal 0158 PID COMM VALUE 1 provides the feedback signal. 12 = COMM FBK 2 – Signal 0159 PID COMM VALUE 2 provides the feedback signal. 13 = AVE(ACT1,2) – The average of ACT1 and ACT2 provides the feedback signal.</p>				
4015	<p>FBK MULTIPLIER</p> <p>Defines an extra multiplier for the PID FBK value defined by parameter 4014.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Used mainly in applications where the flow is calculated from the pressure difference. 0 = NOT USED. -32.768...32.767 = Multiplier applied to the signal defined by parameter 4014 FBK SEL. <p>Example: $FBK = Multiplier \times \sqrt{A1 - A2}$</p>	-32.768...32.767	0.001	0.000	
4016	<p>ACT1 INPUT</p> <p>6 = COMM ACT 1 – Uses value of signal 0158 PID COMM VALUE 1 for ACT1. 7 = COMM ACT 2 – Uses value of signal 0159 PID COMM VALUE 2 for ACT1.</p>				
4017	<p>ACT2 INPUT</p> <p>6 = COMM ACT 1 – Uses value of signal 0158 PID COMM VALUE 1 for ACT2. 7 = COMM ACT 2 – Uses value of signal 0159 PID COMM VALUE 2 for ACT2.</p>				

Group 40: Process PID Set 1					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
4018	ACT1 MINIMUM Sets the minimum value for ACT1. • Used with analog input min/max settings (e.g. 1301 MINIMUM AI1, 1302 MAXIMUM AI1). • Scales analog inputs used as actual values. • See figure: A= Normal; B = Inversion (ACT1 MINIMUM > ACT1 MAXIMUM)	-1000...1000%	1%	0%	
	 				
4019	ACT1 MAXIMUM Sets the maximum value for ACT1. • See 4018 ACT1 MINIMUM.	-1000...1000%	1%	100%	
4020	ACT2 MINIMUM Sets the minimum value for ACT2. • See 4018 ACT1 MINIMUM.	-1000...1000%	1%	0%	
4021	ACT2 MAXIMUM Sets the maximum value for ACT2. • See 4018 ACT1 MINIMUM.	-1000...1000%	1%	100%	
4022	SLEEP SELECTION Defines the control for the PID sleep function. 0 = NOT SEL – Disables the PID sleep control function. 1 = DI1 – Defines digital input DI1 as the control for the PID sleep function. • Activating the digital input activates the sleep function. • De-activating the digital input restores PID control. 2...6 = DI2...DI6 – Defines digital input DI2...DI6 as the control for the PID sleep function. • See DI1 above. 7 = INTERNAL – Defines the output rpm/frequency, process reference, and process actual value as the control for the PID sleep function. Refer to parameters 4025 WAKE-UP DEV and 4023 PID SLEEP LEVEL. -1 = DI1(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI1 as the control for the PID sleep function. • De-activating the digital input activates the sleep function. • Activating the digital input restores PID control. -2...-6 = DI2(INV)...DI6(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI2...DI6 as the control for the PID sleep function. • See DI1(INV) above.	-6...7	-	0	

Group 40: Process PID Set 1					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
4023	<p>PID SLEEP LEVEL</p> <p>Sets the motor speed / frequency that enables the PID sleep function – a motor speed / frequency below this level, for at least the time period 4024 PID SLEEP DELAY enables the PID sleep function (stopping the drive).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Requires 4022 = 7 INTERNAL. See figure: A = PID output level; B = PID process feedback. 	0.0...120.0 Hz / 0...7200 rpm	0.1 Hz / 1 rpm	0.0 Hz	
4024	<p>PID SLEEP DELAY</p> <p>Sets the time delay for the PID sleep function – a motor speed / frequency below 4023 PID SLEEP LEVEL for at least this time period enables the PID sleep function (stopping the drive).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> See 4023 PID SLEEP LEVEL above. 	0.0...3600.0 s	0.1 s	60.0 s	
4025	<p>WAKE-UP DEVIATION</p> <p>Defines the wake-up deviation – a deviation from the setpoint greater than this value, for at least the time period 4026 WAKE-UP DELAY, re-starts the PID controller.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Parameters 4006 and 4007 define the units and scale. Parameter 4005 = 0, Wake-up level = Setpoint – Wake-up deviation. Parameter 4005 = 1, Wake-up level = Setpoint + Wake-up deviation. Wake-up level can be above or below setpoint. <p>See figures:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> C = Wake-up level when parameter 4005 = 1 D = Wake-up level when parameter 4005 = 0 E = Feedback is above wake-up level and lasts longer than 4026 WAKE-UP DELAY – PID function wakes up. F = Feedback is below wake-up level and lasts longer than 4026 WAKE-UP DELAY – PID function wakes up. 	0.0...1000%	0.1	0.0	
4026	<p>WAKE-UP DELAY</p> <p>Defines the wake-up delay – a deviation from the setpoint greater than 4025 WAKE-UP DEVIATION, for at least this time period, re-starts the PID controller.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> See 4023 PID SLEEP LEVEL above. 	0.00...60.00 s	0.01 s	0.50 s	

Group 40: Process PID Set 1					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
4027	<p>PID 1 PARAM SET</p> <p>12 = 2-ZONE MIN – The drive calculates the difference between setpoint 1 and feedback 1 as well as setpoint 2 and feedback 2. The drive will control the zone (and select the set) which has a larger difference.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A positive difference (a setpoint higher than the feedback) is always larger than a negative difference. This keeps feedback values at or above the setpoint. • Controller does not react to the situation of feedback above setpoint if another zone's feedback is closer to its setpoint. <p>13 = 2-ZONE MAX – The drive calculates the difference between setpoint 1 and feedback 1 as well as setpoint 2 and feedback 2. The drive will control the zone (and select the set) which has a smaller difference.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A negative difference (a setpoint lower than the feedback) is always smaller than a positive difference. This keeps feedback values at or below the setpoint. • Controller does not react to the situation of feedback below setpoint if another zone's feedback is closer to its setpoint. <p>14 = 2-ZONE AVE – The drive calculates the difference between setpoint 1 and feedback 1 as well as setpoint 2 and feedback 2. In addition, it calculates the average of the deviations, and uses it to control zone 1. Therefore one feedback is kept above its setpoint and another is kept as much below its setpoint.</p>				

Group 41: Process PID Set 2

This group defines second set of parameters used with the Process PID (PID1) controller.

The operation of parameters 4101...4126 is analogous with Process PID set 1 (PID1) parameters 4001...4026.

PID parameter set 2 can be selected by parameter 4027 PID 1 PARAM SET.

Group 41: Process PID Set 2					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
4101	See 4001 ...4026				
...					
4126					

Group 42: External PID

This group defines the parameters used for the second PID controller (PID2) of ACH550

The operation of parameters 4201...4221 is analogous with Process PID set 1 (PID1) parameters 4001...4021.

Group 42: External PID					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
4201 ... 4221	See 4001 ...4021				
4228	ACTIVATE Defines the source for enabling the external PID function. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Requires 4230 TRIM MODE = 0 NOT SEL. 0 = NOT SEL – Disables external PID control. 1 = DI1 – Defines digital input DI1 as the control for enabling external PID control. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Activating the digital input enables external PID control. • De-activating the digital input disables external PID control. 2...6 = DI2...DI6 – Defines digital input DI2...DI6 as the control for enabling external PID control. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • See DI1 above. 7 = DRIVE RUN – Defines the start command as the control for enabling external PID control. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Activating the start command (drive is running) enables external PID control. 8 = ON – Defines the power-on as the control for enabling external PID control. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Activating power to the drive enables external PID control. 9...12 = TIMER 1...4 – Defines the Timer as the control for enabling external PID control (Timer active enables external PID control). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • See parameter Group 36: Timer Functions. -1 = DI1(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI1 as the control for enabling external PID control. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Activating the digital input disables external PID control. • De-activating the digital input enables external PID control. -2...-6 = DI2(INV)...DI6(INV) – Defines an inverted digital input DI2...DI6 as the control for enabling external PID control. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • See DI1(INV) above. 	-6...12	-	0	
4229	OFFSET Defines the offset for the PID output. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When PID is activated, output starts from this value. • When PID is deactivated, output resets to this value. • Parameter is not active when 4230 TRIM MODE not = 0 (trim mode is not active). 	0.0...100.0%	0.1%	0.0%	
4230	TRIM MODE Selects the type of trim, if any. Using the trim it is possible to combine a corrective factor to the drive reference. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0 = NOT SEL – Disables the trim function. 1 = PROPORTIONAL – Adds a trim factor that is proportional to the rpm/Hz reference. 2 = DIRECT – Adds a trim factor based on the control loop's maximum limit. 	0...2	1	0	
4231	TRIM SCALE Defines the multiplier (as a percent, plus or minus) used in the trim mode.	-100.0%...100.0%	0.1%	0.0%	

Group 42: External PID					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
4232	<p>CORRECTION SRC</p> <p>Defines the trimming reference for the correction source.</p> <p>1 = PID2 REF – Uses appropriate REF MAX (SWITCH A OR B):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1105 REF 1 MAX when REF1 is active (A). • 1108 REF 2 MAX when REF2 is active (B). <p>2 = PID2 OUTPUT – Uses the absolute maximum speed or frequency (Switch C):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 2002 MAXIMUM SPEED if 9904 MOTOR CONTROL MODE = 1 SPEED or 2 TORQUE. • 2008 MAXIMUM FREQUENCY IF 9904 MOTOR CONTROL MODE = 3 SCALAR. 	1...2	1	1	S

Ramped Ref

Ext ref 1 max (A)

Ext ref 2 max (B)

Abs Max Speed Freq (C)

off

prop or.

direct

Trim Scale

Mul. X

Mul. X

Add +

Trimmed Ref

PID2 ref

PID 2

Select (par. 4232)

Trimming PID2 ref

Trimming PID2 out

Group 51: Ext Comm Module

This group defines set-up variables for a fieldbus adapter (FBA) communication module. For more information on these parameters, refer to the user's manual supplied with the FBA module.

Group 51: Ext Comm Module					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
5101	FBA TYPE Displays the type of the connected fieldbus adapter module. 0 = NOT DEFINED – Module not found, or not properly connected, or parameter 9802 is not set to 4 (EXT FBA). 1 = PROFIBUS-DP – 16 = INTERBUS – 21 = LONWORKS – 32 = CANOPEN – 37 = DEVICENET – 64 = MODBUS PLUS – 101 = CONTROLNET –	-	1	0	
5102	FB PAR 2...FB PAR 26	0...65535	1	0	
...	For more information on these parameters, refer to the user's manual supplied with the FBA module.				
5126					
5127	FBA PAR REFRESH Validates any changed fieldbus parameter settings. 0 = DONE – Refreshing done. 1 = REFRESH – Refreshing. • After refreshing, the value reverts automatically to DONE.				
5128	FILE CPI FW REV Displays the CPI firmware revision of the drive's fieldbus adapter configuration file. Format is xyz where: • x = major revision number • y = minor revision number • z = correction number Example: 107 = revision 1.07	0000...FFFF hex	1	0000 hex	
5129	FILE CONFIG ID Displays the revision of the drive's fieldbus adapter module's configuration file identification. • File configuration information is drive application program-dependent.	0000...FFFF hex	1	0000 hex	
5130	FILE CONFIG REV Contains the revision of the drive's fieldbus adapter module configuration file. Example: 1 = revision 1	0000...FFFF hex	1	0000 hex	
5131	FBA STATUS Contains the status of the adapter module. 0 = IDLE – Adapter not configured. 1 = EXEC. INIT – Adapter is initializing. 2 = TIME OUT – A timeout has occurred in the communication between the adapter and the drive. 3 = CONFIG ERROR – Adapter configuration error. • The revision code of the adapter's CPI firmware revision is older than required CPI firmware version defined in the drive's configuration file (parameter 5132 < 5128). 4 = OFF-LINE – Adapter is off-line. 5 = ON-LINE – Adapter is on-line. 6 = RESET – Adapter is performing a hardware reset.	0...6	1	0	
5132	FBA CPI FW REV Contains the revision of the module's CPI program. Format is xyz where: • x = major revision number • y = minor revision number • z = correction number Example: 107 = revision 1.07	0000...FFFF hex	1	0000 hex	

Group 51: Ext Comm Module			
Code	Description	Range	Resolution
5133	FBA APPL FW REV	0000...FFFF hex	1
		0000 hex	
	Contains the revision of the module's application program Format is xyz (see parameter 5132).		

Group 52: Panel Communication

This group defines the communication settings for the control panel port on the drive. Normally, when using the supplied control panel, there is no need to change settings in this group.

In this group, parameter modifications take effect on the next power-up.

Group 52: Panel Communication					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
5201	STATION ID Defines the address of the drive. • Two units with the same address are not allowed on-line. • Range: 1...247	1...247	1	1	
5202	BAUDRATE Defines the communication speed of the drive in kbits per second (kbits/s). 9.6 19.2 38.4 57.6 115.2	9.6...115.2 kbits/s	-	9.6 kbits/s	
5203	PARITY Sets the character format to be used with the panel communication. 0 = 8N1 – No parity, one stop bit. 1 = 8N2 – No parity, two stop bits. 2 = 8E1 – Even parity, one stop bit. 3 = 8O1 – Odd parity, one stop bit.	0...3	1	0	
5204	OK MESSAGES Contains a count of valid Modbus messages received by the drive. • During normal operation, this counter is increasing constantly.	0...65535	1	-	
5205	PARITY ERRORS Contains a count of the characters with a parity error that is received from the fieldbus. For high counts, check: • Parity settings of devices connected on the fieldbus – they must not differ. • Ambient electro-magnetic noise levels – high noise levels generate errors.	0...65535	1	-	
5206	FRAME ERRORS Contains a count of the characters with a framing error that the fieldbus receives. For high counts, check: • Communication speed settings of devices connected on the fieldbus – they must not differ. • Ambient electro-magnetic noise levels – high noise levels generate errors.	0...65535	1	-	
5207	BUFFER OVERRUNS Contains a count of the characters received that cannot be placed in the buffer. • Longest possible message length for the drive is 128 bytes. • Received messages exceeding 128 bytes overflow the buffer. The excess characters are counted.	0...65535	1	-	
5208	CRC ERRORS Contains a count of the messages with a CRC error that the drive receives. For high counts, check: • Ambient electro-magnetic noise levels – high noise levels generate errors. • CRC calculations for possible errors.	0...65535	1	-	

Group 53: EFB Protocol

This group defines set-up variables used for an embedded fieldbus (EFB) communication protocol. Refer to communication protocol documentation for more information on these parameters.

Group 53: EFB Control					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
5301	EFB PROTOCOL ID Contains the identification and program revision of the protocol. • Format: XYY, where xx = protocol ID, and YY = program revision.	0000...FFFF hex	1	0000 hex	S
5302	EFB STATION ID Defines the node address of the RS485 link. • The node address on each unit must be unique.	0...65535	1	1	✓
5303	EFB BAUD RATE Defines the communication speed of the RS485 link in kbits per second (kbits/s). 1.2 kbits/s 2.4 kbits/s 4.8 kbits/s 9.6 kbits/s 19.2 kbits/s 38.4 kbits/s 57.6 kbits/s 76.8 kbits/s	1.2...76.8 kbits/s	-	9.6 kbits/s	
5304	EFB PARITY Defines the data length, parity and stop bits to be used with the RS485 link communication. • The same settings must be used in all on-line stations. 0 = 8N1 – 8 data bits, No parity, one stop bit. 1 = 8N2 – 8 data bits, No parity, two stop bits. 2 = 8E1 – 8 data bits, Even parity, one stop bit. 3 = 8O1 – 8 data bits, Odd parity, one stop bit.	0...3		0	
5305	EFB CTRL PROFILE Selects the communication 1=ACH550 profile used by the EFB protocol. 0 = ABB DRV LIM – Operation of Control/Status Words conforms to ABB Drives Profile, as used in ACH400. 1 = DCU PROFILE – Operation of Control/Status Words conforms to 32-bit DCU Profile. 2 = ABB DRV FULL – Operation of Control/Status Words conforms to ABB Drives Profile, as used in ACH600/800.	0...2	1	0	
5306	EFB OK MESSAGES Contains a count of valid messages received by the drive. • During normal operation, this counter is increasing constantly.	0...65535	1	0	
5307	EFB CRC ERRORS Contains a count of the messages with a CRC error received by the drive. For high counts, check: • Ambient electro-magnetic noise levels – high noise levels generate errors. • CRC calculations for possible errors.	0...65535	1	0	
5308	EFB UART ERRORS Contains a count of the messages with a character error received by the drive.	0...65535	1	0	
5309	EFB STATUS Contains the status of the EFB protocol. 0 = IDLE – EFB protocol is configured, but not receiving any messages. 1 = EXEC. INIT – EFB protocol is initializing. 2 = TIME OUT – A timeout has occurred in the communication between the network master and the EFB protocol. 3 = CONFIG ERROR – EFB protocol has a configuration error. 4 = OFF-LINE – EFB protocol is receiving messages that are NOT addressed to this drive. 5 = ON-LINE – EFB protocol is receiving messages that are addressed to this drive. 6 = RESET – EFB protocol is performing a hardware reset. 7 = LISTEN ONLY – EFB protocol is in listen-only mode.	0...7	1	0	

Group 53: EFB Control					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
5310 to 5320	EFB PAR 10 to EFB PAR 20 These parameters are protocol-specific. Refer to the appropriate protocol in the "Embedded Fieldbus" section for these parameter descriptions.	0...65535	1	Protocol dep.	

Group 81: PFA

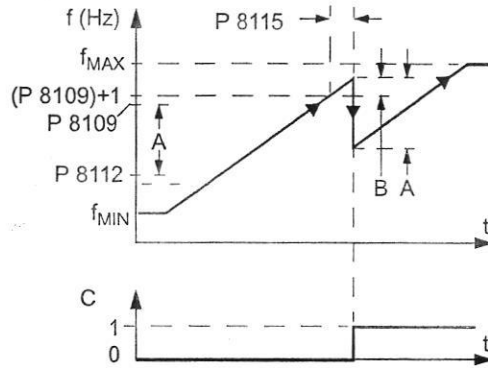
This group defines a Pump and Fan Alternation (PFA) mode of operation. The major features of PFA are:

- The ACH550 controls the motor of pump no. 1, varying the motor speed to control the pump capacity. This motor is the speed regulated motor.
- Direct line connections power the motor of pump no. 2 and pump no.3, etc. The ACH550 switches pump no. 2 (and then pump no. 3, etc.) on and off as needed. These motors are auxiliary motors.
- The ACH550 PID control uses two signals: a process reference and an actual value feedback. The PID controller adjusts the speed (frequency) of the first pump such that the actual value follows the process reference.
- When demand (defined by the process reference) exceeds the first motor's capacity (user defined as a frequency limit), the PFA automatically starts an auxiliary pump. The PFA also reduces the speed of the first pump to account for the auxiliary pump's addition to total output. Then, as before, the PID controller adjusts the speed (frequency) of the first pump such that the actual value follows the process reference. If demand continues to increase, PFA adds additional auxiliary pumps, using the same process.
- When demand drops, such that the first pump speed falls below a minimum limit (user defined by a frequency limit), the PFA automatically stops an auxiliary pump. The PFA also increases the speed of the first pump to account for the auxiliary pump's missing output.
- An Interlock function (when enabled) identifies off-line (out of service) motors, and the PFA skips to the next available motor in the sequence.

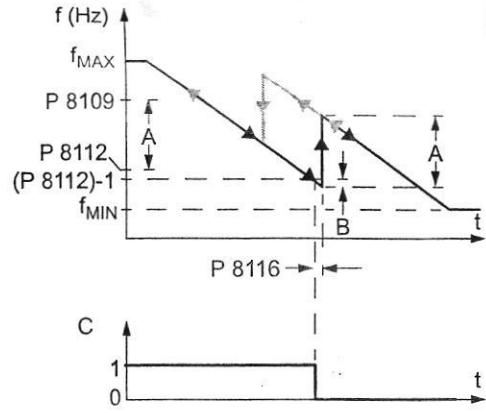
An Autochange function (when enabled and with the appropriate switchgear) equalizes duty time between the pump motors. Autochange periodically increments the position of each motor in the rotation – the speed regulated motor becomes the last auxiliary motor, the first auxiliary motor becomes the speed regulated motor, etc.

Group 81: PFA					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
8103	REFERENCE STEP 1 Sets a percentage value that is added to the process reference. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Applies only when <u>at least one</u> auxiliary (constant speed) motor is running. • Default value is 0%. Example: An ACH550 operates three parallel pumps that maintain water pressure in a pipe. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 4011 INTERNAL SETPNT sets a constant pressure reference that controls the pressure in the pipe. • The speed regulated pump operates alone at low water consumption levels. • As water consumption increases, first one constant speed pump operates, then, the second. • As flow increases, the pressure at the output end of the pipe drops relative to the pressure measured at the input end. As auxiliary motors step in to increase the flow, the adjustments below correct the reference to more closely match the output pressure. • When the first auxiliary pump operates, increase the reference with parameter 8103 REFERENCE STEP 1. • When both auxiliary pumps operate, increase the reference with parameter 8103 reference step 1 + parameter 8104 reference step 2. • When three auxiliary pumps operate, increase the reference with parameter 8103 REFERENCE STEP 1 + parameter 8104 REFERENCE STEP 2 + parameter 8105 REFERENCE STEP 3. 	0.0...100.0%	0.1%	0.0%	

Group 81: PFA				
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default
8104	REFERENCE STEP 2 Sets a percentage value that is added to the process reference. • Applies only when <u>at least two</u> auxiliary (constant speed) motors are running. • See parameter 8103 REFERENCE STEP1.	0.0...100.0%	0.1%	0.0%
8105	REFERENCE STEP 3 Sets a percentage value that is added to the process reference. • Applies only when <u>at least three</u> auxiliary (constant speed) motors are running. • See parameter 8103 REFERENCE STEP1.	0.0...100.0%	0.1%	0.0%
8109	START FREQ 1 Sets the frequency limit used to start the first auxiliary motor. The first auxiliary motor starts if: • No auxiliary motors are running. • ACH550 output frequency exceeds the limit: 8109 + 1 Hz. • Output frequency stays above a relaxed limit (8109 - 1 Hz) for at least the time: 8115 AUX MOT START D. After the first auxiliary motor starts: • Output frequency decreases by the value = (8109 START FREQ 1) - (8112 LOW FREQ 1). • In effect, the output of the speed regulated motor drops to compensate for the input from the auxiliary motor. See figure, where: • A = (8109 START FREQ 1) - (8112 LOW FREQ 1) • B = Output frequency increase during the start delay. • C = Diagram showing auxiliary motor's run status as frequency increases (1 = On). Note! 8109 START FREQ 1 value must be between: • 8112 LOW FREQ 1 • (2008 MAXIMUM FREQ) -1.	0.0...500.0 Hz	0.1 Hz	60.0 (US)
8110	START FREQ 2 Sets the frequency limit used to start the second auxiliary motor. • See 8109 START FREQ 1 for a complete description of the operation. The second auxiliary motor starts if: • One auxiliary motor is running. • ACH550 output frequency exceeds the limit: 8110 + 1. • Output frequency stays above the relaxed limit (8110 - 1 Hz) for at least the time: 8115 AUX MOT START D.	0.0...500.0 Hz	0.1 Hz	60.0 (US)
8111	START FREQ 3 Sets the frequency limit used to start the third auxiliary motor. • See 8109 START FREQ 1 for a complete description of the operation. The third auxiliary motor starts if: • Two auxiliary motors are running. • ACH550 output frequency exceeds the limit: 8111 + 1 Hz. • Output frequency stays above the relaxed limit (8111 - 1 Hz) for at least the time: 8115 AUX MOT START D.	0.0...500.0 Hz	0.1 Hz	60.0 (US)



Group 81: PFA				
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default
8112	LOW FREQ 1 Sets the frequency limit used to stop the first auxiliary motor. The first auxiliary motor stops if: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The first auxiliary motor is running alone. ACH550 output frequency drops below the limit: 8112 - 1. Output frequency stays below the relaxed limit (8112 + 1 Hz) for at least the time: 8116 AUX MOT STOP D. After the first auxiliary motor stops: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Output frequency increases by the value = (8109 START FREQ 1) - (8112 LOW FREQ 1). In effect, the output of the speed regulated motor increases to compensate for the loss of the auxiliary motor. See figure, where: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> A = (8109 START FREQ 1) - (8112 LOW FREQ 1) B = Output frequency decrease during the stop delay. C = Diagram showing auxiliary motor's run status as frequency decreases (1 = On). Grey path = Shows hysteresis – if time is reversed, the path backwards is not the same. For details on the path for starting, see the diagram at 8109 START FREQ 1. Note! Low Frequency 1 value must be between: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (2007 MINIMUM FREQ) + 1. 8109 START FREQ 1 	0.0...500.0 Hz	0.1 Hz	30.0 (US)
8113	LOW FREQ 2 Sets the frequency limit used to stop the second auxiliary motor. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> See 8112 LOW FREQ 1 for a complete description of the operation. The second auxiliary motor stops if: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Two auxiliary motors are running. ACH550 output frequency drops below the limit: 8113 - 1. Output frequency stays below the relaxed limit (8113 + 1 Hz) for at least the time: 8116 AUX MOT STOP D. 	0.0...500.0 Hz	0.1 Hz	30.0 Hz (US)
8114	LOW FREQ 3 Sets the frequency limit used to stop the third auxiliary motor. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> See 8112 LOW FREQ 1 for a complete description of the operation. The third auxiliary motor stops if: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Three auxiliary motors are running. ACH550 output frequency drops below the limit: 8114 - 1. Output frequency stays below the relaxed limit (8114 + 1 Hz) for at least the time: 8116 AUX MOT STOP D. 	0.0...500.0 Hz	0.1 Hz	30.0 Hz (US)
8115	AUX MOT START D Sets the Start Delay for the auxiliary motors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The output frequency must remain above the start frequency limit (parameter 8109, 8110, or 8111) for this time period before the auxiliary motor starts. See 8109 START FREQ 1 for a complete description of the operation. 	0.0...3600.0 s	0.1 s; 1 s	5.0 s
8116	AUX MOT STOP D. Sets the Stop Delay for the auxiliary motors. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The output frequency must remain below the low frequency limit (parameter 8112, 8113, or 8114) for this time period before the auxiliary motor stops. See 8112 LOW FREQ 1 for a complete description of the operation. 	0.0...3600.0 s	0.1 s; 1 s	3.0 s



Group 81: PFA

Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
8117	NR OF AUX MOT	0...3	1	1	✓

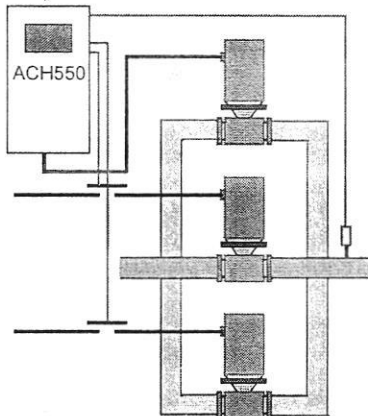
Sets the number of auxiliary motors.

- Each auxiliary motor requires a relay output, which the drive uses to send start/stop signals.
- The Autochange function, if used, requires an additional relay output for the speed regulated motor.

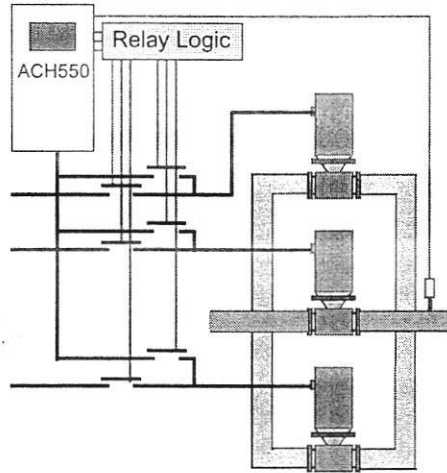
The following describes the set-up of the required relay outputs.
Relay Outputs

As noted above, each auxiliary motor requires a relay output, which the drive uses to send start/stop signals. The following describes how the drive keeps track of motors and relays.

- The ACH550 provides relay outputs RO1...RO3.
- An external digital output module can be added to provide relay outputs RO4...RO6.
- Parameters 1401...1403 and 1410...1412 define, respectively, how relays RO1...RO6 are used – the parameter value 31 PFA defines the relay as used for PFA.
- The ACH550 assigns auxiliary motors to relays in ascending order. If the Autochange function is disabled, the first auxiliary motor is the one connected to the first relay with a parameter setting = 31 PFA, and so on. If the Autochange function is used, the assignments rotate. Initially, the speed regulated motor is the one connected to the first relay with a parameter setting = 31 PFA, the first auxiliary motor is the one connected to the second relay with a parameter setting = 31 PFA, and so on.



Standard PFA mode



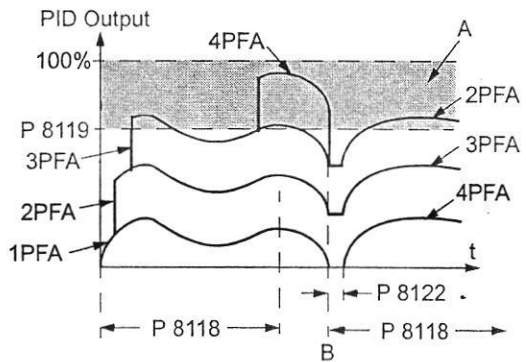
PFA with Autochange mode

- The fourth auxiliary motor uses the same reference step, low frequency and start frequency values as the third auxiliary motor.
- The table below shows the ACH550 PFA motor assignments for some typical settings in the Relay Output parameters (1401...1403 and 1410...1412), where the settings are either =31 (PFA), or =X (anything but 31), and where the Autochange function is disabled (8118 AUTOCHNG INTERV = 0).

Parameter Setting								ACH550 Relay Assignment					
1	4	0	1	1	1	8	Autochange Disabled						
4	4	0	1	1	1	1	RO1	RO2	RO3	RO4	RO5	RO6	
1	2	3	0	1	2	7							
31	X	X	X	X	X	1	Aux.	X	X	X	X	X	
31	31	X	X	X	X	2	Aux.	Aux.	X	X	X	X	
31	31	31	X	X	X	3	Aux.	Aux.	Aux.	X	X	X	
X	31	31	X	X	X	2	X	Aux.	Aux.	X	X	X	
X	X	X	31	X	31	2	X	X	X	Aux.	X	Aux.	
31	31	X	X	X	X	1*	Aux.	Aux.	X	X	X	X	

* =One additional relay output for the PFA that is in use.
 One motor is in "sleep" when the other is rotating.

Code		Description		Group 81: PFA		Range	Resolution	Default	S																																																																																																																																																					
<p>The table below shows the ACH550 PFA motor assignments for some typical settings in the Relay Output parameters (1401...1403 and 1410...1412), where the settings are either =31 (PFA), or =X (anything but 31), and where the Autochange function is enabled (8118 AUTOCHNG INTERV = value > 0).v</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="2">Parameter Setting</th> <th colspan="6">ACH550 Relay Assignment</th> </tr> <tr> <th>1</th><th>4</th><th>0</th><th>1</th><th>1</th><th>1</th><th>8</th> <th colspan="6">Autochange Enabled</th> </tr> <tr> <th>1</th><th>4</th><th>0</th><th>1</th><th>1</th><th>1</th><th>8</th> <th>RO1</th><th>RO2</th><th>RO3</th><th>RO4</th><th>RO5</th><th>RO6</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>8</td> <td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>4</td><td>4</td><td>4</td><td>4</td><td>4</td><td>4</td><td>1</td> <td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>0</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td><td>1</td> <td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td><td>2</td><td>3</td><td>0</td><td>1</td><td>2</td><td>7</td> <td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td><td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>31</td><td>31</td><td>X</td><td>X</td><td>X</td><td>X</td><td>1</td> <td>PFA</td><td>PFA</td><td>X</td><td>X</td><td>X</td><td>X</td> </tr> <tr> <td>31</td><td>31</td><td>31</td><td>X</td><td>X</td><td>2</td> <td>PFA</td><td>PFA</td><td>PFA</td><td>X</td><td>X</td><td>X</td> </tr> <tr> <td>x</td><td>31</td><td>31</td><td>X</td><td>X</td><td>1</td> <td>X</td><td>PFA</td><td>PFA</td><td>X</td><td>X</td><td>X</td> </tr> <tr> <td>X</td><td>X</td><td>X</td><td>31</td><td>X</td><td>31</td><td>1</td> <td>X</td><td>X</td><td>X</td><td>PFA</td><td>X</td><td>PFA</td> </tr> <tr> <td>31</td><td>31</td><td>X</td><td>X</td><td>X</td><td>X</td><td>0**</td> <td>PFA</td><td>PFA</td><td>X</td><td>X</td><td>X</td><td>X</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>** = No auxiliary motors, but the autochange function is in use. Working as standard PID-control.</p>										Parameter Setting		ACH550 Relay Assignment						1	4	0	1	1	1	8	Autochange Enabled						1	4	0	1	1	1	8	RO1	RO2	RO3	RO4	RO5	RO6	1	1	1	1	1	1	8							4	4	4	4	4	4	1							0	0	0	1	1	1	1							1	2	3	0	1	2	7							31	31	X	X	X	X	1	PFA	PFA	X	X	X	X	31	31	31	X	X	2	PFA	PFA	PFA	X	X	X	x	31	31	X	X	1	X	PFA	PFA	X	X	X	X	X	X	31	X	31	1	X	X	X	PFA	X	PFA	31	31	X	X	X	X	0**	PFA	PFA	X	X	X	X
Parameter Setting		ACH550 Relay Assignment																																																																																																																																																												
1	4	0	1	1	1	8	Autochange Enabled																																																																																																																																																							
1	4	0	1	1	1	8	RO1	RO2	RO3	RO4	RO5	RO6																																																																																																																																																		
1	1	1	1	1	1	8																																																																																																																																																								
4	4	4	4	4	4	1																																																																																																																																																								
0	0	0	1	1	1	1																																																																																																																																																								
1	2	3	0	1	2	7																																																																																																																																																								
31	31	X	X	X	X	1	PFA	PFA	X	X	X	X																																																																																																																																																		
31	31	31	X	X	2	PFA	PFA	PFA	X	X	X																																																																																																																																																			
x	31	31	X	X	1	X	PFA	PFA	X	X	X																																																																																																																																																			
X	X	X	31	X	31	1	X	X	X	PFA	X	PFA																																																																																																																																																		
31	31	X	X	X	X	0**	PFA	PFA	X	X	X	X																																																																																																																																																		
8118	AUTOCHNG INTERV																																																																																																																																																													
-0.1 = TEST MODE – Forces the interval to value 36...48 s.																																																																																																																																																														
8119	AUTOCHNG LEVEL	0.0...100.0%		0.1%		50.0%																																																																																																																																																								
<p>Sets an upper limit, as a percent of output capacity, for the autochange logic. When the output from the PID/PFA control block exceeds this limit, autochange is prevented. For example, use this parameter to deny autochange when the Pump-Fan system is operating near maximum capacity.</p> <p>Autochange Overview</p> <p>The purpose of the autochange operation is to equalize duty time between multiple motors used in a system. At each autochange operation:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A different motor takes a turn connected to the ACH550 output – the speed regulated motor. • The starting order of the other motors rotates. <p>The Autochange function requires:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • External switchgear for changing the dive's output power connections. • Parameter 8120 INTERLOCKS = value > 0. <p>Autochange is performed when:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The running time since the previous autochange reaches the time set by 8118 AUTOCHNG INTERV • The PFA input is below the level set by this parameter, 8119 AUTOCHNG LEVEL. <p>Note! The ACH550 always coasts to stop when autochange is performed.</p> <p>In an autochange, the Autochange function does all of the following (see figure):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Initiates a change when the running time, since the last autochange, reaches 8118 AUTOCHNG INTERV, and PFA input is below limit 8119 AUTOCHNG LEVEL. • Stops the speed regulated motor. • Switches off the contactor of the speed regulated motor. • Increments the starting order counter, to change the starting order for the motors. • Identifies the next motor in line to be the speed regulated motor. • Switches off the above motor's contactor, if the motor was running. Any other running motors are not interrupted. • Switches on the contactor of the new speed regulated motor. The autochange switchgear connects this motor to the ACH550 power output. • Delays motor start for the time 8122 PFA START DELAY. • Starts the speed regulated motor. • Identifies the next constant speed motor in the rotation. • Switches the above motor on, but only if the new speed regulated motor had been running (as a constant speed motor) – This step keeps an equal number of motors running before and after autochange. • Continues with normal PFA operation. 																																																																																																																																																														



A = Area above 8119 AUTOCHNG LEVEL – autochange not allowed.
 B = Autochange occurs.
 1PFA, etc. = PID output associated with each motor.

Group 81: PFA					S
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	
	<p>Starting Order Counter</p> <p>The operation of the starting-order counter:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The relay output parameter definitions (1401...1403 and 1410...1412) establish the initial motor sequence. (The lowest parameter number with a value 31 (PFA) identifies the relay connected to 1PFA, the first motor, and so on.) Initially, 1PFA = speed regulated motor, 2PFA = 1st auxiliary motor, etc. The first autochange shifts the sequence to: 2PFA = speed regulated motor, 3PFA = 1st auxiliary motor, ..., 1PFA = last auxiliary motor. The next autochange shifts the sequence again, and so on. If the autochange cannot start a needed motor because all inactive motors are interlocked, the drive displays an alarm (2051, PFA INTERLOCK). When ACH550 power supply is switched off, the counter preserves the current Autochange rotation positions in permanent memory. When power is restored, the Autochange rotation starts at the position stored in memory. If the PFA relay configuration is changed (or if the PFA enable value is changed), the rotation is reset. (See the first bullet above.) 				
8120	<p>INTERLOCKS</p> <p>Defines operation of the Interlock function. When the Interlock function is enabled:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> An interlock is active when its command signal is absent. An interlock is inactive when its command signal is present. The ACH550 will not start if a start command occurs when the speed regulated motor's interlock is active – the control panel displays an alarm (2015, PFA INTERLOCK). <p>Wire each Interlock circuit as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wire a contact of the motor's On/Off switch to the Interlock circuit – the drive's PFA logic can then recognize that the motor is switched off, and start the next available motor. Wire a contact of the motor thermal relay (or other protective device in the motor circuit) to the Interlock input – the drive's PFA logic can then recognize that a motor fault is activated and stop the motor. <p>0 = NOT SEL – Disables the Interlock function. All digital inputs are available for other purposes.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Requires 8118 AUTOCHNG INTERV = 0 (The Autochange function must be disabled if Interlock function is disabled.) <p>1 = DI1 – Enables the Interlock function, and assigns a digital input (starting with DI1) to the interlock signal for each PFA relay. These assignments are defined in the following table and depend on:</p> <p>The number of PFA relays (number of parameters 1401...1403 and 1410...1412) with value = 31 (PFA).</p>	0...6	1	4	✓

Code		Description		Group 81: PFA		Range	Resolution	Default	S
The Autochange function status (disabled if 8118 AUTOCHNG INTERV = 0, and otherwise enabled).									
No. PFA Relays	Autochange Disabled (P 8118)			Autochange Enabled (P 8118)					
0	DI1: Speed Reg Motor DI2...DI6: Free			Not allowed					
1	DI1: Speed Reg Motor DI2: First PFA Relay DI3...DI6: Free			DI1: First PFA Relay DI2...DI6: Free					
2	DI1: Speed Reg Motor DI2: First PFA Relay DI3: Second PFA Relay DI4...DI6: Free			DI1: First PFA Relay DI2: Second PFA Relay DI3...DI6: Free					
3	DI1: Speed Reg Motor DI2: First PFA Relay DI3: Second PFA Relay DI4: Third PFA Relay DI5...DI6: Free			DI1: First PFA Relay DI2: Second PFA Relay DI3: Third PFA Relay DI4...DI6: Free					
4	DI1: Speed Reg Motor DI2: First PFA Relay DI3: Second PFA Relay DI4: Third PFA Relay DI5: Fourth PFA Relay DI6: Free			DI1: First PFA Relay DI2: Second PFA Relay DI3: Third PFA Relay DI4: Fourth PFA Relay DI5...DI6: Free					
5	DI1: Speed Reg Motor DI2: First PFA Relay DI3: Second PFA Relay DI4: Third PFA Relay DI5: Fourth PFA Relay DI6: Fifth PFA Relay			DI1: First PFA Relay DI2: Second PFA Relay DI3: Third PFA Relay DI4: Fourth PFA Relay DI5: Fifth PFA Relay DI6: Free					
6	Not allowed			DI1: First PFA Relay DI2: Second PFA Relay DI3: Third PFA Relay DI4: Fourth PFA Relay DI5: Fifth PFA Relay DI6: Sixth PFA Relay					

Group 81: PFA																												
Code	Description	Range	Resolution																									
	2 = DI2 – Enables the Interlock function, and assigns a digital input (starting with DI2) to the interlock signal for each PFA relay. These assignments are defined in the following table and depend on: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The number of PFA relays (number of parameters 1401...1403 and 1410...1412) with value = 31 (PFA). • The Autochange function status (disabled if 8118 AUTOCHNG INTERV = 0, and otherwise enabled). 																											
		<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: center;">No. PFA Relays</th> <th style="text-align: center;">Autochange Disabled (P 8118)</th> <th style="text-align: center;">Autochange Enabled (P 8118)</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">0</td> <td>DI1: Free DI2: Speed Reg Motor DI3...DI6: Free</td> <td>Not allowed</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">1</td> <td>DI1: Free DI2: Speed Reg Motor DI3: First PFA Relay DI4...DI6: Free</td> <td>DI1: Free DI2: First PFA Relay DI3...DI6: Free</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">2</td> <td>DI1: Free DI2: Speed Reg Motor DI3: First PFA Relay DI4: Second PFA Relay DI5...DI6: Free</td> <td>DI1: Free DI2: First PFA Relay DI3: Second PFA Relay DI4...DI6: Free</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">3</td> <td>DI1: Free DI2: Speed Reg Motor DI3: First PFA Relay DI4: Second PFA Relay DI5: Third PFA Relay DI6: Free</td> <td>DI1: Free DI2: First PFA Relay DI3: Second PFA Relay DI4: Third PFA Relay DI5...DI6: Free</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">4</td> <td>DI1: Free DI2: Speed Reg Motor DI3: First PFA Relay DI4: Second PFA Relay DI5: Third PFA Relay DI6: Fourth PFA Relay</td> <td>DI1: Free DI2: First PFA Relay DI3: Second PFA Relay DI4: Third PFA Relay DI5: Fourth PFA Relay DI6: Free</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">5</td> <td>Not allowed</td> <td>DI1: Free DI2: First PFA Relay DI3: Second PFA Relay DI4: Third PFA Relay DI5: Fourth PFA Relay DI6: Fifth PFA Relay</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">6</td> <td>Not allowed</td> <td>Not allowed</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	No. PFA Relays	Autochange Disabled (P 8118)	Autochange Enabled (P 8118)	0	DI1: Free DI2: Speed Reg Motor DI3...DI6: Free	Not allowed	1	DI1: Free DI2: Speed Reg Motor DI3: First PFA Relay DI4...DI6: Free	DI1: Free DI2: First PFA Relay DI3...DI6: Free	2	DI1: Free DI2: Speed Reg Motor DI3: First PFA Relay DI4: Second PFA Relay DI5...DI6: Free	DI1: Free DI2: First PFA Relay DI3: Second PFA Relay DI4...DI6: Free	3	DI1: Free DI2: Speed Reg Motor DI3: First PFA Relay DI4: Second PFA Relay DI5: Third PFA Relay DI6: Free	DI1: Free DI2: First PFA Relay DI3: Second PFA Relay DI4: Third PFA Relay DI5...DI6: Free	4	DI1: Free DI2: Speed Reg Motor DI3: First PFA Relay DI4: Second PFA Relay DI5: Third PFA Relay DI6: Fourth PFA Relay	DI1: Free DI2: First PFA Relay DI3: Second PFA Relay DI4: Third PFA Relay DI5: Fourth PFA Relay DI6: Free	5	Not allowed	DI1: Free DI2: First PFA Relay DI3: Second PFA Relay DI4: Third PFA Relay DI5: Fourth PFA Relay DI6: Fifth PFA Relay	6	Not allowed	Not allowed	Default	S
No. PFA Relays	Autochange Disabled (P 8118)	Autochange Enabled (P 8118)																										
0	DI1: Free DI2: Speed Reg Motor DI3...DI6: Free	Not allowed																										
1	DI1: Free DI2: Speed Reg Motor DI3: First PFA Relay DI4...DI6: Free	DI1: Free DI2: First PFA Relay DI3...DI6: Free																										
2	DI1: Free DI2: Speed Reg Motor DI3: First PFA Relay DI4: Second PFA Relay DI5...DI6: Free	DI1: Free DI2: First PFA Relay DI3: Second PFA Relay DI4...DI6: Free																										
3	DI1: Free DI2: Speed Reg Motor DI3: First PFA Relay DI4: Second PFA Relay DI5: Third PFA Relay DI6: Free	DI1: Free DI2: First PFA Relay DI3: Second PFA Relay DI4: Third PFA Relay DI5...DI6: Free																										
4	DI1: Free DI2: Speed Reg Motor DI3: First PFA Relay DI4: Second PFA Relay DI5: Third PFA Relay DI6: Fourth PFA Relay	DI1: Free DI2: First PFA Relay DI3: Second PFA Relay DI4: Third PFA Relay DI5: Fourth PFA Relay DI6: Free																										
5	Not allowed	DI1: Free DI2: First PFA Relay DI3: Second PFA Relay DI4: Third PFA Relay DI5: Fourth PFA Relay DI6: Fifth PFA Relay																										
6	Not allowed	Not allowed																										

Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
------	-------------	-------	------------	---------	---

3 = DI3 – Enables the Interlocks function, and assigns a digital input (starting with DI3) to the interlock signal for each PFA relay. These assignments are defined in the following table and depend on:

- The number of PFA relays (number of parameters 1401...1403 and 1410...1412) with value = 31 (PFA).
- The Autochange function status (disabled if 8118 AUTOCHNG INTERV = 0, and otherwise enabled).

No. PFA Relays	Autochange Disabled (P 8118)	Autochange Enabled (P 8118)
0	DI1...DI2: Free DI3: Speed Reg Motor DI4...DI6: Free	Not allowed
1	DI1...DI2: Free DI3: Speed Reg Motor DI4: First PFA Relay DI5...DI6: Free	DI1...DI2: Free DI3: First PFA Relay DI4...DI6: Free
2	DI1...DI2: Free DI3: Speed Reg Motor DI4: First PFA Relay DI5: Second PFA Relay DI6: Free	DI1...DI2: Free DI3: First PFA Relay DI4: Second PFA Relay DI5...DI6: Free
3	DI1...DI2: Free DI3: Speed Reg Motor DI4: First PFA Relay DI5: Second PFA Relay DI6: Third PFA Relay	DI1...DI2: Free DI3: First PFA Relay DI4: Second PFA Relay DI5: Third PFA Relay DI6: Free
4	Not allowed	DI1...DI2: Free DI3: First PFA Relay DI4: Second PFA Relay DI5: Third PFA Relay DI6: Fourth PFA Relay
5...6	Not allowed	Not allowed

- INTERV = 0, and otherwise enabled).

4 = DI4 – Enables the Interlock function, and assigns a digital input (starting with DI4) to the interlock signal for each PFA relay. These assignments are defined in the following table and depend on:

- The number of PFA relays (number of parameters 1401...1403 and 1410...1412) with value = 31 (PFA).

The Autochange function status (disabled if 8118 AUTOCHNG

No. PFA Relays	Autochange Disabled (P 8118)	Autochange Enabled (P 8118)
0	DI1...DI3: Free DI4: Speed Reg Motor DI5...DI6: Free	Not allowed
1	DI1...DI3: Free DI4: Speed Reg Motor DI5: First PFA Relay DI6: Free	DI1...DI3: Free DI4: First PFA Relay DI5...DI6: Free
2	DI1...DI3: Free DI4: Speed Reg Motor DI5: First PFA Relay DI6: Second PFA Relay	DI1...DI3: Free DI4: First PFA Relay DI5: Second PFA Relay DI6: Free
3	Not allowed	DI1...DI3: Free DI4: First PFA Relay DI5: Second PFA Relay DI6: Third PFA Relay
4...6	Not allowed	Not allowed

Group 81: PFA			
Code	Description	Range	Resolution

5 = DI5 – Enables the Interlock function, and assigns a digital input (starting with DI5) to the interlock signal for each PFA relay. These assignments are defined in the following table and depend on:
 • The number of PFA relays (number of parameters 1401...1403 and 1410...1412) with value = 31 (PFA).
 • The Autochange function status (disabled if 8118 AUTOCHNG INTERV = 0, and otherwise enabled).

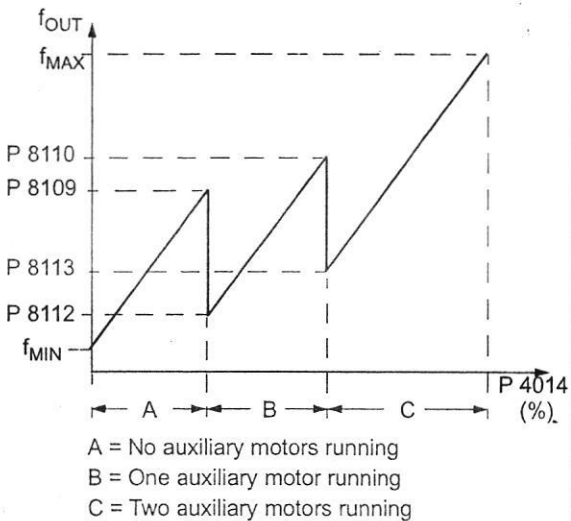
No. PFA Relays	Autochange Disabled (P 8118)	Autochange Enabled (P 8118)
0	DI1...DI4: Free DI5: Speed Reg Motor DI6: Free	Not allowed
1	DI1...DI4: Free DI5: Speed Reg Motor DI6: First PFA Relay	DI1...DI4: Free DI5: First PFA Relay DI6: Free
2	Not allowed	DI1...DI4: Free DI5: First PFA Relay DI6: Second PFA Relay
3...6	Not allowed	Not allowed

6 = DI6 – Enables the Interlock function, and assigns digital input DI6 to the interlock signal for the speed regulated motor.
 • Requires 8118 AUTOCHNG INTERV = 0.

No. PFA Relays	Autochange Disabled	Autochange Enabled
0	DI1...DI5: Free DI6: Speed Reg Motor	Not allowed
1	Not allowed	DI1...DI5: Free DI6: First PFA Relay
2...6	Not allowed	Not allowed

8121 REG BYPASS CTRL **0...1** **1** **0**

Selects Regulator by-pass control. When enabled, Regulator by-pass control provides a simple control mechanism without a PID regulator.
 • Use Regulator by-pass control only in special applications.
0 = NO – Disables Regulator by-pass control. The drive uses the normal PFA reference: 1106 REF2 SELECT.
1 = YES – Enables Regulator by-pass control.
 • The process PID regulator is bypassed. Actual value of PID is used as the PFA reference (input). Normally EXT REF2 is used as the PFA reference.
 • The drive uses the feedback signal defined by 4014 FBK SEL (or 4114) for the PFA frequency reference.
 • The figure shows the relation between the control signal 4014 FBK SEL (OR 4114) and the speed regulated motor's frequency in a three-motor system.



Group 81: PFA					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
<p>Example: In the diagram below, the pumping station's outlet flow is controlled by the measured inlet flow (A).</p>					
8122	PFA START DELAY	0.00...10.00 s	0.01 s	0.50 s	
<p>Sets the start delay for speed regulated motors in the system. Using the delay, the drive works as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Switches on the contactor of the speed regulated motor – connecting the motor to the ACH550 power output. • Delays motor start for the time 8122 PFA START DELAY. • Starts the speed regulated motor. • Starts auxiliary motors. See parameter 8115 for delay. <p>Warning! Motors equipped with star-delta starters require a PFA Start Delay.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • After the ACH550 relay output switches a motor On, the star-delta starter must switch to the star-connection and then back to the delta-connection before the drive applies power. • So, the PFA Start Delay must be longer than the time setting of the star-delta starter. 					
8123	PFA ENABLE	0...1	-	0	✓
<p>Selects PFA control. When enabled, PFA control:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Switches in, or out, auxiliary constant speed motors as output demand increases or decreases. Parameters 8109 START FREQ 1 to 8114 LOW FREQ 3 define the switch points in terms of the drive output frequency. • Adjusts the speed regulated motor output down, as auxiliary motors are added, and adjusts the speed regulated motor output up, as auxiliary motors are taken off line. • Provides Interlock functions, if enabled. • Requires 9904 MOTOR CTRL MODE = 3 SCALAR. <p>0 = NOT SEL – Disables PFA control. 1 = ACTIVE – Enables PFA control.</p>					
8124	ACC IN AUX STOP	0.0...1800.0 s	0.1 s	0.0	
<p>Sets the PFA acceleration time for a zero-to-maximum frequency ramp. This PFA acceleration ramp:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Applies to the speed regulated motor, when an auxiliary motor is switched off. • Replaces the acceleration ramp defined in Group 22: Accel / Decel. • Applies only until the output of the regulated motor increases by an amount equal to the output of the switched off auxiliary motor. Then the acceleration ramp defined in Group 22: Accel / Decel applies. 					

Group 81: PFA					S
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	
	<p>0 = NOT SEL. 0.1...1800 = Activates this function using the value entered as the acceleration time.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A = speed regulated motor accelerating using Group 22 parameters (2202 or 2205). • B = speed regulated motor decelerating using Group 22 parameters (2203 or 2206). • At aux. motor start, speed regulated motor decelerates using 8125 DEC IN AUX START. • At aux. motor stop, speed regulated motor accelerates using 8124 ACC IN AUX STOP. 				
8125	<p>DEC IN AUX START</p> <p>Sets the PFA deceleration time for a maximum-to-zero frequency ramp. This PFA deceleration ramp:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Applies to the speed regulated motor, when an auxiliary motor is switched on. • Replaces the deceleration ramp defined in Group 22 ACCEL / DECEL. • Applies only until the output of the regulated motor decreases by an amount equal to the output of the auxiliary motor. Then the deceleration ramp defined in Group 22 ACCEL / DECEL applies. <p>0 = NOT SEL. 0.1...1800 = Activates this function using the value entered as the acceleration time.</p>	0.0...1800.0 s	0.1 s	0.0 s	
8126	<p>TIMED AUTOCHANGE</p> <p>Sets the autochange with timer. When enables, autochange is controlled with the timer functions.</p> <p>0 = NOT SEL. 1 = Timer 1 – Enables autochange when Timer 1 is active. 2...4 Timer 2...4 – Enables autochange when Timer 2...4 is active.</p>	0...4	1	0	
8127	<p>MOTORS</p> <p>Sets the actual number of PFA controlled motors (maximum 6 motors, 1 speed regulated, 3 connected direct-on-line and 3 spare motors).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • This value includes also the speed regulated motor. • This value must be compatible with number of relays allocated to PFA if the autochange function is used. • If Autochange function is not used, the speed regulated motor does not need to have a relay output allocated to PFA but it needs to be included in this value. 	0...7	1	0	✓
8128	<p>AUX START ORDER</p> <p>Sets the start order of the auxiliary motors.</p> <p>1 = EVEN RUNTIME – Time sharing is active. The start order depends on the run times. 2 = RELAY ORDER – The start order is fixed to be the order of the relays.</p>				

Group 98: Options

This group configures for options, in particular, enabling serial communication with the drive.

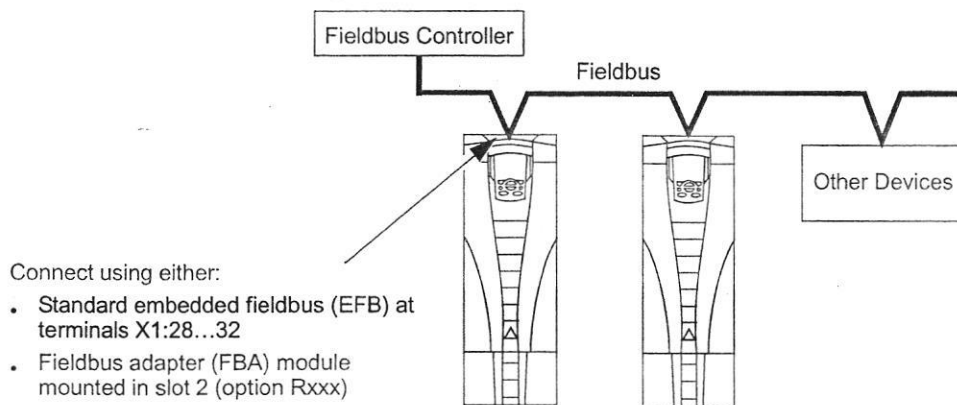
Group 98: Options					
Code	Description	Range	Resolution	Default	S
9802	COMM PROT SEL Selects the communication protocol. 0 = NOT SEL – No communication protocol selected. 1 = STD MODBUS – The drive communicates with Modbus via the RS485 channel (X1-communications, terminal). • See also parameter Group 53 EFB PROTOCOL. 2 = N2 – Enables fieldbus communication with the drive using Metasys N2 protocol via the RS485 serial link (X1-communications terminal). 3 = FLN – Enables fieldbus communication with the drive using FLN protocol via the RS485 serial link (X1-communications terminal). 4 = EXT FBA – The drive communicates via a fieldbus adapter module in option slot 2 of the drive. • See also parameter Group 51 EXT COMM MODULE. 5 = BACNET – Enables fieldbus communication with the drive using BACnet protocol via the RS485 serial link (X1-communications terminal).	0...5	1	0	S

Embedded Fieldbus

Overview

The ACH550 can be set up to accept control from an external system using standard serial communication protocols. When using serial communication, the ACH550 can either:

- Receive all of its control information from the fieldbus, or
- Be controlled from some combination of fieldbus control and other available control locations, such as digital or analog inputs, and the control panel.



Two basic serial communications configurations are available:

- Embedded fieldbus (EFB) – Using the RS485 interface at terminals X1:28...32 on the control board, a control system can communicate with the drive using the Modbus® protocol. (For protocol and profile descriptions, see "Modbus Protocol Technical Data", "ABB Control Profiles Technical Data", etc. starting on page 170.):
 - Modbus®
 - Metasys® N2
 - APOGEE® FLN
 - BACnet®
- Fieldbus adapter (FBA) – See "Fieldbus Adapter" on page 224.

Control Interface

In general, the basic control interface between the fieldbus system and the drive consists of:

Protocol	Control Interface	Reference for more information
Modbus	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Output Words <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Control word – Reference1 – Reference2 • Input Words <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Status word – Actual value 1 – Actual value 2 – Actual value 3 – Actual value 4 – Actual value 5 – Actual value 6 – Actual value 7 – Actual value 8 	The content of these words is defined by profiles. For details on the profiles used, see "ABB Control Profiles Technical Data"
N2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Binary output objects • Analog output objects • Binary input objects • Analog input objects 	"N2 Protocol Technical Data"
FLN	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Binary output points • Analog output points • Binary input points • Analog input points 	"FLN Protocol Technical Data"
BACnet	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Device management • Binary output objects • Analog output objects • Binary input objects • Analog input objects 	"BACnet Technical Data"

Note! The words "output" and "input" are used as seen from the fieldbus controller point of view. For example an output describes data flow from the fieldbus controller to the drive and appears as an input from the drive point of view.

Planning

Network planning should address the following questions:

- What types and quantities of devices must be connected to the network?
- What control information must be sent down to the drives?
- What feedback information must be sent from the drives to the controlling system?

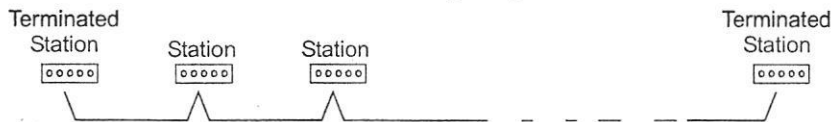
Mechanical and Electrical Installation – EFB



Warning! Connections should be made only while the drive is disconnected from the power source.

Drive terminals 28...32 are for RS485 communications.

- Use Belden 9842 or equivalent. Belden 9842 is a dual twisted, shielded pair cable with a wave impedance of 120 Ω.
- Use one of these twisted shielded pairs for the RS485 link. Use this pair to connect all A (-) terminals together and all B (+) terminals together.
- Use one of the wires in the other pair for the logical ground (terminal 31), leaving one wire unused.
- Do not directly ground the RS485 network at any point. Ground all devices on the network using their corresponding earthing terminals.
- As always, the grounding wires should not form any closed loops, and all the devices should be earthed to a common ground.
- Connect the RS485 link in a daisy-chained bus, without dropout lines.
- To reduce noise on the network, terminate the RS485 network using 120 Ω resistors at both ends of the network. Use the DIP switch to connect or disconnect the termination resistors. See following diagram and table.



X1	Identification	Hardware Description											
28	Screen	RS485 Multidrop application											
29	B (Positive +)		<table border="1"> <tr><td>28</td><td>SCR</td></tr> <tr><td>29</td><td>B</td></tr> <tr><td>30</td><td>A</td></tr> <tr><td>31</td><td>AGND</td></tr> <tr><td>32</td><td>SCR</td></tr> </table>	28	SCR	29	B	30	A	31	AGND	32	SCR
28	SCR												
29	B												
30	A												
31	AGND												
32	SCR												
30	A (Negative -)		<table border="1"> <tr><td colspan="2">RS485 interface</td></tr> <tr><td colspan="2">J2</td></tr> <tr><td colspan="2">ON</td></tr> </table>	RS485 interface		J2		ON					
RS485 interface													
J2													
ON													
31	AGND												
32	Screen		<table border="1"> <tr><td colspan="2">J2</td></tr> <tr><td colspan="2">ON</td></tr> </table>	J2		ON							
J2													
ON													
			<p>OFF position ON position</p> <p>Bus termination</p>										

- Connect the shield at each end of the cable to a drive. On one end, connect the shield to terminal 28, and on the other end connect to terminal 32. Do not connect the incoming and outgoing cable shields to the same terminals, as that would make the shielding continuous.
- For configuration information see the following:
 - "Communication Set-up – EFB" below.
 - "Activate Drive Control Functions – EFB" on page 160.
 - The appropriate EFB protocol specific technical data. For example, "Modbus Protocol Technical Data" on page 170.

Communication Set-up – EFB

Serial Communication Selection

To activate the serial communication, set parameter 9802 COMM PROTOCOL SEL =

- 1 (STD MODBUS).
- 2 (N2)
- 3 (FLN)
- 5 (BACNET)

Note! If you cannot see the desired selection on the panel, your drive does not have that protocol software in the application memory.

Serial Communication Configuration

Setting 9802 automatically sets the appropriate default values in parameters that define the communication process. These parameters and descriptions are defined below. In particular, note that the station Id may require adjustment.

Code	Description	EFB Protocol Reference			
		Modbus	N2	FLN	BACnet
5301	EFB PROTOCOL ID Contains the identification and program revision of the protocol.	Do not edit. Any non-zero value entered for parameter 9802 COMM PROT SEL, sets this parameter automatically. The format is: XXYY, where xx = protocol ID, and YY = program revision.			
5302	EFB STATION ID Defines the node address of the RS485 link.	Set each drive on the network with a unique value for this parameter. When this protocol is selected, the default value for this parameter is: 1 Note: For a new address to take affect, the drive power must be cycled OR 5302 must first be set to 0 before selecting a new address. Leaving 5302 = 0 places the RS485 channel in reset, disabling communication.		Sets MS/TP MAC ID. A temporary value of 0 places the protocol channel in reset.	
5303	EFB BAUD RATE Defines the communication speed of the RS485 link in kbits per second (kbits/s). 1.2 kbits/s 2.4 kbits/s 4.8 kbits/s 9.6 kbits/s 19.2 kbits/s 38.4 kbits/s 57.6 kbits/s 76.8 kbits/s	When this protocol is selected, the default value for this parameter is: 9.6		When this protocol is selected, the default value for this parameter is: 9600. Do not edit.	

Code	Description	EFB Protocol Reference			
		Modbus	N2	FLN	BACnet
5304	<p>EFB PARITY</p> <p>Defines the data length, parity and stop bits to be used with the RS485 link communication.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The same settings must be used in all on-line stations. <p>0 = 8N1 – 8 data bits, No parity, one stop bit. 1 = 8N2 – 8 data bits, No parity, two stop bits. 2 = 8E1 – 8 data bits, Even parity, one stop bit. 3 = 8O1 – 8 data bits, Odd parity, one stop bit.</p>	When this protocol is selected, the default value for this parameter is: 1	When this protocol is selected, the default value for this parameter is: 0		
5305	<p>EFB CTRL PROFILE</p> <p>Selects the communication profile used by the EFB protocol.</p> <p>0 = ABB DRV LIM – Operation of Control/Status Words conform to ABB Drives Profile, as used in ACH400. 1 = DCU PROFILE – Operation of Control/Status Words conform to 32-bit DCU Profile. 2 = ABB DRV FULL – Operation of Control/Status Words conform to ABB Drives Profile, as used in ACH600/800.</p>	When this protocol is selected, the default value for this parameter is: 0	N/A. When this protocol is selected, the default value for this parameter is: 0. Changing the value for this parameter has no affect on this protocol's behavior.		
5310	EFB PAR10	Not used for Comm setup.	Sets them response turnaround time in milliseconds. When this protocol is selected, the default value is:		
			3 msec.	0 msec.	5 msec.
5311	EFB PAR11	Not used for Comm setup.	<p>This parameter, together with parameter 5317, EFB PAR 17, sets BACnet instance IDs:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> For the range 1 to 65,535: This parameter sets the ID directly (5317 must be 0). For example, the following values set the ID to 49134: 5311 = 49134 and 5317 = 0. For IDs > 65,335: The ID equals 5311's value plus 10,000 times 5317's value. For example, the following values set the ID to 71234: 5311 = 1234 and 5317 = 7. 		

Code	Description	EFB Protocol Reference			
		Modbus	N2	FLN	BACnet
5314	EFB PAR14	Not used for Comm setup.			Enables autobaud detection. 0 = DISABLE 1 = ENABLE
5315	EFB PAR15				Displays the detected baud rate when autobaud detection is used.
5317	EFB PAR17				This parameter works with parameter 5311 to set BACnet instance IDs. See parameter 5311.

Note! After any changes to the communication settings, protocol must be reactivated by either cycling the drive power, or by clearing and then restoring the station Id (5302).

Activate Drive Control Functions – EFB

Controlling the Drive

Fieldbus control of various drive functions requires configuration to:

- Tell the drive to accept fieldbus control of the function.
- Define as a fieldbus input, any drive data required for control.
- Define as a fieldbus output, any control data required by the drive.

The following sections describe, at a general level, the configuration required for each control function. For the protocol-specific details, see the document supplied with the FBA module.

Start/Stop Direction Control

Using the fieldbus for start/stop/direction control of the drive requires:

- Drive parameter values set as defined below.
- Fieldbus controller supplied command(s) in the appropriate location. (The location is defined by the Protocol Reference, which is protocol dependent.)

Drive Parameter		Value	Description	Protocol Reference				
				Modbus ¹		N2	FLN	BACnet
				ABB DRV	DCU PROFILE			
1001	EXT1 COMMANDS	10 (COMM)	Start/Stop by fieldbus with Ext1 selected.	40001 bits 0...3	40031 bits 0, 1	BO1	24	BV10
1002	EXT2 COMMANDS	10 (COMM)	Start/Stop by fieldbus with Ext2 selected.	40001 bits 0...3	40031 bits 0, 1	BO1	24	BV10
1003	DIRECTION	3 (REQUEST)	Direction by fieldbus.	4002/ 4003 ²	40031 bit 3	BO2	22	BV11

1. For Modbus, the protocol reference can depend on the profile used, hence two columns in these tables. One column refers to the ABB Drives profile, selected when parameter 5305 = 0 (ABB DRV LIM) or 5305 = 2 (ABB DRV FULL). The other column refers to the DCU profile selected when parameter 5305 = 1 (DCU PROFILE). See "ABB Control Profiles Technical Data" on page 178.
2. The reference provides direction control – a negative reference provides reverse rotation.

Input Reference Select

Using the fieldbus to provide input references to the drive requires:

- Drive parameter values set as defined below.
- Fieldbus controller supplied reference word(s) in the appropriate location. (The location is defined by the Protocol Reference, which is protocol dependent.)

Drive Parameter		Value	Setting	Protocol Reference				
				Modbus		N2	FLN	BACnet
				ABB DRV	DCU PROFILE			
1102	EXT1/EXT2 SEL	8 (COMM)	Reference set selection by fieldbus.	40001 bit 11	40031 bit 5	BO5	26	BV13
1103	REF1 SEL	8 (COMM)	Input reference 1 by fieldbus.	40002		AO1	60	AV16
1106	REF2 SEL	8 (COMM)	Input reference 2 by fieldbus.	40003		AO2	61	AV17

Reference Scaling

Where required, REFERENCES can be scaled. See the following, as appropriate:

- Modbus Register "40002" in the "Modbus Protocol Technical Data" section.
- "Reference Scaling" in the "ABB Control Profiles Technical Data" section.
- "N2 Analog Output Objects" in the "N2 Protocol Technical Data" section.
- The slope of points 60 and 61 in the "FLN Protocol Technical Data" section.

Miscellaneous Drive Control

Using the fieldbus for miscellaneous drive control requires:

- Drive parameter values set as defined below.
- Fieldbus controller supplied reference word(s) in the appropriate location. (The location is defined by the Protocol Reference, which is protocol dependent.)

Drive Parameter		Value	Setting	Protocol Reference				
				Modbus		N2	FLN	BACnet
				ABB DRV	DCU PROFILE			
1601	RUN ENABLE	7 (COMM)	Run enable by fieldbus.	40001 bit 3	40031 bit 6 (inverted)	BO4	35	BV12
1604	FAULT RESET SEL	8 (COMM)	Fault reset by fieldbus.	40001 bit 7	40031 bit 4	BO6	94	BV14
1606	LOCAL LOCK	8 (COMM)	Source for local lock selection is the fieldbus.	Does not apply	40031 bit 14			
1607	PARAM SAVE	1 (SAVE)	Saves altered parameters to memory (then value returns to 0).	41607	40032 bit 2	BO18	N/A ¹	
1608	START ENABLE 1	7 (COMM)	Source for start enable 1 is the fieldbus Command word.	Does not apply.	40032 bit 2			BV20
1609	START ENABLE 2	7 (COMM)	Source for start enable 2 is the fieldbus Command word.		40032 bit 3			BV21
2013	MIN TORQUE SEL	7 (COMM)	Source for minimum torque selection is the fieldbus.		40031 bit 15			
2014	MAX TORQUE SEL	7 (COMM)	Source for maximum torque selection is the fieldbus.					
2201	ACC/DEC 1/2 SEL	7 (COMM)	Source for ramp pair selection is the fieldbus.		40031 bit 10			

1. Use Memorize Point command.

Relay Output Control

Using the fieldbus for relay output control requires:

- Drive parameter values set as defined below.
- Fieldbus controller supplied reference word(s) in the appropriate location. (The location is defined by the Protocol Reference, which is protocol dependent.)

Drive Parameter		Value	Setting	Protocol Reference				
				Modbus		N2	FLN	BACnet
				ABB DRV	DCU PROFILE			
1401	RELAY OUTPUT 1	35 (COMM)	Relay Output 1 controlled by fieldbus.	40134 bit 0 or 00033	BO7	40	BO0	
1402	RELAY OUTPUT 2	35 (COMM)	Relay Output 2 controlled by fieldbus.	40134 bit 1 or 00034	BO8	41	BO1	
1403	RELAY OUTPUT 3	35 (COMM)	Relay Output 3 controlled by fieldbus.	40134 bit 2 or 00035	BO9	42	BO2	
1410 ¹	RELAY OUTPUT 4	35 (COMM)	Relay Output 4 controlled by fieldbus.	40134 bit 3 or 00036	BO10	43	BO3	
1411 ¹	RELAY OUTPUT 5	35 (COMM)	Relay Output 5 controlled by fieldbus.	40134 bit 4 or 00037	BO11	44	BO4	
1412 ¹	RELAY OUTPUT 6	35 (COMM)	Relay Output 6 controlled by fieldbus.	40134 bit 5 or 00038	BO12	45	BO5	

1. More than 3 relays requires the addition of a relay extension module.

For example: To control relays 1 and 2 using serial communication:
Set parameters 1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1 and 1402 RELAY OUTPUT 1 = 35 (COMM).

Then, for example using N2:

- To turn Relay 1 On: Force object B07 to On.
- To turn Relay 2 On: Force object B08 to On.
- To turn both Relay 1 and 2 On: Force objects B07 and B08 On.

Note! Relay status feedback occurs without configuration as defined below.

Drive Parameter		Value	Setting	Protocol Reference				
				Modbus		N2	FLN	BACnet
				ABB DRV	DCU PROFILE			
0122	RO 1-3 STATUS	Relay 1...3 status.	40122	0122	B14... B16	76... 78	BI0... BI2	
0123	RO 4-6 STATUS	Relay 4...6 status.	40123	0123	B17... B19	79... 81	BI3... BI5	

Analog Output Control

Using the fieldbus for analog output control requires:

- Drive parameter values set as defined below.
- Fieldbus controller supplied reference word(s) in the appropriate location. (The location is defined by the Protocol Reference, which is protocol dependent.)

Drive Parameter		Value	Setting	Protocol Reference				
				Modbus		N2	FLN	BACnet
				ABB DRV	DCU PROFILE			
1501	AO1 CONTENT SEL	135 (COMM VALUE 1)	Analog Output 1 controlled by writing to parameter 0135.	–	–	–	–	
0135	COMM VALUE 1	–		40135	AO14	46	AO0	
1507	AO2 CONTENT SEL	136 (COMM VALUE 2)	Analog Output 2 controlled by writing to parameter 0136.	–	–	–	–	
0136	COMM VALUE 2	–		40136	AO15	47	AO1	

PID Control Setpoint Source

Use the following settings to select the fieldbus as the setpoint source for PID loops:

Drive Parameter		Value	Setting	Protocol Reference				
				Modbus		N2	FLN	BACnet
				ABB DRV	DCU PROFILE			
4010	SET POINT SEL (Set 1)	8 (COMM VALUE 1)	Setpoint is either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Input Reference 2 (+/-/* AI1). Control requires parameter 1106 value = comm. • Process PID setpoint. Control requires parameter 1106 value = pid1 out and parameter 4010 value = comm. 	40003	AO2	61	AV17	
4110	SET POINT SEL (Set 2)	9 (COMM + AI1)						
4210	SET POINT SEL (Ext/ Trim)	10 (COMM*AI1)						

Communication Fault

When using fieldbus control, specify the drive's action if serial communication is lost.

Drive Parameter	Value	Description
3018	COMM FAULT FUNC	0 (NOT SEL) 1 (FAULT) 2 (CONST SP7) 3 (LAST SPEED)
3019	COMM FAULT TIME	Set time delay before acting on a communication loss.

Feedback from the Drive – EFB

Pre-defined Feedback

Inputs to the controller (drive outputs) have pre-defined meanings established by the protocol. This feedback does not require drive configuration. The following table lists a sample of feedback data. For a complete listing, see input word/point/object listings in the technical data for the appropriate protocol starting on page 170.

Drive Parameter		Protocol Reference			
		Modbus	N2	FLN	BACnet
0102	SPEED	40102	AI3	5	AV0
0103	FREQ OUTPUT	40103	AI1	2	AV1
0104	CURRENT	40104	AI4	6	AV4
0105	TORQUE	40105	AI5	7	AV5
0106	POWER	40106	AI6	8	AV6
0107	DC BUS VOLT	40107	AI11	13	AV2
0109	OUTPUT VOLTAGE	40109	AI12	14	AV3
0115	KWH COUNTER	40115	AI8	10	AV8
0118	DI1-3 STATUS – bit 1 (DI3)	40118	BI12	72	BI6, BI7, BI8
0122	RO1-3 STATUS	40122	BI4, BI5, BI6	76, 77, 78	BI0, BI1, BI2
0301	FB STATUS WORD – bit 0 (STOP)	40301 bit 0	BI1	23	BV0
0301	FB STATUS WORD – bit 2 (REV)	40301 bit 2	BI2	21	BV1

Note! With Modbus, any parameter can be accessed using the format: 4 followed by the parameter number.

Mailbox Read/Write

The ACH550 provides a "Mailbox" function to access parameters that have not been pre-defined by the protocol. Using mailbox, any drive parameter can be identified and read. Mailbox can also be used to adjust parameter settings by writing a value to any parameter identified. The following table describes the use of this function.

Name	Description	Protocol Reference			
		Modbus ¹	N2	FLN	BACnet
Mailbox Parameter	Enter the number of the drive parameter to access.	Does not apply.	AO19	95	AV25
Mailbox Data	Contains the parameter value after a read, or enter the desired parameter value for a write.		AO20	96	AV26
Mailbox Read	A binary value triggers a read – the value of the "Mailbox Parameter" appears in "Mailbox data".		BO19	97	BV15
Mailbox Write	A binary value triggers a write – the drive value for the "Mailbox Parameter" changes to the value in "Mailbox data".		BO20	98	BV16

1. As noted above, Modbus provides direct access to all parameters using the format: 4 followed by the parameter number.

Actual Value Scaling

The scaling of actual values can be protocol dependent. In general, for Actual Values, scale the feedback integer using the parameter's resolution. (See "Parameter Descriptions" section for parameter resolutions.) For example:

Feedback Integer	Parameter Resolution	(Feedback Integer) * (Parameter Resolution) = Scaled Value
1	0.1 mA	1 * 0.1 mA = 0.1 mA
10	0.1%	10 * 0.1% = 1%

Where parameters are in percent, the "Parameter Descriptions" section specifies what parameter corresponds to 100%. In such cases, to convert from percent to engineering units, multiply by the value of the parameter that defines 100% and divide by 100%. For example:

Feedback Integer	Parameter Resolution	Value of the Parameter that defines 100%	(Feedback Integer) * (Parameter Resolution) * (Value of 100% Ref.) / 100% = Scaled Value
10	0.1%	1500 rpm ¹	10 * 0.1% * 1500 RPM / 100% = 15 rpm
100	0.1%	500 Hz ²	100 * 0.1% * 500 Hz / 100% = 50 Hz

1. Assuming, for the sake of this example, that the Actual Value uses parameter 9908 MOT NOM SPEED as the 100% reference, and that 9908 = 1500 rpm.
2. Assuming, for the sake of this example, that the Actual Value uses parameter 9907 MOT NOM FREQ as the 100% reference, and that 9907 = 500 Hz.

Although Actual Value scaling could differ from the above for the N2 and FLN protocols, it currently does not. To confirm, see the following sections, as appropriate:

- "N2 Analog Input Objects" in the "N2 Protocol Technical Data" section.
- "Scaling Drive Feedback Values" in the "FLN Protocol Technical Data" section.

Scaling does not apply for the BACnet protocol.

Diagnostics – EFB

Fault Queue for Drive Diagnostics

For general ACH550 diagnostics information, see "Diagnostics" starting on page 244. The three most recent ACH550 faults are reported to the fieldbus as defined below.

Drive Parameter		Protocol Reference			
		Modbus	N2	FLN	BACnet ¹
0401	Last Fault	40401	17	90	AV18
0412	Previous Fault 1	40402	18	91	AV19
0413	Previous Fault 2	40403	19	92	AV20

Serial Communication Diagnostics

Network problems can be caused by multiple sources. Some of these sources are:

- Loose connections
- Incorrect wiring (including swapped wires)
- Bad grounding
- Duplicate station numbers
- Incorrect setup of drives or other devices on the network

The major diagnostic features for fault tracing on an EFB network include Group 53 EFB Protocol parameters 5306...5309. The "Parameter Descriptions" section describes these parameters in detail.

Diagnostic Situations

The sub-sections below describe various diagnostic situations – the problem symptoms and corrective actions.

Normal Operation

During normal network operation, 5306...5309 parameter values act as follows at each drive:

- 5306 EFB OK MESSAGES advances (advances for each application message properly received and addressed to this drive).
- 5307 EFB CRC ERRORS does not advance at all (advances when an invalid message CRC is received).
- 5308 EFB UART ERRORS does not advance at all (advances when character format errors are detected, such as parity or framing errors).
- 5309 EFB status value varies depending on network traffic.
- BACnet protocol: 5316 EFB PAR 16 (MS/TP token counter) advances for each token passed to this drive. (Does not apply for other protocols.)

Loss of Communication

The ACH550 behavior, if communication is lost, was configured in "Communication Fault". The parameters are 3018 COMM FAULT FUNC and 3019 COMM FAULT TIME. The "Parameter Descriptions" section describes these parameters in detail.

No Master Station on Line

If no master station is on line: Neither the EFB OK MESSAGES nor the errors (5307 EFB CRC ERRORS and 5308 EFB UART ERRORS) increase on any of the stations.

To correct:

- Check that a network master is connected and properly programmed on the network.
- Verify that the cable is connected, and is not cut or short circuited.

Duplicate Stations

If two or more stations have duplicate numbers:

- Two or more drives cannot be addressed.
- Every time there is a read or write to one particular station, the value for 5307 EFB CRC ERRORS or 5308 EFB UART ERRORS advances.

To correct: Check all station numbers and edit conflicting values.

Swapped Wires

If the communication wires are swapped (terminal A on one drive is connected to terminal B on another):

- The value of 5306 EFB OK MESSAGES does not advance.
- The values of 5307 EFB CRC ERRORS and 5308 EFB UART ERRORS are advancing.

To correct: Check that the RS-485 lines are not swapped.

Fault 28 – Serial 1 Err

If the drive's control panel shows fault code 28 "SERIAL 1 ERR", check for either of the following:

- The master system is down. To correct, resolve problem with master system.
- The communication connection is bad. To correct, check communication connection at the drive.
- The time-out selection for the drive is too short for the given installation. The master is not polling the drive within the specified time-out delay. To correct, increase the time set by parameter 3019 COMM FAULT TIME.

Fault 31 – EFB1

For BACnet: If the drive's control panel shows fault code 31 "EFB1", the drive has an invalid object instance ID. To correct, use parameters 5311 and 5317 and establish a unique drive ID that is in the range 1 to 4,194,303.

Faults 31...33 – EFB1...EFB3

Except as noted above, these three EFB fault codes (listed for the drive in "Diagnostics" starting on page 244, fault codes 31...33) are not used.

Intermittent Off-line Occurrences

The problems described above are the most common problems encountered with ACH550 serial communication. Intermittent problems might also be caused by:

- Marginally loose connections,
- Wear on wires caused by equipment vibrations,
- Insufficient grounding and shielding on both the devices and on the communication cables.

Modbus Protocol Technical Data

Overview

The Modbus® protocol was introduced by Modicon, Inc. for use in control environments featuring Modicon programmable controllers. Due to its ease of use and implementation, this common PLC language was quickly adopted as a de-facto standard for integration of a wide variety of master controllers and slave devices.

Modbus is a serial, asynchronous protocol. Transactions are half-duplex, featuring a single Master controlling one or more Slaves. While RS232 can be used for point-to-point communication between a single Master and a single Slave, a more common implementation features a multi-drop RS485 network with a single Master controlling multiple Slaves. The ACH550 features RS485 for its Modbus physical interface.

RTU

The Modbus specification defines two distinct transmission modes: ASCII and RTU. The ACH550 supports RTU only.

Feature Summary

The following Modbus function codes are supported by the ACH550.

Function	Code (Hex)	Description
Read Coil Status	0x01	Read discrete output status. For the ACH550, the individual bits of the control word are mapped to Coils 1...16. Relay outputs are mapped sequentially beginning with Coil 33 (e.g. RO1=Coil 33).
Read Discrete Input Status	0x02	Read discrete inputs status. For the ACH550, the individual bits of the status word are mapped to inputs 1...16 or 1...32, depending on the active profile. Terminal inputs are mapped sequentially beginning with Input 33 (e.g. DI1=Input 33).
Read Multiple Holding Registers	0x03	Read multiple holding registers. For the ACH550, the entire parameter set is mapped as holding registers, as well as command, status and reference values.
Read Multiple Input Registers	0x04	Read multiple input registers. For the ACH550, the 2 analog input channels are mapped as input registers 1 & 2.
Force Single Coil	0x05	Write a single discrete output. For the ACH550, the individual bits of the control word are mapped to Coils 1...16. Relay outputs are mapped sequentially beginning with Coil 33 (e.g. RO1=Coil 33).
Write Single Holding Register	0x06	Write single holding register. For the ACH550, the entire parameter set is mapped as holding registers, as well as command, status and reference values.
Diagnostics	0x08	Perform Modbus diagnostics. Subcodes for Query (0x00), Restart (0x01) & Listen Only (0x04) are supported.
Force Multiple Coils	0x0F	Write multiple discrete outputs. For the ACH550, the individual bits of the control word are mapped to Coils 1...16. Relay outputs are mapped sequentially beginning with Coil 33 (e.g. RO1=Coil 33).
Write Multiple Holding Registers	0x10	Write multiple holding registers. For the ACH550, the entire parameter set is mapped as holding registers, as well as command, status and reference values.
Read/Write Multiple Holding Registers	0x17	This function combines functions 0x03 and 0x10 into a single command.

Mapping Summary

The following table summarizes the mapping between the ACH550 (parameters and I/O) and Modbus reference space. For details, see "Modbus Addressing" below.

ACH550	Modbus Reference	Supported Function Codes
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Control Bits Relay Outputs 	Coils(0xxxx)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 01 – Read Coil Status 05 – Force Single Coil 15 – Force Multiple Coils
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Status Bits Discrete Inputs 	Discrete Inputs(1xxxx)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 02 – Read Input Status
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Analog Inputs 	Input Registers(3xxxx)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 04 – Read Input Registers
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Parameters Control/Status Words References 	Holding Registers(4xxxx)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 03 – Read 4X Registers 06 – Preset Single 4X Register 16 – Preset Multiple 4X Registers 23 – Read/Write 4X Registers

Communication Profiles

When communicating by Modbus, the ACH550 supports multiple profiles for control and status information. Parameter 5305 (EFB CTRL PROFILE) selects the profile used.

- ABB DRV LIM – The primary (and default) profile is the ABB DRV LIM profile, which standardizes the control interface with ACH400 drives. This profile is based on the PROFIBUS interface, and is discussed in detail in the following sections.
- DCU PROFILE – Another profile is called the DCU PROFILE profile. It extends the control and status interface to 32 bits, and is the internal interface between the main drive application and the embedded fieldbus environment.
- ABB DRV FULL – This profile standardizes the control interface with ACH600 and ACS800 drives. This profile is also based on the PROFIBUS interface, and supports two control word bits not supported by the ABB DRV LIM profile.

Modbus Addressing

With Modbus, each function code implies access to a specific Modbus reference set. Thus, the leading digit is not included in the address field of a Modbus message.

Note: The ACH550 supports the zero-based addressing of the Modbus specification. Holding register 4002 is addressed as 0001 in a Modbus message. Similarly, coil 33 is addressed as 0032 in a Modbus message.

Refer again to the "Mapping Summary" above. The following sections describe, in detail, the mapping to each Modbus reference set.

0xxxx Mapping – Modbus Coils. The drive maps the following information to the 0xxxx Modbus set called Modbus Coils:

- Bit-wise map of the CONTROL WORD (selected using parameter 5305 EFB CTRL PROFILE). The first 32 coils are reserved for this purpose.
- Relay output states, numbered sequentially beginning with coil 00033.

The following table summarizes the 0xxxx reference set:

Modbus Ref.	Internal Location (All Profiles)	ABB DRV LIM (5305 = 0)	DCU PROFILE (5305 = 1)	ABB DRV FULL (5305 = 2)
00001	CONTROL WORD – Bit 0	OFF1*	STOP	OFF1*
00002	CONTROL WORD – Bit 1	OFF2*	START	OFF2*
00003	CONTROL WORD – Bit 2	OFF3*	REVERSE	OFF3*
00004	CONTROL WORD – Bit 3	START	LOCAL	START
00005	CONTROL WORD – Bit 4	N/A	RESET	RAMP_OUT_ZERO*
00006	CONTROL WORD – Bit 5	RAMP_HOLD*	EXT2	RAMP_HOLD*
00007	CONTROL WORD – Bit 6	RAMP_IN_ZERO*	RUN_DISABLE	RAMP_IN_ZERO*
00008	CONTROL WORD – Bit 7	RESET	STPMODE_R	RESET
00009	CONTROL WORD – Bit 8	N/A	STPMODE_EM	N/A
00010	CONTROL WORD – Bit 9	N/A	STPMODE_C	N/A
00011	CONTROL WORD – Bit 10	N/A	RAMP_2	REMOTE_CMD*
00012	CONTROL WORD – Bit 11	EXT2	RAMP_OUT_0	EXT2
00013	CONTROL WORD – Bit 12	N/A	RAMP_HOLD	N/A
00014	CONTROL WORD – Bit 13	N/A	RAMP_IN_0	N/A
00015	CONTROL WORD – Bit 14	N/A	REQ_LOCALLOCK	N/A
00016	CONTROL WORD – Bit 15	N/A	TORQLIM2	N/A
00017	CONTROL WORD – Bit 16	Does not apply	FBLOCAL_CTL	Does not apply
00018	CONTROL WORD – Bit 17		FBLOCAL_REF	
00019	CONTROL WORD – Bit 18		START_DISABLE1	
00020	CONTROL WORD – Bit 19		START_DISABLE2	
00021... 00032	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved
00033	RELAY OUTPUT 1	Relay Output 1	Relay Output 1	Relay Output 1
00034	RELAY OUTPUT 2	Relay Output 2	Relay Output 2	Relay Output 2
00035	RELAY OUTPUT 3	Relay Output 3	Relay Output 3	Relay Output 3
00036	RELAY OUTPUT 4	Relay Output 4	Relay Output 4	Relay Output 4
00037	RELAY OUTPUT 5	Relay Output 5	Relay Output 5	Relay Output 5
00038	RELAY OUTPUT 6	Relay Output 6	Relay Output 6	Relay Output 6

* = Active low

For the 0xxxx registers:

- Status is always readable.
- Forcing is allowed by user configuration of the drive for fieldbus control.
- Additional relay outputs are added sequentially.

The ACH550 supports the following Modbus function codes for coils:

Function Code	Description
01	Read coil status
05	Force single coil
15 (0x0F Hex)	Force multiple coils

1xxxx Mapping – Modbus Discrete Inputs. The drive maps the following information to the 1xxxx Modbus set called Modbus Discrete Inputs:

- Bit-wise map of the STATUS WORD (selected using parameter 5305 EFB CTRL PROFILE). The first 32 inputs are reserved for this purpose.
- Discrete hardware inputs, numbered sequentially beginning with input 33.

The following table summarizes the 1xxxx reference set:

Modbus Ref.	Internal Location (All Profiles)	ABB DRV (5305 = 0 or 2)	DCU PROFILE (5305 = 1)
10001	STATUS WORD – Bit 0	RDY_ON	READY
10002	STATUS WORD – Bit 1	RDY_RUN	ENABLED
10003	STATUS WORD – Bit 2	RDY_REF	STARTED
10004	STATUS WORD – Bit 3	TRIPPED	RUNNING
10005	STATUS WORD – Bit 4	OFF_2_STA*	ZERO_SPEED
10006	STATUS WORD – Bit 5	OFF_3_STA*	ACCELERATE
10007	STATUS WORD – Bit 6	SWC_ON_INHIB	DECELERATE
10008	STATUS WORD – Bit 7	ALARM	AT_SETPOINT
10009	STATUS WORD – Bit 8	AT_SETPOINT	LIMIT
10010	STATUS WORD – Bit 9	REMOTE	SUPERVISION
10011	STATUS WORD – Bit 10	ABOVE_LIMIT	REV_REF
10012	STATUS WORD – Bit 11	EXT2	REV_ACT
10013	STATUS WORD – Bit 12	RUN_ENABLE	PANEL_LOCAL
10014	STATUS WORD – Bit 13	N/A	FIELDBUS_LOCAL
10015	STATUS WORD – Bit 14	N/A	EXT2_ACT
10016	STATUS WORD – Bit 15	N/A	FAULT
10017	STATUS WORD – Bit 16	Reserved	ALARM
10018	STATUS WORD – Bit 17	Reserved	REQ_MAINT
10019	STATUS WORD – Bit 18	Reserved	DIRLOCK
10020	STATUS WORD – Bit 19	Reserved	LOCALLOCK
10021	STATUS WORD – Bit 20	Reserved	CTL_MODE
10022	STATUS WORD – Bit 21	Reserved	Reserved
10023	STATUS WORD – Bit 22	Reserved	Reserved
10024	STATUS WORD – Bit 23	Reserved	Reserved
10025	STATUS WORD – Bit 24	Reserved	Reserved
10026	STATUS WORD – Bit 25	Reserved	Reserved
10027	STATUS WORD – Bit 26	Reserved	REQ_CTL

Modbus Ref.	Internal Location (All Profiles)	ABB DRV (5305 = 0 or 2)	DCU PROFILE (5305 = 1)
10028	STATUS WORD – Bit 27	Reserved	REQ_REF1
10029	STATUS WORD – Bit 28	Reserved	REQ_REF2
10030	STATUS WORD – Bit 29	Reserved	REQ_REF2EXT
10031	STATUS WORD – Bit 30	Reserved	ACK_STARTINH
10032	STATUS WORD – Bit 31	Reserved	ACK_OFF_ILCK
10033	DI1	DI1	DI1
10034	DI2	DI2	DI2
10035	DI3	DI3	DI3
10036	DI4	DI4	DI4
10037	DI5	DI5	DI5
10038	DI6	DI6	DI6

* = Active low

For the 1xxxx registers:

- Additional discrete inputs are added sequentially.

The ACH550 supports the following Modbus function codes for discrete inputs:

Function Code	Description
02	Read input status

3xxxx Mapping – Modbus Inputs. The drive maps the following information to the 3xxxx Modbus addresses called Modbus input registers:

- Any user defined analog inputs.

The following table summarizes the input registers:

Modbus Reference	Internal Location (All Profiles)	Remarks
30001	AI1	This register shall report the level of Analog Input 1 (0...100%).
30002	AI2	This register shall report the level of Analog Input 2 (0...100%).

The ACH550 supports the following Modbus function codes for 3xxxx registers:

Function Code	Description
04	Read 3xxxx input status

4xxxx Register Mapping. The drive maps its parameters and other data to the 4xxxx holding registers as follows:

- 40001...40099 map to drive control and actual values. These registers are described in the table below.
- 40101...49999 map to drive parameters 0101...9999. Register addresses that do not correspond to drive parameters are invalid. If there is an attempt to read or write outside the parameter addresses, the Modbus interface returns an exception code to the controller.

The following table summarizes the 4xxxx drive control registers 40001...40099 (for 4xxxx registers above 40099, see the drive parameter list, e.g. 40102 is parameter 0102):

Modbus Register		Access	Remarks
40001	CONTROL WORD	R/W	Maps directly to the profile's CONTROL WORD. Supported only if 5305 = 0 or 2 (ABB Drives profile). Parameter 5319 holds a copy in hex format.
40002	Reference 1	R/W	Range = 0...+20000 (scaled to 0...1105 REF1 MAX), or -20000...0 (scaled to 1105 REF1 MAX...0).
40003	Reference 2	R/W	Range = 0...+10000 (scaled to 0...1108 REF2 MAX), or -10000...0 (scaled to 1108 REF2 MAX...0).
40004	STATUS WORD	R	Maps directly to the profile's STATUS WORD. Supported only if 5305 = 0 or 2 (ABB Drives profile). Parameter 5320 holds a copy in hex format.
40005	Actual 1 (select using 5310)	R	By default, stores a copy of 0103 OUTPUT FREQ. Use parameter 5310 to select a different actual value for this register.
40006	Actual 2 (select using 5311)	R	By default, stores a copy of 0104 CURRENT. Use parameter 5311 to select a different actual value for this register.
40007	Actual 3 (select using 5312)	R	By default, stores nothing. Use parameter 5312 to select an actual value for this register.
40008	Actual 4 (select by 5313)	R	By default, stores nothing. Use parameter 5313 to select an actual value for this register.
40009	Actual 5 (select using 5314)	R	By default, stores nothing. Use parameter 5314 to select an actual value for this register.
40010	Actual 6 (select using 5315)	R	By default, stores nothing. Use parameter 5315 to select an actual value for this register.
40011	Actual 7 (select using 5316)	R	By default, stores nothing. Use parameter 5316 to select an actual value for this register.
40012	Actual 8 (select using 5317)	R	By default, stores nothing. Use parameter 5317 to select an actual value for this register.
40031	ACH550 CONTROL WORD LSW	R/W	Maps directly to the Least Significant Word of the DCU profile's CONTROL WORD. Supported only if 5305 = 1. See parameter 0301.
40032	ACH550 CONTROL WORD MSW	R	Maps directly to the Most Significant Word of the DCU profile's CONTROL WORD. Supported only if 5305 = 1. See parameter 0302.
40033	ACH550 STATUS WORD LSW	R	Maps directly to the Least Significant Word of the DCU profile's CONTROL WORD. Supported only if 5305 = 1. See parameter 0303.
40034	ACH550 STATUS WORD MSW	R	Maps directly to the Most Significant Word of the DCU profile's CONTROL WORD. Supported only if 5305 = 1. See parameter 0304.

For the Modbus protocol, drive parameters in group 53 report the parameter mapping to 4xxxx Registers.

Code	Description
5310	EFB PAR 10 Specifies the parameter mapped to Modbus register 40005.
5311	EFB PAR 11 Specifies the parameter mapped to Modbus register 40006.
5312	EFB PAR 12 Specifies the parameter mapped to Modbus register 40007.
5313	EFB PAR 13 Specifies the parameter mapped to Modbus register 40008.
5314	EFB PAR 14 Specifies the parameter mapped to Modbus register 40009.
5315	EFB PAR 15 Specifies the parameter mapped to Modbus register 40010.
5316	EFB PAR 16 Specifies the parameter mapped to Modbus register 40011.
5317	EFB PAR 17 Specifies the parameter mapped to Modbus register 40012.
5318	Reserved.
5319	EFB PAR 19 Holds a copy (in hex) of the CONTROL WORD, Modbus register 40001.
5320	EFB PAR 20 Holds a copy (in hex) of the STATUS WORD, Modbus register 40004.

Except where restricted by the drive, all parameters are available for both reading and writing. The parameter writes are verified for the correct value, and for a valid register addresses.

Note! Parameter writes through standard Modbus are always volatile i.e. modified values are not automatically stored to permanent memory. Use parameter 1607 PARAM. SAVE to save all altered values.

The ACH550 supports the following Modbus function codes for 4xxxx registers:

Function Code	Description
03	Read holding 4xxxx registers
06	Preset single 4xxxx register
16 (0x10 Hex)	Preset multiple 4xxxx registers
23 (0x17 Hex)	Read/write 4xxxx registers

Actual Values

The contents of the register addresses 4005...4012 are ACTUAL VALUES and are:

- Specified using parameters 5310...5317.
- Read-only values containing information on the operation of the drive.
- 16-bit words containing a sign bit and a 15-bit integer.
- When negative values, written as the two's complement of the corresponding positive value.
- Scaled as described earlier in "Actual Value Scaling".

Exception Codes

Exception codes are serial communication responses from the drive. The ACH550 supports the standard Modbus exception codes defined below.

Exception Code	Name	Meaning
01	ILLEGAL FUNCTION	Unsupported Command
02	ILLEGAL DATA ADDRESS	The data address received in the query is not allowable. It is not a defined parameter/group.
03	ILLEGAL DATA VALUE	A value contained in the query data field is not an allowable value for the ACH550, because it is one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Outside min. or max. limits. • Parameter is read-only. • Message is too long. • Parameter write not allowed when start is active. • Parameter write not allowed when factory macro is selected.

ABB Control Profiles Technical Data

Overview

ABB Drives Profile

The ABB Drives profile provides a standard profile that can be used on multiple protocols, including Modbus and the protocols available on the FBA module. Two implementations of the ABB Drives profile are available:

- ABB DRV FULL – This implementation standardizes the control interface with ACS600 and ACS800 drives.
- ABB DRV LIM – This implementation standardizes the control interface with ACS400 drives. This implementation does not support two control word bits supported by ABB DRV FULL.

Except as noted, the following “ABB Drives Profile” descriptions apply to both implementations.

DCU Profile

The DCU profile extends the control and status interface to 32 bits, and is the internal interface between the main drive application and the embedded fieldbus environment.

Control Word

The CONTROL WORD is the principal means for controlling the drive from a fieldbus system. The fieldbus master station sends the CONTROL WORD to the drive. The drive switches between states according to the bit-coded instructions in the CONTROL WORD. Using the CONTROL WORD (ABB Drives profile version) requires that:

- The drive is in remote (REM) control.
- The serial communication channel is defined as the source for controlling commands (set using parameters 1001 EXT1 COMMANDS, 1002 EXT2 COMMANDS and 1102 EXT1/EXT2 SEL).
- The serial communication channel used is configured to use an ABB control profile. For example, to use the control profile ABB DRV FULL, requires both parameter 9802 COMM PROT SEL = 1 (STD MODBUS), and parameter 5305 EFB CTRL PROFILE = 2 (ABB DRV FULL).

ABB Drives Profile

The following table and the state diagram later in this sub-section describe the CONTROL WORD content for the ABB Drives Profile.

ABB Drives Profile (EFB) CONTROL WORD				
Bit	Name	Value	Commanded State	Comments
0	OFF1 CONTROL	1	READY TO OPERATE	Enter READY TO OPERATE
		0	EMERGENCY OFF	Drive ramps to stop according to currently active deceleration ramp (2203 or 2205) Normal command sequence: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enter OFF1 ACTIVE • Proceed to READY TO SWITCH ON, unless other interlocks (OFF2, OFF3) are active.
1	OFF2 CONTROL	1	OPERATING	Continue operation (OFF2 inactive)
		0	EMERGENCY OFF	Drive coasts to stop. Normal command sequence: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enter OFF2 ACTIVE • Proceed to SWITCH ON INHIBITED
2	OFF3 CONTROL	1	OPERATING	Continue operation (OFF3 inactive)
		0	EMERGENCY STOP	Drive stops within in time specified by parameter 2208. Normal command sequence: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enter OFF3 ACTIVE • Proceed to SWITCH ON INHIBITED WARNING! Be sure motor and driven equipment can be stopped using this mode.
3	INHIBIT OPERATION	1	OPERATION ENABLED	Enter OPERATION ENABLED (Note the Run enable signal must be active. See 1601. If 1601 is set to COMM, this bit also activates the Run Enable signal.)
		0	OPERATION INHIBITED	Inhibit operation. Enter OPERATION INHIBITED
4	Unused (ABB DRV LIM)			
	RAMP_OUT_ZERO (ABB DRV FULL)	1	NORMAL OPERATION	Enter RAMP FUNCTION GENERATOR: ACCELERATION ENABLED
		0	RFG OUT ZERO	Force ramp function generator output to Zero. Drive ramps to stop (current and DC voltage limits in force).
5	RAMP_HOLD	1	RFG OUT ENABLED	Enable ramp function. Enter RAMP FUNCTION GENERATOR: ACCELERATOR ENABLED
		0	RFG OUT HOLD	Halt ramping (Ramp Function Generator output held)
6	RAMP_IN_ZERO	1	RFG INPUT ENABLED	Normal operation. Enter OPERATING
		0	RFG INPUT ZERO	Force Ramp Function Generator input to zero.

ABB Drives Profile (EFB) CONTROL WORD				
Bit	Name	Value	Commanded State	Comments
7	RESET	0=>1	RESET	Fault reset if an active fault exists (Enter SWITCH-ON INHIBITED). Effective if 1604 = COMM.
		0	OPERATING	Continue normal operation
8...9	Unused			
10	Unused (ABB DRV LIM)			
	REMOTE_CMD (ABB DRV FULL)	1		Fieldbus control enabled.
		0		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> CW ≠ 0 or Ref ≠ 0: Retain last CW and Ref. CW = 0 and Ref = 0: Fieldbus control enabled. Ref and deceleration/acceleration ramp are locked.
11	EXT CTRL LOC	1	EXT2 SELECT	Select external control location 2 (EXT2). Effective if 1102 = COMM.
		0	EXT1 SELECT	Select external control location 1 (EXT1). Effective if 1102 = COMM.
12...15	Unused			

DCU Profile

The following tables describe the CONTROL WORD content for the DCU profile.

DCU Profile CONTROL WORD (See Parameter 0301)				
Bit	Name	Value	Command/Req.	Comments
0	STOP	1	Stop	Stops according to either the stop mode parameter or the stop mode requests (bits 7 and 8).
		0	(no op)	
1	START	1	Start	Simultaneous STOP and START commands result in a stop command.
		0	(no op)	
2	REVERSE	1	Reverse direction	This bit XOR'd with the sign of the reference defines direction.
		0	Forward direction	
3	LOCAL	1	Local mode	When the fieldbus sets this bit, it steals control and the drive moves to fieldbus local control mode.
		0	External mode	
4	RESET	-> 1	Reset	Edge sensitive.
		other	(no op)	
5	EXT2	1	Switch to EXT2	
		0	Switch to EXT1	
6	RUN_DISABLE	1	Run disable	Inverted run enable.
		0	Run enable on	
7	STPMODE_R	1	Normal ramp stop mode	
		0	(no op)	

Bit	Name	Value	Command/Req.	Comments
8	STPMODE_EM	1	Emergency ramp stop mode	
		0	(no op)	
		1	Coast stop mode	
		0	(no op)	
9	STPMODE_C	1	Ramp pair 2	
		0	Ramp pair 1	
10	RAMP_2	1	Ramp output to 0	
		0	(no op)	
11	RAMP_OUT_0	1	Ramp freeze	
		0	(no op)	
12	RAMP_HOLD	1	Ramp input to 0	
		0	(no op)	
13	RAMP_IN_0	1	Local mode lock	In lock, drive will not switch to local mode.
		0	(no op)	
14	RREQ_LOCALLOC	1	Torque limit pair 2	
		0	Torque limit pair 1	
15	TORQLIM2	1		
		0		

DCU Profile CONTROL WORD (See Parameter 0301)

Bit	Name	Value	Function	Comments
16..26			Reserved	
27	REF_CONST	1	Constant speed ref.	These bits are only for supervision purposes.
		0	(no op)	
28	REF_AVE	1	Average speed ref.	
		0	(no op)	
29	LINK_ON	1	Master is detected	
		0	In link	
		0	Link is down	
30	REQ_STARTINH	1	Start inhibit request	
		0	is pending	
		0	Start inhibit request	
		0	is OFF	
31	OFF_INTERLOCK	1	Panel OFF button pressed	For the control panel (or PC tool) this is the OFF button interlock.
		0	(no op)	

DCU Profile CONTROL WORD (See Parameter 0302)

Status Word

The contents of the STATUS WORD is status information, sent by the drive to the master station.

ABB Drives Profile

The following table and the state diagram later in this sub-section describe the status word content for the ABB Drives Profile.

ABB Drives Profile (EFB) STATUS WORD			
Bit	Name	Value	Description (Correspond to states/boxes in the state diagram)
0	RDY_ON	1	READY TO SWITCH ON
		0	NOT READY TO SWITCH ON
1	RDY_RUN	1	READY TO OPERATE
		0	OFF1 ACTIVE
2	RDY_REF	1	OPERATION ENABLED
		0	OPERATION INHIBITED
3	TRIPPED	0...1	FAULT
		0	No fault
4	OFF_2_STA	1	OFF2 INACTIVE
		0	OFF2 ACTIVE
5	OFF_3_STA	1	OFF3 INACTIVE
		0	OFF3 ACTIVE
6	SWC_ON_INHIB	1	SWITCH-ON INHIBIT ACTIVE
		0	SWITCH-ON INHIBIT NOT ACTIVE
7	ALARM	1	Warning/alarm (See "Alarm Listing" in the "Diagnostics" section for details on alarms.)
		0	No warning/alarm
8	AT_SETPOINT	1	OPERATING. Actual value equals (within tolerance limits) the reference value.
		0	Actual value is outside tolerance limits (not equal to reference value).
9	REMOTE	1	Drive control location: REMOTE (EXT1 or EXT2)
		0	Drive control location: LOCAL
10	ABOVE_LIMIT	1	Supervised parameter's value \geq supervision high limit. Bit remains "1" until supervised parameter's value < supervision low limit. See group 32, Supervision
		0	Supervised parameter's value < supervision low limit. Bit remains "0" until supervised parameter's value > supervision high limit. See group 32, Supervision
11	EXT CTRL LOC	1	External control location 2 (EXT2) selected
		0	External control location 1 (EXT1) selected
12	EXT RUN ENABLE	1	External Run Enable signal received
		0	No External Run Enable signal received
13... 15	Unused		

DCU Profile

The following tables describe the STATUS WORD content for the DCU profile.

Bit	Name	Value	Status
0	READY	1	Drive is ready to receive start command.
		0	Drive is not ready.
1	ENABLED	1	External run enable signal received.
		0	No external run enable signal received.
2	STARTED	1	Drive has received start command.
		0	Drive has not received start command.
3	RUNNING	1	Drive is modulating.
		0	Drive is not modulating.
4	ZERO_SPEED	1	Drive is at zero speed.
		0	Drive has not reached zero speed.
5	ACCELERATE	1	Drive is accelerating.
		0	Drive is not accelerating.
6	DECELERATE	1	Drive is decelerating.
		0	Drive is not decelerating.
7	AT_SETPOINT	1	Drive is at setpoint.
		0	Drive has not reached setpoint.
8	LIMIT	1	Operation is limited by Group 20 settings.
		0	Operation is within Group 20 settings.
9	SUPERVISION	1	A supervised parameter (Group 32) is outside its limits.
		0	All supervised parameters are within limits.
10	REV_REF	1	Drive reference is in reverse direction.
		0	Drive reference is in forward direction.
11	REV_ACT	1	Drive is running in reverse direction.
		0	Drive is running in forward direction.
12	PANEL_LOCAL	1	Control is in control panel (or PC tool) local mode.
		0	Control is not in control panel local mode.
13	FIELDBUS_LOCAL	1	Control is in fieldbus local mode (steals control panel local).
		0	Control is not in fieldbus local mode.
14	EXT2_ACT	1	Control is in EXT2 mode.
		0	Control is in EXT1 mode.
15	FAULT	1	Drive is in a fault state.
		0	Drive is not in a fault state.

DCU Profile STATUS WORD (See Parameter 0304)			
Bit	Name	Value	Status
16	ALARM	1	An alarm is on.
		0	No alarms are on.
17	REQ_MAINT	1	A maintenance request is pending.
		0	No maintenance request is pending.
18	DIRLOCK	1	Direction lock is ON. (Direction change is locked out.)
		0	Direction lock is OFF.
19	LOCALLOCK	1	Local mode lock is ON. (Local mode is locked out.)
		0	Local mode lock is OFF.
20	CTL_MODE	1	Drive is in vector control mode.
		0	Drive is in scalar control mode.
21...25	Reserved		
26	REQ_CTL	1	Copy the control word
		0	(no op)
27	REQ_REF1	1	Reference 1 requested in this channel.
		0	Reference 1 is not requested in this channel.
28	REQ_REF2	1	Reference 2 requested in this channel.
		0	Reference 2 is not requested in this channel.
29	REQ_REF2EXT	1	External PID reference 2 requested in this channel.
		0	External PID reference 2 is not requested in this channel.
30	ACK_STARTINH	1	A start inhibit from this channel is granted.
		0	A start inhibit from this channel is not granted.
31	ACK_OFF_ILCK	1	Start inhibit due to OFF button
		0	Normal operation

State Diagram

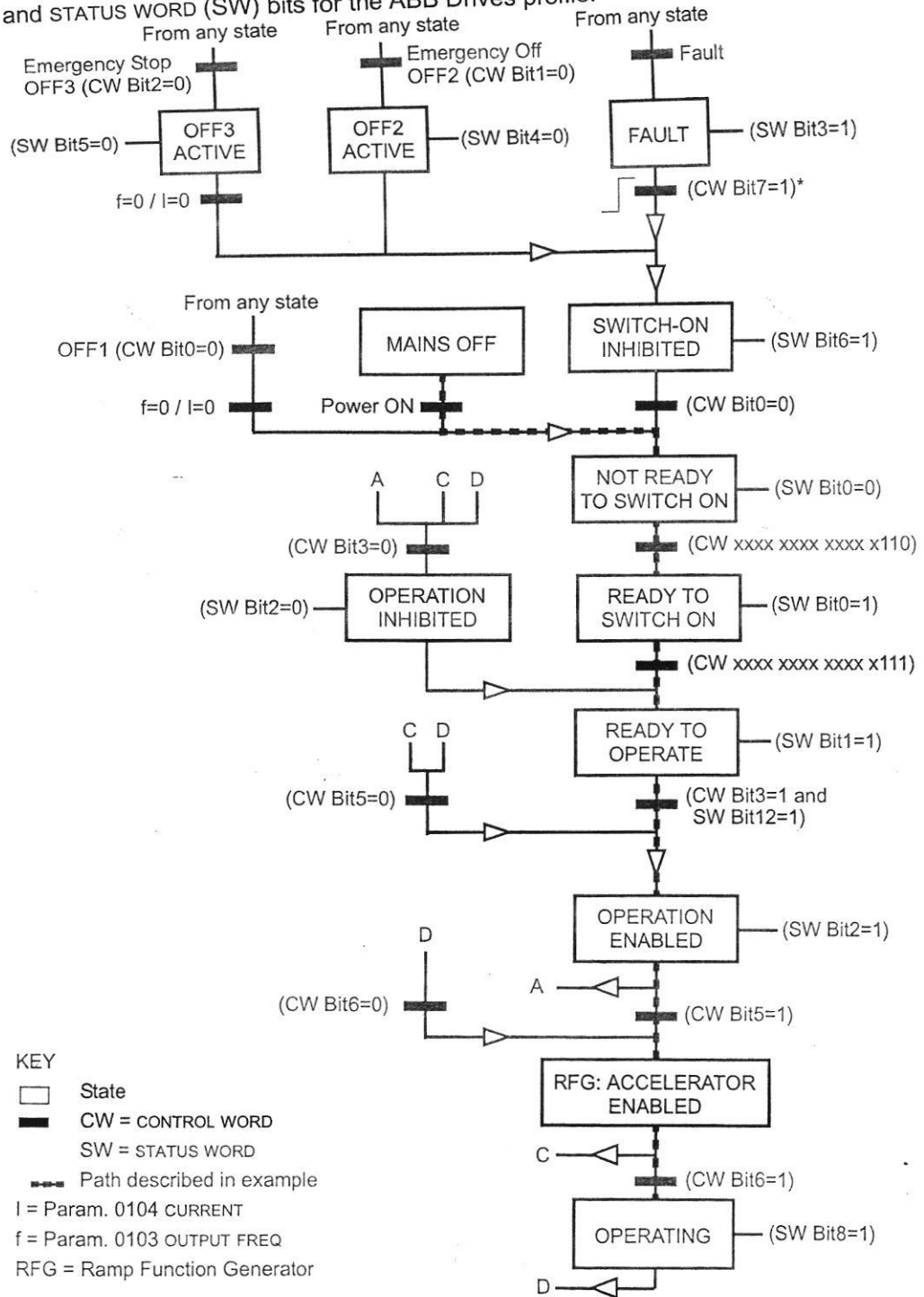
ABB Drives Profile

To illustrate the operation of the state diagram, the following example (ABB DRV LIM implementation of the ABB Drives profile) uses the control word to start the drive:

- First, the requirements for using the CONTROL WORD must be met. See above.
- When the power is first connected, the state of the drive is not ready to switch on. See dotted lined path (---) in the state diagram below.
- Use the CONTROL WORD to step through the state machine states until the OPERATING state is reached, meaning that the drive is running and follows the given reference. See table below.

Step	CONTROL WORD Value	Description
1	CW = 0000 0000 0000 0110 bit 15 ON. bit 0	This CW value changes the drive state to READY TO SWITCH ON.
2		Wait at least 100 ms before proceeding.
3	CW = 0000 0000 0000 0111	This CW value changes the drive state to READY TO OPERATE.
4	CW = 0000 0000 0000 1111	This CW value changes the drive state to OPERATION ENABLED. The drive starts, but will not accelerate.
5	CW = 0000 0000 0010 1111	This CW value releases the ramp function generator (RFG) output, and changes the drive state to RFG: ACCELERATOR ENABLED.
6	CW = 0000 0000 0110 1111	This CW value releases the ramp function generator (RFG) output, and changes the drive state to OPERATING. The drive accelerates to the given reference and follows the reference.

The state diagram below describes the start-stop function of CONTROL WORD (CW) and STATUS WORD (SW) bits for the ABB Drives profile.



*This state transition also occurs if the fault is reset from any other source (e.g. digital input).

Reference Scaling

ABB Drives and DCU Profiles

The following table describes REFERENCE scaling for the ABB Drives profile.

ABB Drives and DCU Profiles				
Reference	Range	Reference Type	Scaling	Remarks
REF1	-32767 ... +32767	Speed or frequency	-20000 = -(par. 1105) 0 = 0 +20000 = (par. 1105) (20000 corresponds to 100%)	Final reference limited by 1104/1105. Actual motor speed limited by 2001/2002 (speed) or 2007/2008 (frequency).
REF2	-32767 ... +32767	Speed or frequency	-10000 = -(par. 1108) 0 = 0 +10000 = (par. 1108) (10000 corresponds to 100%)	Final reference limited by 1107/1108. Actual motor speed limited by 2001/2002 (speed) or 2007/2008 (frequency).
		Torque	-10000 = -(par. 1108) 0 = 0 +10000 = (par. 1108) (10000 corresponds to 100%)	Final reference limited by 2015/2017 (torque1) or 2016/2018 (torque2).
		PID Reference	-10000 = -(par. 1108) 0 = 0 +10000 = (par. 1108) (10000 corresponds to 100%)	Final reference limited by 4012/4013 (PID set1) or 4112/4113 (PID set2).

Note! The setting of parameter 1104 REF1 MIN and 1107 REF2 MIN has no effect on the scaling of references.

When parameter 1103 REF1 SELECT or 1106 REF2 SELECT is set to COMM+AI1 or COMM*AI1, the reference is scaled as follows:

ABB Drives and DCU Profiles		
Reference	Value Setting	AI Reference Scaling
REF1	COMM+AI1	$\text{COMM (\%)} + (\text{AI (\%)} - 0.5 * \text{REF1 MAX (\%)})$

ABB Drives and DCU Profiles		
Reference	Value Setting	AI Reference Scaling
REF1	COMM*AI1	$\text{COMM (\%)} * (\text{AI (\%)} / 0.5 * \text{REF1 MAX (\%)})$
REF2	COMM+AI1	$\text{COMM (\%)} + (\text{AI (\%)} - 0.5 * \text{REF2 MAX (\%)})$
REF2	COMM*AI1	$\text{COMM (\%)} * (\text{AI (\%)} / 0.5 * \text{REF2 MAX (\%)})$

Reference Handling

Use group 10 parameters to configure for control of rotation direction for each control location (EXT1 and EXT2). The following diagrams illustrate how group 10 parameters and the sign of the fieldbus references interact to produce REFERENCE values (REF1 and REF2). Note, fieldbus references are bipolar, that is they can be positive or negative.

ABB Drives Profile		Parameter	Value Setting	AI Reference Scaling
		1003 DIRECTION	1 (FORWARD)	
		1003 DIRECTION	2 (REVERSE)	
		1003 DIRECTION	3 (REQUEST)	

N2 Protocol Technical Data

Overview

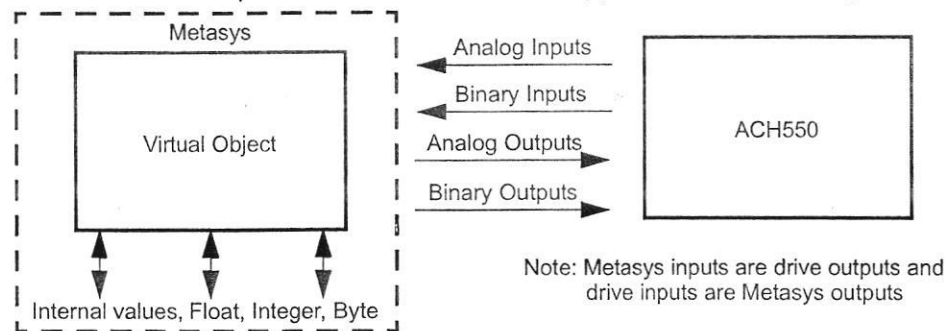
The N2 Fieldbus connection to the ACH550 drives is based on an industry standard RS-485 physical interface. The N2 Fieldbus protocol is a master-slave type, serial communication protocol, used by the Johnson Controls Metasys® system. In the Metasys architecture the N2 Fieldbus connects object interfaces and remote controllers to Network Control Units (NCUs).

The N2 Fieldbus can also be used to connect ACH550 drives to the Metasys Companion product line.

This section describes the use of the N2 Fieldbus with the ACH550 drives' connection and does not describe the protocol in detail.

Supported Features

In the N2 Fieldbus protocol the ACH550 drive appears as a "virtual object".



A virtual object is made up of:

- Analog Inputs
- Binary Inputs
- Analog Outputs
- Binary Outputs
- Internal values for Floating point, Integer, and Byte values.

The ACH550 drive does not support N2 Fieldbus communication "internal values".

All of the Analog and Binary I/O objects are listed below, starting with "N2 Analog Input Objects" on page 192.

Analog Input – The analog input objects support the following features:

- Analog Input actual value in engineering units
- Low Alarm limit
- Low Warning limit
- High Warning limit
- High Alarm limit
- Differential value for the hysteresis of the Alarms and Warnings

- Change of State (COS) enabled
- Alarm Enabled
- Warning Enabled
- Override value is received, but there is no action taken.

Binary Input – The binary input objects support the following features:

- Binary Input actual value
- Normal / Alarm state specification
- Alarm Enabled
- Change of State (COS) enabled
- Override value is received, but there is no action taken.

Analog Output – The analog output objects support the following features:

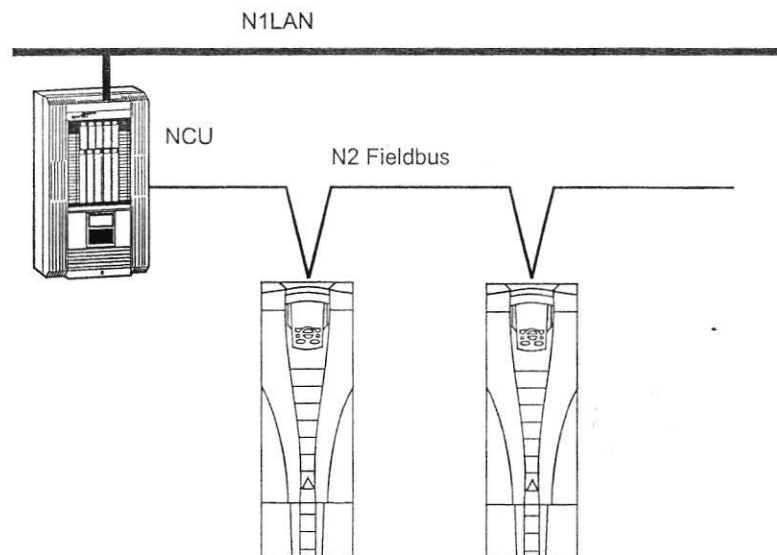
- Analog Output value in engineering units
- Override value is used to change the Analog Output value. It is not possible to return to the previous value by removing the override. The override feature is used only to change the value.

Binary Output – The binary output objects support the following features:

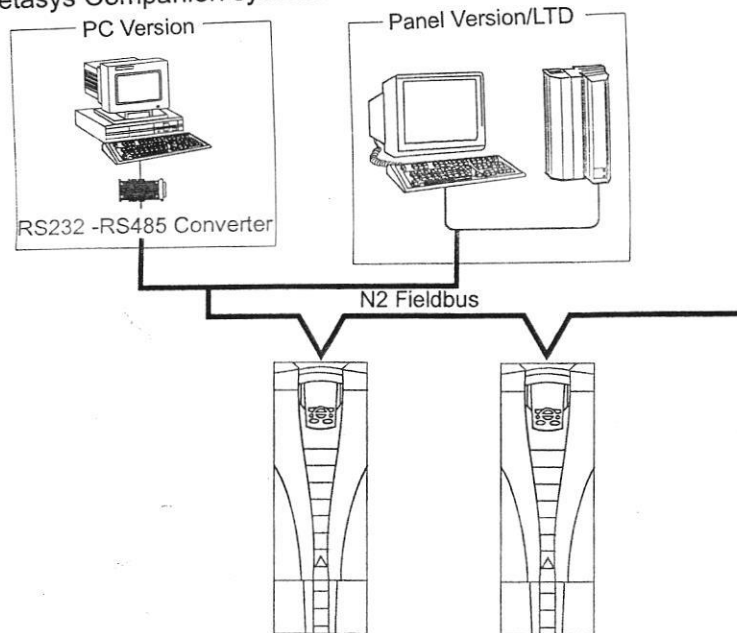
- Binary Output value
- Override value is used to change the Binary Output value. It is not possible to return to the previous value by removing the override. The override feature is used only to change the value.

Metasys Integration

The following diagram shows the drives' integration to the Johnson Controls Metasys system.



The following diagram shows the drives' integration to the Johnson Controls Metasys Companion system.



On the N2 Fieldbus each ACH550 drive can be accessed by the full complement of Metasys FMS features, including Change-of-State (COS) monitoring, alarm notification, scheduling, trend, and totalization.

On one N2 Fieldbus segment there can be up to 32 nodes while integrating ACH550 drives with Johnson Controls Metasys.

Drive Device Type

For the Metasys and Metasys Companion products, the device type for the ACH550 drive is VND.

N2 Analog Input Objects

The following table lists the N2 Analog Input objects defined for the ACH550 drive.

N2 Analog Inputs:					
Number	Object	Drive Parameter	Scale Factor	Units	Range
A11	OUTPUT FREQUENCY	0103	10	Hz	0...250
A12	RATED SPEED	Note 1	10	%	0 ...100
A13	SPEED	0102	1	rpm	0 ...9999
A14	CURRENT	0104	10	A	0...9999
A15	TORQUE	0105	10	%	-200...200
A16	POWER	0106	10	kW	0...9999
A17	DRIVE TEMPERATURE	0110	10	°C	0 ...125
A18	KILOWATT HOURS	0115	1	kWh	0...9999

N2 Analog Inputs:					
Number	Object	Drive Parameter	Scale Factor	Units	Range
AI9	MEGAWATT HOURS	0141	1	MWh	0...999
AI10	RUN TIME	0114	1	H	0...9999
AI11	DC BUS VOLTAGE	0107	1	V	0...999
AI12	OUTPUT VOLTAGE	0109	1	V	0...999
AI13	PRC PID FEEDBACK	0130	10	%	0...100
AI14	PRC PID DEVIATION	0132	10	%	0...100
AI15	EXT PID FEEDBACK	0131	10	%	0...100
AI16	EXT PID DEVIATION	0133	10	%	0...100
AI17	LAST FAULT	0401	1		fault code
AI18	PREV FAULT	0402	1		fault code
AI19	OLDEST FAULT	0403	1		fault code
AI20	AI-1 ACTUAL	0120	10	%	0...100
AI21	AI 2 ACTUAL	0121	10	%	0...100
AI22	AO 1 ACTUAL	0124	10	mA	0...20
AI23	AO 2 ACTUAL	0125	10	mA	0...20
AI24	MOTOR TEMP	0145	1	°C	0...200
AI25	REVOLUTION CNT	0142	1	MREV	0...32767

1. RATED SPEED is a percent of maximum frequency (parameter 2008) if the drive is in scalar mode, and is a percent of maximum speed (parameter 2002) in speed mode.

N2 Binary Input Objects

The following table lists the N2 Binary Input objects defined for the ACH550 drive.

N2 Binary Inputs:			
Number	Object	Drive Parameter	Range
BI1	STOP/RUN	Status Word	0 = Stop, 1 = Drive Running
BI2	FORWARD/REVERSE	Status Word	0 = Forward, 1 = Reverse
BI3	FAULT STATUS	Status Word	0 = OK, 1 = Drive Fault
BI4	RELAY 1 STATUS	0122 (bit mask 04)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BI5	RELAY 2 STATUS	0122 (bit mask 02)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BI6	RELAY 3 STATUS	0122 (bit mask 01)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BI7	RELAY 4 STATUS	0123 (bit mask 04)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BI8	RELAY 5 STATUS	0123 (bit mask 02)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BI9	RELAY 6 STATUS	0123 (bit mask 01)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BI10	INPUT 1 STATUS	0118 (bit mask 04)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BI11	INPUT 2 STATUS	0118 (bit mask 02)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BI12	INPUT 3 STATUS	0118 (bit mask 01)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BI13	INPUT 4 STATUS	0119 (bit mask 04)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BI14	INPUT 5 STATUS	0119 (bit mask 02)	0 = Off, 1 = On

N2 Binary Inputs:			
Number	Object	Drive Parameter	Range
BI15	INPUT 6 STATUS	0119 (bit mask 01)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BI16	EXTERNAL 2 SELECT	Status Word	0 = EXT1 = EXT2
BI17	HAND/AUTO	Status Word	0 = AUTO, 1 = HAND
BI18	ALARM	Status Word	0 = OK, 1 = ALARM
BI19	MAINTENANCE REQ	Status Word	0 = OK, 1 = MAINT REQ
BI20	DRIVE READY	Status Word	0 = Not Ready, 1 = Ready
BI21	AT SETPOINT	Status Word	0 = No, 1 = At Setpoint
BI22	RUN ENABLED	Status Word	0 = Not Enabled, 1 = Enabled
BI23	N2 LOCAL MODE	Status Word	0 = Auto, 1 = N2 Local
BI24	N2 CONTROL SRC	Status Word	0 = No, 1 = Yes
BI25	N2 REF1 SRC	Status Word	0 = No, 1 = Yes
BI26	N2 REF2 SRC	Status Word	0 = No, 1 = Yes

N2 Analog Output Objects

The following table lists the N2 Analog Output objects defined for the ACH550 drive.

N2 Analog Outputs:					
Number	Object	Drive Parameter	Scale Factor	Units	Range
AO1	REFERENCE 1	Reference 1	10	%	0...100
AO2	REFERENCE 2	Reference 2	10	%	0...100
AO3	ACCEL TIME 1	2202	10	s	0.1...1800
AO4	DECEL TIME 1	2203	10	s	0.1...1800
AO5	CURRENT LIMIT	2003	10	A	0...1.3*I _{2N}
AO6	PID1-CONT GAIN	4001	10	%	0.1...100
AO7	PID1-CONT I-TIME	4002	10	s	0.1...600
AO8	PID1-CONT D-TIME	4003	10	s	0...10
AO9	PID1-CONT D FILTER	4004	10	s	0...10
AO10	PID2-CONT GAIN	4101	10	%	0.1...100
AO11	PID2-CONT I-TIME	4102	10	s	0.1...600
AO12	PID2-CONT D-TIME	4103	10	s	0...10
AO13	PID2-CONT D FILTER	4104	10	s	0...10
AO14	COMMAND AO 1	135	10	%	0...100
AO15	COMMAND AO 2	136	10	%	0...100
AO16	EXT PID SETPOINT	4211	10	%	0...100
AO17	SPD OUT MIN	2001/2007	10	%	0...200
AO18	SPD OUT MAX	2002/2008	10	%	0...200
AO19	MAILBOX PARAMETER		1		0...65535
AO20	MAILBOX DATA		1		0...65535

N2 Binary Output Objects

The following table lists the N2 Binary Output objects defined for the ACH550 drive.

N2 Binary Outputs:			
Number	Object	Drive Parameter	Range
BO1	STOP/START	Command Word	0 = Stop, 1 = Start to Speed
BO2	FORWARD/REVERSE	Command Word	0 = Forward, 1 = Reverse
BO3	PANEL LOCK	Command Word	0 = Open, 1 = Locked
BO4	RUN ENABLE	Command Word	0 = Enable, 1 = Disable
BO5	REF1/REF2 SELECT	Command Word	0 = Ref1, 1 = Ref2
BO6	FAULT RESET	Command Word	Change 0 -> 1 Resets
BO7	COMMAND RO 1	134 (bit mask 01)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BO8	COMMAND RO 2	134 (bit mask 02)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BO9	COMMAND RO 3	134 (bit mask 04)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BO10	COMMAND RO 4	134 (bit mask 08)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BO11	COMMAND RO 5	134 (bit mask 10)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BO12	COMMAND RO 6	134 (bit mask 20)	0 = Off, 1 = On
BO13	RESET RUN TIME	114 (indirectly)	0 = N/A, 1 = On (Reset Run Time)
BO14	RESET KWH COUNT	115 (indirectly)	0 = N/A, 1 = On (Reset kWh Count)
BO15	PRC PID SELECT	4027 (indirectly)	0 = SET2, 1 = SET2
BO16	N2 LOCAL CTL (Note 1)	Command Word	0 = Auto, 1 = N2
BO17	N2 LOCAL REF (Note 1)	Command Word	0 = Auto, 1 = N2
BO18	SAVE PARAMETERS	1607 (indirectly)	0 = N/A, 1 = On (Save Parameters)
BO19	READ MAILBOX		0 = No, 1 = Yes
BO20	WRITE MAILBOX		0 = No, 1 = Yes

1. N2 LOCAL CTL and N2 LOCAL REF have priority over drive input terminals. Use these binary outputs for temporary N2 control of the drive when COMM is not the selected control source.

DDL File for NCU

The listing below is the Data Definition Language (DDL) file for ACH550 drives used with the Network Control Units.

This listing is useful when defining drive I/O objects to the Network Controller Units.

Below is the ACH550.DDL file listing.

```
*****
* ABB Drives, ACH 550 Variable Frequency Drive
*****
CSMODEL "ACH_550", "VND"

AITITLE "Analog_Inputs"
BITITLE "Binary_Inputs"
AOTITLE "Analog_Outputs"
BOTITLE "Binary_Outputs"
```

```

CSAI "AI1",N,N,"FREQ_ACT","Hz"
CSAI "AI2",N,N,"PCT_ACT","%"
CSAI "AI3",N,N,"SPEED","RPM"
CSAI "AI4",N,N,"CURRENT","A"
CSAI "AI5",N,N,"TORQUE","%"
CSAI "AI6",N,N,"POWER","kW"
CSAI "AI7",N,N,"DRV_TEMP","°C"
CSAI "AI8",N,N,"ENERGY_k","kWh"
CSAI "AI9",N,N,"ENERGY_M","MWh"
CSAI "AI10",N,N,"RUN_TIME","H"
CSAI "AI11",N,N,"DC_VOLT","V"
CSAI "AI12",N,N,"VOLT_ACT","V"
CSAI "AI13",N,N,"PID1_ACT","%"
CSAI "AI14",N,N,"PID2_DEV","%"
CSAI "AI15",N,N,"PID2_ACT","%"
CSAI "AI16",N,N,"PID2_DEV","%"
CSAI "AI17",N,N,"LAST_FLT","Code"
CSAI "AI18",N,N,"PREV_FLT","Code"
CSAI "AI19",N,N,"1ST_FLT","Code"
CSAI "AI20",N,N,"AI_1_ACT","%"
CSAI "AI21",N,N,"AI_2_ACT","%"
CSAI "AI22",N,N,"AO_1_ACT","mA"
CSAI "AI23",N,N,"AO_2_ACT","mA"
CSAI "AI24",N,N,"MTR_TEMP","°C"
CSAI "AI25",N,N,"REVL_CNT",""

CSBI "BI1",N,N,"STOP/RUN","STOP","RUN"
CSBI "BI2",N,N,"FWD/REV","FWD","REV"
CSBI "BI3",N,N,"FAULT","OK","FLT"
CSBI "BI4",N,N,"RELAY_1","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI5",N,N,"RELAY_2","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI6",N,N,"RELAY_3","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI7",N,N,"RELAY_4","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI8",N,N,"RELAY_5","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI9",N,N,"RELAY_6","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI10",N,N,"INPUT_1","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI11",N,N,"INPUT_2","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI12",N,N,"INPUT_3","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI13",N,N,"INPUT_4","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI14",N,N,"INPUT_5","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI15",N,N,"INPUT_6","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI16",N,N,"EXT1/2","EXT1","EXT2"
CSBI "BI17",N,N,"HND/AUTO","HAND","AUTO"
CSBI "BI18",N,N,"ALARM","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI19",N,N,"MNTNCE_R","OFF","ON"
CSBI "BI20",N,N,"DRV_REDY","NO","YES"
CSBI "BI21",N,N,"AT_SETPT","NO","YES"
CSBI "BI22",N,N,"RUN_ENAB","NO","YES"
CSBI "BI23",N,N,"N2_LOC_M","AUTO","N2_L"
CSBI "BI24",N,N,"N2_CTRL","NO","YES"

```

```

CSBI "BI25",N,N,"N2_R1SRC","NO","YES"
CSBI "BI26",N,N,"N2_R2SRC","NO","YES"
CSAO "AO1",Y,Y,"REF_1","%"
CSAO "AO2",Y,Y,"REF_2","%"
CSAO "AO3",Y,Y,"ACCEL_1","s"
CSAO "AO4",Y,Y,"DECEL_1","s"
CSAO "AO5",Y,Y,"CURR_LIM","A"
CSAO "AO6",Y,Y,"PID1_GN","%"
CSAO "AO7",Y,Y,"PID1_I","s"
CSAO "AO8",Y,Y,"PID1_D","s"
CSAO "AO9",Y,Y,"PID1_FLT","s"
CSAO "AO10",Y,Y,"PID2_GN","%"
CSAO "AO11",Y,Y,"PID2_I","s"
CSAO "AO12",Y,Y,"PID2_D","s"
CSAO "AO13",Y,Y,"PID2_FLT","s"
CSAO "AO14",Y,Y,"CMD_AO_1","%"
CSAO "AO15",Y,Y,"CMD_AO_2","%"
CSAO "AO16",Y,Y,"PI2_STPT","%"
CSAO "AO17",Y,Y,"MIN_SPD","%"
CSAO "AO18",Y,Y,"MAX_SPD","%"
CSAO "AO19",Y,Y,"MB_PARAM",""
CSAO "AO20",Y,Y,"MB_DATA",""
CSBO "BO1",Y,Y,"START","STOP","START"
CSBO "BO2",Y,Y,"REVERSE","FWD","REV"
CSBO "BO3",Y,Y,"PAN_LOCK","OPEN","LOCKED"
CSBO "BO4",Y,Y,"RUN_ENAB","DISABLE","ENABLE"
CSBO "BO5",Y,Y,"R1/2_SEL","EXT_1","EXT_2"
CSBO "BO6",Y,Y,"FLT_RSET","-","RESET"
CSBO "BO7",Y,Y,"CMD_RO_1","OFF","ON"
CSBO "BO8",Y,Y,"CMD_RO_2","OFF","ON"
CSBO "BO9",Y,Y,"CMD_RO_3","OFF","ON"
CSBO "BO10",Y,Y,"CMD_RO_4","OFF","ON"
CSBO "BO11",Y,Y,"CMD_RO_5","OFF","ON"
CSBO "BO12",Y,Y,"CMD_RO_6","OFF","ON"
CSBO "BO13",Y,Y,"RST_RTIM","OFF","RESET"
CSBO "BO14",Y,Y,"RST_KWH","OFF","RESET"
CSBO "BO15",Y,Y,"PID_SEL","SET1","SET2"
CSBO "BO16",Y,Y,"N2_LOC_C","AUTO","N2"
CSBO "BO17",Y,Y,"N2_LOC_R","EUTO","N2"
CSBO "BO18",Y,Y,"SAV_PRMS","OFF","SAVE"
CSBO "BO19",Y,Y,"READ_MB","NO","READ"
CSBO "BO20",Y,Y,"WRITE_MB","NO","WRITE"

```

FLN Protocol Technical Data

Overview

The FLN fieldbus connection to the ACH550 drives is based on an industry standard RS-485 physical interface. The FLN (Floor Level Network) Fieldbus protocol is a serial communication protocol, used by the Siemens APOGEE® system. The ACH550 interface is specified in Siemens application 2734.

Supported Features

The ACH550 supports all required FLN features.

Reports

The ACH550 provides seven pre-defined reports. Using a report request generated from the FLN fieldbus controller, select one of the following sets of points. By providing views of selected points, these reports are often easier to work with than views of the full point database.

ABB ACH550

FLN ABB ACH550 Report			
Point		Subpoint Name	Data
#	Type		
01	LAO	CTLR ADDRESS	Each host FLN application (e.g. CIS or Insight) controls both the particular data reported for each point, and the report format.
02	LAO	APPLICATION	
20	LAO	OVRD TIME	
29	LDO	DAY.NIGHT	

Startup

FLN Startup Report			
Point		Subpoint Name	Data
#	Type		
21	LDI	FWD.REV	Each host FLN application (e.g. CIS or Insight) controls both the particular data reported for each point, and the report format.
22	LDO	CMD FWD.REV	
23	LDI	STOP.RUN	
24	LDO	CMD STP.STRT	
25	LDI	EXT1.2 ACT	
26	LDO	EXT1.2 CMD	
34	LDI	ENA.DIS ACT	
35	LDO	ENA.DIS CMD	
36	LDI	FLN LOC ACT	
60	LAO	INPUT REF1	
61	LAO	INPUT REF2	
68	LDO	FLN LOC CTL	
69	LDO	FLN LOC REF	

FLN Startup Report			
Point		Subpoint Name	Data
#	Type		
94	LDO	RESET FAULT	

Overview

FLN Overview Report			
Point		Subpoint Name	Data
#	Type		
03	LAI	FREQ OUTPUT	Each host FLN application (e.g. CIS or Insight) controls both the particular data reported for each point, and the report format.
04	LAI	PCT OUTPUT	
05	LAI	SPEED	
06	LAI	CURRENT	
07	LAI	TORQUE	
08	LAI	POWER	
09	LAI	DRIVE TEMP	
10	LAI	DRIVE KWH	
11	LAI	DRIVE MWH	
12	LAI	RUN TIME	
13	LAI	DC BUS VOLT	
14	LAI	OUTPUT VOLT	
17	LAI	MOTOR TEMP	
18	LAI	MREV COUNTER	
21	LDI	FWD.REV	
23	LDI	STOP.RUN	
25	LDI	EXT1.2 ACT	
27	LDI	DRIVE READY	
28	LDI	AT SETPOINT	
33	LDI	HANDAUTO ACT	
34	LDI	ENA.DIS ACT	
36	LDI	FLN LOC ACT	

Drive I/O

FLN Drive I/O Report			
Point		Subpoint Name	Data
#	Type		
40	LDO	RO 1 COMMAND	Each host FLN application (e.g. CIS or Insight) controls both the particular data reported for each point, and the report format.
41	LDO	RO 2 COMMAND	
42	LDO	RO 3 COMMAND	
43	LDO	RO 4 COMMAND	
44	LDO	RO 5 COMMAND	

FLN Drive I/O Report			
Point		Subpoint Name	Data
#	Type		
45	LDO	RO 6 COMMAND	
46	LAO	AO 1 COMMAND	
47	LAO	AO 2 COMMAND	
70	LDI	DI 1 ACTUAL	
71	LDI	DI 2 ACTUAL	
72	LDI	DI 3 ACTUAL	
73	LDI	DI 4 ACTUAL	
74	LDI	DI 5 ACTUAL	
75	LDI	DI 6 ACTUAL	
76	LDI	RO 1 ACTUAL	
77	LDI	RO 2 ACTUAL	
78	LDI	RO 3 ACTUAL	
79	LDI	RO 4 ACTUAL	
80	LDI	RO 5 ACTUAL	
81	LDI	RO 6 ACTUAL	
85	LAI	AO 2 ACTUAL	

Drive Config

FLN Drive Config. Report			
Point		Subpoint Name	Data
#	Type		
30	LAO	CURRENT LIM	Each host FLN application (e.g. CIS or Insight) controls both the particular data reported for each point, and the report format.
31	LAO	ACCEL TIME 1	
32	LAO	DECEL TIME 1	
48	LDO	RST RUN TIME	
49	LDO	RESET KWH	
59	LDO	LOCK PANEL	
66	LDO	SPD OUT MIN	
67	LDO	SPD OUT MAX	
95	LAO	MBOX PARAM	
96	LAO	MBOX DATA	
97	LDO	MBOX READ	
98	LDO	MBOX WRITE	

Process PID

FLN Process PID Report			
Point		Subpoint Name	Data
#	Type		
15	LAI	PRC PID FBCK	Each host FLN application (e.g. CIS or Insight) controls both the particular data reported for each point, and the report format.
16	LAI	PRC PID DEV	
50	LAO	PRC PID GAIN	
51	LAO	PRC PID ITIM	
52	LAO	PRC PID DTIM	
53	LAO	PRC PID DFIL	
54	LDO	PRC PID SEL	
60	LAO	INPUT REF1	
61	LAO	INPUT REF2	
82	LAI	AI 1 ACTUAL	
83	LAI	AI 2 ACTUAL	
84	LAI	AO 1 ACTUAL	
85	LAI	AO 2 ACTUAL	

External PID

FLN External PID Report			
Point		Subpoint Name	Data
#	Type		
55	LAO	EXT PID GAIN	Each host FLN application (e.g. CIS or Insight) controls both the particular data reported for each point, and the report format.
56	LAO	EXT PID ITIM	
57	LAO	EXT PID DTIM	
58	LAO	EXT PID DFIL	
62	LAO	EXT PID STPT	
63	LAI	EXT PID FBCK	
64	LAI	EXT PID DEV	
82	LAI	AI 1 ACTUAL	
83	LAI	AI 2 ACTUAL	
84	LAI	AO 1 ACTUAL	
85	LAI	AO 2 ACTUAL	

Scaling Drive Feedback Values

Feedback values are provided with units of percent, where 0% and 100% correspond to the range of the sensor being used to measure the control variable. These points have default units in Hz. If other units are required:

- Unbundle these points with appropriate slopes and intercepts.
- The new intercept equals the lowest value of the desired range.

- Calculate the new slope as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{New Slope} &= \frac{(\text{Desired Range, i.e. high - low values}) \times (\text{Slope of Existing Point})}{\text{Range of Existing Point}} \\ &= \frac{(60 \text{ Hz} - 0 \text{ Hz}) \times (0.01)}{100\% - 0\%} = 0.006 \end{aligned}$$

Example – You are controlling water temperature from a cooling tower using the ACH550 to control a fan. The temperature sensor has a range of 30 to 250 degrees Fahrenheit.

To unbundle the set point (INPUT REF 2), for commanding in degrees Fahrenheit, where 0...60 Hz is equal to 30...250° F:

New Intercept = 30 (the temperature that corresponds to 0%)

$$\begin{aligned} \text{New Slope} &= \frac{(\text{Desired Range}) \times (\text{Slope of Existing Point})}{\text{Range of Existing Point}} \\ &= \frac{(250^\circ \text{ F} - 30^\circ \text{ F}) \times (0.1)}{100\% - 0\%} = 0.22 \end{aligned}$$

To unbundle the feedback (PRC PID FBCK) for monitoring in degrees Fahrenheit:

New Intercept = 30

$$\begin{aligned} \text{New Slope} &= \frac{(\text{Desired Range}) \times (\text{Slope of Existing Point})}{\text{Range of Existing Point}} \\ &= \frac{(250^\circ \text{ F} - 30^\circ \text{ F}) \times (0.01)}{100\% - 0\%} = 0.022 \end{aligned}$$

Loop Gains

PRC PID GAIN (Point 50) and PRC PID ITIM (Point 51) are PID parameters similar to the P and I gains in the APOGEE TECs. Because the ABB PI loop and the Siemens loop are structured differently, there is no a one-to-one correspondence between the gains. The following formulas allow translation from ABB gains to Siemens gains and vice versa:

- To convert from ABB PI gains to Siemens P and I gains:

$$P \text{ GAIN}_{\text{Siemens}} = PI \text{ GAIN}_{\text{ABB}} \times 0.0015$$

$$I \text{ GAIN}_{\text{Siemens}} = \frac{PI \text{ GAIN}_{\text{ABB}}}{PI \text{ GAIN}_{\text{ABB}}} \times 0.0015$$

- To convert from Siemens P and I gains to ABB PI gains:

$$P \text{ GAIN}_{\text{ABB}} = PI \text{ GAIN}_{\text{Siemens}} \times 667$$

$$I \text{ GAIN}_{\text{ABB}} = \frac{PI \text{ GAIN}_{\text{Siemens}}}{PI \text{ GAIN}_{\text{Siemens}}} \times 667$$

Point Database

The following table lists the point database for FLN / ACH550 (Application 2734).

FLN Point Database								
Point		Subpoint Name	Factory Default	Engr. Units	Slope	Intercept	On Text	Off Text
#	Type							
01	LAO	CTLR ADDRESS	99	-	1	0	-	-
02	LAO	APPLICATION	2734	-	1		-	-
{03}	LAI	FREQ OUTPUT	0	Hz	0.1	0	-	-
{04}	LAI	PCT OUTPUT	0	PCT	0.1	0	-	-
{05}	LAI	SPEED	0	RPM	1	0	-	-
{06}	LAI	CURRENT	0	A	0.1		-	-
{07}	LAI	TORQUE	0	PCT	0.1	-200	-	-
{08}	LAI	POWER	0 (0)	HP (KW)	0.134 0.1	0 0	-	-
{09}	LAI	DRIVE TEMP	77 (25)	° F (° C)	0.18 (0.1)	32 0	-	-
{10}	LAI	DRIVE KWH	0	KWH	1		-	-
{11}	LAI	DRIVE MWH	0	MWH	1		-	-
{12}	LAI	RUN TIME	0	HRS	1		-	-
{13}	LAI	DC BUS VOLT	0	V	1		-	-
{14}	LAI	OUTPUT VOLT	0	V	1		-	-
{15}	LAI	PRC PID FBCK	0	PCT	0.1		-	-
{16}	LAI	PRC PID DEV	0	PCT	0.1		-	-
{17}	LAI	MOTOR TEMP	77(25)	° F (° C)	1.8 (1)	32 0	-	-
{18}	LAI	MREV COUNTER	0	MREV	1	0	-	-
20	LAO	OVRD TIME	1	hrs	1	0	-	-
{21}	LDI	FWD.REV	FWD	-	1	0	REV	FWD
{22}	LDO	CMD FWD.REV	FWD	-	1	0	REV	FWD
{23}	LDI	STOP.RUN	STOP	-	1	0	RUN	STOP
{24}	LDO	CMD STP.STRT	STOP	-	1	0	RUN	STOP
{25}	LDI	EXT1.2 ACT	EXT1	-	1	0	EXT2	EXT1
{26}	LDO	EXT1.2 CMD	EXT1	-	1	0	EXT2	EXT1
{27}	LDI	DRIVE READY	NOTRDY	-	1	0	READY	NOTRDY
{28}	LDI	AT SETPOINT	NO	-	1	0	YES	NO
{29}	LDO	DAY.NIGHT	DAY	-	1	0	NIGHT	DAY
30	LAO	CURRENT LIM	0	A	0.1	0	-	-
31	LAO	ACCEL TIME 1	300	sec	0.1	0	-	-
32	LAO	DECEL TIME 1	300	sec	0.1	0	-	-
{33}	LDI	HANDAUTO ACT	AUTO	-	1	0	HAND	AUTO

FLN Point Database										
Point	#	Type	Subpoint Name	Factory Default	Engr. Units	(SI Units)			On Text	Off Text
						Slope	Intercept			
{34}	LDI		ENA.DIS ACT	DISABL	-	1			ENABLE	DISABL
{35}	LDO		ENA.DIS CMD	DISABL	-	1			ENABLE	DISABL
{36}	LDI		FLN.LOC ACT	AUTO	-	1			FLN	AUTO
{37}	LDI		CTL SRC	NO	-	1			YES	NO
{38}	LDI		FLN REF1 SRC	NO	-	1			YES	NO
{39}	LDI		FLN REF2 SRC	NO	-	1			YES	NO
{40}	LDO		RO 1 COMMAND	OFF	-	1			ON	OFF
{41}	LDO		RO 2 COMMAND	OFF	-	1			ON	OFF
{42}	LDO		RO 3 COMMAND	OFF	-	1			ON	OFF
{43}	LDO		RO 4 COMMAND	OFF	-	1			ON	OFF
{44}	LDO		RO 5 COMMAND	OFF	-	1			ON	OFF
{45}	LDO		RO 6 COMMAND	OFF	-	1			ON	OFF
{46}	LAO		AO 1 COMMAND	PCT	PCT	0.1			-	-
{47}	LAO		AO 2 COMMAND	PCT	PCT	0.1			-	-
48	LDO		RST RUN TIME	NO	-	1			RESET	NO
49	LDO		RESET KWH	NO	-	1			RESET	NO
50	LAO		PRC PID GAIN	10	PCT	0.1			-	-
51	LAO		PRC PID ITIM	600	SEC	0.1			-	-
52	LAO		PRC PID DTIM	0	SEC	0.1			-	-
53	LAO		PRC PID DFIL	10	SEC	0.1			-	-
54	LDO		PRC PID SEL	SET1	-	1			SET2	SET1
55	LAO		EXT PID GAIN	10	PCT	0.1			-	-
56	LAO		EXT PID ITIM	600	SEC	0.1			-	-
57	LAO		EXT PID DTIM	0	SEC	0.1			-	-
58	LAO		EXT PID DFIL	10	SEC	0.1			-	-
59	LDO		LOCK PANEL	UNLOCK	-	1			LOCK	UNLOCK
{60}	LAO		INPUT REF1	0	PCT	0.1			-	-
{61}	LAO		INPUT REF2	0	PCT	0.1			-	-
{62}	LAO		EXT PID STPT	0	PCT	0.1			-	-
{63}	LAO		EXT PID FBCK	0	PCT	0.1			-	-
{64}	LAO		EXT PID DEV	0	PCT	0.1			-	-

Point	#	Type	Subpoint Name	Factory Default	Engr. Units	(SI Units)		On Text	Off Text
						Slope	Intercept		
	66	LDO	SPD OUT MIN	0	PCT	0.1	0	-	-
	67	LDO	SPD OUT MAX	1000	PCT	0.1	0	-	-
	{68}	LDO	FLN LOC CTL	AUTO	-	-	0	-	-
	{69}	LDO	FLN LOC REF	AUTO	-	-	0	FLN	AUTO
	{70}	LDI	DI 1 ACTUAL	OFF	-	-	0	ON	OFF
	{71}	LDI	DI 2 ACTUAL	OFF	-	-	0	ON	OFF
	{72}	LDI	DI 3 ACTUAL	OFF	-	-	0	ON	OFF
	{73}	LDI	DI 4 ACTUAL	OFF	-	-	0	ON	OFF
	{74}	LDI	DI 5 ACTUAL	OFF	-	-	0	ON	OFF
	{75}	LDI	DI 6 ACTUAL	OFF	-	-	0	ON	OFF
	{76}	LDI	RO 1 ACTUAL	OFF	-	-	0	ON	OFF
	{77}	LDI	RO 2 ACTUAL	OFF	-	-	0	ON	OFF
	{78}	LDI	RO 3 ACTUAL	OFF	-	-	0	ON	OFF
	{79}	LDI	RO 4 ACTUAL	OFF	-	-	0	ON	OFF
	{80}	LDI	RO 5 ACTUAL	OFF	-	-	0	ON	OFF
	{81}	LDI	RO 6 ACTUAL	OFF	-	-	0	ON	OFF
	{82}	LAI	AI 1 ACTUAL	0	PCT	0.1	0	-	-
	{83}	LAI	AI 2 ACTUAL	0	PCT	0.1	0	-	-
	{84}	LAI	AO 1 ACTUAL	0	MA	0.1	0	-	-
	{85}	LAI	AO 2 ACTUAL	0	MA	0.1	0	-	-
	{86}	LDI	OK ALARM	OK	-	-	0	ALARM	OK
	{87}	LDI	OK MAINT	OK	-	-	0	MAINT	OK
	{88}	LAI	ALARM WORD 1	-	-	-	0	-	-
	{89}	LAI	ALARM WORD 2	-	-	-	0	-	-
	{90}	LAI	LAST FAULT	-	-	-	0	-	-
	{91}	LAI	PREV FAULT 1	-	-	-	0	-	-
	{92}	LAI	PREV FAULT 2	-	-	-	0	-	-
	{93}	LDI	OK FAULT	OK	-	-	0	FAULT	OK
	{94}	LDO	RESET FAULT	NO	-	-	0	RESET	NO
	{95}	LDO	MBOX PARAM	-	-	-	0	-	-
	{96}	LDO	MBOX DATA	-	-	-	0	-	-
	{97}	LDO	MBOX READ	DONE	-	-	0	READ	DONE
	{98}	LDO	MBOX WRITE	DONE	-	-	0	WRITE	DONE
	{99}	LDO	ERROR STATUS	-	-	-	0	-	-

a. Points not listed are not used in this application.

b. A single value in a column means that the value is the same in English units and in SI units.

c. Point numbers that appear in brackets { } may be unbundled at the field panel.

Detailed Point Descriptions

Point	Description	Drive Parameter
1	The FLN address of the drive. It can be set by FLN and by the panel.	5302
2	The Application ID for FLN on the ACH550. This ID is assigned by Siemens for each unique application. It correlates directly to a particular point list approved at the time of release. Therefore, this point list shall remain fixed once approval is granted. Any changes to the point list shall require a new Application ID and re-approval by Siemens. The Application ID assigned to ACH550 is 2934.	
3	FREQ OUTPUT The output frequency applied to the motor, in Hertz.	0103
4	PCT OUTPUT The ratio of output frequency or speed to the corresponding maximum rating, depending on control mode. • For scalar mode, it is the ratio of Output Frequency (parameter 0103) to Maximum Frequency (parameter 2008). • For speed mode, it is the ratio Speed (parameter 0102) to Maximum Speed (2002).	None. This ratio is calculated by the FLN application.
5	SPEED The calculated speed of the motor, in RPM.	0102
6	CURRENT The measured output current.	0104
7	TORQUE The calculated output torque of the motor as a percentage of nominal torque.	0105
8	POWER The measured output power in KW. The FLN point definition also supports horsepower by selecting English units.	0106
	DRIVE TEMP The measured heatsink temperature, in ° C. The FLN point definition also supports ° F by selecting English units.	0110
10	DRIVE KWH The drive's cumulative power consumption in kilowatt-hours. This value may be reset by commanding FLN point 49, RESET KWH.	0115
11	DRIVE MWH The drive's cumulative power consumption in megawatt hours. This value cannot be reset.	0141
12	RUN TIME The drive's cumulative run time in hours. This value may be reset by commanding FLN point 48, RESET RUN TIME.	0114
13	DC BUS VOLT The DC bus voltage level of the drive.	0107
14	OUTPUT VOLT The AC output voltage applied to the motor.	0109
15	PRC PID FBCK The Process PID feedback signal.	0130
16	PRC PID DEV The deviation of the Process PID output signal from its setpoint.	0132
17	MOTOR TEMP The measured motor temperature as set up in Group 35.	0145
18	ROTATION CNT The motor's cumulative revolution count, in mega-revolutions.	0142
19	N/A	
20	OVRD TIME 1 of the 5 mandatory FLN points required for compatibility with Siemens control systems. It has no functionality in the drive application.	None

FLN Detailed Point Descriptions

FLN Detailed Point Descriptions			
Point	Description	Drive Parameter	
21	FWD.REV ACT	Indicates the rotational direction of the motor, regardless of control source (1 = REV, 0 = FWD).	
22	FWD.REV CMD	Commanded by FLN to change the rotational direction of the drive. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Parameter 1001 must be set to COMM for FLN to control the direction of the motor by EXT1. Parameter 1002 must be set to COMM for FLN to control the direction of the motor by EXT2. 	
23	RUN.STOP ACT	Indicates the drive's run status, regardless of control source (1 = RUN, 0 = STOP).	
24	RUN.STOP CMD	Commanded by FLN to start the drive. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Parameter 1001 must be set to COMM for FLN to control the run state of the drive by EXT1. Parameter 1002 must be set to COMM for FLN to have this control. 	
25	EXT1.2 ACT	Indicates whether External 1 or External 2 is the active control source (1 = EXT2, 0 = EXT1).	
26	EXT1.2 CMD	Commanded by FLN to select External 1 or External 2 as the active control source (1 = EXT2, 0 = EXT1). Parameter 1102 must be set to COMM for FLN to have this control.	
27	DRIVE READY	Indicates the drive is ready to accept a run command (1 = READY, 0 = NOTRDY).	
28	AT SETPOINT	Indicates the drive has reached its commanded setpoint (1 = YES, 0 = NO).	
29	DAY.NIGHT	1 of the 5 mandatory FLN points required for compatibility with Siemens control systems. It has no functionality in the drive application.	None
30	CURRENT LIM	Sets the output current limit of the drive.	2003
31	ACCEL TIME 1	Sets the acceleration time for Ramp 1.	2202
32	DECEL TIME 1	Sets the deceleration time for Ramp 1.	2203
33	HANDAUTO ACT	Indicates whether the drive is in Hand or Auto control (1 = HAND, 0 = AUTO).	
34	ENA.DIS ACT	Indicates the status of the Run Enable command, regardless of its source (1 = ENABLE, 0 = DISABL).	
35	ENA.DIS CMD	Commanded by FLN to assert the Run Enable command (1 = ENABLE, 0 = DISABL). Parameter 1601 must be set to COMM for FLN to have this control.	
36	FLN LOC ACT	Indicates if the drive has been placed in "FLN LOCAL" mode by commanding either point 68 (FLN LOC CTL) or point 69 (FLN LOC REF). Commanding either of these points to FLN (1) "steals" control from its normal source and places in under FLN control. Note that the HAND mode of the panel has priority over FLN local control.	

FLN Detailed Point Descriptions			
Point	Description	Drive Parameter	
37	FLN CTL SRC	Indicates if FLN is a source for control inputs (1 = YES, 0 = NO). Note that this status point is true if any of the following control inputs are from FLN: Run/Stop, Ext1/2 Select or Run Enable.	
38	FLN REF1 SRC	Indicates if FLN is the source for speed reference 1 (1 = YES, 0 = NO).	
39	FLN REF2 SRC	Indicates if FLN is the source for speed reference 2 (1 = YES, 0 = NO).	
40	RO1 COMMAND	Controls the output state of Relay 1. Parameter 1401 must be set to COMM for FLN to have this control (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0134, bit 0
41	RO2 COMMAND	Controls the output state of Relay 2. Parameter 1402 must be set to COMM for FLN to have this control (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0134, bit 1
42	RO3 COMMAND	Controls the output state of Relay 3. Parameter 1403 must be set to COMM for FLN to have this control (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0134, bit 2
43	RO4 COMMAND	Controls the output state of Relay 4. Access to relay 4 require ACH550 option OREL. Parameter 1410 must be set to COMM for FLN to have this control (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0134, bit 3
44	RO5 COMMAND	Controls the output state of Relay 5. Access to relay 5 require ACH550 option OREL. Parameter 1411 must be set to COMM for FLN to have this control (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0134, bit 4
45	RO6 COMMAND	Controls the output state of Relay 6. Access to relay 6 require ACH550 option OREL. Parameter 1412 must be set to COMM for FLN to have this control (1 = ON, 0 = OFF).	0134, bit 5
46	AO1 COMMAND	Controls Analog Output 1. Parameter 1501 must be set to this value for FLN to have this control.	0135 (COMM VALUE 1)
47	AO2 COMMAND	Controls Analog Output 2. Parameter 1507 must be set to this value for FLN to have this control.	0136 (COMM VALUE 2)
48	RESET RUN TIME	Commanded by FLN to reset the cumulative run timer (1 = RESET, 0 = NO). The control input is rising-edge sensitive, so, once the command is issued, this point automatically returns to its inactive state. This "momentary" operation avoids any need for an explicit command to clear the point before a subsequent reset can be issued.	
49	RESET KWH	Commanded by FLN to reset the cumulative kilowatt-hour counter (1 = RESET, 0 = NO). The control input is rising-edge sensitive, so, once the command is issued, this point automatically returns to its inactive state. This "momentary" operation avoids any need for an explicit command to clear the point before a subsequent reset can be issued.	

FLN Detailed Point Descriptions			
Point	Description	Drive Parameter	
50	PRC PID GAIN	Sets the proportional gain of the active Process PID set, as selected by Point 54, PRC PID SEL (1 = SET2, 0 = SET1).	4001 (SET1) 4101 (SET2)
51	PRC PID ITIM	Sets the integration time of the active Process PID set, as selected by Point 54, PRC PID SEL (1 = SET2, 0 = SET1).	4002 (SET1) 4102 (SET2)
52	PRC PID DTIM	Sets the derivation time of the active Process PID set, as selected by Point 54, PRC PID SEL (1 = SET2, 0 = SET1).	4001 (SET1) 4101 (SET2)
53	PRC PID DFIL	Sets the time constant for the error-derivative of the active Process PID set, as selected by Point 54, PRC PID SEL (1 = SET2, 0 = SET1).	4004 (SET1) 4104 (SET2)
54	PRC PID SEL	Selects the active Process PID set (1 = SET2, 0 = SET1).	4027
55	EXT PID GAIN	Sets the proportional gain of the External PID controller.	4201
56	EXT PID ITIM	Sets the integration time of the External PID controller.	4202
57	EXT PID DTIM	Sets the derivation time of the External PID controller.	4203
58	EXT PID DFIL	Sets the time constant for the error-derivative of the External PID controller.	4204
59	LOCK PANEL	Command by FLN to lock the panel and prevent parameter changes (1 = LOCK, 0 = UNLOCK).	1602
60	INPUT REF 1	Sets Input Reference 1. Parameter 1102 must be set to COMM for FLN to control this value.	
61	INPUT REF 2	Sets Input Reference 2. Parameter 1106 must be set to COMM for FLN to control this value.	
62	EXT PID STPT	The setpoint for the External PID controller. The function of this point requires parameter 4210, PID Setpoint Select, to be set to 19 (Internal).	4211
63	EXT PID FBCK	The External PID feedback signal.	0131
64	EXT PID DEV	The deviation of the External PID output signal from its setpoint.	0133
65	N/A		
66	SPD OUT MIN	Sets the minimum output speed of the drive as a percentage of the motor nominal rating.	2007 (SCALAR) 2001 (SPEED)
67	SPD OUT MAX	Sets the maximum output speed of the drive as a percentage of the motor nominal rating.	2008 (SCALAR) 2002 (SPEED)
68	FLN LOC CTL	Commanded by FLN to temporarily "steal" start/stop control of the drive from its normal source and place it under FLN control. This functionality is analogous to placing the drive in HAND mode at the panel, with the control being taken by FLN instead. HAND mode at the panel has priority over this point. Thus, this point is only effective in temporarily taking control from the digital inputs or some other internal control functionality.	

FLN Detailed Point Descriptions		
Point	Description	Drive Parameter
69	FLN LOC REF	Commanded by FLN to temporarily "steal" input reference control of the drive from its normal source and place it under FLN control. This functionality is analogous to placing the drive in HAND mode at the panel, with the reference control being taken by FLN instead. HAND mode at the panel has priority over this point. Thus, this point is only effective in temporarily taking control from the analog inputs or some other internal control functionality.
70	DI 1 ACTUAL	Indicates the status of Digital Input 1 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF). 0118, bit 2
71	DI 2 ACTUAL	Indicates the status of Digital Input 2 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF). 0118, bit 1
72	DI 3 ACTUAL	Indicates the status of Digital Input 3 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF). 0118, bit 0
73	DI 4 ACTUAL	Indicates the status of Digital Input 4 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF). 0119, bit 2
74	DI 5 ACTUAL	Indicates the status of Digital Input 5 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF). 0119, bit 1
75	DI 6 ACTUAL	Indicates the status of Digital Input 6 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF). 0119, bit 0
76	RO 1 ACTUAL	Indicates the status of Relay Output 1 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF). 0122, bit 2
77	RO 2 ACTUAL	Indicates the status of Relay Output 2 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF). 0122, bit 1
78	RO 3 ACTUAL	Indicates the status of Relay Output 3 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF). 0122, bit 0
79	RO 4 ACTUAL	Indicates the status of Relay Output 4 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF). 0123, bit 2
80	RO 5 ACTUAL	Indicates the status of Relay Output 5 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF). 0123, bit 1
81	RO 6 ACTUAL	Indicates the status of Relay Output 6 (1 = ON, 0 = OFF). 0123, bit 0
82	AI 1 ACTUAL	Indicates the input level of Analog Input 1. 0120
83	AI 2 ACTUAL	Indicates the input level of Analog Input 2. 0121
84	AO 1 ACTUAL	Indicates the output level of Analog Output 1. 0124
85	AO 2 ACTUAL	Indicates the output level of Analog Output 2. 0125
86	OK.ALARM	Indicates the current alarm state of the drive (1 = ALARM, 0 = OK).
87	OK.MAINT	Indicates the current maintenance state of the drive (1 = MAINT, 0 = OK). Maintenance triggers are configured in drive parameter Group 29.
88	ALARM WORD1	This point is a bit-field indicating active alarms in the drive. 0308
89	ALARM WORD2	This point is a bit-field indicating active alarms in the drive. 0309
90	LAST FAULT	This point is first in the drive's fault log and indicates the most recent fault declared. 0401
91	PREV FAULT 1	This point is second in the drive's fault log and indicates the previous fault declared. 0412
92	PREV FAULT 2	This point is last in the drive's fault log and indicates the oldest fault in the log. 0413
93	OK.FAULT	Indicates the current fault state of the drive (1 = FAULT, 0 = OK).

FLN Detailed Point Descriptions		
Point	Description	Drive Parameter
94	RESET FAULT Command by FLN to reset a faulted drive (1 = RESET, 0 = NO). Parameter 1604 must be set to COMM for FLN to control this state. The control input is rising-edge sensitive, so, once the command is issued, this point automatically returns to its inactive state. This "momentary" operation avoids any need for an explicit command to clear the point before a subsequent reset can be issued.	
95	MBOX PARAM Sets the parameter to be used by the mailbox function.	
96	MBOX DATA Sets or indicates the data value of the mailbox function.	
97	MBOX READ Command by FLN to read the parameter value specified by Point 95, MBOX PARAM. The parameter value is returned in Point 96, MBOX DATA. The control input is rising-edge sensitive, so, once the command is issued, this point automatically returns to its inactive state. This "momentary" operation avoids any need for an explicit command to clear the point before a subsequent reset can be issued.	
98	MBOX WRITE Command by FLN to write the data value specified by Point 96, MBOX DATA, to the parameter value specified by Point 95, MBOX PARAM. The control input is rising-edge sensitive, so, once the command is issued, this point automatically returns to its inactive state. This "momentary" operation avoids any need for an explicit command to clear the point before a subsequent reset can be issued.	
99	ERROR STATUS 1 of the 5 mandatory FLN points required for compatibility with Siemens control systems. It has no functionality in the drive application.	None

BACnet Technical Data

Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement (PICS)

PICS Summary

BACnet Standard Device Profile. This version of ACH550 BACnet fully conforms to the 'Application-Specific Controller' standard device profile (B-ASC).

Services Supported. The following services are supported by the ACH550:

- I-Am (Response to Who-Is, also broadcast on power-up & other reset)
- I-Have (Response to Who-Has)
- ReadProperty
- WriteProperty
- DeviceCommunicationControl
- ReinitializeDevice

Data Link Layer. The ACH550 implements MS/TP (Master) Data Link Layer. All standard MS/TP baud rates are supported (9600, 19200, 38400 & 76800).

MAC ID / Device Object Instance. The ACH550 supports separate MAC ID and Device Object Instance parameters:

- Set the MAC ID using drive parameter 5302. Default: 5302 = 1.
- Set the Device Object Instance using drive parameters 5311 and 5317. Default: Both 5311 and 5317 = 0, which causes the MAC ID to "double" as the Device Object Instance. For Device Object Instance values not linked to the MAC ID, set ID values using 5311 and 5317:
 - For IDs in the range 1 to 65,535: Parameter 5311 sets the ID directly (5317 must be 0). For example, the following values set the ID to 49,134:
5311 = 49134 and 5317 = 0.
 - For IDs > 65,335: The ID equals 5311's value plus 10,000 times 5317's value. For example, the following values set the ID to 71,234:
5311 = 1234 and 5317 = 7.

Automatic Baud Rate Detection. Set the communication baud rate using drive parameter 5303. However, this value is "overridden" if automatic baud rate detection is enabled and a different baud rate is detected. By default, autobaud detection is disabled – enable by setting drive parameter 5314 to 1. When autobaud detection is enabled, drive parameter 5315 displays the detected baud rate.

Note! Autobaud detection samples for, and adjusts to, only the standard MS/TP baud rates (9600, 19200, 38400 & 76800).

Max Info Frames Property. Configure the Device Object Max Info Frames property using drive parameter 5312. Default: 5312 = 1.

Max Master Property. Configure the Device Object Max Master property using drive parameter 5313. Default: 5313 = 127.

MS/TP Token Counter

Parameter 5316 stores the count of MS/TP tokens passed to the associated node.

Statement

This statement is part of this Standard and is required for its use.

BACnet Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement	
Date:	December 1, 2005
Vendor Name:	ABB, Inc
Product Name:	Low Voltage AC Motor Drive
Product Model Number:	ACH550
Applications Software Version:	0504
Firmware Revision:	206D
BACnet Protocol Revision:	2
Product Description:	The ACH550 is a high-performance adjustable frequency drive specifically designed for commercial automation applications. This product supports native BACnet, connecting directly to the MS/TP LAN. All standard MS/TP baud rates are supported, as well as master mode functionality. Over BACnet, the drive can be fully controlled as a standard adjustable frequency drive. In addition, up to 16 configurable I/O ports are available over BACnet for user applications.
BACnet Standardized Device Profile (Annex L):	<input type="checkbox"/> BACnet Operator Workstation (B-OWS) <input type="checkbox"/> BACnet Building Controller (B-BC) <input type="checkbox"/> BACnet Advanced Application Controller (B-AAC) <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> BACnet Application Specific Controller (B-ASC) <input type="checkbox"/> BACnet Smart Sensor (B-SS) <input type="checkbox"/> BACnet Smart Actuator (B-SA)
List all BACnet Interoperability Building Blocks Supported (Annex K):	DS-RP-B, DS-WP-B, DM-DDB-B, DM-DOB-B, DM-DCC-B, DM-RD-B.
Segmentation Capability:	<input type="checkbox"/> Segmented requests supported. Window Size ____ <input type="checkbox"/> Segmented responses supported. Window Size ____
Standard Object Types Supported: An object type is supported if it may be present in the device. For each standard Object Type supported provide the following data: 1) Whether objects of this type are dynamically creatable using the CreateObject service 2) Whether objects of this type are dynamically detectable using the DeleteObject service 3) List of the optional properties supported 4) List of all properties that are writable where not otherwise required by this standard 5) List of proprietary properties and for each its property identifier, datatype, and meaning 6) List of any property range restrictions	See table at "Object/Property Support Matrix" on page 215.

BACnet Protocol Implementation Conformance Statement	
Data Link Layer Options:	<input type="checkbox"/> BACnet IP, (Annex J) <input type="checkbox"/> BACnet IP, (Annex J), Foreign Device <input type="checkbox"/> ISO 8802-3, Ethernet (Clause 7) <input type="checkbox"/> ANSI/ATA 878.1, 2.5 Mb. ARCNET (Clause 8) <input type="checkbox"/> ANSI/ATA 878.1, RS-485 ARCNET (Clause 8), baud rate(s) ____ <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> MS/TP master (Clause 9), baud rate(s): 9600, 19200, 38400, 76800 <input type="checkbox"/> MS/TP slave (Clause 9), baud rate(s): ____ <input type="checkbox"/> Point-To-Point, EIA 232 (Clause 10), baud rate(s): ____ <input type="checkbox"/> Point-To-Point, modem, (Clause 10), baud rate(s): ____ <input type="checkbox"/> LonTalk, (Clause 11), medium: _____ <input type="checkbox"/> Other: _____
Device Address Binding: Is static device binding supported? (This is currently necessary for two-way communication with MS/TP slaves and certain other devices.)	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> No
Networking Options:	<input type="checkbox"/> Router, Clause 6 - List all routing configurations, e.g., ARCNET-Ethernet, Ethernet-MS/TP, etc. <input type="checkbox"/> Annex H, BACnet Tunneling Router over IP <input type="checkbox"/> BACnet/IP Broadcast Management Device (BBMD)
Does the BBMD support registrations by Foreign Devices?	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No
Character Sets Supported: Indicating support for multiple character sets does not imply that they can all be supported simultaneously.	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ANSI X3.4 <input type="checkbox"/> IBM™/Microsoft™ DBCS <input type="checkbox"/> ISO 8859-1 <input type="checkbox"/> ISO 10646 (UCS-2) <input type="checkbox"/> ISO 10646 (UCS-4) <input type="checkbox"/> JIS C 6226
If this product is a communication gateway, describe the types of non-BACnet equipment/network(s) that the gateway supports:	

BACnet Object Definitions

Object/Property Support Matrix

The following table summarizes the Object Types/Properties Supported:

Property	Object Type						
	Device	Binary Input	Binary Output	Binary Value	Analog Input	Analog Output	Analog Value
Object Identifier	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Object Name	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Object Type	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
System Status	✓						
Vendor Name	✓						
Vendor Identifier	✓						
Model Name	✓						
Firmware Revision	✓						
Appl Software Revision	✓						
Protocol Version	✓						
Protocol Revision	✓						
Services Supported	✓						
Object Types Supported	✓						
Object List	✓						
Max APDU Length	✓						
Segmentation Support	✓						
APDU Timeout	✓						
Number APDU Retries	✓						
Max Master	✓						
Max Info Frames	✓						
Device Address Binding	✓						
Database Revision	✓						
Present Value		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Status Flags		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Event State		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Out-of-Service		✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
Units					✓	✓	✓
Priority Array			✓	✓*		✓	✓*
Relinquish Default			✓	✓*		✓	✓*
Polarity		✓	✓				
Active Text		✓	✓	✓			
Inactive Text		✓	✓	✓			

* For commandable values only.

Binary Input Object Instance Summary

The following table summarizes the Binary Input Objects supported:

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Active/ Inactive Text	Present Value Access Type
BI0	RO 1 ACT	This object indicates the status of Relay Output 1.	ON/OFF	R
BI1	RO 2 ACT	This object indicates the status of Relay Output 2.	ON/OFF	R
BI2	RO 3 ACT	This object indicates the status of Relay Output 3.	ON/OFF	R
BI3	RO 4 ACT	This object indicates the status of Relay Output 4 (requires OREL-01 option).	ON/OFF	R
BI4	RO 5 ACT	This object indicates the status of Relay Output 5 (requires OREL-01 option)	ON/OFF	R
BI5	RO 6 ACT	This object indicates the status of Relay Output 6 (requires OREL-01 option)	ON/OFF	R
BI6	DI 1 ACT	This object indicates the status of Digital Input 1.	ON/OFF	R
BI7	DI 2 ACT	This object indicates the status of Digital Input 2.	ON/OFF	R
BI8	DI 3 ACT	This object indicates the status of Digital Input 3.	ON/OFF	R
BI9	DI 4 ACT	This object indicates the status of Digital Input 4.	ON/OFF	R
BI10	DI 5 ACT	This object indicates the status of Digital Input 5.	ON/OFF	R
BI11	DI 6 ACT	This object indicates the status of Digital Input 6.	ON/OFF	R

Note! For Present Value Access Types, R = Read-only, W = Writeable, C = Commandable. Commandable values support priority arrays & relinquish defaults.

Binary Output Object Instance Summary

The following table summarizes the Binary Output Objects supported:

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Active/ Inactive Text	Present Value Access Type
BO0	RO1 COMMAND	This object controls the output state of Relay 1. This control requires that parameter 1401 value = COMM.	ON/OFF	C
BO1	RO2 COMMAND	This object controls the output state of Relay 2. This control requires that parameter 1402 value = COMM.	ON/OFF	C
BO2	RO3 COMMAND	This object controls the output state of Relay 3. This control requires that parameter 1403 value = COMM.	ON/OFF	C

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Active/ Inactive Text	Present Value Access Type
BO3	RO4 COMMAND	This object controls the output state of Relay 4. This control requires that parameter 1410 value = COMM (also requires OREL-01 option).	ON/OFF	C
BO4	RO5 COMMAND	This object controls the output state of Relay 5. This control requires that parameter 1411 value = COMM (also requires OREL-01 option).	ON/OFF	C
BO5	RO6 COMMAND	This object controls the output state of Relay 6. This control requires that parameter 1412 value = COMM (also requires OREL-01 option).	ON/OFF	C

Note! For Present Value Access Types, R = Read-only, W = Writeable, C = Commandable. Commandable values support priority arrays & relinquish defaults.

Binary Value Object Instance Summary

The following table summarizes the Binary Value Objects supported:

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Active/Inactive Text	Present Value Access Type
BV0	RUN/STOP ACT	This object indicates the drive Run Status, regardless of the control source.	RUN/STOP	R
BV1	FWD/REV ACT	This object indicates the motor's rotation direction, regardless of the control source.	REV/FWD	R
BV2	FAULT ACT	this object indicates the drive's fault status.	FAULT/OK	R
BV3	EXT 1/2 ACT	This object indicates which control source is active: External 1 or External 2.	EXT2/EXT1	R
BV4	HAND/AUTO ACT	This object indicates whether the drive is under Hand or Auto control.	HAND/AUTO	R
BV5	ALARM ACT	This object indicates the drive's alarm status.	ALARM/OK	R
BV6	MAINT REQ	This object indicates the drive's maintenance status. Refer to Group 29 in the drive's parameter descriptions.	MAINT/OK	R
BV7	DRIVE READY	This object indicates whether the drive is ready to accept a run command.	READY/NOT READY	R
BV8	AT SETPOINT	This object indicates whether the drive is at the commanded setpoint.	YES/NO	R

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Active/Inactive Text	Present Value Access Type
BV9	RUN ENA ACT	This object indicates the Run Enable command status, regardless of the control source.	ENABLE/ DISABLE	R
BV10	RUN/STOP CMD	This object commands a drive start. Control requires either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Parameter 1001 value = COMM for control by EXT1 or Parameter 1002 value = COMM for control by EXT2. 	RUN/STOP	C
BV11	FWD/REV CMD	This object commands a motor rotation direction change. Control requires 1003 = REQUEST and either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Parameter 1001 value = COMM for control by EXT1 or Parameter 1002 value = COMM for control by EXT2. 	REV/FWD	C
BV12	RUN ENA CMD	This object commands Run Enable. Control requires parameter 1601 value = COMM.	ENABLE/ DISABLE	C
BV13	EXT 1/2 CMD	This object selects ext1 or ext2 as the active control source. Control requires parameter 1102 value = COMM.	EXT2/EXT1	C
BV14	FAULT RESET	This object resets a faulted drive. The command is rising-edge triggered. Control requires parameter 1604 value = COMM.	RESET/NO	C
BV15	MBOX READ	This object reads a parameter (defined by AV25 MBOX PARAM) and returns it in AV26 MBOX DATA.	READ/RESET	W
BV16	MBOX WRITE	This object writes the data value specified by AV26, MBOX DATA, to a parameter (defined by AV25, MBOX PARAM).	WRITE/RESET	W
BV17	LOCK PANEL	This object locks the panel and prevents parameter changes. The corresponding drive parameter is 1602.	LOCK/UNLOCK	W
BV18	CTL OVERRIDE CMD	This object commands the drive into BACnet Control Override. In this mode, BACnet takes drive control from the normal source. However, the control panel's HAND mode has priority over BACnet Control Override.	ON/OFF	C

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Active/Inactive Text	Present Value Access Type
BV19	CTL OVERRIDE ACT	This object indicates whether the drive is in BACnet Control Override. (See BV18.)	ON/OFF	R
BV20	START ENABLE 1	This object commands start enable1. Control requires param 1608 value = COMM.	ENABLE/DISABLE	C
BV21	START ENABLE 2	This object commands start enable1. Control requires param 1609 value = COMM.	ENABLE/DISABLE	C

Note! For Present Value Access Types, R = Read-only, W = Writeable, C = Commandable. Commandable values support priority arrays & relinquish defaults.

Analog Input Object Instance Summary

The following table summarizes the Analog Input Objects supported:

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Units	Present Value Access Type
AI0	ANALOG INPUT 1	This object indicates the value of Analog Input 1. The corresponding drive parameter is 0120.	Percent	R
AI1	ANALOG INPUT 2	This object indicates the value of Analog Input 2. The corresponding drive parameter is 0121.	Percent	R

Note! For Present Value Access Types, R = Read-only, W = Writeable, C = Commandable. Commandable values support priority arrays & relinquish defaults.

Analog Output Object Instance Summary

The following table summarizes the Analog Output Objects supported:

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Units	Present Value Access Type
AO0	AO 1 COMMAND	This object controls Analog Output 1. The corresponding drive parameter is 0135, COMM VALUE 1. Control requires parameter 1501 value = 135.	Percent	C
AO1	AO 2 COMMAND	This object controls Analog Output 2. The corresponding drive parameter is 0136, COMM VALUE 2. Control requires parameter 1507 value = 136.	Percent	C

Note! For Present Value Access Types, R = Read-only, W = Writeable, C = Commandable. Commandable values support priority arrays & relinquish defaults.

Analog Value Object Instance Summary

The following table summarizes the Analog Value Objects supported:

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Units	Present Value Access Type
AV0	OUTPUT SPEED	This object indicates the calculated motor speed in RPM. The corresponding drive parameter is 0102.	RPM	R
AV1	OUTPUT FREQ	This object indicates the output frequency applied to the motor in Hz. The corresponding drive parameter is 0103.	Hertz	R
AV2	DC BUS VOLT	This object indicates the drive's DC bus voltage level. The corresponding drive parameter is 0107.	Volts	R
AV3	OUTPUT VOLT	This object indicates the AC output voltage applied to the motor. The corresponding drive parameter is 0109.	Volts	R
AV4	CURRENT	This object indicates the measured output current. The corresponding drive parameter is 0104.	Amps	R
AV5	TORQUE	This object indicates the calculated motor output torque as a percentage of nominal torque. The corresponding drive parameter is 0105.	Percent	R
AV6	POWER	This object indicates the measured output power in kW. The corresponding drive parameter is 0106.	Kilowatts	R
AV7	DRIVE TEMP	This object indicates the measured heatsink temperature in °C. The corresponding drive parameter is 0110.	°C	R
AV8	KWH (R)	This object indicates, in kW hours, the drive's accumulated energy usage since the last reset. The value can be reset to zero. The corresponding drive parameter is 0115.	KWH	W
AV9	KWH (NR)	This object indicates the drive's accumulated energy usage in kW hours. The value cannot be reset.	KWH	R
AV10	PRC PID FBCK	This object is the Process PID feedback signal. The corresponding drive parameter is 0130.	Percent	R
AV11	PRC PID DEV	This object is the Process PID output signal's deviation from its setpoint. The corresponding drive parameter is 0132.	Percent	R
AV12	EXT PID FBCK	This object is the External PID feedback signal. The corresponding drive parameter is 0131.	Percent	R

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Units	Present Value Access Type
AV13	EXT PID DEV	This object is the External PID output signal's deviation from its setpoint. The corresponding drive parameter is 0133.	Percent	R
AV14	RUN TIME (R)	This object indicates, in hours, the drive's accumulated run time since the last reset. The value can be reset to zero. The corresponding drive parameter is 0114.	Hours	W
AV15	MOTOR TEMP	This object indicates the drive's motor temperature, as set up in parameter Group 35. The corresponding drive parameter is 0145.	°C	R
AV16	INPUT REF 1	This object sets Input Reference 1. Control requires parameter 1103 value = COMM.	Percent	C
AV17	INPUT REF 2	This object sets either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Input Reference 2. Control requires parameter 1106 value = COMM. Process PID setpoint. Control requires parameter 1106 value = PID1 OUT and parameter 4010 value = COMM. 	Percent	C
AV18	LAST FLT	This object indicates the most recent fault entered in the drive's fault log. The corresponding drive parameter is 0401.	None	R
AV19	PREV FLT 1	This object indicates the second most recent fault entered in the drive's fault log. The corresponding drive parameter is 0412.	None	R
AV20	PREV FLT 2	This object indicates the third most recent fault entered in the drive's fault log. The corresponding drive parameter is 0413.	None	R
AV21	AO 1 ACT	This object indicates Analog Output 1's level. The corresponding drive parameter is 0124.	Milliamps	R
AV22	AO 2 ACT	This object indicates Analog Output 2's level. The corresponding drive parameter is 0125.	Milliamps	R
AV23	ACCEL1 TIME	This object sets the Ramp1 acceleration time. The corresponding drive parameter is 2202.	Seconds	W
AV24	DECEL1 TIME	This object sets the Ramp1 deceleration time. The corresponding drive parameter is 2203.	Seconds	W
AV25	MBOX PARAM	This object defines the parameter to be read or written to by the mailbox function. See BV15 and BV16.	None	W
AV26	MBOX DATA	This object holds the mailbox function's parameter value – a value that was read, or is to be written. See BV15 and BV16.	None	W

Instance ID	Object Name	Description	Units	Present Value Access Type
AV27	EXT PID STPT	This object sets the External PID controller setpoint. The corresponding drive parameter is 4211. Control requires parameter 4210, PID SETPOINT SEL, value = 19 (INTERNAL).	Percent	C

Note! For Present Value Access Types, R = Read-only, W = Writeable, C = Commandable. Commandable values support priority arrays & relinquish defaults.

BACnet Quick-Start Sequence

The following steps summarize the process for enabling and configuring BACnet on the ACH550:

1. Enable BACnet protocol: Set drive parameter 9802, COMM PROTOCOL SEL = BACNET (5).

Note! If you cannot see the desired selection on the panel, your drive does not have that protocol software in the application memory.

- To confirm this selection, read drive parameter 5301, EFB PROTOCOL ID. It should read x5xx (where "x" is any value).
2. Place the BACnet channel in "reset": Set drive parameter 5302, EFB STATION ID = 0.
 - This setting holds the BACnet communication channel in reset while remaining settings are completed.
 3. Define the MS/TP baud rate.
 - If MS/TP baud rate is known: Set drive parameter 5303, EFB BAUD RATE = appropriate value.
 - If MS/TP baud rate is unknown: Set drive parameter 5314, EFB PAR 14 = 1 to enable autobaud detection.
 4. Define the Device Object instance.
 - To define a specific device object instance value, use drive parameters 5311 and 5317 (object instance values must be unique and in the range 1 to 4,194,303).
 - To use the drive's MS/TP MAC ID as the device object instance value, set drive parameter 5311 and 5317 = 0.
 5. Define a unique MS/TP MAC ID. Set drive parameter 5302, EFB STATION ID = appropriate value.
 - Once this parameter is set to a non-zero value, current BACnet settings are "latched" and used for communication until the channel is reset.
 - In order to participate in MS/TP token passing, the MAC ID used must be within the limits defined by other masters' "Max Master" property.

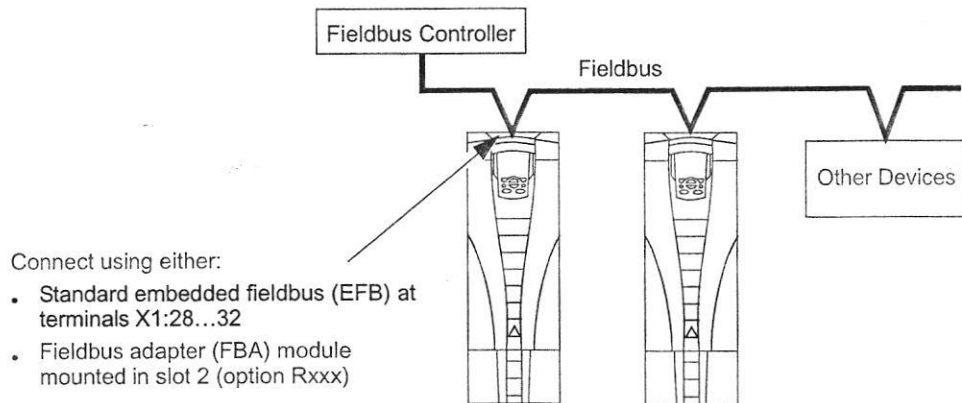
6. Confirm proper BACnet communication.
 - When BACnet communication is operating properly, drive parameter 5316, EFB PAR 16 (the MS/TP token counter), should be continually increasing.
 - Drive parameter 5306, UART ERRORS, should be stable. (With autobaud detection, this parameter may increase until the proper baud rate is detected.)
 - With autobaud detection, once the proper baud rate is detected, drive parameter 5315 EFB PAR 15, shows the active baud rate.

Fieldbus Adapter

Overview

The ACH550 can be set up to accept control from an external system using standard serial communication protocols. When using serial communication, the ACH550 can either:

- Receive all of its control information from the fieldbus, or
- Be controlled from some combination of fieldbus control and other available control locations, such as digital or analog inputs, and the control panel.



Two basic serial communications configurations are available:

- Embedded fieldbus (EFB) – See "Embedded Fieldbus" on page 154.
- Fieldbus adapter (FBA) – With one of the optional FBA modules in the drive's expansion slot 2, the drive can communicate to a control system using one of the following protocols:
 - Profibus-DP®
 - LonWorks®
 - CANopen®
 - DeviceNet®
 - ControlNet®
 - Ethernet®

The ACH550 detects automatically which communication protocol is used by the plug-in fieldbus adapter. The default settings for each protocol assume that the profile used is the protocol's industry-standard drive profile (e.g. PROFIdrive for PROFIBUS, AC/DC Drive for DeviceNet). All of the FBA protocols can also be configured for the ABB Drives profile.

Configuration details depend on the protocol and profile used. These details are provided in a user's manual supplied with the FBA module.

Details for the ABB Drives profile (which apply for all protocols) are provided in "ABB Drives Profile Technical Data" on page 234.

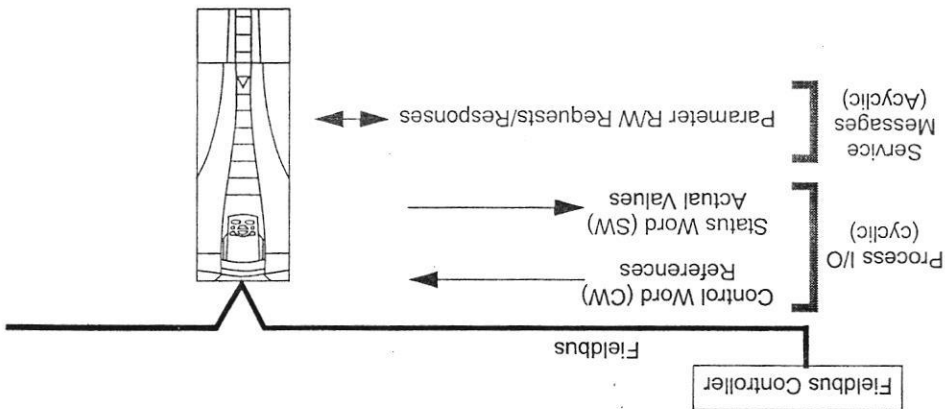
Control Interface

In general, the basic control interface between the fieldbus system and the drive consists of:

- Output Words:
 - CONTROL WORD
 - REFERENCE (speed or frequency)
 - Others: The drive supports a maximum of 15 output words. Protocols limits may further restrict the total.
- Input Words:
 - STATUS WORD
 - Actual Value (speed or frequency)
 - Others: The drive supports a maximum of 15 input words. Protocols limits may further restrict the total.

Note! The words "output" and "input" are used as seen from the fieldbus controller point of view. For example an output describes data flow from the fieldbus controller to the drive and appears as an input from the drive point of view.

The meanings of the controller interface words are not restricted by the ACH550. However, the profile used may set particular meanings.



Control Word

The CONTROL WORD is the principal means for controlling the drive from a fieldbus system. The fieldbus controller sends the CONTROL WORD to the drive. The drive switches between states according to the bit-coded instructions in the CONTROL WORD. Using the CONTROL WORD requires that:

- The drive is in remote (REM) control.

- The serial communication channel is defined as the source for controlling commands from EXT1 (set using parameters 1001 EXT1 COMMANDS and 1102 EXT1/EXT2 SEL).
- The external plug-in fieldbus adapter is activated:
 - Parameter 9802 COMM PROT SEL = 4 (EXT FBA).
 - The external plug-in fieldbus adapter is configured to use the drive profile mode or drive profile objects.

The content of the CONTROL WORD depends on the protocol/profile used. See the user's manual provided with the FBA module and/or the "ABB Drives Profile Technical Data".

Status Word

The STATUS WORD is a 16-bit word containing status information, sent by the drive to the fieldbus controller. The content of the STATUS WORD depends on the protocol/profile used. See the user's manual provided with the FBA module and/or the "ABB Drives Profile Technical Data" section.

Reference

The contents of each REFERENCE word:

- Can be used, as speed or frequency reference.
- Is a 16-bit word comprised of a sign bit and a 15-bit integer.
- Negative references (indicating reversed rotation direction) are indicated by the two's complement of the corresponding positive reference value.

The use of a second reference (REF2) is supported only when a protocol is configured for the ABB Drives profile.

Reference scaling is fieldbus type specific. See the user's manual provided with the FBA module and/or the following sections as appropriate:

- "ABB Drives Profile Technical Data"
- "Generic Profile Technical Data"

Actual Values

Actual Values are 16-bit words containing information on selected operations of the drive. Drive Actual Values (for example, group 01 parameters) can be mapped to Input Words using group 51 parameters (protocol-dependent, but typically parameters 5104...5126).

Planning

Network planning should address the following questions:

- What types and quantities of devices must be connected to the network?
- What control information must be sent down to the drives?
- What feedback information must be sent from the drives to the controlling system?

Mechanical and Electrical Installation – FBA



Warning! Connections should be made only while the drive is disconnected from the power source.

Overview

The FBA (fieldbus adapter) is a plug-in module that fits in the drive's expansion slot 2. The module is held in place with plastic retaining clips and two screws. The screws also ground the shield for the module cable, and connect the module GND signals to the drive control board.

On installation of the module, electrical connection to the drive is automatically established through the 34-pin connector.

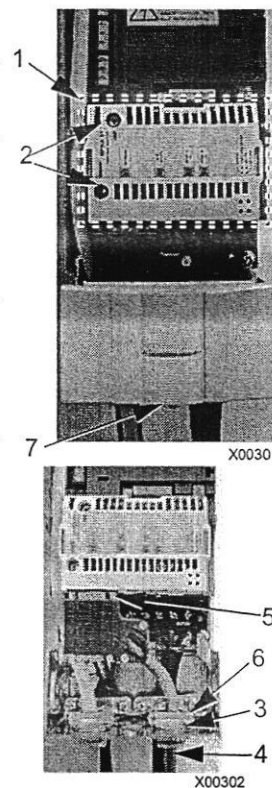
Mounting Procedure

Note! Install the input power and motor cables first.

1. Insert the module carefully into the drive expansion slot 2 until the retaining clips lock the module into position.
2. Fasten the two screws (included) to the stand-offs.

Note! Correct installation of the screws is essential for fulfilling the EMC requirements and for proper operation of the module.

3. Open the appropriate knockout in the conduit box and install the cable clamp for the network cable.
4. Route the network cable through the cable clamp.
5. Connect the network cable to the module's network connector.
6. Tighten the cable clamp.
7. Install the conduit box cover (1 screw).
8. For configuration information see the following:
 - "Communication Set-up – FBA" below.
 - "Activate Drive Control Functions – FBA" on page 228.
 - The protocol specific documentation provided with the module.



Communication Set-up – FBA

Serial Communication Selection

To activate the serial communication, use parameter 9802 COMM PROTOCOL SEL. Set 9802 = 4 (EXT FBA).

Serial Communication Configuration

Setting 9802, together with mounting a particular FBA module, automatically sets the appropriate default values in parameters that define the communication process. These parameters and descriptions are defined in the user's manual supplied with the FBA module.

- Parameter 5101 is automatically configured.
- Parameters 5102...5126 are protocol-dependent and define, for example, the profile used, and additional I/O words. These parameters are referred to as the fieldbus configuration parameters. See the user's manual provided with the FBA module for details on the fieldbus configuration parameters.
- Parameter 5127 forces the validation of changes to parameters 5102...5126. If parameter 5127 is not used, changes to parameters 5102...5126 take affect only after the drive power is cycled.
- Parameters 5128...5133 provide data about the FBA module currently installed (e.g. component versions and status).

The Parameters Description section lists the group 51 parameters.

Activate Drive Control Functions – FBA

Fieldbus control of various drive functions requires configuration to:

- Tell the drive to accept fieldbus control of the function.
- Define as a fieldbus input, any drive data required for control.
- Define as a fieldbus output, any control data required by the drive.

The following sections describe, at a general level, the configuration required for each control function. The last column in each table below is deliberately blank. See the user's manual supplied with the FBA module for the appropriate entry.

Start/Stop Direction Control

Using the fieldbus for start/stop/direction control of the drive requires:

- Drive parameter values set as defined below.
- Fieldbus controller supplied command(s) in the appropriate location. (The location is defined by the Protocol Reference, which is protocol dependent.)

Drive Parameter	Value	Description	Protocol Reference
1001 EXT1 COMMANDS	10 (COMM)	Start/Stop controlled by fieldbus with Ext1 selected.	

Drive Parameter		Value	Description	Protocol Reference
1002	EXT2 COMMANDS	10 (COMM)	Start/Stop by controlled fieldbus with Ext2 selected.	
1003	DIRECTION	3 (REQUEST)	Direction controlled by fieldbus.	

Input Reference Select

Using the fieldbus to provide input reference to the drive requires:

- Drive parameter value set as defined below.
- Fieldbus controller supplied reference word(s) in the appropriate location. (The location is defined by the Protocol Reference, which is protocol dependent.)

Drive Parameter		Value	Description	Protocol Reference
1102	EXT1/EXT2 SEL	8 (COMM)	Ref. selected by fieldbus. (Required only if 2 references used.)	
1103	REF1_SEL	8 (COMM) 9 (COMM+AI1) 10 (COMM*AI1)	Input reference 1 supplied by fieldbus.	
1106	REF2 SEL	8 (COMM) 9 (COMM+AI) 10 (COMM*AI)	Input reference 1 supplied by fieldbus. (Required only if 2 references used.)	

Note! Multiple references are supported only when using the ABB Drives profile.

Scaling

Where required, REFERENCES can be scaled. See the "Reference Scaling" in the following sections, as appropriate:

- "ABB Drives Profile Technical Data"
- "Generic Profile Technical Data"

System Control

Using the fieldbus for miscellaneous drive control requires:

- Drive parameter values set as defined below.
- Fieldbus controller command(s) in the appropriate location. (The location is defined by the Protocol Reference, which is protocol dependent.)

Drive Parameter		Value	Description	Protocol Reference
1601	RUN ENABLE	7 (COMM)	Run enable by fieldbus.	
1604	FAULT RESET SEL	8 (COMM)	Fault reset by fieldbus.	
1607	PARAM SAVE	1 (SAVE)	Saves altered parameters to memory (then value returns to 0).	

Relay Output Control

Using the fieldbus for relay output control requires:

- Drive parameter values set as defined below.
- Fieldbus controller supplied, binary coded, relay command(s) in the appropriate location. (The location is defined by the Protocol Reference, which is protocol dependent.)

Drive Parameter		Value	Description	Protocol Reference
1401	RELAY OUTPUT 1	35 (COMM)	Relay Output 1 controlled by fieldbus.	
1402	RELAY OUTPUT 2	36 (COMM(-1))	Relay Output 2 controlled by fieldbus.	
1403	RELAY OUTPUT 3		Relay Output 3 controlled by fieldbus.	
1410 ¹	RELAY OUTPUT 4		Relay Output 4 controlled by fieldbus.	
1411 ¹	RELAY OUTPUT 5		Relay Output 5 controlled by fieldbus.	
1412 ¹	RELAY OUTPUT 6		Relay Output 6 controlled by fieldbus.	

1. More than 3 relays requires the addition of a relay extension module.

Note! Relay status feedback occurs without configuration as defined below.

Drive Parameter		Value	Protocol Reference
0122	RO 1-3 STATUS	Relay 1...3 status.	
0123	RO 4-6 STATUS	Relay 4...6 status.	

Analog Output Control

Using the fieldbus for analog output control (e.g. PID setpoint) requires:

- Drive parameter values set as defined below.
- Fieldbus controller supplied analog value(s) in the appropriate location. (The location is defined by the Protocol Reference, which is protocol dependent.)

Drive Parameter		Value	Description	Protocol Reference
1501	AO1 CONTENT SEL	135 (COMM VALUE 1)	Analog Output 1 controlled by writing to parameter 0135.	–
0135	COMM VALUE 1	–		
1502 ... 1505	AO1 CONTENT MIN ... MAXIMUM AO1	Set appropriate values.	Used for scaling	–
1506	FILTER AO1		Filter time constant for AO1.	–
1507	AO2 CONTENT SEL	136 (COMM VALUE 2)	Analog Output 2 controlled by writing to parameter 0136.	–
0136	COMM VALUE 2	–		
1508 ... 1511	AO2 CONTENT MIN ... MAXIMUM AO2	Set appropriate values.	Used for scaling	–
1512	FILTER AO2		Filter time constant for AO2.	–

PID Control Setpoint Source

Using the fieldbus for the PID control setpoint requires:

- Drive parameter values set as defined below.
- Fieldbus controller supplied setpoint value in the appropriate location. (As defined in "Analog Output Control" above.)

Drive Parameter		Value	Description	Protocol Reference
4010	SETPOINT SEL	8 (COMM VALUE 1) 9 (COMM + AI1) 10 (COMM*AI1)	Setpoint is 0135 value (+/- AI1)	–

Communication Fault

When using fieldbus control, specify the drive's action if serial communication is lost.

Drive Parameter		Value	Description	Protocol Reference
3018	COMM FAULT FUNC	0 (NOT SEL) 1 (FAULT) 2 (CONST SP7) 3 (LAST SPEED)	Set for appropriate drive response.	–
3019	COMM FAULT TIME	Set time delay before acting on a communication loss.		–

Feedback from the Drive – FBA

Inputs to the controller (drive outputs) have pre-defined meanings established by the protocol. This feedback does not require drive configuration. The following table lists a sample of feedback data. For a complete listing, see all parameters listed in "Parameter Descriptions".

Drive Parameter		Protocol Reference
0102	SPEED	
0103	FREQ OUTPUT	
0104	CURRENT	
0105	TORQUE	
0106	POWER	
0107	DC BUS VOLT	
0109	OUTPUT VOLTAGE	
0301	FB STATUS WORD – bit 0 (STOP)	
0301	FB STATUS WORD – bit 2 (REV)	
0118	DI1-3 STATUS – bit 1 (DI3)	

Scaling

To scale the drive parameter values see the "Actual Value Scaling" in the following sections, as appropriate:

- "ABB Drives Profile Technical Data"
- "Generic Profile Technical Data"

Diagnostics – FBA

Fault Handling

The ACH550 provides fault information as follows:

- The control panel display shows a fault code and text. See "Diagnostics" starting on page 244 for a complete description.
- Parameters 0401 LAST FAULT, 0402 PREVIOUS FAULT1 and 0403 PREVIOUS FAULT2 store the most recent faults.
- For fieldbus access, the drive reports faults as a hexadecimal value, assigned and coded according to the DRIVECOM specification. See table below. Not all profiles support requesting fault codes using this specification. For profiles that support this specification, the profile documentation defines the proper fault request process.

	Drive Fault Code	Fieldbus Fault Code (DRIVECOM specification)
1	OVERCURRENT	2310h
2	DC OVERVOLT	3210h
3	DEV OVERTEMP	4210h
4	SHORT CIRC	2340h
5	Reserved	FF6Bh
6	DC UNDERVOLT	3220h
7	AI1 LOSS	8110h
8	AI2 LOSS	8110h
9	MOT TEMP	4310h
10	PANEL LOSS	5300h
11	ID RUN FAIL	FF84h
12	MOTOR STALL	7121h
14	EXTERNAL FLT 1	9000h
15	EXTERNAL FLT 2	9001h
16	EARTH FAULT	2330h
17	UNDERLOAD	FF6Ah
18	THERM FAIL	5210h
19	OPEX LINK	7500h
20	OPEX PWR	5414h
21	CURR MEAS	2211h

Drive Fault Code		Fieldbus Fault Code (DRIVECOM specification)
22	SUPPLY PHASE	3130h
23	ENCODER ERR	7301h
24	OVERSPEED	7310h
25	Reserved	FF80h
26	DRIVE ID	5400h
27	CONFIG FILE	630Fh
28	SERIAL 1 ERR	7510h
29	EFB CONFIG FILE	6306h
30	FORCE TRIP	FF90h
31	EFB 1	FF92h
32	EFB 2	FF93h
33	EFB 3	FF94h
34	MOTOR PHASE	FF56h
35	OUTPUT WIRING	FF95h
36	INCOMP SWTYPE	630Fh
101	SERF CORRUPT	FF55h
102	Reserved	FF55h
103	SERF MACRO	FF55h
104	Reserved	FF55h
105	Reserved	FF55h
201	DSP T1 OVERLOAD	6100h
202	DSP T2 OVERLOAD	6100h
203	DSP T3 OVERLOAD	6100h
204	DSP STACK ERROR	6100h
205	Reserved	5000h
206	OMIO ID ERROR	5000h
207	EFB LOAD ERR	6100h
1000	PAR HZRPM	6320h
1001	PAR PFAREFNG	6320h
1002	Reserved (obsolete)	6320h
1003	PAR AI SCALE	6320h
1004	PAR AO SCALE	6320h
1005	PAR PCU 2	6320h
1006	EXT ROMISSING	6320h
1007	PAR FBUSMISSING	6320h
1008	PAR PFAWOSCALAR	6320h
1009	PAR PCU 1	6320h
1010	PAR PFA OVERRIDE	6320h

Drive Fault Code		Fieldbus Fault Code (DRIVECOM specification)
1011	PAR OVERRIDE PARS	6320h
1012	PAR PFC IO 1	6320h
1013	PAR PFC IO 2	6320h
1014	PAR PFC IO 3	6320h

Serial Communication Diagnostics

Besides the drive fault codes, the FBA module has diagnostic tools. Refer to the user's manual supplied with the FBA module.

ABB Drives Profile Technical Data

Overview

The ABB Drives profile provides a standard profile that can be used on multiple protocols, including protocols available on the FBA module. This section describes the ABB Drives profile implemented for FBA modules.

Control Word

As described earlier in "Control Interface" the CONTROL WORD is the principal means for controlling the drive from a fieldbus system.

The following table and the state diagram later in this sub-section describe the CONTROL WORD content for the ABB Drives profile.

ABB Drives Profile (FBA) CONTROL WORD				
Bit	Name	Value	Commanded State	Comments
0	OFF1 CONTROL	1	READY TO OPERATE	Enter READY TO OPERATE
		0	EMERGENCY OFF	Drive ramps to stop according to currently active deceleration ramp (2203 or 2205) Normal command sequence: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enter OFF1 ACTIVE • Proceed to READY TO SWITCH ON, unless other interlocks (OFF2, OFF3) are active.
1	OFF2 CONTROL	1	OPERATING	Continue operation (OFF2 inactive)
		0	EMERGENCY OFF	Drive coasts to stop. Normal command sequence: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enter OFF2 ACTIVE • Proceed to SWITCHON INHIBITED

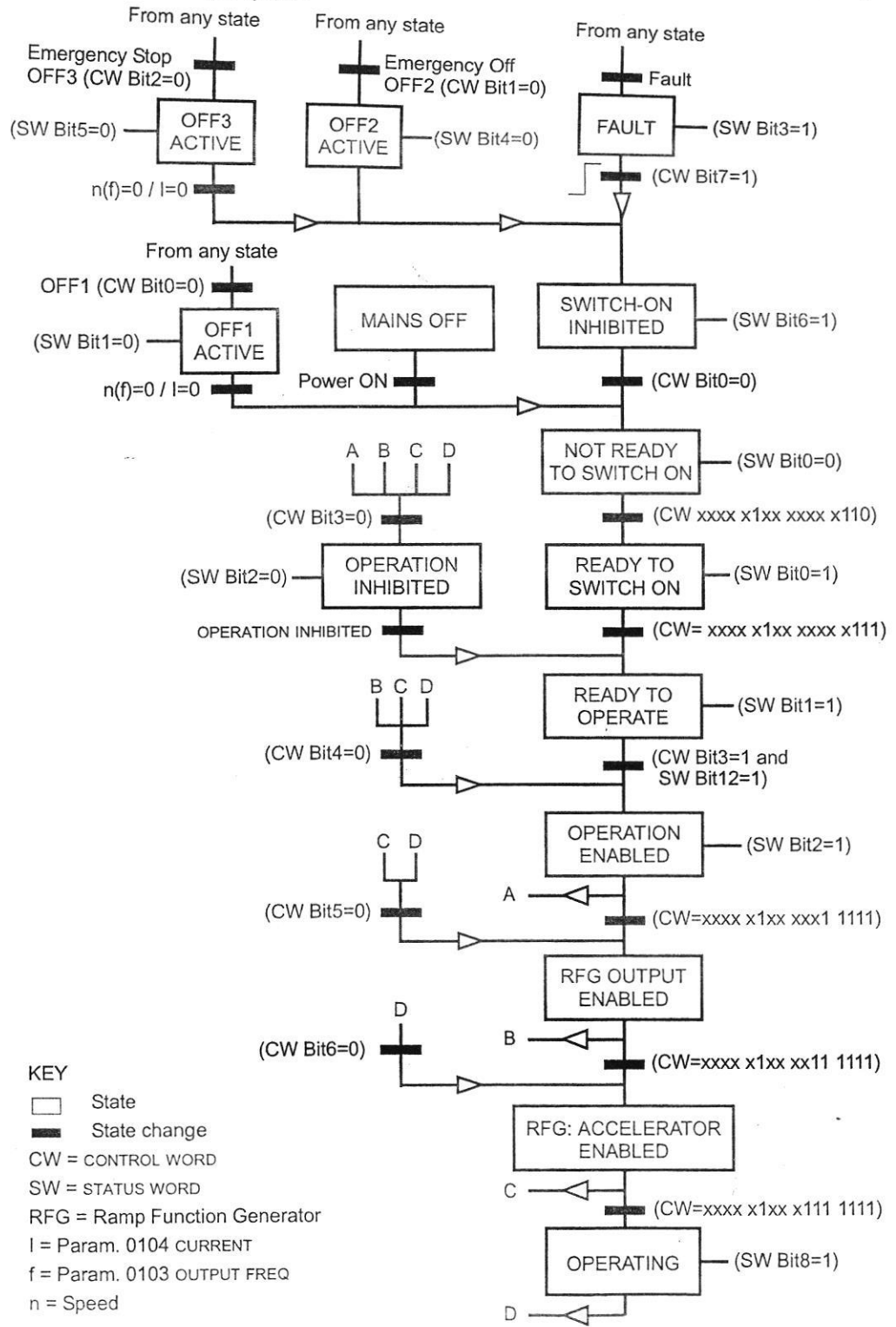
ABB Drives Profile (FBA) CONTROL WORD				
Bit	Name	Value	Commanded State	Comments
2	OFF3 CONTROL	1	OPERATING	Continue operation (OFF3 inactive)
		0	EMERGENCY STOP	Drive stops within in time specified by parameter 2208. Normal command sequence: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Enter OFF3 ACTIVE • Proceed to SWITCH ON INHIBITED WARNING! Be sure motor and driven equipment can be stopped using this mode.
3	INHIBIT OPERATION	1	OPERATION ENABLED	Enter OPERATION ENABLED (Note the Run enable signal must be active. See 1601. If 1601 is set to COMM, this bit also activates the Run Enable signal.)
		0	OPERATION INHIBITED	Inhibit operation. Enter OPERATION INHIBITED
4	RAMP_OUT_ZERO	1	NORMAL OPERATION	Enter RAMP FUNCTION GENERATOR: ACCELERATION ENABLED
		0	RFG OUT ZERO	Force ramp function generator output to Zero. Drive ramps to stop (current and DC voltage limits in force).
5	RAMP_HOLD	1	RFG OUT ENABLED	Enable ramp function. Enter RAMP FUNCTION GENERATOR: ACCELERATOR ENABLED
		0	RFG OUT HOLD	Halt ramping (Ramp Function Generator output held)
6	RAMP_IN_ZERO	1	RFG INPUT ENABLED	Normal operation. Enter OPERATING
		0	RFG INPUT ZERO	Force Ramp Function Generator input to zero.
7	RESET	0=>1	RESET	Fault reset if an active fault exists (Enter SWITCH-ON INHIBITED). Effective if 1604 = COMM.
		0	OPERATING	Continue normal operation
8...9	Unused			
10	REMOTE_CMD	1		Fieldbus control enabled
		0		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CW ≠ 0 or Ref ≠ 0: Retain last CW and Ref. • CW = 0 and Ref = 0: Fieldbus control enabled. • Ref and deceleration/acceleration-ramp are locked.
11	EXT CTRL LOC	1	EXT2 SELECT	Select external control location 2 (EXT2). Effective if 1102 = COMM.
		0	EXT1 SELECT	Select external control location 1 (EXT1). Effective if 1102 = COMM.
12...15	Unused			

Status Word

As described earlier in "Control Interface", the contents of the STATUS WORD is status information, sent by the drive to the master station. The following table and the state diagram later in this sub-section describe the status word content.

ABB Drives Profile (FBA) STATUS WORD			
Bit	Name	Value	Description (Correspond to states/boxes in the state diagram)
0	RDY_ON	1	READY TO SWITCH ON
		0	NOT READY TO SWITCH ON
1	RDY_RUN	1	READY TO OPERATE
		0	OFF1 ACTIVE
2	RDY_REF	1	OPERATION ENABLED
		0	OPERATION INHIBITED
3	TRIPPED	0...1	FAULT
		0	No fault
4	OFF_2_STA	1	OFF2 inactive
		0	OFF2 ACTIVE
5	OFF_3_STA	1	OFF3 inactive
		0	OFF3 ACTIVE
6	SWC_ON_INHIB	1	SWITCH-ON INHIBIT ACTIVE
		0	SWITCH-ON INHIBIT NOT ACTIVE
7	ALARM	1	Warning/alarm (See "Alarm Listing" in the "Diagnostics" section for details on alarms.)
		0	No warning/alarm
8	AT_SETPOINT	1	OPERATING. Actual value equals (within tolerance limits) the reference value.
		0	Actual value is outside tolerance limits (not equal to reference value).
9	REMOTE	1	Drive control location: REMOTE (EXT1 or EXT2)
		0	Drive control location: LOCAL
10	ABOVE_LIMIT	1	Supervised parameter's value \geq supervision high limit. Bit remains "1" until supervised parameter's value < supervision low limit. See group 32, Supervision
		0	Supervised parameter's value < supervision low limit. Bit remains "0" until supervised parameter's value > supervision high limit. See group 32, Supervision
11	EXT CTRL LOC	1	External control location 2 (EXT2) selected
		0	External control location 1 (EXT1) selected
12	EXT RUN ENABLE	1	External Run Enable signal received
		0	No External Run Enable signal received
13... 15	Unused		

The state diagram below describes the start-stop function of CONTROL WORD (CW) and STATUS WORD (SW) bits.



Reference

As described earlier in "Control Interface", the REFERENCE word is a speed or frequency reference.

Reference Scaling

The following table describes REFERENCE scaling for the ABB Drives profile.

ABB Drives Profile (FBA)				
Reference	Range	Reference Type	Scaling	Remarks
REF1	-32767... +32767	Speed or frequency	-20000 = -(par. 1105) 0 = 0 +20000 = (par. 1105) (20000 corresponds to 100%)	Final reference limited by 1104/1105. Actual motor speed limited by 2001/2002 (speed) or 2007/2008 (frequency).
REF2	-32767... +32767	Speed or frequency	-10000 = -(par. 1108) 0 = 0 +10000 = (par. 1108) (10000 corresponds to 100%)	Final reference limited by 1107/1108. Actual motor speed limited by 2001/2002 (speed) or 2007/2008 (frequency).
		Torque	-10000 = -(par. 1108) 0 = 0 +10000 = (par. 1108) (10000 corresponds to 100%)	Final reference limited by 2015/2017 (torque1) or 2016/2018 (torque2).
		PID Reference	-10000 = -(par. 1108) 0 = 0 +10000 = (par. 1108) (10000 corresponds to 100%)	Final reference limited by 4012/4013 (PID set1) or 4112/4113 (PID set2).

Note! The setting of parameter 1104 REF1 MIN and 1107 REF2 MIN has no effect on the scaling of references.

When parameter 1103 REF1 SELECT or 1106 REF2 SELECT is set to COMM+AI1 or COMM*AI1, the reference is scaled as follows:

ABB Drives Profile (FBA)		
Reference	Value Setting	AI Reference Scaling
REF1	COMM+AI1	$\text{COMM (\%)} + (\text{AI (\%)} - 0.5 * \text{REF1 MAX (\%)})$

ABB Drives Profile (FBA)		
Reference	Value Setting	AI Reference Scaling
REF1	COMM*AI1	$\text{COMM (\%)} * (\text{AI (\%)} / 0.5 * \text{REF1 MAX (\%)})$ <p>Fieldbus Reference Correction Coefficient</p> <p>200%</p> <p>100%</p> <p>(100 - 0.5 * (par. 1105))%</p> <p>0% 50% 100%</p> <p>AI1 Input Signal</p>
REF2	COMM+AI1	$\text{COMM (\%)} + (\text{AI (\%)} - 0.5 * \text{REF2 MAX (\%)})$ <p>Fieldbus Reference Correction Coefficient</p> <p>(100 + 0.5 * (Par. 1108))%</p> <p>100%</p> <p>(100 - 0.5 * (par. 1108))%</p> <p>0% 50% 100%</p> <p>AI1 Input Signal</p>
REF2	COMM*AI1	$\text{COMM (\%)} * (\text{AI (\%)} / 0.5 * \text{REF2 MAX (\%)})$ <p>Fieldbus Reference Correction Coefficient</p> <p>200%</p> <p>100%</p> <p>0%</p> <p>0% 50% 100%</p> <p>AI1 Input Signal</p>

Reference Handling

Use group 10 parameters to configure for control of rotation direction for each control location (EXT1 and EXT2). The following diagrams illustrate how group 10 parameters and the sign of the fieldbus reference interact to produce REFERENCE values (REF1 and REF2). Note, fieldbus references are bipolar, that is they can be positive or negative.

ABB Drives Profile		
Parameter	Value Setting	AI Reference Scaling
1003 DIRECTION	1 (FORWARD)	
1003 DIRECTION	2 (REVERSE)	
1003 DIRECTION	3 (REQUEST)	

Actual Value

As described earlier in "Control Interface", Actual Values are words containing drive values.

Actual Value Scaling

The scaling of the integers sent to the fieldbus as Actual Values depends on the resolution of the selected drive parameter. Except as noted for Data Words 5 and 6 below, scale the feedback integer using the resolution listed for the parameter in the "Parameter Descriptions" section. For example:

Feedback Integer	Parameter Resolution	Scaled Value
1	0.1 mA	$1 * 0.1 \text{ mA} = 0.1 \text{ mA}$
10	0.1%	$10 * 0.1\% = 1\%$

Data words 5 and 6 are scaled as follows:

ABB Drives Profile		
Data Word	Contents	Scaling
5	ACTUAL SPEED	$-20000 \dots +20000 = -(\text{par. } 1105) \dots +(\text{par. } 1105)$
6	TORQUE	$-10000 \dots +10000 = -100\% \dots +100\%$

Actual Value Mapping

See the user's manual supplied with the FBA module.

Generic Profile Technical Data

Overview

The generic profile aims to fulfill the industry-standard drive profile for each protocol (e.g. PROFIdrive for PROFIBUS, AC/DC Drive for DeviceNet).

Control Word

As described earlier in "Control Interface" the CONTROL WORD is the principal means for controlling the drive from a fieldbus system. For specific CONTROL WORD content, see the user's manual provided with the FBA module.

Status Word

As described earlier in "Control Interface", the contents of the STATUS WORD is status information, sent by the drive to the master station. For specific STATUS WORD content, see the user's manual provided with the FBA module.

Reference

As described earlier in "Control Interface", the REFERENCE word is a speed or frequency reference.

Note! REF2 is not supported by the Generic Drive profiles.

Reference Scaling

REFERENCE scaling is fieldbus type specific. However, at the drive, the meaning of a 100% REFERENCE value is fixed as described in the table below. For a detailed description on the range and scaling of the REFERENCE, see the user's manual supplied with the FBA module.

Generic Profile				
Reference	Range	Reference Type	Scaling	Remarks
REF	Fieldbus specific	Speed	-100% = -(par. 9908) 0 = 0 +100 = (par. 9908)	Final reference limited by 1104/1105. Actual motor speed limited by 2001/2002 (speed).
		Frequency	-100% = -(par. 9907) 0 = 0 +100 = (par. 9907)	Final reference limited by 1104/1105. Actual motor speed limited by 2007/2008 (frequency).

Actual Values

As described earlier in "Control Interface", Actual Values are words containing drive values.

Actual Value Scaling

For Actual Values, scale the feedback integer using the parameter's resolution. (See "Parameter Descriptions" section for parameter resolutions.) For example:

Feedback Integer	Parameter Resolution	(Feedback Integer) * (Parameter Resolution) = Scaled Value
1	0.1 mA	1 * 0.1 mA = 0.1 mA
10	0.1%	10 * 0.1% = 1%

Where parameters are in percent, the "Parameter Descriptions" section specifies what parameter corresponds to 100%. In such cases, to convert from percent to engineering units, multiply by the value of the parameter that defines 100% and divide by 100%. For example:

Feedback Integer	Parameter Resolution	Value of the Parameter that defines 100%	(Feedback Integer) * (Parameter Resolution) * (Value of 100% Ref.) / 100% = Scaled Value
10	0.1%	1500 rpm ¹	10 * 0.1% * 1500 RPM / 100% = 15 rpm
100	0.1%	500 Hz ²	100 * 0.1% * 500 Hz / 100% = 50 Hz

1. Assuming, for the sake of this example, that the Actual Value uses parameter 9908 MOT NOM SPEED as the 100% reference, and that 9908 = 1500 rpm.
2. Assuming, for the sake of this example, that the Actual Value uses parameter 9907 MOT NOM FREQ as the 100% reference, and that 9907 = 500 Hz.

Actual Value Mapping

See the user's manual supplied with the FBA module.

Diagnosics



Warning! Do not attempt any measurement, parts replacement or other service procedure not described in this manual. Such action will void the warranty, may endanger correct operation, and increase downtime and expense.



Warning! All electrical installation and maintenance work described in this chapter should only be undertaken by qualified service personnel. The Safety instructions on the first pages of this manual must be followed.

Diagnostic Displays

The drive detects error situations and reports them using:

- The green and red LED on the body of the drive
- The status LED on the control panel (if the HVAC control panel is attached to the drive)
- The control panel display (if the HVAC control panel is attached to the drive)
- The Fault Word and Alarm Word parameter bits (parameters 0305 to 0309). See "Group 03: Actual Signals" on page 66.

The form of the display depends on the severity of the error. You can specify the severity for many errors by directing the drive to:

- Ignore the error situation.
- Report the situation as an alarm.
- Report the situation as a fault.

Red – Faults

The drive signals that it has detected a severe error, or fault, by:

- Enabling the red LED on the drive (LED is either steady on or blinking).
- Setting an appropriate bit in a Fault Word parameter (0305 to 0307).
- Overriding the control panel display with the display of a fault code.
- Stopping the motor (if it was on).

The fault code on the control panel display is temporary. Pressing any of the following buttons removes the fault message: MENU, ENTER, UP button or DOWN button. The message reappears after a few seconds if the control panel is not touched and the fault is still active.

Flashing Green – Alarms

For less severe errors, called alarms, the diagnostic display is advisory. For these situations, the drive is simply reporting that it had detected something "unusual." In these situations, the drive:

- Flashes the green LED on the drive (does not apply to alarms that arise from control panel operation errors).
- Sets an appropriate bit in an Alarm Word parameter (0308 or 0309). See "Group 03: Actual Signals" on page 66 for the bit definitions.
- Overrides the control panel display with the display of an alarm code and/or name.

Alarm messages disappear from the control panel display after a few seconds. The message returns periodically as long as the alarm condition exists.

Correcting Faults

The recommended corrective action for faults is:

- Use the "Fault Listing" table below to find and address the root cause of the problem.
- Reset the drive. See "Fault Resetting" on page 250.

Fault Listing

Fault Code	Fault Name In Panel	Description and Recommended Corrective Action
1	OVERCURRENT	Output current is excessive. Check for and correct: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Excessive motor load. • Insufficient acceleration time (parameters 2202 ACCELER TIME 1 and 2205 ACCELER TIME 2). • Faulty motor, motor cables or connections.
2	DC OVERVOLT	Intermediate circuit DC voltage is excessive. Check for and correct: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Static or transient overvoltages in the input power supply. • Insufficient deceleration time (parameters 2203 DECELER TIME 1 and 2206 DECELER TIME 2). • Verify that overvoltage controller is ON (using parameter 2005).
3	DEV OVERTEMP	Drive heatsink is overheated. Temperature is at or above limit. R1...R4 & R7/R8: 115 °C (239 °F) R5/R6: 125 °C (257 °F) Check for and correct: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fan failure. • Obstructions in the air flow. • Dirt or dust coating on the heat sink. • Excessive ambient temperature. • Excessive motor load.
4	SHORT CIRC	Fault current. Check for and correct: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A short-circuit in the motor cable(s) or motor. • Supply disturbances.

Fault Code	Fault Name In Panel	Description and Recommended Corrective Action
5	RESERVED	Not used.
6	DC UNDERVOLT	Intermediate circuit DC voltage is not sufficient. Check for and correct: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Missing phase in the input power supply. • Blown fuse. • Undervoltage on mains.
7	AI1 LOSS	Analog input 1 loss. Analog input value is less than AI1FLT LIMIT (3021). Check for and correct: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Source and connection for analog input. • Parameter settings for AI1FLT LIMIT (3021) and 3001 AI<MIN FUNCTION.
8	AI2 LOSS	Analog input 2 loss. Analog input value is less than AI2FLT LIMIT (3022). Check for and correct: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Source and connection for analog input. • Parameter settings for AI2FLT LIMIT (3022) and 3001 AI<MIN FUNCTION.
9	MOT TEMP	Motor is too hot, based on either the drive's estimate or on temperature feedback. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check for overloaded motor. • Adjust the parameters used for the estimate (3005...3009). • Check the temperature sensors and Group 35 parameters.
10	PANEL LOSS	Panel communication is lost and either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Drive is in local control mode (the control panel displays HAND), or • Drive is in remote control mode (REM) and is parameterized to accept start/stop, direction or reference from the control panel. To correct check: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Communication lines and connections • Parameter 3002 PANEL COMM ERROR. • Parameters in Group 10: Command Inputs and Group 11: Reference Select (if drive operation is REM).
11	ID RUN FAIL	The motor ID run was not completed successfully. Check for and correct: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Motor connections • Motor parameters 9905...9909
12	MOTOR STALL	Motor or process stall. Motor is operating in the stall region. Check for and correct: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Excessive load. • Insufficient motor power. • Parameters 3010...3012.
14	EXTERNAL FLT 1	Digital input defined to report first external fault is active. See parameter 3003 EXTERNAL FAULT 1.
15	EXTERNAL FLT 2	Digital input defined to report second external fault is active. See parameter 3004 EXTERNAL FAULT 2.

Fault Code	Fault Name In Panel	Description and Recommended Corrective Action
16	EARTH FAULT	Possible ground fault detected in the motor or motor cables. The drive monitors for ground faults while the drive is running and while the drive is not running. Detection is more sensitive when the drive is not running and can produce false positives. Possible corrections: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check for/correct faults in the input wiring. • Verify that motor cable does not exceed maximum specified length. • A delta grounded input power supply and motor cables with high capacitance may result in erroneous error reports during non-running tests. To disable response to fault monitoring when the drive is not running, use parameter 3023 WIRING FAULT. To disable response to all ground fault monitoring, use parameter 3017 EARTH FAULT.
17	UNDERLOAD	Motor load is lower than expected. Check for and correct: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disconnected load. • Parameters 3013 UNDERLOAD FUNCTION...3015 UNDERLOAD CURVE.
18	THERM FAIL	Internal fault. The thermistor measuring the internal temperature of the drive is open or shorted. Contact your local ABB sales representative.
19	OPEX LINK	Internal fault. A communication-related problem has been detected on the fiber optic link between the OITF and OINT boards. Contact your local ABB sales representative.
20	OPEX PWR	Internal fault. Low voltage condition detected on OINT power supply. Contact your local ABB sales representative.
21	CURR MEAS	Internal fault. Current measurement is out of range. Contact your local ABB sales representative.
22	SUPPLY PHASE	Ripple voltage in the DC link is too high. Check for and correct: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Missing mains phase. • Blown fuse.
23	ENCODER ERR	Not used (Available only with encoder and parameter group 50).
23	ENCODER ERR	The drive is not detecting a valid encoder signal. Check for and correct: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Encoder presence and proper connection (reverse wired, loose connection, or short circuit). • Voltage logic levels are outside of the specified range. • A working and properly connected Pulse Encoder Interface Module, OTAC-01. • Wrong value entered in parameter 5001 PULSE NR. A wrong value will only be detected if the error is such that the calculated slip is greater than 4 times the rated slip of the motor. • Encoder is not being used, but parameter 5002 ENCODER ENABLE = 1 (ENABLED).
24	OVERSPEED	Motor speed is greater than 120% of the larger (in magnitude) of 2001 MINIMUM SPEED or 2002 MAXIMUM SPEED. Check for and correct: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Parameter settings for 2001 and 2002. • Adequacy of motor braking torque. • Applicability of torque control. • Brake chopper and resistor.
25	RESERVED	Not used as of the publication of this manual.
26	DRIVE ID	Internal fault. Configuration Block Drive ID is not valid. Contact your local ABB sales representative.

Fault Code	Fault Name In Panel	Description and Recommended Corrective Action
27	CONFIG FILE	Internal configuration file has an error. Contact your local ABB sales representative.
28	SERIAL 1 ERR	Fieldbus communication has timed out. Check for and correct: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fault setup (3018 COMM FAULT FUNC and 3019 COMM FAULT TIME). • Communication settings (Group 51 or 53 as appropriate). • Poor connections and/or noise on line.
29	EFB CONFIG FILE	Error in reading the configuration file for the embedded fieldbus.
30	FORCE TRIP	Fault trip forced by the fieldbus. See the fieldbus User's Manual.
31	EFB 1	Fault code reserved for the embedded fieldbus (EFB) protocol application. These codes are not used as of the publication of this manual.
32	EFB 2	
33	EFB 3	
34	MOTOR PHASE	Fault in the motor circuit. One of the motor phases is lost. Check for and correct: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Motor fault. • Motor cable fault. • Thermal relay fault (if used). • Internal fault.
35	OUTPUT WIRING	Possible power wiring error detected. When the drive is not running it monitors for an improper connection between the drive input power and the drive output. Check for and correct: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Proper input wiring – line voltages NOT connected to drive output. • The fault can be erroneously declared if the input power is a delta grounded system and motor cable capacitance is large. This fault can be disabled using parameter 3023 WIRING FAULT.
36	INCOMP SWTYPE	The drive cannot use the software. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Internal Fault. • The loaded software is not compatible with the drive. • Call support representative.
37	CB OVERTEMP	Drive control board is overheated. Check for and correct: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Excessive ambient temperatures • Fan failure. • Obstructions in the air flow.
101	SERF CORRUPT	Error internal to the drive. Contact your local ABB sales representative and report the error number.
102	RESERVED	
103	SERF MACRO	
104	RESERVED	
105	RESERVED	

Fault Code	Fault Name In Panel	Description and Recommended Corrective Action
201	DSP T1 OVERLOAD	Error in the system. Contact your local ABB sales representative and report the error number.
202	DSP T2 OVERLOAD	
203	DSP T3 OVERLOAD	
204	DSP STACK ERROR	
205	RESERVED (obsolete)	
206	OMIO ID ERROR	
207	EFB LOAD ERR	
1000	PAR HZRPM LIMITS	<p>Parameter values are inconsistent. Check for any of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 2001 MINIMUM SPEED > 2002 MAXIMUM SPEED. • 2007 MINIMUM FREQ > 2008 MAXIMUM FREQ. • 2001 MINIMUM SPEED / 9908 MOTOR NOM SPEED is outside proper range (> 50) • 2002 MAXIMUM SPEED / 9908 MOTOR NOM SPEED is outside proper range (> 50) • 2007 MINIMUM FREQ / 9907 MOTOR NOM FREQ is outside proper range (> 50) • 2008 MAXIMUM FREQ / 9907 MOTOR NOM FREQ is outside proper range (> 50)
1001	PAR PFAREFNG	<p>Parameter values are inconsistent. Check for the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 2007 MINIMUM FREQ is negative, when 8123 PFA ENABLE is active.
1002	RESERVED (Obsolete)	
1003	PAR AI SCALE	<p>Parameter values are inconsistent. Check for any of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1301 AI 1 MIN > 1302 AI 1 MAX. • 1304 AI 2 MIN > 1305 AI 2 MAX.
1004	PAR AO SCALE	<p>Parameter values are inconsistent. Check for any of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1504 AO 1 MIN > 1505 AO 1 MAX. • 1510 AO 2 MIN > 1511 AO 2 MAX.
1005	PAR PCU 2	<p>Parameter values for power control are inconsistent: Improper motor nominal kVA or motor nominal power. Check for the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • $1.1 \leq (9906 \text{ MOTOR NOM CURR} * 9905 \text{ MOTOR NOM VOLT} * 1.73 / P_N) \leq 3.0$ • Where: $P_N = 1000 * 9909 \text{ MOTOR NOM POWER}$ (if units are kW) or $P_N = 746 * 9909 \text{ MOTOR NOM POWER}$ (if units are HP, e.g. in US)
1006	EXT ROMISSING	<p>Parameter values are inconsistent. Check for the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Extension relay module not connected and • 1410...1412 RELAY OUTPUTS 4...6 have non-zero values.
1007	PAR FBUSMISSING	<p>Parameter values are inconsistent. Check for and correct:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A parameter is set for fieldbus control (e.g. 1001 EXT1 COMMANDS = 10 (COMM)), but 9802 COMM PROT SEL = 0.
1008	PAR PFAWOSCALAR	<p>Parameter values are inconsistent – 9904 MOTOR CTRL MODE must be = 3 (SCALAR: SPEED), when 8123 PFA ENABLE is activated.</p>

Fault Code	Fault Name In Panel	Description and Recommended Corrective Action
1009	PAR PCU1	Parameter values for power control are inconsistent: Improper motor nominal frequency or speed. Check for both of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> $1 \leq (60 * 9907 \text{ MOTOR NOM FREQ} / 9908 \text{ MOTOR NOM SPEED}) \leq 16$ $0.8 \leq 9908 \text{ MOTOR NOM SPEED} / (120 * 9907 \text{ MOTOR NOM FREQ} / \text{Motor Poles}) \leq 0.992$
1010	PAR PFA OVERRIDE	Both the override mode and PFA are activated at the same time. These modes are mutually incompatible, because PFA interlocks cannot be observed in the override mode.
1011	PAR OVERRIDE PARS	Override is enabled, but parameters are incompatible. Verify that 1701 is not zero, and (depending on 9904 value) 1702 or 1703 is not zero.
1012	PAR PFC IO 1	IO configuration is not complete – not enough relays are parameterized to PFC. Or, a conflict exists between Group 14, parameter 8117, NR OF AUX MOT, and parameter 8118, AUTOCHNG INTERV.
1013	PAR PFC IO 2	IO configuration is not complete – the actual number of PFC motors (parameter 8127, MOTORS) does not match the PFC motors in Group 14 and parameter 8118 AUTOCHNG INTERV.
1014	PAR PFC IO 3	IO configuration is not complete – the drive is unable to allocate a digital input (interlock) for each PFC motor (parameters 8120 INTERLOCKS and 8127 MOTORS).

Fault Resetting

The ACH550 can be configured to automatically reset certain faults. Refer to parameter Group 31: Automatic Reset.



Warning! If an external source for start command is selected and it is active, the ACH550 may start immediately after fault reset.

Flashing Red LED

To reset the drive for faults indicated by a flashing red LED:

- Turn off the power for 5 minutes.

Red LED

To reset the drive for faults indicated by a red LED (on, not flashing), correct the problem and do one of the following:

- From the control panel, press RESET
- Turn off the power for 5 minutes.

Depending on the value of 1604, FAULT RESET SELECT, the following could also be used to reset the drive:

- Digital input
- Serial communication

When the fault has been corrected, the motor can be started.

History

For reference, the last three fault codes are stored into parameters 0401, 0412, 0413. For the most recent fault (identified by parameter 0401), the drive stores additional data (in parameters 0402...0411) to aid in troubleshooting a problem. For example, parameter 0404 stores the motor speed at the time of the fault.

To clear the fault history (all of the Group 04, Fault History parameters):

1. Using the control panel in Parameters mode, select parameter 0401.
2. Press EDIT.
3. Press UP and Down simultaneously.
4. Press SAVE.

Correcting Alarms

The recommended corrective action for alarms is:

- Determine if the Alarm requires any corrective action (action is not always required).
- Use "Alarm Listing" below to find and address the root cause of the problem.

Alarm Listing

The following table lists the alarms by code number and describes each.

Alarm Code	Display	Description
2001	OVERCURRENT	Current limiting controller is active. Check for and correct: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Excessive motor load. • Insufficient acceleration time (parameters 2202 ACCELER TIME 1 and 2205 ACCELER TIME 2). • Faulty motor, motor cables or connections.
2002	OVERVOLTAGE	Over voltage controller is active. Check for and correct: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Static or transient overvoltages in the input power supply. • Insufficient deceleration time (parameters 2203 DECELER TIME 1 and 2206 DECELER TIME 2).
2003	UNDERVOLTAGE	Under voltage controller is active. Check for and correct: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Undervoltage on mains.
2004	DIR LOCK	The change in direction being attempted is not allowed. Either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Do not attempt to change the direction of motor rotation, or • Change parameter 1003 DIRECTION to allow direction change (if reverse operation is safe).
2005	I/O COMM	Fieldbus communication has timed out. Check for and correct: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fault setup (3018 COMM FAULT FUNC and 3019 COMM FAULT TIME). • Communication settings (Group 51 or 53 as appropriate). • Poor connections and/or noise on line.

Alarm Code	Display	Description
2006	AI1 LOSS	Analog input 1 is lost, or value is less than the minimum setting. Check: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Input source and connections • Parameter that sets the minimum (3021) • Parameter that sets the Alarm/Fault operation (3001)
2007	AI2 LOSS	Analog input 2 is lost, or value is less than the minimum setting. Check: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Input source and connections • Parameter that sets the minimum (3022) • Parameter that sets the Alarm/Fault operation (3001)
2008	PANEL LOSS	Panel communication is lost and either: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Drive is in local control mode (the control panel displays LOC), or • Drive is in remote control mode (REM) and is parameterized to accept start/stop, direction or reference from the control panel. To correct check: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Communication lines and connections • Parameter 3002 PANEL LOSS. • Parameters in groups 10 COMMAND INPUTS and 11 REFERENCE SELECT (if drive operation is REM).
2009	DEVICE OVERTEMP	Drive heatsink is hot. This alarm warns that a DEVICE OVERTEMP fault may be near. R1...R4 & R7/R8: 100 °C (212 °F) R5/R6: 110 °C (230 °F) Check for and correct: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fan failure. • Obstructions in the air flow. • Dirt or dust coating on the heat sink. • Excessive ambient temperature. • Excessive motor load.
2010	MOT OVERTEMP	Motor is hot, based on either the drive's estimate or on temperature feedback. This alarm warns that a Motor Underload fault trip may be near. Check: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check for overloaded motor. • Adjust the parameters used for the estimate (3005...3009). • Check the temperature sensors and Group 35 parameters.
2011	UNDERLOAD	Motor load is lower than expected. This alarm warns that a Motor Underload fault trip may be near. Check: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Motor and drive ratings match (motor is NOT undersized for the drive) • Settings on parameters 3013 to 3015
2012	MOTOR STALL	Motor is operating in the stall region. This alarm warns that a Motor Stall fault trip may be near.
2013 (note 1)	AUTORESET	This alarm warns that the drive is about to perform an automatic fault reset, which may start the motor. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To control automatic reset, use parameter group 31 AUTOMATIC RESET.
2014 (note 1)	AUTOCHANGE	This alarm warns that the PFA autochange function is active. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To control PFA, use parameter group 81 PFA CONTROL

Alarm Code	Display	Description
2015	PFA INTERLOCK	This alarm warns that the PFA interlocks are active, which means that the drive cannot start the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Any motor (when Autochange is used), • The speed regulated motor (when Autochange is not used).
2016	Reserved	
2017	OFF BUTTON	Note 1.
2018 (note 1)	PID SLEEP	This alarm warns that the PID sleep function is active, which means that the motor could accelerate when the PID sleep function ends. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To control PID sleep, use parameters 4022...4026 or 4122...4126.
2019	ID RUN	Performing ID run.
2020	RESERVED	
2021	START ENABLE 1 MISSING	This alarm warns that the Start Enable 1 signal is missing. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To control Start Enable 1 function, use parameter 1608. To correct, check: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Digital input configuration. • Communication settings.
2022	START ENABLE 2 MISSING	This alarm warns that the Start Enable 2 signal is missing. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To control Start Enable 2 function, use parameter 1609. To correct, check: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Digital input configuration. • Communication settings.
2023	EMERGENCY STOP	Emergency stop activated.
2024	ENCODER ERROR	The drive is not detecting a valid encoder signal. Check for and correct: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Encoder presence and proper connection (reverse wired, loose connection, or short circuit). • Voltage logic levels are outside of the specified range. • A working and properly connected Pulse Encoder Interface Module, OTAC-01. • Wrong value entered in parameter 5001 PULSE NR. A wrong value will only be detected if the error is such that the calculated slip is greater than 4 times the rated slip of the motor. • Encoder is not being used, but parameter 5002 ENCODER ENABLE = 1 (ENABLED).
2025	FIRST START	Signals that a the drive is performing a First Start evaluation of motor characteristics. This is normal the first time the motor is run after motor parameters are entered or changed. See parameter 9910 (MOTOR ID RUN) for a description of motor models.

Note 1. Even when the relay output is configured to indicate alarm conditions (e.g. parameter 1401 RELAY OUTPUT 1 = 5 (ALARM) or 16 (FLT/ALARM)), this alarm is not indicated by a relay output.

Maintenance



Warning! Read "Safety" on page 3 before performing any maintenance on the equipment. Ignoring the safety instructions can cause injury or death.

Maintenance Intervals

If installed in an appropriate environment, the drive requires very little maintenance. This table lists the routine maintenance intervals recommended by ABB.

Maintenance	Application	Interval	Instruction
Check/replace R7/R8 enclosure inlet air filter	R7/R8 UL type 12 enclosures	Check every 3 months. Replace as needed.	"Frame Sizes R7/R8 – UL type 12 Enclosure Inlet Air Filter" on page 258
Check/replace R7/R8 enclosure exhaust air filter.	R7/R8 UL type 12 enclosures	Check every 6 months. Replace as needed.	"Frame Sizes R7/R8 – UL type 12 Enclosure Exhaust Filters" on page 259
Check and clean heatsink.	All	Depends on the dustiness of the environment (every 6...12 months)	See "Heatsink" on page 254.
Replace drive module fan.	All	Every six years	See "Drive Module Fan Replacement" on page 255.
Replace drive module fan.	UL type 12 enclosures	Every three years.	See "Enclosure Fan Replacement – UL Type 12 Enclosures" on page 256.
Change capacitor.	Frame sizes R5 and R6	Every ten years	See "Capacitors" on page 261.
Replace battery in the Assistant control panel	All	Every ten years	See "Control Panel" on page 261.

Heatsink

The heatsink fins accumulate dust from the cooling air. Since a dusty heatsink is less efficient at cooling the drive, overtemperature faults become more likely. In a "normal" environment (not dusty, not clean) check the heatsink annually, in a dusty environment check more often.

Clean the heatsink as follows (when necessary):

1. Remove power from drive.
2. Remove the cooling fan (see section "Drive Module Fan Replacement" on page 255).
3. Blow clean compressed air (not humid) from bottom to top and simultaneously use a vacuum cleaner at the air outlet to trap the dust.

Note: If there is a risk of the dust entering adjoining equipment, perform the cleaning in another room.

4. Replace the cooling fan.
5. Restore power.

Drive Module Fan Replacement

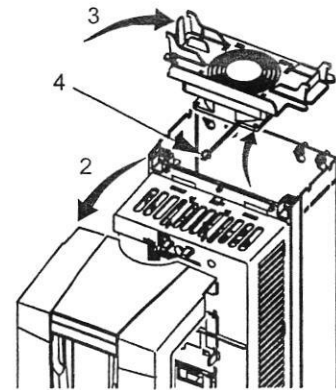
The drive module fan cools the heatsink. Fan failure can be predicted by the increasing noise from fan bearings and the gradual rise in the heatsink temperature in spite of heatsink cleaning. If the drive is operated in a critical part of a process, fan replacement is recommended once these symptoms start appearing. Replacement fans are available from ABB. Do not use other than ABB specified spare parts.

To monitor the running time of the cooling fan, see "Group 29: Maintenance Trig" on page 105.

Frame Sizes R1...R4

To replace the fan:

1. Remove power from drive.
2. Remove drive cover.
3. For Frame Size:
 - R1, R2: Press together the retaining clips on the fan cover sides, and lift.
 - R3, R4: Press in on the lever located on the left side of the fan mount, and rotate the fan up and out.
4. Disconnect the fan cable.
5. Install the fan in reverse order.
6. Restore power.



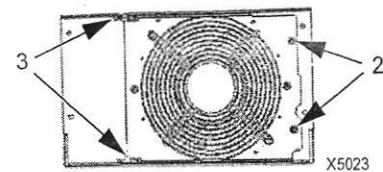
X0021

Frame Sizes R5 and R6

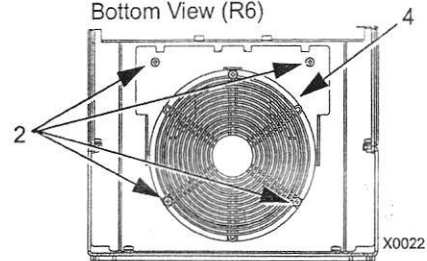
To replace the fan:

1. Remove power from drive.
2. Remove the screws attaching the fan.
3. Remove the fan:
 - R5: Swing the fan out on its hinges.
 - R6: Pull the fan out.
4. Disconnect the fan cable.
5. Install the fan in reverse order.
6. Restore power.

Bottom View (R5)



Bottom View (R6)

**Frame Sizes R7 and R8**

Refer to the installation instructions supplied with the fan kit.

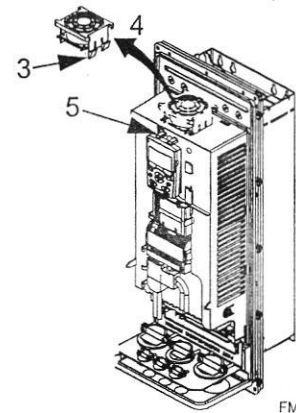
Enclosure Fan Replacement – UL Type 12 Enclosures

UL type 12 enclosures include an additional fan (or fans) to move air through the enclosure.

Frame Sizes R1 to R4

To replace the internal enclosure fan in frame sizes R1 to R4:

1. Remove power from drive.
2. Remove the front cover.
3. The housing that holds the fan in place has barbed retaining clips at each corner. Press all four clips toward the center to release the barbs.
4. When the clips/barbs are free, pull the housing up to remove from the drive.
5. Disconnect the fan cable.
6. Install the fan in reverse order, noting that:
 - The fan air flow is up (refer to arrow on fan).
 - The fan wire harness is toward the front.
 - The notched housing barb is located in the right-rear corner.
 - The fan cable connects just forward of the fan at the top of the drive.

**Frame Sizes R5 and R6**

To replace the internal enclosure fan in frame sizes R5 or R6:

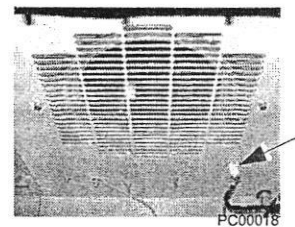
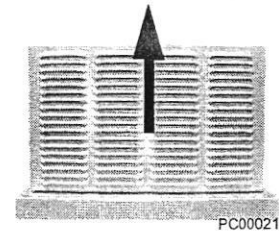
- Remove power from drive.

- Remove the front cover.
- Lift the fan out and disconnect the cable.
- Install the fan in reverse order.
- Restore power.

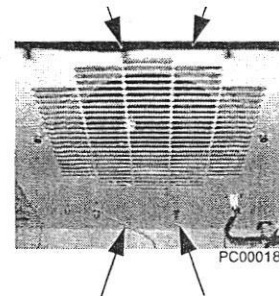
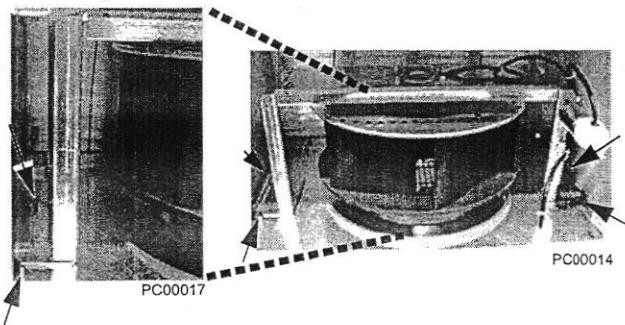
Frame Sizes R7/R8 – UL type 12 Enclosures

The enclosure fan is located in the exhaust box on top of the UL type 12 enclosure.

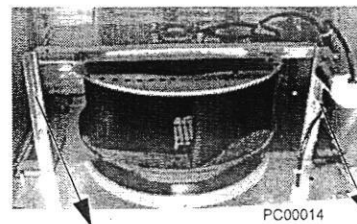
1. Remove the left and right filter frames of the exhaust fan box by lifting them upwards.
2. Disconnect the fan's electrical connector from the cabinet roof (top right Inside the cabinet).



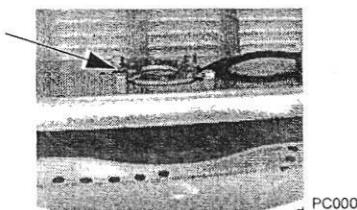
3. Undo the four fastening screws at the corners of the fan frame. The screws are through bolts with nuts on the inside of the cabinet. (Do not drop the hardware into the drive).



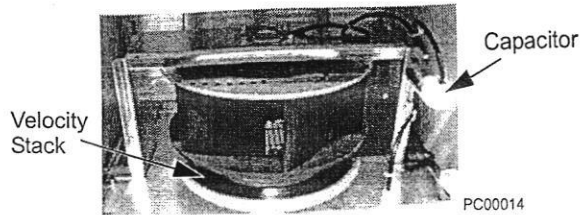
4. Remove the fan and fan frame as one unit.



5. Disconnect the fan wiring and capacitor from the fan frame. Then remove the four screws attaching the fan to the fan frame. Remove the old fan.



6. Install the new fan and capacitor with the replacement part for ABB in the reverse order of the above. Ensure the fan is centered on the velocity stack and rotates freely.

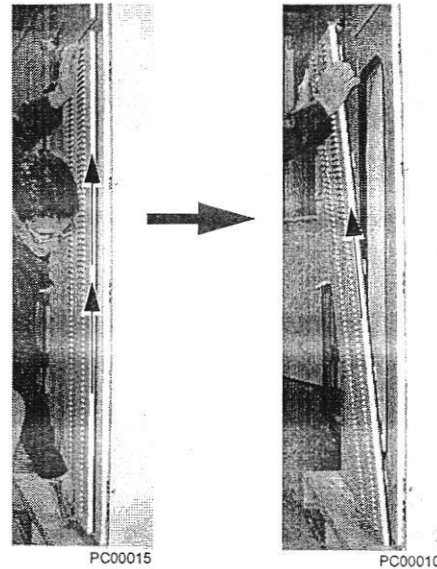


Enclosure Air Filter Replacement – UL Type 12 Enclosures

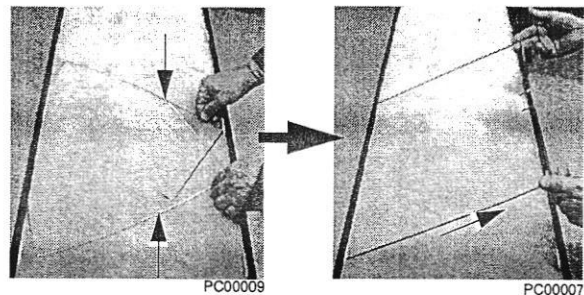
Frame Sizes R7/R8 – UL type 12 Enclosure Inlet Air Filter

The inlet air filter for the R7/R8 UL type 12 enclosure is located in the enclosure front door.

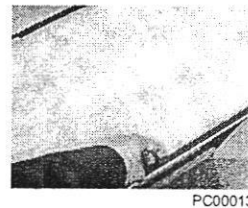
1. While holding the top of the filter frame, pull up on the bottom of the frame. The filter frame will slide up approximately 3/4 inch and can then safely removed by tilting away from the cabinet and lifting up.



2. Lay the filter frame on a flat work surface. Remove the 3 retaining brackets by squeezing the tabbed corners in towards the middle of each bracket until the bracket clears the filter frame. Save these brackets for replacement. Remove and inspect the filter.

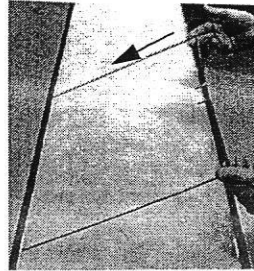


3. Install the replacement filter. Be sure to tuck the filter into the groove around the entire filter frame. This is very important for proper installation.

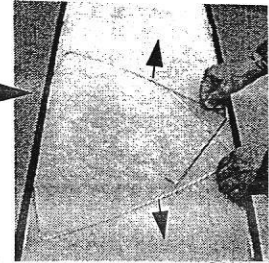


4. Reinstall the 3 filter restraining brackets. These will prevent the filter from being pulled out of the filter frame.

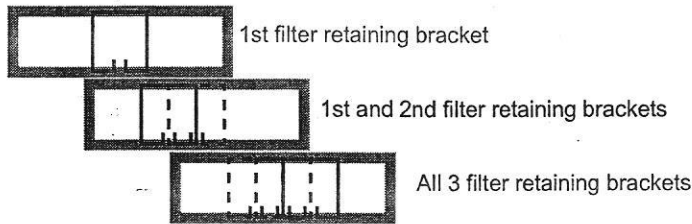
- Install the center bracket first.
- Install the 2nd bracket overlapping the center bracket by $\frac{1}{2}$ to the left.
- Install the 3rd bracket overlapping the center bracket by $\frac{1}{2}$ to the right.



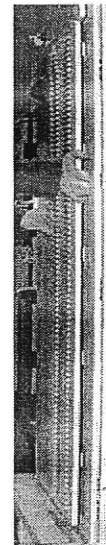
PC00007



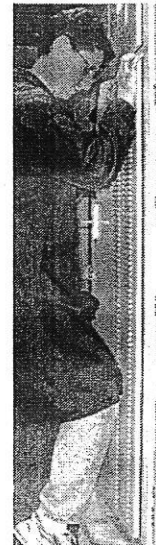
PC00009



5. Install the filter frame back to the cabinet door. Carefully align the mounting hooks to the slots in the cabinet door. The hooks should be pointing down. Press in at the center of the filter frame with your knee and gently press down with your hands at the top of the frame. The filter frame will slide down approximately $\frac{3}{4}$ inch and should be sealed securely to the door around the entire filter frame.



PC00006



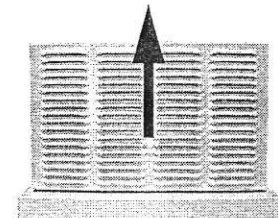
PC00008

Frame Sizes R7/R8 – UL type 12 Enclosure Exhaust Filters

The exhaust filters in the R7/R8 UL type 12 enclosure are located in the exhaust box at the top of the enclosure.

There are 2 filter frames attached to the exhaust box.

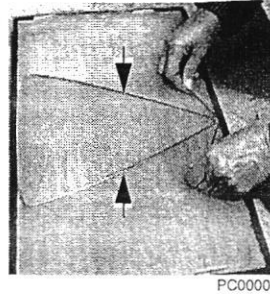
1. Remove each filter frame:
 - Lift up on the filter frame until it slides approximately $\frac{3}{4}$ inch.
 - Pull away from the exhaust box to remove.



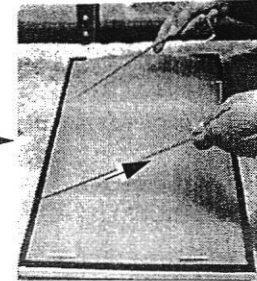
PC00021

2. For each filter frame, remove the wire retainers that hold the filters in place:

- Lay the filter frames on a flat work surface.
- The wire retainers have a square "U" shape. Remove by squeezing the open end of the "U" towards the middle of the "square" until the retainer top (open end of "U") clears the filter frame.
- Save the retainers for reinstallation.



PC00001

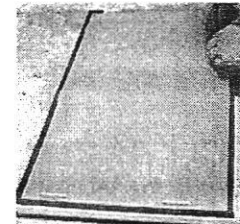


PC00019

3. Remove and inspect the filter.
4. Install clean filters.

Note! When installing DUSTLOK® filter media, the white side must face to outside of the cabinet, and the orange side faces in.

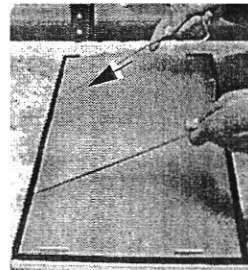
Be sure to tuck the filter edges into the groove around the entire filter frame. This detail is very important for proper operation.



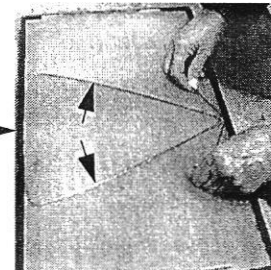
PC00022

5. Reinstall the filter restrainers.

- Insert the base of a retainer (bottom of "U" shape) into a filter frame channel.
- Squeeze the open end of the "U" until it clears the filter frame.
- Seat the open end of the "U" in the filter frame channel.
- Release the retainer to its relaxed, square shape.



PC00019



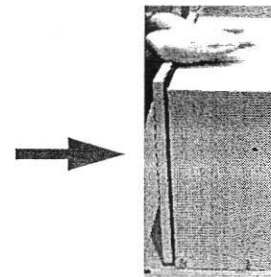
PC00000

6. Install each filter frame to the bonnet on top of the cabinet.

- Carefully align the frame's mounting hooks with the slots in the bonnet. (The hooks should be pointing down.)
- Press down at the top of the filter frame. (The filter frame slides down approximately 3/4 inch).
- Check all around the filter frame for a secure seal to the exhaust box.



PC00012



PC00011

Capacitors

The drive intermediate circuit employs several electrolytic capacitors. Their life span is from 35,000...90,000 hours depending on drive loading and ambient temperature. Capacitor life can be prolonged by lowering the ambient temperature.

It is not possible to predict a capacitor failure. Capacitor failure is usually followed by a input power fuse failure or a fault trip. Contact ABB if capacitor failure is suspected. Replacements for frame size R5 and R6 are available from ABB. Do not use other than ABB specified spare parts.

Control Panel

Cleaning

Use a soft damp cloth to clean the control panel. Avoid harsh cleaners which could scratch the display window.

Battery

A battery is only used in Assistant control panels that have the clock function available and enabled. The battery keeps the clock operating in memory during power interruptions.

The expected life for the battery is greater than ten years. To remove the battery, use a coin to rotate the battery holder on the back of the control panel. Replace the battery with type CR2032.

Note! The battery is NOT required for any control panel or drive function, except the clock.

Technical Data

Ratings

By type code, the table below provides ratings for the ACH550 adjustable speed AC drive, including:

- IEC ratings
- NEMA ratings (shaded columns)
- Frame size

Ratings, 208...240 Volt Drives

Abbreviated column headers are described in "Symbols" on page 264.

Type Code	Valid up to 40°C (104 °F)		Frame Size
	I_{2N} A	P_N HP	
ACH550-xx-see below			
Three-phase supply voltage, 208...240 V			
-04A6-2	4.6	1.0	R1
-06A6-2	6.6	1.5	R1
-07A5-2	7.5	2.0	R1
-012A-2	11.8	3.0	R1
-017A-2	16.7	5.0	R1
-024A-2	24.2	7.5	R2
-031A-2	30.8	10.0	R2
-046A-2	46.2	15.0	R3
-059A-2	59.4	20.0	R3
-075A-2	74.8	25.0	R4
-088A-2	88.0	30.0	R4
-114A-2	114	40.0	R4
-143A-2	143	50.0	R6
-178A-2	178	60.0	R6
-221A-2	221	75.0	R6
-248A-2	248	100	R6

Ratings, 380...480 Volt Drives

Abbreviated column headers are described in "Symbols" on page 264.

Type Code	Valid up to 40°C (104 °F)		Frame Size
	I_{2N} A	P_N HP	
ACH550-xx-see below			
Three-phase supply voltage, 380...480 V			
-03A3-4	3.3	1.5	R1
-04A1-4	4.1	2	R1
-06A9-4	6.9	3	R1
-08A8-4	8.8	5	R1
-012A-4	11.9	7.5	R1
-015A-4	15.4	10	R2
-023A-4	23	15	R2
-031A-4	31	20	R3
-038A-4	38	25	R3
-045A-4 (Note 1)	44	30	R3
-044A-4 (Note 1)	44	30	R4
-059A-4	59	40	R4
-072A-4	72	50	R4
-078A-4 (Note 1)	77	60	R4
-097A-4 (Note 1)	96	75	R4
-077A-4 (Note 1)	77	60	R5
-096A-4 (Note 1)	96	75	R5
-125A-4 (Note 1)	124	100	R5
-124A-4 (Note 1)	124	100	R6
-157A-4	157	125	R6
-180A-4	180	150	R6
-245A-4	245	200	R7
-316A-4	316	250	R8
-368A-4	368	300	R8
-414A-4	414	350	R8
-486A-4	486	400	R8
-526A-4	526	450	R8
-602A-4	602	500	R8
-645A-4	645	550	R8

- The ACH550-xx-045A-4 (an R3 frame size) replaces the ACH550-xx-044A-4, similarly, ACH550-xx-078A-4 (an R4 frame size) replaces the ACH550-xx-077A-4, the ACH550-xx-097A-4 (an R4 frame size) replaces the ACH550-xx-096A-4, and the ACH550-xx-124A-4 (an R4 frame size) replaces the ACH550-xx-124A-4

Ratings, 500...600 Volt Drives

Abbreviated column headers are described in "Symbols" on page 264.

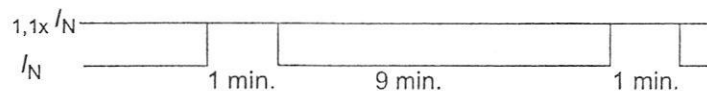
Type Code	Normal Use		Frame Size
ACH550-xx- see below	I_{2N} A	P_N HP	
Three-phase supply voltage, 500...600 V			
-02A7-6	2.7	2	R2
-03A9-6	3.9	3	R2
-06A1-6	6.1	5	R2
-09A0-6	9	7.5	R2
-011A-6	11	10	R2
-017A-6	17	15	R2
-022A-6	22	20	R3
-027A-6	27	25	R3
-032A-6	32	30	R4
-041A-6	41	40	R4
-052A-6	52	50	R4
-062A-6	62	60	R4
-077A-6	77	75	R6
-099A-6	99	100	R6
-125A-6	125	125	R6
-144A-6	144	150	R6

Symbols

Typical ratings:

Normal use (10% overload capability)

I_{2N} continuous rms current. 10% overload is allowed for one minute in ten minutes.



P_N typical motor power in normal use. The kilowatt power ratings apply to most IEC, 4-pole motors. The Horsepower ratings apply to most 4-pole NEMA motors.

Sizing

The current ratings are the same regardless of the supply voltage within one voltage range. To achieve the rated motor power given in the table, the rated current of the drive must be higher than or equal to the rated motor current.

Note 1: The ratings apply in ambient temperature of 40 °C (104 °F).

Derating

The load capacity (current and power) decreases for certain situations, as defined below. In such situations, where full motor power is required, oversize the drive so that the derated value provides sufficient capacity.

For example, if your application requires 15.4 A of motor current and a 8 kHz switching frequency, calculate the appropriate drive size requirement as follows:

The minimum size required = $15.4 \text{ A} / 0.80 = 19.25 \text{ A}$

Where: 0.80 is the derating for 8 kHz switching frequency (see "Switching Frequency Derating" below).

Referring to I_{2N} in the ratings tables (page 262), the following drives exceed the I_{2N} requirement of 19.25 A: ACH550-UH-023A-4, or ACH550-UH-024A-2

Temperature Derating

In the temperature range +40 °C...50 °C (+104 °F...122 °F) the rated output current is decreased 1% for every 1 °C (1.8 °F) above +40 °C (+104 °F). Calculate the output current by multiplying the current given in the rating table by the derating factor.

Example If the ambient temperature is 50 °C (+122 °F) the derating factor is $100\% - 1\%/^{\circ}\text{C} \times 10^{\circ}\text{C} = 90\%$ or 0.90.

The output current is then $0.90 \times I_{2N}$.

Altitude Derating

In altitudes from 1000...4000 m (3300...13,200 ft) above sea level, the derating is 1% for every 100 m (330 ft). If the installation site is higher than 2000 m (6600 ft) above sea level, please contact your local ABB distributor or office for further information.

Single Phase Supply Derating

For 208...240 Volt series drives, a single phase supply can be used. In that case, the derating is 50%.

Switching Frequency Derating

When using the 8 kHz switching frequency (parameter 2606) is used, either:

- Derate P_N and I_{2N} to 80% or
- Set parameter 2607 SW FREQ CTRL = 1 (ON) which allows the drive to reduce the switching frequency if/when the drive's internal temperature exceeds 90 °C. See the parameter description for 2607 for details.

When using the 12 kHz switching frequency (parameter 2606) is used, either:

- Derate:
 - P_N and I_{2N} to 65% (to 50% for 600 V R4 frame sizes, that is for ACH550-xx-032A-6...ACH550-xx-062A-6), and
 - Ambient temperature maximum to 30 °C (86 °F), or
- Set parameter 2607 SW FREQ CTRL = 1 (ON) which allows the drive to reduce the switching frequency if/when the drive's internal temperature exceeds 80 °C. See the parameter description for 2607 for details.

Input Power Connections



Warning! Do not operate the drive outside the nominal input line voltage range. Over-voltage can result in permanent damage to the drive.

Input Power Specifications

Input Power Connection Specifications	
Voltage (U_1)	208/220/230/240 VAC 3-phase (or 1-phase) -15%...+10% for ACH550-xx-xxxx-2 units. 400/415/440/460/480 VAC 3-phase -15%...+10% for ACH550-xx-xxxx-4 units. 500/525/575/600 VAC 3-phase -15%...+10% for ACH550-xx-xxxx-6 units.
Prospective short-circuit current (IEC 629)	Maximum allowed prospective short-circuit current in the supply is 100 kA in a second providing that the drive's input power is protected with appropriate fuses. US: 100,000 AIC.
Frequency	48...63 Hz
Imbalance	Max. \pm 3% of nominal phase to phase input voltage
Fundamental power factor ($\cos \phi$)	0.98 (at nominal load)
Cable Temperature Rating	90 °C (194 °F) rating minimum.

Branch Circuit Protection

The ACH550 does not include a disconnect device. A means to disconnect input power must be installed between the AC power source and the ACH550. This branch circuit protection must:

- Be sized to conform to applicable safety regulations, including, but not limited to, both National and local electrical codes.
- Be locked in the open position during installation and maintenance work.

The disconnect device must not be used to control the motor. Instead use the control panel, or commands to the I/O terminals for motor control.

Fuses

The following tables provide fuse recommendations for short circuit protection on the drive's input power. These recommendations are not requirements if branch circuit protection is otherwise provided per NEC. UL508A manufacturers are not required to use the recommended fuses for the purpose of UL listing a panel that includes the ACH550.

208...240 Volt, Fuses

ACH550-UH- see below	Input Current A	Input Fuses		
		IEC269 gG (A)	UL Class T (A)	Bussmann Type
-04A6-2	4.6	10	10	JJS-10
-06A6-2	6.6			
-07A5-2	7.5			
-012A-2	11.8	16	15	JJS-15
-017A-2	16.7	25	25	JJS-25
-024A-2	24.2		30	JJS-30
-031A-2	30.8	40	40	JJS-40
-046A-2	46.2	63	60	JJS-60
-059A-2	59.4		80	JJS-80
-075A-2	74.8	80	100	JJS-100
-088A-2	88.0	100	110	JJS-110
-114A-2	114	125	150	JJS-150
-143A-2	143	200	200	JJS-200
-178A-2	178	250	250	JJS-250
-221A-2	221	315	300	JJS-300
-248A-2	248		350	JJS-350

380...480 Volt, Fuses

ACH550-UH- see below	Input Current (A)	Input Fuses		
		IEC269 gG (A)	UL Class T (A)	Bussmann Type
-03A3-4	3.3	10	10	JJS-10
-04A1-4	4.1			
-06A9-4	6.9			
-08A8-4	8.8	16	15	JJS-15
-012A-4	11.9		20	JJS-20
-015A-4	15.4			
-023A-4	23	25	30	JJS-30
-031A-4	31	35	40	JJS-40
-038A-4	38	50	50	JJS-50
-044A-4	44		60	JJS-60
-045A-4	44			
-059A-4	59	63	80	JJS-80
-072A-4	72	80	90	JJS-90
-077A-4	77		100	JJS-100
-078A-4	77			
-096A-4	96	125	125	JJS-125
-097A-4	96			

ACH550-UH- see below	Input Current (A)	Input Fuses		
		IEC269 gG (A)	UL Class T (A)	Bussmann Type
-124A-4	124	160	175	JJS-175
-125A-4	124			
-157A-4	157	200	200	JJS-200
-180A-4	180	250	250	JJS-250
-245A-4	245	Does Not Apply	400	JJS-400
-316A-4	316		400	JJS-400
-368A-4	368		400	JJS-400
-414A-4	414		600	JJS-600
-486A-4	486		600	JJS-600
-526A-4	526		800	JJS-800
-602A-4	602		800	JJS-800
-645A-4	645		800	JJS-800

Fuses, 500...600 Volt, Fuses

ACH550-xx- see below	Input Current A	Mains Fuses		
		IEC269 gG (A)	UL Class T (A)	Bussmann Type
-02A7-6	2.7	10	10	JJS-10
-03A9-6	3.9			
-06A1-6	6.1			
-09A0-6	9	16	15	JJS-15
-011A-6	11	25	25	JJS-25
-017A-6	17			
-022A-6	22			
-027A-6	27	35	40	JJS-40
-032A-6	32	50	50	JJS-50
-041A-6	41			
-052A-6	52			
-062A-6	62	80	80	JJS-80
-077A-6	77	125	100	JJS-100
-099A-6	99		150	JJS-150
-125A-6	125		160	JJS-175
-144A-6	144	200	200	JJS-200

Emergency Stop Devices

The overall design of the installation must include emergency stop devices and any other safety equipment that may be needed. Pressing STOP on the drive's control panel does NOT:

- Generate an emergency stop of the motor.
- Separate the drive from dangerous potential.

Input Power Cables/ Wiring

Input wiring can be either:

- A four conductor cable (three phases and ground/protective earth) routed through conduit.
- Four insulated conductors routed through conduit.

Size wiring according to local safety regulations, appropriate input voltage and the drive's load current. In any case, the conductor must be less than the maximum limit defined by the terminal size (see "Drive's Power Connection Terminals" on page 272).

The table below lists copper and aluminum cable types for different load currents. These recommendations apply only for the conditions listed at the top of the table.

IEC				NEC	
Based on: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • EN 60204-1 and IEC 60364-5-2/2001 • PVC insulation • 30 °C (86 °F) ambient temperature • 70 °C (158 °F) surface temperature • Cables with concentric copper shield • Not more than nine cables laid on cable ladder side by side. 				Based on: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • NEC Table 310-16 for copper wires • 90 °C (194 °F) wire insulation • 40 °C (104 °F) ambient temperature • Not more than three current-carrying conductors in raceway or cable, or earth (directly buried). • Copper cables with concentric copper shield 	
Max Load Current (A)	Cu Cable (mm ²)	Max Load Current (A)	Al Cable (mm ²)	Max Load Current (A)	Cu Wire Size (AWG/kcmil)
14	3x1.5	Do not use aluminum cable with frame sizes R1...R4		22.8	14
20	3x2.5			27.3	12
27	3x4			36.4	10
34	3x6			50.1	8
47	3x10			68.3	6
62	3x16			86.5	4
79	3x25			100	3
98	3x35			91	3x50
119	3x50	117	3x70	137	1
153	3x70	143	3x95	155	1/0
186	3x95	165	3x120	178	2/0
215	3x120	191	3x150	205	3/0
249	3x150	218	3x185	237	4/0
284	3x185	257	3x240	264	250 MCM or 2 x 1
		274	3x (3x50)	291	300 MCM or 2 x 1/0
		285	2x (3x95)	319	350 MCM or 2 x 2/0
				345	400 MCM or 2 x 2/0
				391	500 MCM or 2 x 3/0
				410	2 x 3/0

IEC				NEC	
Based on: • EN 60204-1 and IEC 60364-5-2/2001 • PVC insulation • 30 °C (86 °F) ambient temperature • 70 °C (158 °F) surface temperature • Cables with concentric copper shield • Not more than nine cables laid on cable ladder side by side.				Based on: • NEC Table 310-16 for copper wires • 90 °C (194 °F) wire insulation • 40 °C (104 °F) ambient temperature • Not more than three current-carrying conductors in raceway or cable, or earth (directly buried). • Copper cables with concentric copper shield	
Max Load Current (A)	Cu Cable (mm ²)	Max Load Current (A)	Al Cable (mm ²)	Max Load Current (A)	Cu Wire Size (AWG/kcmil)
				465	2x4/0
				474	2x250
				534	2x300
				615	2x350
				711	2x500

Ground Connections

For personnel safety, proper operation and to reduce electromagnetic emission/pick-up, the drive and the motor must be grounded at the installation site.

- Conductors must be adequately sized as required by safety regulations.
- Power cable shields must be connected to the drive PE terminal in order to meet safety regulations.
- Power cable shields are suitable for use as equipment grounding conductors only when the shield conductors are adequately sized as required by safety regulations.
- In multiple drive installations, do not connect drive terminals in series.

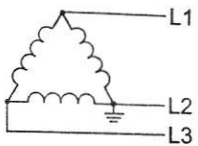
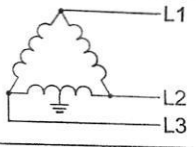
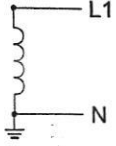
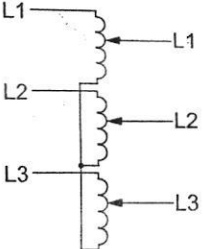
Unsymmetrically Grounded Networks



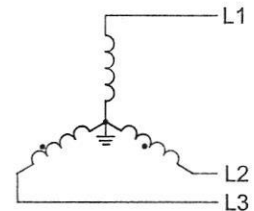
Warning! Do not attempt to install or remove EM1 or EM3 screws while power is applied to the drive's input terminals.

Unsymmetrically grounded networks are defined in the following table. In such networks, the internal connection provided by the EM3 screw (on frame sizes R1...R4 only) must be disconnected by removing EM3. If the grounding configuration of the network is unknown, remove EM3.

Note! ACH550-UH drives are shipped with the screw removed (but included in the conduit box).

Unsymmetrically Grounded Networks – EM3 Must Be Out			
Grounded at the corner of the delta		Grounded at the mid point of a delta leg	
Single phase, grounded at an end point		Three phase "Variac" without solidly grounded neutral	

EM3 (an M4x16 screw) makes an internal ground connection that reduces electro-magnetic emission. Where EMC (electro-magnetic compatibility) is a concern, and the network is symmetrically grounded, EM3 may be installed. For reference, the diagram at right illustrates a symmetrically grounded network.



Floating Networks



Warning! Do not attempt to install or remove EM1, EM3, F1 or F2 screws while power is applied to the drive's input terminals.

For floating networks (also known as IT, ungrounded, or impedance/resistance grounded networks):

- Disconnect the ground connection to the internal RFI filters:
 - Frame sizes R1...R4: Remove the EM1 screw (unit is shipped with EM3 removed, see "Connection Diagrams" on page 17).
 - Frame sizes R5...R6: Remove both the F1 and F2 screws (see page 18).
- Where EMC requirements exist, check for excessive emission propagated to neighboring low voltage networks. In some cases, the natural suppression in transformers and cables is sufficient. If in doubt, use a supply transformer with static screening between the primary and secondary windings.
- Do NOT install an external RFI/EMC filter, such as one of the kits listed in "EN 61800-3 Compliant Motor Cables" on page 277. Using an RFI filter grounds the input power through the filter capacitors, which could be dangerous and could damage the unit.

Drive's Power Connection Terminals

The following table provides specifications for the drive's power connection terminals.

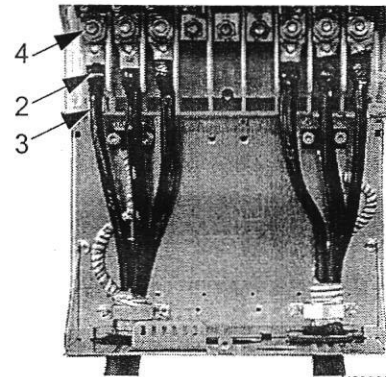
Frame Size	U1, V1, W1 U2, V2, W2 BRK±, UDC± Terminals						Earthing PE Terminal			
	Min. Wire Size		Max. Wire Size		Torque		Max. Wire Size		Torque	
	mm ²	AWG	mm ²	AWG	Nm	lb-ft	mm ²	AWG	Nm	lb-ft
R1 ^{Note 1}	0.75	18	16	6	1.3	1	16	6	1.3	1
R2 ^{Note 1}	0.75	18	16	6	1.3	1	16	6	1.3	1
R3 ^{Note 1}	2.5	14	25	3	2.7	2	25	3	2.7	2
R4 ^{Note 1}	10	8	50	1/0	5.6	4	50	1/0	5.6	4
R5	16	6	70	2/0	15	11	70	2/0	15	11
R6	95 ^{Note 2}	3/0	185	350 MCM	40	30	185	350 MCM	40	30
R7	16	6	185	350 MCM	40	30	Attach appropriate ring lugs to ground wires and mount with, up to five 13/32 bolts.			
R8	16	6	2x240	2x500 MCM	57	42				

1. Do not use aluminum cable with frame sizes R1...R4.
2. See the following section for smaller wire sizes on frame size R6.

Power Terminal Considerations – R6 Frame Size



Warning! For R6 power terminals, if compression lugs are supplied, they can only be used for wire sizes that are 95 mm² (3/0 AWG) or larger. Smaller wires will loosen and may damage the drive, and require ring lugs as described below.



X60002

Ring Lugs

On the R6 frame size, if the cable size used is less than 95 mm² (3/0 AWG) or if no compression lugs are supplied, use ring lugs according to the following procedure.

1. Select appropriate ring lugs from the following table.
2. Attach the supplied terminal lugs to the drive end of the cables.
3. Isolate the ends of the ring lugs with insulating tape or shrink tubing.

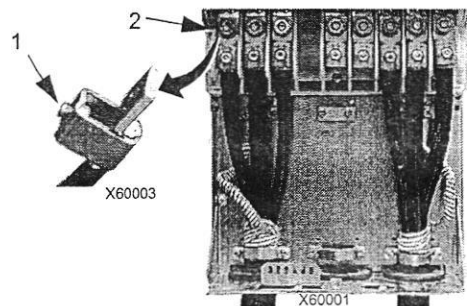
4. Attach terminal lug to the drive.

Wire Size		Manufacturer	Ring Lug	Crimping Tool	No. of Crimps
mm ²	kcmil/ AWG				
16	6	Burndy	YAV6C-L2	MY29-3	1
		IlSCO	CCL-6-38	ILC-10	2
25	4	Burndy	YA4C-L4BOX	MY29-3	1
		IlSCO	CCL-4-38	MT-25	1
35	2	Burndy	YA2C-L4BOX	MY29-3	2
		IlSCO	CRC-2	IDT-12	1
		IlSCO	CCL-2-38	MT-25	1
50	1	Burndy	YA1C-L4BOX	MY29-3	2
		IlSCO	CRA-1-38	IDT-12	1
		IlSCO	CCL-1-38	MT-25	1
		Thomas & Betts	54148	TBM-8	3
55	1/0	Burndy	YA25-L4BOX	MY29-3	2
		IlSCO	CRB-0	IDT-12	1
		IlSCO	CCL-1/0-38	MT-25	1
		Thomas & Betts	54109	TBM-8	3
70	2/0	Burndy	YAL26T38	MY29-3	2
		IlSCO	CRA-2/0	IDT-12	1
		IlSCO	CCL-2/0-38	MT-25	1
		Thomas & Betts	54110	TBM-8	3
95	3/0	Burndy	YAL27T38	MY29-3	2
		IlSCO	CRA-3/0	IDT-12	1
		IlSCO	CCL-3/0-38	MT-25	1
		Thomas & Betts	54111	TBM-8	3
95	3/0	Burndy	YA28R4	MY29-3	2
		IlSCO	CRA-4/0	IDT-12	1
		IlSCO	CCL-4/0-38	MT-25	2
		Thomas & Betts	54112	TBM-8	4

Compression Lugs

Use the following procedure to attach cables if compression lugs are supplied and can be used.

1. Attach the supplied compression lugs to the drive end of the cables.
2. Attach compression lug to the drive.



Motor Connections



Warning! Never connect line power to the drive output terminals: U2, V2 or W2. Line voltage applied to the output can result in permanent damage to the unit. If frequent bypassing is required, use mechanically interlocked switches or contactors.



Warning! Do not connect any motor with a nominal voltage less than one half of the drive's nominal input voltage.



Warning! Disconnect the drive before conducting any voltage tolerance (Hi-Pot) test or insulation resistance (Megger) test on the motor or motor cables. Do not conduct these tests on the drive.

Motor Connection Specifications

Motor Connection Specifications					
Voltage (U_2)	0... U_1 , 3-phase symmetrical, U_{max} at the field weakening point				
Frequency	0...500 Hz				
Frequency Resolution	0.01 Hz				
Current	See "Ratings" on page 262.				
Field Weakening Point	10...500 Hz				
Switching Frequency	Selectable: 1, 4, 8, or 12 kHz (1, 4, or 8 kHz for 600 V, R6 frame size, that is for ACH550-xx-077A-6 ... ACH550-xx-144A-6)				
Cable Temperature Rating	90 °C (194 °F) rating minimum.				
Maximum Motor Cable Length	Frame Size	Max. Motor Cable Length*			
		$f_{sw} = 1$ or 4 kHz		$f_{sw} = 8$ kHz or 12 kHz	
	R1	100 m	330 ft	100 m	330 ft
	R2 (most)	200 m	650 ft	100 m	330 ft
	R6 (600 V)	100 m	330 ft	100 m	330 ft
	R3...R4	200 m	650 ft	100 m	330 ft
	R5...R6	300 m	980 ft	150 m	490 ft
R7...R8	300 m	980 ft	Does not apply		



* Warning! Using a motor cable longer than specified in the chart above may cause permanent damage to the drive.

Ground Fault Protection

ACH550 internal fault logic detects ground faults in the drive, motor, or motor cable. This fault logic:

- Is NOT a personal safety or fire protection feature.
- Can be set to trigger only a warning using parameter 3017 EARTH FAULT.
- Could be tripped by leakage currents (input power to ground) associated with the use of an optional RFI/EMC filter.

Grounding and Routing

Background

Motor cables require extra care in grounding and routing. The reasons have to do with the following factors:

- Parasitic capacitance – Capacitors are, essentially, conductors that don't touch, but are in close proximity to each other. So, for example, there is a weak capacitive connection between cables and any conductors they are near. Such unintentional, but inevitable conductive paths are called parasitic capacitors. Currents flowing through these paths often create problems. For example, current leaks to control cables can create noise interference, leaks to the motor can damage bearings, and leaks to the drive or other electronic cabinets can damage components.
- Proximity – As the conductors get closer together, capacitance increases.
- Proximal area – As the area in close proximity increases, the capacitance increases, e.g. close parallel paths increase parasitic capacitance between conductors.
- AC frequency – For a given capacitance, increased AC frequency increases current conductance. Hence, capacitive paths that are negligible at 50/60 Hz can be very significant conductors at 8,000 Hz. Motor cable signals are pulses at up to 8,000 Hz and the common mode frequency can reach 48,000 Hz (8k Hz x 3 phases x 2 pulse edges).
- Alternate paths – Where multiple paths exist, the most conductive path draws the most current. So, the ground wiring must be a significantly better path, in order to reduce the current in the alternate paths, the paths through parasitic capacitors.

The high frequencies associated with motor cables also increase the potential for electromagnetic noise radiation. See "Motor Cable Requirements for CE & C-Tick Compliance" below.

Motor Cable Shielding

Motor cables require shielding using conduit, armored cable or shielded cable.

- Conduit – When using conduit:
 - Bridge joints with a ground conductor bonded to the conduit on each side of the joint.
 - Bond conduit run to the drive enclosure.
 - Use a separate conduit run for motor cables (also separate input power and control cables).
 - Use a separate conduit run for each drive.
- Armored Cable – When using armored cable:
 - Use six-conductor (3 phases and 3 grounds), type MC continuous corrugated aluminum armor cable with symmetrical grounds.
 - Armored motor cable can share a cable tray with input power cables, but not with control cables.
- Shielded Cable – For shielded cable details, see "Motor Cable Requirements for CE & C-Tick Compliance" below.

Grounding

See "Ground Connections" in "Input Power Connections" above.

For CE compliant installations and installations where EMC emissions must be minimized, see "Effective Motor Cable Screens" below.

Drive's Motor Connection Terminals

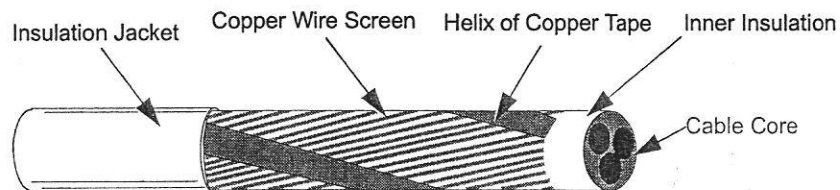
The drive's motor and input power terminals have the same specifications. See "Drive's Power Connection Terminals" above.

Motor Cable Requirements for CE & C-Tick Compliance

The requirements in this section apply for CE or C-Tick compliance.

Minimum Requirement (CE & C-Tick)

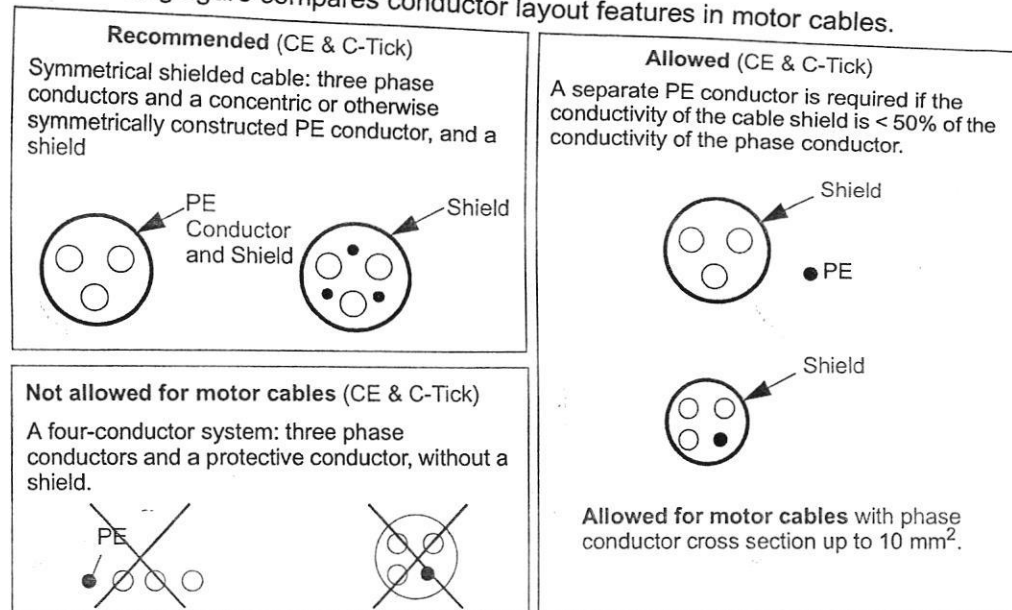
The motor cable must be a symmetrical three conductor cable with a concentric PE conductor or a four conductor cable with a concentric shield, however, a symmetrical constructed PE conductor is always recommended. The following figure shows the minimum requirement for the motor cable screen (for example, MCMK, NK Cables).



- * Input filters designed for ACH550 cannot be used in an isolated, or high impedance earthed industrial distribution network.

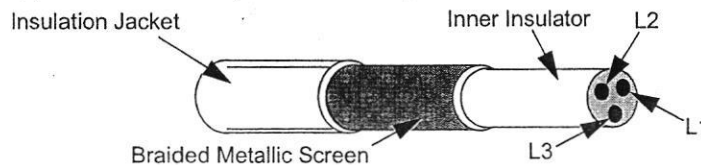
Recommendation for Conductor Layout

The following figure compares conductor layout features in motor cables.



Effective Motor Cable Screens

The general rule for cable screen effectiveness is: the better and tighter the cable's screen, the lower the radiated emission level. The following figure shows an example of an effective construction (for example Ölflex-Servo-FD 780 CP, Lappkabel or MCCMK, NK Cables).



EN 61800-3 Compliant Motor Cables

To comply with EN 61800-3 requirements:

- Motor cables must have an effective screen as described in "Effective Motor Cable Screens" on page 277.
- Motor cable screen wires must be twisted together into a bundle (the bundle length must be less than five times its width) and connected it to the terminal marked \perp (at the bottom right-hand corner of the drive).
- Motor cables must be grounded, at the motor end, with an EMC cable gland. The ground must contact the cable screen all the way around the cable.
- For EN 61800-3 First Environment, Restricted Distribution (CISPR11 Class A), and EN 61800-3 Second Environment compliance, the drive includes an internal filter that provides compliance for at least 30 m (100 ft.) motor cable lengths. For some drives, longer cable lengths require an additional, external RFI/EMC filter as specified in the table below. The RFI/EMC filters are separate options and

installation must conform to the instructions in the filter package for all cable screen connections.

Maximum Cable Length for EN 61800-3 First Environment, Restricted Distribution (CISPR11 Class A) Compliance (Radiated and Conducted Emissions)					
Drive Type		Switching Frequency (Parameter 2606)			
		1 or 4 kHz (2606 = 1 or 4)		8 kHz (2606 = 8)	
		Max. Length / Internal Filter	Max. Length / RFI/EMC Filter	Max. Length / Internal Filter	Max. Length / RFI/EMC Filter
ACH550-xx-03A3-4	R1	100 m (330 ft) / Internal	Note 1	100 m (330 ft) / Internal	Note 1
ACH550-xx-04A1-4					
ACH550-xx-06A9-4					
ACH550-xx-08A8-4					
ACH550-xx-012A-4					
ACH550-xx-015A-4	R2	30 m (100 ft) / Internal	100 m (330 ft) / ACS400-IF21-3	30 m (100 ft) / Internal	100 m (330 ft) / ACS400-IF21-3
ACH550-xx-023A-4					
ACH550-xx-031A-4	R3	30 m (100 ft) / Internal	100 m (330 ft) / ACS400-IF31-3	30 m (100 ft) / Internal	100 m (330 ft) / ACS400-IF31-3
ACH550-xx-038A-4					
ACH550-xx-045A-4					
ACH550-xx-044A-4	R4	30 m (100 ft) / Internal	100 m (330 ft) / ACS400-IF41-3	30 m (100 ft) / Internal	100 m (330 ft) / ACS400-IF41-3
ACH550-xx-059A-4					
ACH550-xx-072A-4					
ACH550-xx-078A-4					
ACH550-xx-097A-4		Note 2	Note 2		
ACH550-xx-077A-4	R5	100 m (330 ft) / Internal	Note 1	100 m (330 ft) / Internal	Note 1
ACH550-xx-096A-4					
ACH550-xx-125A-4				Note 2	Note 2
ACH550-xx-124A-4	R6	100 m (330 ft) / Internal	Note 1	100 m (330 ft) / Internal	Note 1
ACH550-xx-157A-4					
ACH550-xx-180A-4					
ACH550-xx-245A-4	R7	100 m (330 ft) / Internal	Note 1	Does Not Apply	
ACH550-xx-316A-4	R8	--			
ACH550-xx-368A-4					
ACH550-xx-414A-4					
ACH550-xx-486A-4					
ACH550-xx-526A-4					
ACH550-xx-602A-4					
ACH550-xx-645A-4					

1. For any motor cable length (up to the 100 m maximum length limit) compliance does not require an additional filter.
2. Data not available at time of publication.



Warning! Do not use RFI/EMC filters in a floating, or impedance grounded network.

- For EN 61800-3 First Environment, Unrestricted Distribution, (CISPR11 Class B) compliance with conducted emission limits, all drives require an additional, external RFI/EMC filter, and cable lengths are limited as specified in the table below. The RFI/EMC filters are separate options and installation must conform to the instructions in the filter package for all cable screen connections.

Note! The filter does not assure compliance with radiated emissions limits.

Maximum Cable Length for EN 61800-3 CE First Environment, Unrestricted Distribution (CISPR11 Class B) Compliance (Conducted Emissions Only)			
Drive Type		Switching Frequency (Parameter 2606)	
		1 or 4 kHz (2606 = 1 or 4)	8 kHz (2606 = 8)
		Max. Length / RFI/EMC Filter	Max. Length / RFI/EMC Filter
ACH550-xx-03A3-4	R1	10 m (33 ft) / ACS400-IF11-3	10 m (33 ft) / ACS400-IF11-3
ACH550-xx-04A1-4			
ACH550-xx-06A9-4			
ACH550-xx-08A8-4			
ACH550-xx-012A-4			
ACH550-xx-015A-4	R2	10 m (33 ft) / ACS400-IF21-3	10 m (33 ft) / ACS400-IF21-3
ACH550-xx-023A-4			
ACH550-xx-031A-4	R3	10 m (33 ft) / ACS400-IF31-3	10 m (33 ft) / ACS400-IF31-3
ACH550-xx-038A-4			
ACH550-xx-045A-4			
ACH550-xx-044A-4	R4	10 m (33 ft) / ACS400-IF41-3	10 m (33 ft) / ACS400-IF41-3
ACH550-xx-059A-4			
ACH550-xx-072A-4			
ACH550-xx-078A-4			
ACH550-xx-097A-4			



Warning! Do not use RFI/EMC filters in a floating, or impedance grounded network.

Control Connections

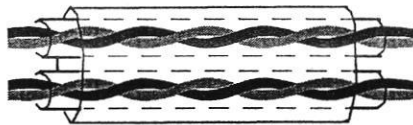
Control Connection Specifications

Control Connection Specifications	
Analog Inputs and Outputs	See table heading "Drive Control Terminal Description" on page 282.
Digital Inputs	Digital input impedance 1.5 k Ω . Maximum voltage for digital inputs is 30 V.
Relays (Digital Outputs)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Max. contact voltage: 30 V DC, 250 V AC • Max. contact current / power: 6 A, 30 V DC; 1500 VA, 250 V AC • Max. continuous current: 2 A rms ($\cos \phi = 1$), 1 A rms ($\cos \phi = 0.4$) • Minimum load: 500 mW (12 V, 10 mA) • Contact material: Silver-nickel (AgN) • Isolation between relay digital outputs, test voltage: 2.5 kV rms, 1 minute

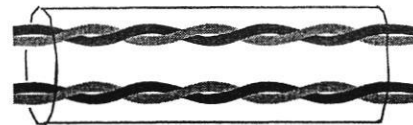
Control Cables

General Recommendations

Use multi-core cables with a braided copper wire screen, temperature rated at 60 °C (140 °F) or above:



Double Shielded
Example: JAMAK by Draka NK Cables



Single Shielded
Example: NOMAK by Draka NK Cables

At the drive end, twist the screen together into a bundle not longer than five times its width and connected to terminal X1-1 (for digital and analog I/O cables) or to either X1-28 or X1-32 (for RS485 cables).

Route control cables to minimize radiation to the cable:

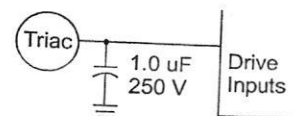
- Route as far away as possible from the input power and motor cables (at least 20 cm (8 in)).
- Where control cables must cross power cables make sure they are at an angle as near 90° as possible.
- Stay at least 20 cm (8 in) from the sides of the drive.

Use care in mixing signal types on the same cable:

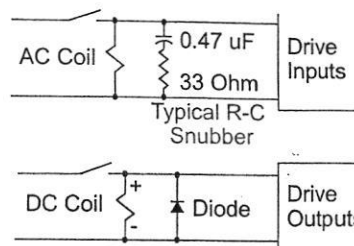
- Do not mix analog and digital input signals on the same cable.
- Run relay-controlled signals as twisted pairs (especially if voltage > 48 V). Relay-controlled signals using less than 48 V can be run in the same cables as digital input signals.

Note! Never mix 24 VDC and 115/230 VAC signals in the same cable.

Note! Triacs used as sources for drive inputs, may have excessive leakage current in the OFF state, enough to read as ON to drive inputs. Driving two or more inputs, divides the leakage current, reducing or eliminating the problem. An alternative is to add a small capacitive load – see figure.



WARNING! Relay coils generate noise spikes in response to steps in applied power. To avoid drive damage from such spikes, all AC relay coils mounted across drive inputs require R-C snubbers, and all DC relay coils mounted across drive outputs require diodes – see figure.



Analog Cables

Recommendations for analog signal runs:

- Use double shielded, twisted pair cable.
- Use one individually shielded pair for each signal.
- Do not use a common return for different analog signals.

Digital Cables

Recommendation for digital signal runs: A double shielded cable is the best alternative, but single-shielded, twisted, multi-pair cable is also usable.

Control Panel Cable

If the control panel is connected to the drive with a cable, use only Category 5 Patch ethernet cable.

Drive's Control Connection Terminals

The following table provides specifications for the drive's control terminals









Frame Size	Control			
	Maximum Wire Size		Torque	
	mm ²	AWG	Nm	lb-ft
All	1.5	16	0.4	0.3

Control Terminal Descriptions

The following full-page diagram provides a general description of the control terminals on the drive. For specific application details, see the "Application Macros" on page 44.

Note! Terminals 3, 6, and 9 are at the same potential.

Note! For safety reasons the fault relay signals a “fault” when the ACH550 is powered down.

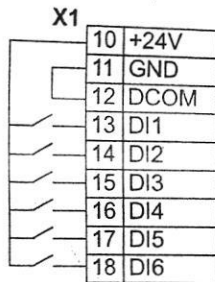
		Drive Control Terminal Description	
Analog I/O	1	SCR	Terminal for signal cable screen. (Connected internally to chassis ground.)
	2	AI1	Analog input channel 1, programmable. Default ² = external reference. Resolution 0.1%, accuracy ±1%. J1:AI1 OFF: 0(2)...10 V ($R_i = 312\text{ k}\Omega$)  or, for OFF  for ON 
			J1:AI1 ON: 0(4)...20 mA ($R_i = 100\ \Omega$) 
	3	AGND	Analog input circuit common (connected internally to chassis gnd. through 1 M Ω).
	4	+10 V	Potentiometer reference source: 10 V ±2%, max. 10 mA (1k Ω ≤ R ≤ 10k Ω).
	5	AI2	Analog input channel 2, programmable. Default ² = PID feedback. Resolution 0.1%, accuracy ±1%. J1:AI2 OFF: 0(2)...10 V ($R_i = 312\text{ k}\Omega$)  or, for OFF  for ON 
			J1:AI2 ON: 0(4)...20 mA ($R_i = 100\ \Omega$) 
6	AGND	Analog input circuit common (connected internally to chassis gnd. through 1 M Ω).	
7	AO1	Analog output, programmable. Default ² = frequency. 0...20 mA (load < 500 Ω).	
8	AO2	Analog output, programmable. Default ² = current. 0...20 mA (load < 500 Ω).	
9	AGND	Analog output circuit common (connected internally to chassis gnd. through 1 M Ω).	
Digital Inputs ¹	10	+24V	Auxiliary voltage output 24 VDC / 250 mA (reference to GND), short circuit protected.
	11	GND	Auxiliary voltage output common (connected internally as floating).
	12	DCOM	Digital input common. To activate a digital input, there must be ≥+10 V (or ≤-10 V) between that input and DCOM. The 24 V may be provided by the ACH550 (X1-10) or by an external 12...24 V source of either polarity.
	13	DI1	Digital input 1, programmable. Default ² = start/stop.
	14	DI2	Digital input 2, programmable. Default ² = not configured.
	15	DI3	Digital input 3, programmable. Default ² = constant (preset) speed.
	16	DI4	Digital input 4, programmable. Default ² = safety interlock.
	17	DI5	Digital input 5, programmable. Default ² = not configured.
Relay Outputs	19	RO1C	Relay output 1, programmable. Default ² = Ready Maximum: 250 VAC / 30 VDC, 2 A Minimum: 500 mW (12 V, 10 mA)
	20	RO1A	
	21	RO1B	
	22	RO2C	Relay output 2, programmable. Default ² = Running Maximum: 250 VAC / 30 VDC, 2 A Minimum: 500 mW (12 V, 10 mA)
	23	RO2A	
	24	RO2B	
	25	RO3C	Relay output 3, programmable. Default ² = Fault (-1) Maximum: 250 VAC / 30 VDC, 2 A Minimum: 500 mW (12 V, 10 mA)
26	RO3A		
27	RO3B		

¹ Digital input impedance 1.5 k Ω . Maximum voltage for digital inputs is 30 V.

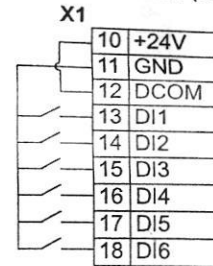
2 Default values depend on the macro used. Values specified are for the HVAC default macro. See "Application Macros" on page 44.

You can wire the digital input terminals in either a PNP or NPN configuration.

PNP connection (source)



NPN connection (sink)



Serial Communications

Terminals 28...32 provide RS485 serial communication connections used to control or monitor the drive from a fieldbus controller. See "Embedded Fieldbus" on page 154 for details.

Efficiency

Approximately 98% at nominal power level.

Cooling

Cooling Specifications	
Method	Internal fan, flow direction from bottom to top.
Requirement	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> R1...R6: Free space above and below ACH550 drive: 200 mm (8 in). R7/R8: Free space in front of enclosure: 152 mm (6 in). R7/R8: Free space above enclosure: None required for cooling. R7/R8: Free space at sides of enclosure: None required for cooling – ACH550 enclosures can be mounted side-by-side. R7/R8: Also see "Additional Free Space Recommendations" on page 289.

Air Flow, 208...240 Volt Drives

The following table lists heat loss and air flow data for 208...240 Volt drives.

Drive	Frame Size	Heat Loss		Air Flow	
		W	BTU/Hr	m ³ /h	ft ³ /min
ACH550-xx-					
-04A6-2	R1	55	189	44	26
-06A6-2	R1	73	249	44	26
-07A5-2	R1	81	276	44	26
-012A-2	R1	116	404	44	26
-017A-2	R1	161	551	44	26
-024A-2	R2	227	776	88	52
-031A-2	R2	285	373	88	52
-046A-2	R3	420	1434	134	79

Drive		Heat Loss		Air Flow	
ACH550-xx-	Frame Size	W	BTU/Hr	m ³ /h	ft ³ /min
-059A-2	R3	536	1829	134	79
-075A-2	R4	671	2290	280	165
-088A-2	R4	786	2685	280	165
-114A-2	R4	1014	3463	280	165
-143A-2	R6	1268	4431	405	238
-178A-2	R6	1575	5379	405	238
-221A-2	R6	1952	6666	405	238
-248A-2	R6	2189	7474	405	238

Air Flow, 380...480 Volt Drives

The following table lists heat loss and air flow data for 380...480 Volt drives.

Drive		Heat Loss		Air Flow	
ACH550-xx-	Frame Size	W	BTU/Hr	m ³ /h	ft ³ /min
-03A3-4	R1	40	137	44	26
-04A1-4	R1	52	177	44	26
-06A9-4	R1	97	331	44	26
-08A8-4	R1	127	433	44	26
-012A-4	R1	172	587	44	26
-015A-4	R2	232	792	88	52
-023A-4	R2	337	1150	88	52
-031A-4	R3	457	1560	134	79
-038A-4	R3	562	1918	134	79
-045A-4	R3	667	2276	134	79
-044A-4	R4	667	2276	280	165
-059A-4	R4	907	3096	280	165
-072A-4	R4	1120	3820	280	165
-078A-4	R4	1295	4420	280	165
-097A-4	R4	1440	4915	280	165
-077A-4	R5	1295	4420	168	99
-096A-4	R5	1440	4915	168	99
-125A-4	R5	1940	6621	168	99
-124A-4	R6	1940	6621	405	238
-157A-4	R6	2310	7884	405	238
-180A-4	R6	2810	9590	405	238
-245A-4	R7	3850	13000	300	540
-316A-4	R8	5300	18000	700	1220
-368A-4	R8	6850	23000	700	1220
-414A-4	R8	7000	24000	700	1220

Drive		Heat Loss		Air Flow	
ACH550-xx-	Frame Size	W	BTU/Hr	m ³ /h	ft ³ /min
-486A-4	R8	7600	26000	700	1220
-526A-4	R8	7800	27000	700	1220
-602A-4	R8	8100	28000	700	1220
-645A-4	R8	9100	31000	700	1220

Air Flow, 500...600 Volt Drives

The following table lists heat loss and air flow data for 500...600 Volt drives.

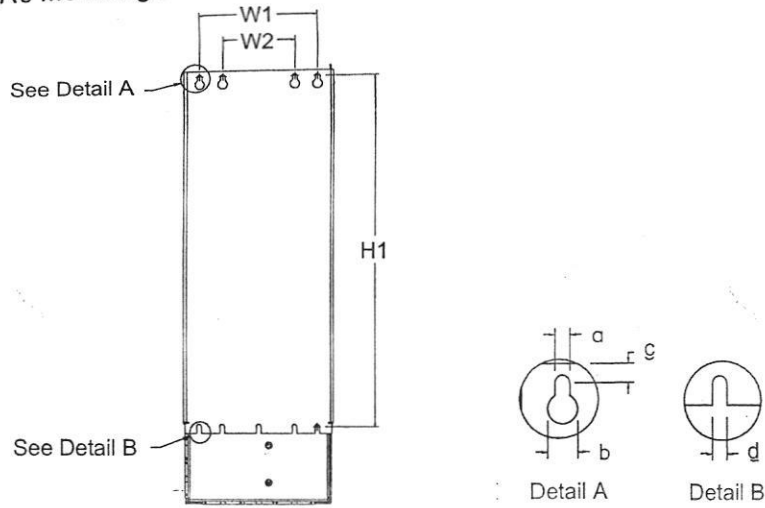
Type Code	Frame Size	Heat Loss		Air Flow	
		W	BTU/Hr	m ³ /h	ft ³ /min
Three-phase supply voltage, 500...600 V					
-02A7-6	R2	46	157	88	52
-03A9-6	R2	68	232	88	52
-06A1-6	R2	124	423	88	52
-09A0-6	R2	170	581	88	52
-011A-6	R2	232	792	88	52
-017A-6	R2	337	1150	88	52
-022A-6	R3	457	1560	134	79
-027A-6	R3	562	1918	134	79
-032A-6	R4	667	2256	280	165
-041A-6	R4	907	3096	280	165
-052A-6	R4	1120	3820	280	165
-062A-6	R4	1295	4420	280	165
-077A-6	R6	1504	5136	405	238
-099A-6	R6	1821	6219	405	238
-125A-6	R6	2442	8339	405	238
-144A-6	R6	2813	9607	405	238

Dimensions and Weights

The dimensions and mass for the ACH550 depend on the frame size and enclosure type. If unsure of frame size, first, find the "Type" code on the drive labels. Then look up that type code in the "Technical Data" on page 262, to determine the frame size. A complete set of dimensional drawings for ACH550 drives is located in the ACH550 Technical Reference manual.

Mounting Dimensions

R1...R6 Mounting Dimensions



X0032

UL type 1 and UL type 12 – Dimensions for each Frame Size												
Ref.	R1		R2		R3		R4		R5		R6	
	mm	in	mm	in	mm	in	mm	in	mm	in	mm	in
W1*	98.0	3.9	98.0	3.9	160	6.3	160	6.3	238	9.4	263	10.4
W2*	--	--	--	--	98.0	3.9	98.0	3.9	--	--	--	--
H1*	318	12.5	418	16.4	473	18.6	578	22.8	588	23.2	675	26.6
a	5.5	0.2	5.5	0.2	6.5	0.25	6.5	0.25	6.5	0.25	9.0	0.35
b	10.0	0.4	10.0	0.4	13.0	0.5	13.0	0.5	14.0	0.55	14.0	0.55
c	5.5	0.2	5.5	0.2	8.0	0.3	8.0	0.3	8.5	0.3	8.5	0.3
d	5.5	0.2	5.5	0.2	6.5	0.25	6.5	0.25	6.5	0.25	9.0	0.35
Mounting Hardware												
	M5	#10	M5	#10	M5	#10	M5	#10	M6	1/4	M8	5/16

* Center to center dimension.

R7...R8 Mounting Dimensions

UL type 1 and UL type 12 – Dimensions for each Frame Size			
Ref.	R7 & R8		Top View
	mm	in	
W	806	31.7	
D	659	25.9	
a	675	26.6	
b	474.5	18.7	
c	61	2.4	
d	65.5	2.6	
Mounting Hardware			
	11 mm	13/32	

Weight

The following table lists typical maximum weights for each frame size. Variations within each frame size (due to components associated with voltage/current ratings, and options) are minor.

R1...R6

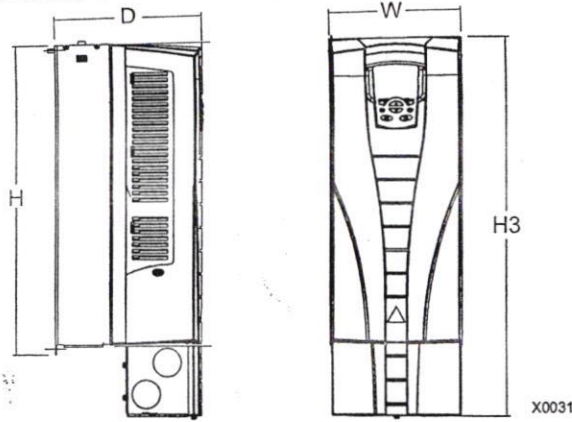
Enclosure	Weight											
	R1		R2		R3		R4		R5		R6	
	kg	lb.	kg	lb.	kg	lb.	kg	lb.	kg	lb.	kg	lb.
UL type 1	6.5	14.3	9.0	19.8	16	35.0	24	53.0	34	75	69	152
UL type 12	8.2	18.1	11.2	24.7	18.5	40.8	26.5	58.4	38.5	84.9	86	190

R7...R8

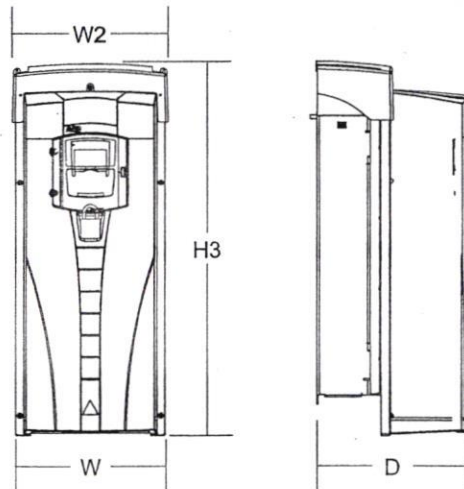
Enclosure	Weight			
	R7		R8	
	kg	lb.	kg	lb.
UL type 1	224	490	354	776
UL type 12	245	535	354	776

Outside Dimensions – R1...R6

Outside dimensions depend on frame size and enclosure type, as defined below.



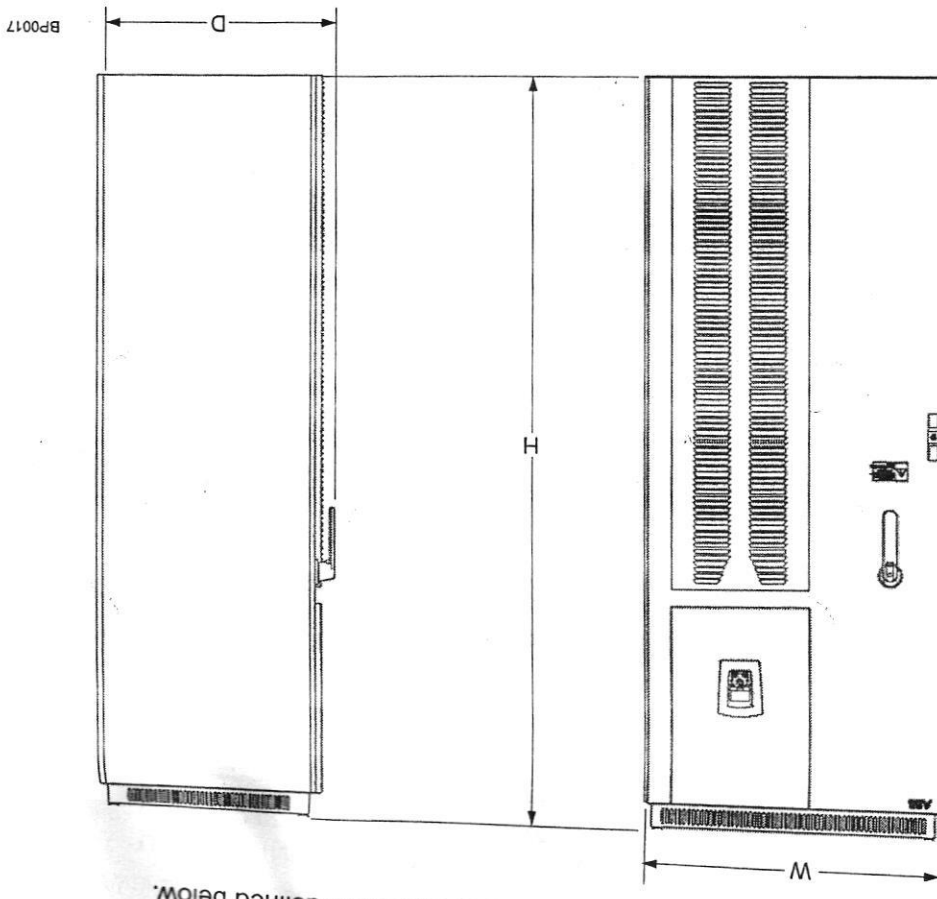
UL type 1 – Outside Dimensions by Frame Size (R1...R6)												
Ref.	R1		R2		R3		R4		R5		R6	
	mm	in	mm	in	mm	in	mm	in	mm	in	mm	in
W	125	4.9	125	4.9	203	8.0	203	8.0	265	10.4	300	11.8
H	330	13.0	430	16.9	490	19.2	596	23.4	602	23.7	700	27.6
H3	369	14.5	469	18.5	583	23.0	689	27.1	736	29.0	880	34.6
D	212	8.3	222	8.7	231	9.1	262	10.3	286	11.3	400	15.8



UL type 12 – Outside Dimensions by Frame Size (R1...R6)												
Ref.	R1		R2		R3		R4		R5		R6	
	mm	in	mm	in	mm	in	mm	in	mm	in	mm	in
W	213	8.4	213	8.4	257	10.1	257	10.1	369	14.5	410	16.1
W2	222	8.7	222	8.7	267	10.5	267	10.5	369	14.5	410	16.1
H3	461	18.2	561	22.1	629	24.8	760	29.9	776	30.5	924	36.4
D	234	9.2	246	9.7	254	10.0	285	11.2	309	12.2	423	16.6

Outside Dimensions - R7...R8

Outside dimensions for the R7 and R8 cabinets are defined below.



Outside Dimensions by Frame Size

Enclosure	Ref.	mm		in	
		mm	in	mm	in
UL type 1	W	806	31.7	806	31.7
	H	2065	81.3	2065	81.3
	D	659	25.9	659	25.9
UL type 12	W	806	31.7	806	31.7
	H	2318	91.3	2318	91.3
	D	659	25.9	659	25.9

Additional Free Space Recommendations

- In addition to the free space requirements for cooling ("Cooling" on page 283), allow:
- 800 mm (31.5 in) in front of R7/R8 enclosures – room for the cabinet door to swing open.
 - 305 mm (12 in) above R7/R8, IP54 / UL type 12 enclosures – room for fan replacement.

Degrees of Protection

Available enclosures:

- UL type 1 (NEMA 1 / IP 21) enclosure. The site must be free of airborne dust, corrosive gases or liquids, and conductive contaminants such as condensation, carbon dust, and metallic particles.
- UL type 12 (NEMA 12 / IP 54) enclosure. This enclosure provides protection from airborne dust and light sprays or splashing water from all directions.

Compared to the UL type 1 enclosure, the UL type 12 enclosure has:

- The same internal plastic shell as the UL type 1 enclosure
- A different outer plastic cover
- An additional internal fan to improve cooling.
- Larger dimensions
- The same rating (does not require a derating).

Plenum Rating: ACH550 drives (UL type 1 & 12) have been evaluated in accordance with the requirements of UL508, meets all of the requirements for plenum rated drives, and is "Suitable for Installation in a Compartment Handling Conditioned Air".

Ambient Conditions

The following table lists the ACH550 environmental requirements.

Ambient Environment Requirements		
	Installation Site	Storage and Transportation in the protective package
Altitude	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 0...1000 m (0...3,300 ft) 1000...2000 m (3,300...6,600 ft) if P_N and I_2 derated 1% every 100 m above 1000 m (300 ft above 3,300 ft) 	
Ambient temperature	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Min. -15 °C (5 °F) – no frost allowed Max. (fsw = 1 or 4) 40 °C (104 °F); 50 °C (122 °F) if P_N and I_2 derated to 90% Max. (fsw = 8) 40 °C (104 °F) if P_N and I_2 derated to 80% Max. (fsw = 12) 30 °C (86 °F) if P_N and I_2 derated to 65% (to 50% for 600 V, R4 frame sizes, that is for ACH550-xx-032A-6...Ach550-xx-062A-6). 	-40...70 °C (-40...158 °F)
Relative humidity	< 95% (non-condensing)	
Contamination levels (IEC 721-3-3)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No conductive dust allowed. The ACH550 should be installed in clean air according to enclosure classification. Cooling air must be clean, free from corrosive materials and free from electrically conductive dust. Chemical gases: Class 3C2 Solid particles: Class 3S2 	Storage <ul style="list-style-type: none"> No conductive dust allowed. chemical gases: Class 1C2 solid particles: Class 1S2 Transportation <ul style="list-style-type: none"> No conductive dust allowed. Chemical gases: Class 2C2 Solid particles: Class 2S2

The following table lists the standard stress testing that the ACH550 passes.





Stress Tests		
	Without Shipping Package	Inside Shipping Package
Sinusoidal vibration	Mechanical conditions: In accordance with IEC 60721-3-3, Class 3M4 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 2...9 Hz 3.0 mm (0.12 in) 9...200 Hz 10 m/s² (33 ft/s²) 	In accordance with ISTA 1A and 1B specifications.
Shock	Not allowed	In accordance with IEC 68-2-29: max. 100 m/s ² (330 ft/s ²), 11ms (36 ft/s)
Free fall	Not allowed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 76 cm (30 in), frame size R1 61cm (24 in), frame size R2 46 cm (18 in), frame size R3 31 cm (12 in), frame size R4 25 cm (10 in), frame size R5 15 cm (6 in), frame size R6

Materials

Material Specifications	
Drive enclosure	<p>R1...R6:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PC/ABS 2.5 mm, color NCS 1502-Y (RAL 90021 / PMS 420 C and 425 C) • Hot-dip zinc coated steel sheet 1.5...2 mm, thickness of coating 100 micrometers • Cast aluminium AISi • Extruded aluminium AISi <p>R7...R8: Sheet metal</p>
Package	<p>R1...R6: Corrugated board, expanded polystyrene, plywood, raw wood (heat dried). Package wrap consists of one or more of the following: PE-LD plastic wrap, PP or steel bands.</p> <p>R7...R8: Wood pallet</p>
Disposal	<p>The drive contains raw materials that should be recycled to preserve energy and natural resources. The package materials are environmentally compatible and recyclable. All metal parts can be recycled. The plastic parts can either be recycled or burned under controlled circumstances, according to local regulations. Most recyclable parts are marked with recycling marks.</p> <p>If recycling is not feasible, all parts excluding electrolytic capacitors and printed circuit boards can be landfilled. The DC capacitors contain electrolyte and the printed circuit boards contain lead, both of which will be classified as hazardous waste within the EU. They must be removed and handled according to local regulations.</p> <p>For further information on environmental aspects and more detailed recycling instructions, please contact your local ABB distributor.</p>

Applicable Standards

Drive compliance with the following standards is identified by the standards "marks" on the type code label.

Mark	Applicable Standards	
	EN 50178 (1997)	Electronic equipment for use in power installations
	EN 60204-1 (1997 + corrigendum Sep. 1998)	Safety of machinery. Electrical equipment of machines. Part 1: General requirements. <i>Provisions for compliance:</i> The final assembler of the machine is responsible for installing: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • An emergency-stop device • A supply disconnecting device
	EN 60529 (1991 + corrigendum May 1993 + amendment A1:2000)	Degrees of protection provided by enclosures (IP code)
	EN 61800-3 (1996) + Amendment A11 (2000)	EMC product standard including specific test methods
	EN 61800-3 (1996) + Amendment A11 (2000)	EMC product standard including specific test methods
	UL 508C and C22.2 No. 14	UL Standard for Safety, Power Conversion Equipment, second edition and CSA Standard for Industrial Control Equipment
	C22.2 No. 14	CSA Standard for Industrial Control Equipment
		

Compliance is valid with the following provisions:

- The motor and control cables are chosen as specified in this manual.
- The installation rules of this manual are followed.

UL Markings

When a UL mark is attached to the ACH550 AC drive, it verifies that the drive follows the provisions of UL 508C.

When a CSA mark is attached to the ACH550 AC drive, it verifies that the drive follows the provisions of C22.2 No. 14.

The ACH550 is UL and CSA listed to 100 KAIC without use of input fuses or circuit breaker. For end-users convenience, the section "Fuses" provides fuse recommendations. Branch circuit protection must to be provided per local code.

Note! UL508A manufactures are not required to use the fuse recommendations for the purpose of UL Listing a panel with an ACH550 AFD.

The ACH550 has an electronic motor protection feature that complies with the requirements of UL 508C and CSA C22.2 No. 14. When this feature is selected and properly adjusted, additional overload protection is not required unless more than one motor is connected to the drive or unless additional protection is required by applicable safety regulations. See parameters 3005 (MOT THERM PROT) and 3006 (MOT THERM TIME).

The drives are to be used in a controlled environment. See section "Ambient Conditions" on page 291 for specific limits.

For open type enclosures, units must be mounted inside an enclosure per National Electrical Code and local electrical codes. Open type enclosures are IP21 / UL type 1 units without the conduit box and/or cover, or IP54 / UL type 12 units without the conduit plate and/or top cover.

EMC (Europe, Australia, and New Zealand)

This section describes conformance with EMC requirements (in Europe, Australia, and New Zealand).

CE Marking

When a CE mark is attached to the ACH550 AC drive, it verifies that the drive follows the provisions of the European Low Voltage and EMC Directives (Directive 73/23/EEC, as amended by 93/68/EEC and Directive 89/336/EEC, as amended by 93/68/EEC). The corresponding declarations are available on request and can be found using the internet at: <http://www.abb.com>.

The EMC Directive defines the requirements for immunity and emissions of electrical equipment used in European Economic Area. The EMC product standard EN 61800-3 covers the requirements stated for drives, such as the ACH550. The drive complies with the First environment (restricted distribution) and Second Environment limits of EN/IEC 61800-3.

C-Tick Marking

When a C-Tick mark is attached to the ACH550 drive, it verifies compliance with the relevant standard, IEC 61800-3 (1996) – Adjustable speed electrical power drive systems – Part 3: EMC product standard including specific test methods, mandated by the Trans-Tasman Electromagnetic Compatibility Scheme. The drive complies with the First environment (restricted distribution) and Second Environment limits of EN/IEC 61800-3.

Electromagnetic Environments

Product standard EN 61800-3 (Adjustable speed electrical power drive systems - Part 3: EMC product standard including specific test methods) defines **First Environment** as environment that includes domestic premises. It also includes establishments directly connected without intermediate transformers to a low voltage power supply network which supplies buildings used for domestic purposes.

Second Environment includes establishments other than those directly connected to a low voltage power supply network which supplies buildings used for domestic purposes.

Liability Limits

The manufacturer is not responsible for:

- Any costs resulting from a failure if the installation, commissioning, repair, alteration, or ambient conditions of the drive do not fulfil the requirements specified in the documentation delivered with the unit and other relevant documentation.
- Units subjected to misuse, negligence or accident.
- Units comprised of materials provided or designs stipulated by the purchaser.

In no event shall the manufacturer, its suppliers or subcontractors be liable for special, indirect, incidental or consequential damages, losses or penalties.

If you have any questions concerning your ABB drive, please contact the local distributor or ABB office. The technical data, information and specifications are valid at the time of printing. The manufacturer reserves the right to modifications without prior notice.

Index

Numerics	
0xxxx register	
EFB function codes.....	173
EFB mapping	171
1xxxx register	
EFB function codes.....	174
EFB mapping	173
3xxxx register	
EFB function codes.....	174
EFB mapping	174
4xxxx register	
EFB function codes.....	176
EFB mapping	174
A	
acceleration	
at aux. stop (PFA), parameter.....	151
compensation, parameter.....	101
ramp select, parameter.....	98
ramp shape, parameter.....	98
ramp time (PFA), parameter.....	151
ramp zero select, parameter.....	99
time, parameter.....	98
/deceleration, parameter group.....	98
activate (external PID), parameter.....	134
actual input (PID), parameters.....	129
actual max. (PID), parameters.....	130
actual min. (PID), parameters.....	130
actual signals, parameter group.....	66
actual value	
mapping, FBA, generic profile.....	243
actual values	
scaling, EFB comm.....	166
scaling, FBA.....	232
scaling, FBA, ABB drives profile.....	241
scaling, FBA, generic profile.....	243
scaling, FLN fieldbus.....	201
air flow.....	283
alarm	
codes.....	251
enable display, parameter.....	89
listing.....	251
altitude	
environment limit.....	291
shipping limit.....	291
altitude derating.....	265
analog cable	
requirements.....	281
analog input	
BACnet object listing.....	219
data parameter.....	63
fault limit, parameters.....	108
filter, parameters.....	80
less than min. auto. reset, parameter.....	110
less than min., fault parameter.....	106
loss, fault codes.....	246
maximum, parameters.....	80
minimum, parameters.....	80
N2 object listing.....	192
parameter group.....	80
analog I/O	
connections.....	282
specifications.....	282
analog output	
BACnet object listing.....	219
content max., parameters.....	84
content min., parameters.....	84
current max., parameters.....	84
current min., parameters.....	84
data content, parameters.....	84
data parameter.....	63
filter, parameters.....	85
N2 object listing.....	194
parameter group.....	84
application block output, data parameter.....	62
application macro, parameter.....	60
applications	
see macros	
autochange	
interval, parameter.....	145
level, parameter.....	145
overview.....	145
starting order counter.....	146
automatic reset	
see reset, automatic	
auxiliary motor	
see motor, auxiliary	
B	
backing up parameters (Assistant panel).....	36
backup	
drive parameters.....	36

- BACnet**
- autobaud detection 212
 - data link layer 212
 - mac id 212
 - max info frame property 212
 - MS/TP token counter 213
 - object, analog inputs 219
 - object, analog outputs 219
 - object, analog values 220
 - object, binary inputs 216
 - object, binary outputs 216
 - object, binary values 217
 - object, definitions 215
 - pics, statement 213
 - pics, summary 212
 - services supported 212
 - support, matrix 215
- battery, assistant control panel
- maintenance procedure 261
- baud rate detection, BACnet 212
- baud rate (RS232), parameter 138
- binary input
- BACnet object listing 216
 - N2 object listing 193
- binary output
- BACnet object listing 216
 - N2 object listing 195
- branch circuit protection 266
- break point frequency, fault parameter 107
- buffer overruns (count), parameter 138
- C**
- cable requirements
- grounding 270
 - input power 269
 - motor 276
- capacitor
- charge maintenance interval 254
 - maintenance procedure 261
- CB
- see control board
- CE marking 294
- CISPR11 class A
- radiation limits 277
- CISPR11 class B
- radiation limits 279
- clock 40
- com (EFB)
- baud rate, parameter 139
 - control profile, parameter 139
 - CRC errors (count), parameter 139
 - ok messages (count), parameter 139
 - parity, parameter 139
 - protocol id, parameter 139
 - station id, parameter 139
 - UART errors (count), parameter 139
- comm
- fault function, parameter 108
 - fault time, parameter 108
 - fieldbus parameter refresh, parameter 136
 - protocol select, parameter 153
 - relay output word, data parameter 64
 - values, data parameter 64
- comm (EFB)
- actual value scaling 166
 - actual values 165
 - also see RS232 138
 - analog output control, activate 164
 - comm fault response 164
 - config file, fault code 248
 - configuration 157
 - configure for loss of communication 168
 - control interface 155
 - control word 178
 - diagnostics 167
 - drive control of functions, activate 160
 - exception codes 177
 - fault code 28 168
 - fault code 31 168, 169
 - fault code 32 169
 - fault code 33 169
 - fault codes 248
 - fault tracing parameters 167
 - fault, duplicate stations 168
 - fault, intermittent off-line 169
 - fault, no master station on line 168
 - fault, swapped wires 168
 - feedback from drive 165
 - feedback from drive, mailbox 165
 - input ref. sel., activate 161
 - installation 156
 - mailbox, param. read/write 165
 - misc. drive control, activate 162
 - modbus actual values 177
 - normal operation 167
 - overview 154
 - parameter group 138
 - parameters 140
 - PID control setpoint source, activate 164
 - planning 155
 - profiles 171
 - protocol, parameter group 139
 - reference scaling, ABB drives profile 187
 - relay output control, activate 163
 - set-up 157
 - start/stop control, activate 160
 - state diagram 186
 - status word 181
 - status, parameter 139
 - termination 156

DC current ref., parameter	96	du/dt filter	10
DC magnetizing time, parameter	96		
DC overvoltage, fault code	245	E	
DC stabilator, parameter	104	earth fault	
DC undervoltage, fault code	246	fault code	247
DDL file (N2)	195	parameter	108
deceleration		earthing	
at aux. start (PFA), parameter	152	see ground	
emergency time, parameter	99	efficiency	283
parameter group	98	EM3 screw	270
ramp select, parameter	98	embedded field bus	
ramp shape, parameter	98	see comm (EFB)	
ramp time (PFA), parameter	152	EMC	
ramp zero select, parameter	99	CE marking	294
time, parameter	98	C-Tick marking	294
default macro	46	motor cable requirements	276
derating		emergency	
altitude	265	deceleration time, parameter	99
single phase supply	265	stop devices	268
switching frequency	265	stop select, parameter	97
temperature	265	EN 61800-3 first environment	
derivation time (PID), parameter	128	restricted distribution radiation limits	277
derivation time, parameter	100	unrestricted distribution radiation limits	279
device overtemperature, fault code	245	enclosure protection class code	9
device type (N2)	192	enclosure, UL type 12	
diagnostics	244	air filter maintenance	258
EFB comm	167	fan replacement	256
FBA comm	232	encoder err, fault code	247
differences list, downloads	39	encoder, data parameters	65
digital cable		environment	
requirements	281	first, definition	294
digital input		second, definition	294
at fault, history parameters	70	error value inversion (PID), parameter	128
connections	282	exception codes, EFB modbus	177
specifications	280	external comm module, parameter group	136
status, data parameter	63	external commands selection, parameter	71
digital output		external control selection, parameter	73
connections	282	external fault	
specifications	280	automatic reset, parameter	110
dimensions		fault codes	246
mounting	286	parameters	106
outside, enclosure	288	external reference, data parameter	62
direction			
control, parameter	72	F	
display format (PID), parameter	128	fan, drive module	
download		maintenance interval	254
failure	40	replacement procedure	255
handling inexact transfers	39	fan, enclosure	
parameter sets	37	filter maintenance procedure	258
drive		UL type 12, replacement procedure	256
control terminal descriptions	282		
device type (N2)	192		
EFB comm installation	156		
fan replacement	255		
FBA module installation	227		
identification	9		
id, fault code	247		
proper lifting	8		
rating, parameter	113		
temperature, data parameter	62		
weight	287		
drive on time, data parameters	64		

input power connection	
floating networks	
lugs for R6	272
terminal size	272
torque	272
installation	
compatibility	10
environment	10
flow chart	7
location	11
preparation	8
procedures	7
tools	10
insulation	
check	19
integration time (PID), parameter	128
integration time, parameter	100
interlocks	
parameter	146
internal setpoint (PID), parameter	129
IP 21	
see UL type 1	
IP 54	
see UL type 12	
IR compensation	
frequency, parameter	103
parameters	103
voltage, parameter	103
IT network	
see floating network	
K	
keypad reference select, parameter	73
kWh counter, data parameter	62
L	
label	
serial number	9
type code	9
language, parameter	60
liability limits	295
limits, parameter group	93
load frequency, see user load curve	
load package version, parameter	113
load torque, see user load curve	
local mode	
lock, parameter	87
low frequency (PFA), parameters	143
lugs for R6 power cables	272

M

macros	
booster pump	51
condenser	50
cooling tower fan	49
dual setpoint w/ PID	56
dual setpoint w/ PID & const. speeds	57
e-bypass	58
floating point	55
hand control	59
HVAC default	46
internal timer	53
internal timer w/constant speeds	54
listing	44
pump alternation	52
return fan	48
supply fan	47
to select	45
mailbox, EFB comm	165
mains	
see input power	
maintenance	
capacitors	261
control panel	261
drive module fan	255
enclosure air filter	258
enclosure fan	256
heatsink	254
intervals	254
R7/R8 enclosure exhaust filter	259
R7/R8 enclosure inlet filter	258
triggers, parameter group	105
manuals	2
mapping	
actual value, FBA, generic profile	243
EFB modbus	171
materials	292
maximum	
frequency, parameter	94
torque limit, parameters	95
torque select, parameter	94
metasys	
connection diagram (companion)	192
connection diagram (system)	191
integration	191
minimum	
frequency, parameter	94
torque limit, parameters	95
torque select, parameter	94
modbus	
EFB addressing, convention	171
EFB coils	171
EFB discrete inputs	173
EFB holding registers	174
EFB input registers	174
EFB mapping details	171
EFB mapping summary	171
EFB supported features	170
EFB technical data	170

reset, automatic			
analog input less than min., parameter	110		
delay time, parameter	110		
external fault, parameter	110		
number of trials, parameter	110		
overcurrent, parameter	110		
parameter group			
trial time, parameter	110		
undervoltage, parameter	110		
resonance (avoiding)			
select, parameter	102		
revolution counter, data parameter	64		
ring lugs	272		
RS232			
baud rate, parameter	138		
panel, parameter group	138		
parity, parameter	138		
station id, parameter	138		
RS232 counts			
buffer overruns, parameter	138		
CRC errors, parameter	138		
frame errors, parameter	138		
ok messages, parameter	138		
parity errors, parameter	138		
RS485	283		
RS485 comm.	156		
run enable			
source select, parameter	86		
run time, data parameter	62, 64		
S			
safety	3		
scalar control mode	60		
scaling			
actual values, EFB comm	166		
actual value, FBA, ABB drives profile	241		
actual value, FBA, generic profile	243		
FLN actual values	201		
reference (EFB, ABB drives profile)	187		
reference, FBA, ABB drives profile	238		
reference, FBA, generic profile	242		
s-curve ramp, parameter	98		
sensor type, parameter	118		
sensorless vector control mode	60		
serial 1 error (fault code 28)	168		
serial 1 error, fault code	248		
serial communication			
see comm			
serial number	9		
setpoint maximum (PID), parameter	129		
setpoint minimum (PID), parameter	129		
setpoint select (PID), parameter	129		
shock			
stress testing	291		
short circuit, fault code	245		
single phase supply			
connection	15		
derating	265		
sleep selection (PID), parameter	130		
slip compensation ratio, parameter	104		
soft keys, control panel	28		
specifications			
control connections	280		
cooling	283		
input power	266		
mains	266		
motor connections	274		
speed			
at fault, history parameter	70		
data parameter	62		
max. limit, parameter	93		
min. limit, parameter	93		
speed control			
acceleration compensation, parameter	101		
automatic tuning, parameter	101		
derivation time, parameter	100		
integration time, parameter	100		
parameter group	100		
proportional gain, parameter	100		
speed, constant			
digital input selection parameter	76		
parameter	78		
parameter group	76		
stall			
frequency, fault parameter	108		
function, fault parameter	108		
region	108		
time, fault parameter	108		
standards	293		
CE marking	294		
CSA C22.2 No. 14	293		
CSA marking	293		
C-Tick marking	294		
EN 50178	293		
EN 60204-1	293		
EN 60529	293		
EN 61800-3	293, 294		
IEC 60664-1	293		
UL 508C	293		
UL marking	293		
start			
aux. motor delay	143		
aux. motor (PFA), parameters	142		
control, EFB comm.	160		
control, FBA comm.	228		
DC magnetizing time, parameter	96		
delay (PFA), parameter	151		
frequency (PFA), parameters	142		
function, parameter	96		
inhibit, parameter	96		
parameter group	96		
torque boost current, parameter	97		
start delay, parameter	97		
start mode			
automatic	96		
automatic torque boost	96		
DC magnetizing	96		
flying start	96		
starting order counter	146		
start-up			
macros	27		
motor data	26		
tuning	27		
start-up assistant	29		



3AJA0000004092 Rev F/ EN
EFFECTIVE: SEP 1, 2007
·SUPERSEDES: JUN 5, 2006

ABB Oy

AC Drives

P.O. Box 184

FIN-00381 HELSINKI

FINLAND

Telephone +358 10 22 11

Telefax +358 10 22 22681

Internet <http://www.abb.com>

ABB Inc.

Automation Technologies

Drives & Machines

16250 West Glendale Drive

New Berlin, WI 53151

USA

Telephone +1 262 785-3200

+1 800 HELP-365

Telefax +1 262 780-5135

Internet <http://www.abb-drives.com>

REVISED BY: SA	DATE: 7/2/07
REVISION: 2	SCALE: 3/8"=1'
REVISION: 1	DATE: 7/2/07
REVISION: 1	SCALE: 3/8"=1'
REVISION: 1	DATE: 7/2/07
REVISION: 1	SCALE: 3/8"=1'
REVISION: 1	DATE: 7/2/07
REVISION: 1	SCALE: 3/8"=1'
REVISION: 1	DATE: 7/2/07
REVISION: 1	SCALE: 3/8"=1'

CONFIDENTIALLY PROPRIETARY NOTICE
THE INFORMATION INCLUDED HEREIN
IS OWNED BY FLO -PAK.
THIS INFORMATION IS PRESENTED SOLELY
TO AID IN THE APPLICATION OF
FLO-PAK PRODUCTS AND MAY NOT BE
USED FOR ANY OTHER PURPOSE. WITH-
OUT SPECIFIC WRITTEN PERMISSION FROM
FLO-PAK, FURNISHING OF THIS INFORMATION
DOES NOT CONSTITUTE
AUTHORIZATION OR LICENSING FOR
ANY OTHER USE.

**PRELIMINARY
DRAWINGS
NOT FOR
CONSTRUCTION**

THIS DRAWING IS
CERTIFIED
 FOR APPROVAL
NO PRODUCTION WILL START
UNTIL APPROVED IN WRITING
 FOR CONSTRUCTION
PRODUCTION HAS STARTED
WITHOUT APPROVAL AFFECT
PRICE AND DELIVERY
OUR ORDER NO.: _____
CUST. ORDER NO.: _____
BT: _____ DATE: _____

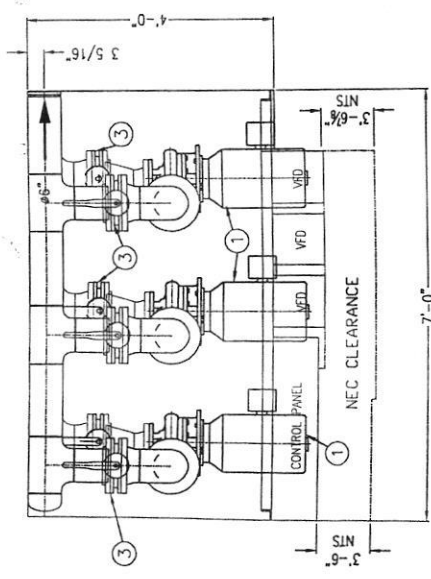
KEY LEGEND

KEY	DESCRIPTION	QTY
1	PUMP E2.5J7A-CC 460GPM@165'0H	3
2	W/3600 RPM 460/3760 ODP MOTOR	3
3	CHECK VALVE MATCO-NORCA CVC	3
4	BFLY VALVE FW 732	6
5	SUCTION PRESS.GAUGE WIKI 111.10 TAP 1	1
6	DISCHARGE PRESS.GAUGE WIKI 111.10 TAP 1	1
7	THERMAL VALVE J.E.ADAMS 7685 TAP	3

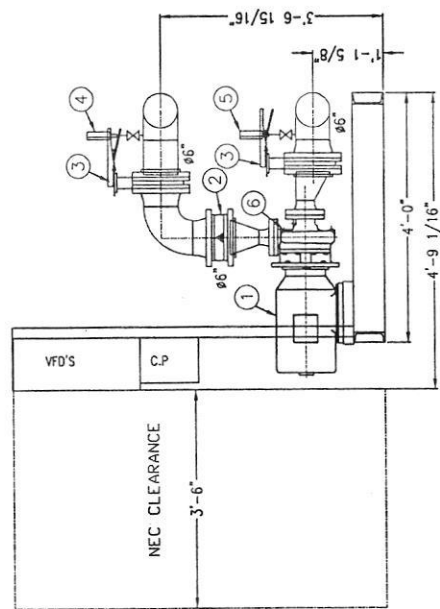
CERTIFIED FOR APPROVAL ONLY X
CERTIFIED FOR CONSTRUCTION _____

REV. DATE	DESCRIPTION
2 7/2/07	PER CUSTOMER REQUEST
1 7/2/07	PER CUSTOMER REQUEST
1 7/2/07	PER CUSTOMER REQUEST

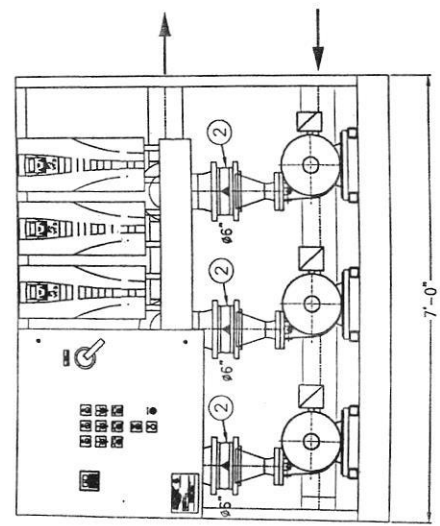
NOTES:
1. CUSTOMER RESPONSIBLE FOR MAINTAINING NEC CLEARANCE SHOWN ON
DRAWING. NEC CLEARANCE AREA SHOULD BE KEPT CLEAR OF
CONSTRUCTION. CLEARANCE DIMENSIONS SHOWN IN PLAN VIEW.
DEPTH OF NEC CLEARANCE NOT SHOWN TO SCALE IN PLAN VIEW.



PLAN VIEW



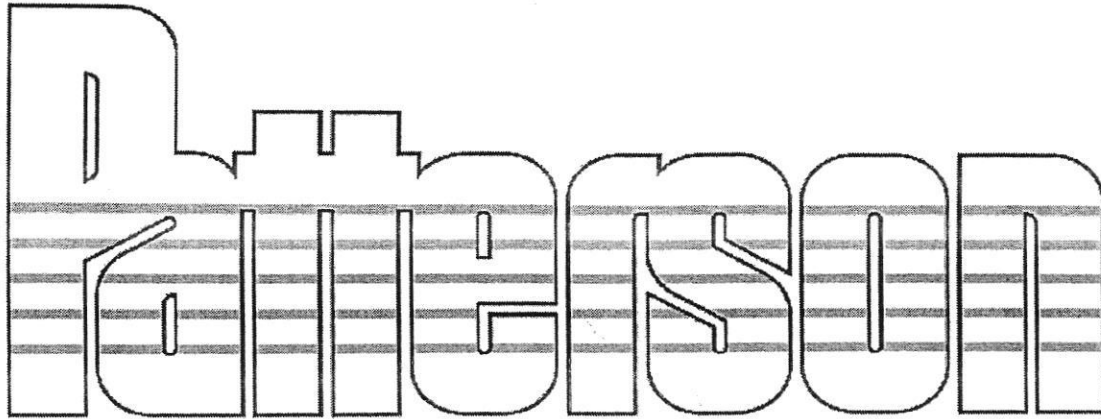
END VIEW



ELEVATION VIEW

SECTION II

PUMPS AND MOTORS



OPERATION & MAINTENANCE MANUAL

For HVES-CC PUMPS

PATTERSON PUMP COMPANY
A SUBSIDIARY OF THE GORMAN-RUPP COMPANY
PO Box 790
9201 Ayersville Road
Toccoa, Georgia 30577
Telephone: 706-886-2101
Fax: 706-886-0023

Revision 1

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

WARNING

Do not operate this equipment in excess of its rated speed or other than in accordance with the instructions contained in this manual.

The equipment has been found satisfactory for the conditions for which it was sold, but its operation in excess of these conditions may subject it to stresses and strains for which it was not designed to withstand.

For equipment covered by this instruction book, it is important to observe safety precautions to protect personnel from possible injury. Among the many considerations, personnel should be instructed to:

- avoid contact with rotating parts
- avoid bypassing or rendering inoperative any safeguards or protective devices
- avoid extended exposure in close proximity to machinery with high noise levels
- use proper care and procedures in handling, lifting, installing, operating and maintaining the equipment
- do not modify this equipment – consult factory if modification is deemed necessary
- do not substitute for repair parts which can be provided by the equipment manufacturer.

Safe maintenance practices with qualified personnel are imperative.

Failure to heed this warning may result in an accident causing personal injury.

INITIAL INSPECTION

Upon delivery of the pumping unit verify that all items on the bill of lading are present. Also verify that the pump unit is not damaged. Immediately report any shortages or any damage to the Freight Company. List the damage or shortages on the bill of lading and the freight bill.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

SECTION I:	General Information	1
SECTION II:	Storage & Protection	1
SECTION III:	Installation	
	3-1 Location.....	2
	3-2 Mounting	2
	3-3 Alignment	2
	3-4 Wiring and Controls.....	3
SECTION IV:	Operation	
	4-1 Starting.....	3
	4-2 Shutdown	4
SECTION V:	Maintenance	5
SECTION VI:	Repairs & Replacement	
	6-1 To Remove Rotor.....	7
	6-2 Disassembly of Rotating Element.....	7
	6-3 Cleaning	7
	6-4 Inspection.....	8
	6-5 Assembly.....	8
	Locating Operation Difficulties	9
	Recommended Spare Parts	11
	Typical Assembly Section	12
	Notes	13

1. Be sure that the motor bearings are lubricated.
2. Unpainted-machined surfaces, which are subject to corrosion, should be protected by some corrosive resistant coating.
3. The shaft should be rotated 10 to 15 revolutions by hand periodically in order to spread the lubricant over all the bearing surfaces. Suitable intervals are from one to three months, depending on atmospheric conditions, etc. In order to insure that the pump shaft does not begin to sag, do not leave the shaft in the same position each time.
4. Space heaters on motors and controllers should be connected and fully operable if atmospheric conditions approach those experienced in operation. Consult instruction manuals for other precautions concerning storage of individual components of pumping unit.
5. Fresh lubricant should be applied to bearings upon removal of equipment from storage.

All pumps are shop serviced and ready for operation when delivered, but there are occasions when considerable time elapses between the delivery date and the time the pump is put into operation. Equipment which is not in service should be kept in a clean, dry area. If equipment is to be stored for long periods of time (six months or more), the following precautions should be taken to insure that the equipment remains in good condition.

STORAGE & PROTECTION

SECTION II

The back pullout design allows for removal of the motor and integral rotating element without disturbing the suction and discharge piping. The suction and discharge nozzles are drilled and tapped for gauge connections. Pump casings are drilled and tapped for complete pump drain. Casing wear rings are provided as standard equipment.

1. Volute assembly or stationary part
2. Rotating element or moving part

The pump consists of two assemblies:

This manual covers the installation, operation and maintenance of Patterson Pump HVES-CC pumps. The pump is a centrifugal, single stage, single suction type furnished with mechanical seals. When properly installed and when given reasonable care and maintenance, centrifugal pumps should operate satisfactorily for a long period of time. Centrifugal pumps use the centrifugal force principal of accelerating the liquid within a rotating impeller, and then collecting it and converting it to pressure head in a stationary volute.

GENERAL INFORMATION

SECTION I

- Check direction of rotation before starting pump. Rotation should be the same as the direction arrow on the case.
- 3. If the pump operates on a suction lift and no foot valve is provided, use a vacuum pump or ejector operated by air, steam, water, etc. to evacuate air from the pump case and suction line by connecting the ejector to the priming connection on top of the pump case.
- 2. If the pump operates on a suction lift and a foot valve is included in the system, fill the pump and the suction line with liquid from an outside source. Trapped air should be allowed to escape through the vent valve while filling.
- 1. If the pump operates under positive pressure, open vent valve on top of the pump casing. After all entrained air has escaped, close the vent valves. Rotate the shaft, if possible, to allow any air trapped in the impeller passages to escape.

Prime the pump in one of the following ways:

- Close discharge valve
- Open the valve in the pump suction line, if fitted
- When possible, turn the pump shaft by hand to insure that the parts do not bind

4-1 Starting:

**SECTION IV
OPERATION**

VOLTAGE.
The electric motor power supply connections must conform to national and local codes. The motor ratings stamped on the motor nameplate must match the line voltage and wire capacity. **DO NOT USE ANY OTHER**

3-3 Wiring and Controls:

Pumps can be mounted on steel bases, raised concrete pads or floor as long as the mounting surface is level. The mounting surface must be solid and rigid enough to support the pump unit without deflection or vibration. To facilitate the leveling of the pump use a spirit level and short pieces of pipe in the threaded nozzles to determine if the pump is level in all directions.

3-2 Mounting:

Several factors should be considered when selecting a location for the pumping unit (pump and drive). The unit should be accessible for both inspection and maintenance. Headroom should be provided for the use of crane, hoist or other necessary lifting devices. The pump should be located as close as possible to the liquid supply so that the suction line is short and direct. Location should require a minimum of elbows and fittings in the discharge line to minimize friction losses. The unit should be protected against flooding.

3-1 Location:

**SECTION III
INSTALLATION**

1. Mechanical seals should be removed, assembled, and/or adjusted according to the seal manufacturer's instructions. There should be no leakage from the volute except for a brief break in period.
2. Check that motor is up to speed; check motor manufacturer instruction for periodic maintenance requirements.
3. Check that electrical control equipment contacts are in good condition and clean.
4. Refer to the "General Pump Inspection and Maintenance Schedule" for best results.

**SECTION V
MAINTENANCE**

1. Close discharge valve.
2. Stop driver.
3. If danger of freezing exists, isolate the pump by closing a valve in the pump suction line, if fitted, and drain the pump completely.

The pump may be stopped with the discharge valve open without causing damage. However, in order to prevent water hammer effects, as a general recommendation the discharge valve should be closed first.

4-2 Shutdown:

NOTE: Should the pump fail to build up pressure or discharge water when the discharge valve is opened, stop the pump and read **Section Locating Operating Difficulties**.

Overheating and/or loss of prime will result if the pump is operated against a closed valve for more than a few minutes.

CAUTION:

Open discharge valve slowly when the pump is up to speed.

Start driver:

- Do not operate without liquid. Pump seals depend on the liquid being pumped for lubrication.
- Make sure pump is primed and that no air is in the suction piping and the pump case.
- Make sure all valves open or closed as required by your specific requirements.

CAUTION:

General Pump Inspection and Maintenance Schedule HVES-CC Pumps

Excludes drivers, VFD's, and controls.

Contact Patterson Pump Company if assistance is needed to determine the inspection and service requirements for a specific pump.

Inspect (✓) or service (•) at the indicated calendar time or run time interval – whichever comes first	Routinely	Monthly	2000 hours or 3 months	4000 hours or 6 months	8000 hours or 12 months
Unusual noise	✓				
Unusual vibration	✓				
Unusual temperature	✓				
Leaks in pump or piping	✓				
Pressure gauge readings	✓				
Visual inspection of equipment general condition	✓				
Anytime a pump is opened, inspect the running clearances and restore them to original specifications if the running clearances have doubled.	✓•				
Anytime a pump is opened, inspect the impeller for corrosion or excessive wear.	✓•				
Mechanical seal (should be no leakage)	✓				
Drain lines are working properly	✓				
Operate the pump		✓			
Perform a comparative field test (flow, pressures and power) with calibrated instruments. Restore internal running clearances if results are unsatisfactory (install new wear rings).					✓•
Perform a comparative vibration test					✓
Inspect sleeve. Replace if worn.					✓•

SECTION VI

REPAIRS AND REPLACEMENT

WARNING!!!

Whenever any disassembly work is to be done on the pump, disconnect the power source to the driver to eliminate any possibility of starting unit. It is advisable that a qualified Pump service technician does the disassembly and reassembly of the pump.

6-1 To Remove Rotor:

Reference: Pump Assembly Section

1. Remove bolts holding the motor (19) to base or floor.
2. Remove bolts holding the volute cover (11) to the casing (1).

3. Pull entire rotating assembly and volute cover (11) from the casing (1). The assembly should be pulled straight out until impeller (2) is clear of the casing.

6-2 Disassembly of Rotating Element:

1. Remove the impeller screw (26) and impeller washer (24).
2. Remove impeller (2). Do not loosen impeller key (32).
3. Remove Bolts from between volute cover (11) and motor (19).
4. Remove volute cover (11).
5. Remove mechanical seal (65) and shaft sleeve (14) with o-ring.
6. Remove deflector (40).

6-3 Cleaning:

WARNING!!!

Petroleum based cleaning solvents are flammable. Smoking or open flames in the vicinity of these solvents is extremely hazardous and must not be permitted. Disregarding this warning could result in grave personal injury.

Clean all metal parts with a solvent. Use a bristle brush (not metal or wire) to remove tightly adhering deposits. A fiber scraper may be used to remove the gasket and shellac from casing flange. Blow dry with clean dry compressed air.

CAUTION:

Never use hydrocarbon liquids (oil or solvent) to clean mechanical seal parts. Use of oil or solvent will deteriorate material used on the seal.

Use mild soap solution to clean seal parts. Use only your finger to remove dirt. Rinse with clean water and dry with mild air stream. Use care not to damage or scratch lapped surfaces.

6-4 Inspection:

Visually inspect parts for damage affecting serviceability. Check o-rings and gaskets for cracks, nicks, or tears; packing rings for excessive compression, fraying or shredding, and embedded particles. Replace if defective in any way. Mount shaft between lathe centers and check eccentricity for entire length of the shaft. Eccentricity should not exceed .002 inches. Bearing surfaces should be smooth; shoulders square and free of nicks.

Measure OD of impeller hub and ID of pump casing. Compute diametrical clearance (ID minus OD) and compare with the original pump specifications. Surfaces must be smooth and concentric. Examine impeller passages for cracks, dents or embedded material. Examine shaft sleeves for wear.

6-5 Assembly:

The following should prove helpful in reassembling the pump:

1. All parts, inside and out, should be clean. Dirt and grit will cause excessive wear, plus needless shutdown.
2. Install the deflector (40) onto the motor shaft (6).

3. Press the mechanical seal (65) into the volute cover (11).
4. Install the volute cover (11) onto the motor (19).
5. Lubricate the O.D. of the shaft sleeve (14) and the I.D. of the opposite half of the mechanical seal using Dow Corning 111 Valve Lubricant & Sealant or equivalent. Press the shaft sleeve (14) through the seal. Coat the interior of the shaft sleeve (14) with Dow Corning 732 Multi Purpose Sealant or equivalent.
6. Press the shaft sleeve (14) onto the shaft (6) and install seal spring.
7. Insert the impeller key (32) into the shaft (6) keyway. Install the impeller (2) onto the shaft (6).
8. Coat the impeller bolt (26) with Loctite 242 Threadlocker or equivalent. Install the impeller washer (24) and bolt (26).
9. Install the casing ring (7) into the casing (1).
10. Install the gasket (73) and position the rotating assembly into the casing (1).
11. Install and tighten casing bolts.
12. Install all NPT fittings and tubing.
13. Rotate by hand when possible to insure that the parts do not bind.

LOCATING OPERATING DIFFICULTIES

In the majority of cases, operating difficulties are external to the pump and the following causes should be carefully investigated before undertaking repairs:

No Water Delivered

- Pump not primed – indicated by no pressure on discharge.
- Speed too low – indicated by low pressure on discharge.
- Valve closed – indicated by high discharge head.
- Impeller completely plugged up – indicated by low discharge pressure.

Abnormally Small Quantities Delivered

- Air leaks in suction pipe or stuffing boxes.
- Speed too low.
- Discharge head higher than anticipated.
- Impeller partially plugged up.
- Obstruction in suction line.

- Mechanical defects: Impeller damaged, casing or seal defective.

Insufficient Pressure

- Speed too low. Might be caused by low voltage or current characteristics different from nameplate reading on the motor.
- Air in water will cause the pump to make a cracking noise.
- Mechanical defects: worn casing rings, impeller damaged, defective casing or seal.

Intermittent Operation

- Leaky suction line.
- Water seal plugged (hence, a leaky stuffing box).
- Suction lift too high.
- Air, gas or vapor in liquid.

Pump Overloads Driver

- Speed too high.
- Head lower than rated, hence, pumping too much water. (This is valid for low specific speed pumps).
- Mechanical defects: stuffing boxes too tight, shaft bent, rotating element binds.
- Rubbing due to foreign matter in the pump between the case ring and the impeller.

Pump Vibrates

- Misalignment.
- Foundation not sufficiently rigid.
- Impeller partially clogged.
- Mechanical defects: bent shaft, rotating element binds, bearings worn, coupling defective.
- Suction and discharge pipes not anchored.
- Pump cavitating from too high a suction lift.
- Air entrainment in the pump suction due to low submergence.

RECOMMENDED SPARE PARTS FOR HVES-CC PUMPS

Reference: Assembly Section

INTERMITTENT DUTY

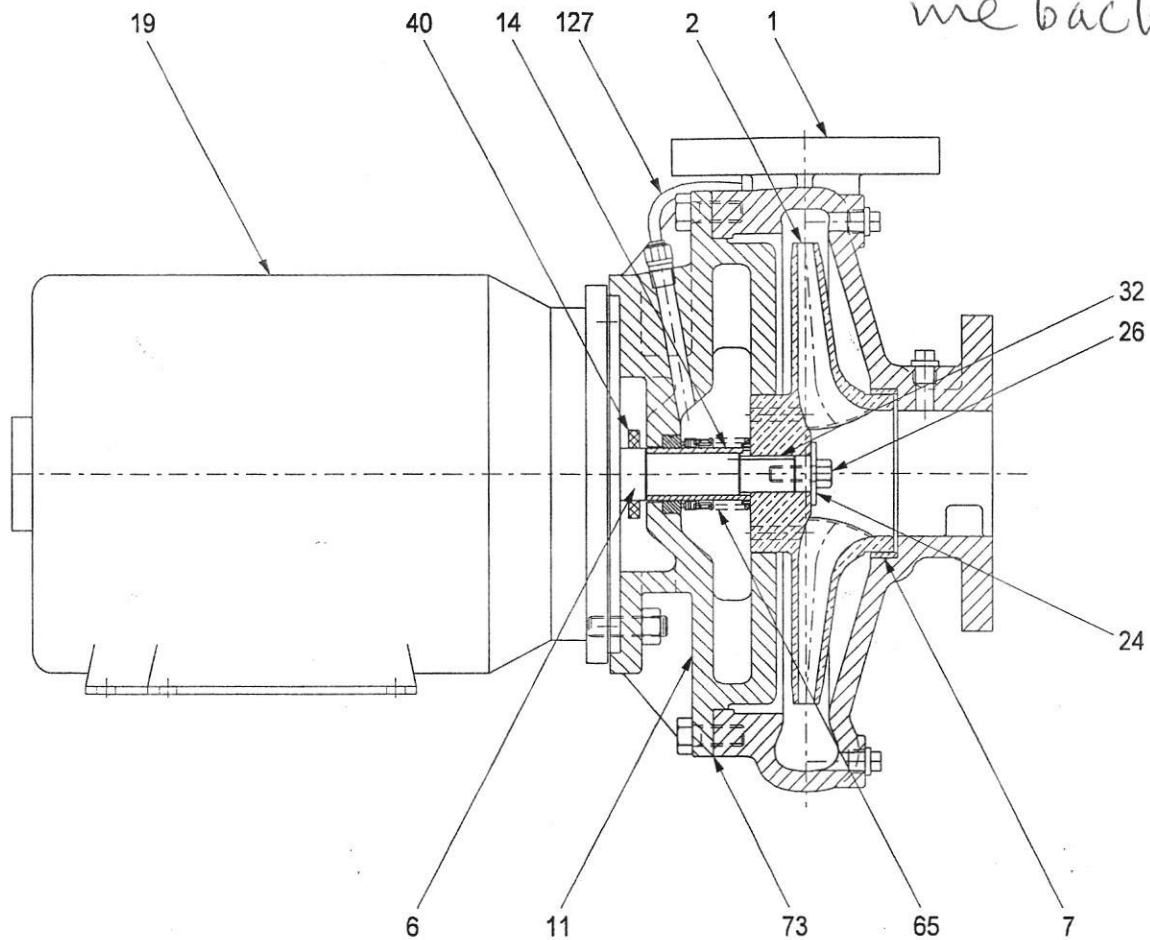
Number	Description
7	Casing Ring
14	Shaft Sleeve
65	Mechanical Seal
73	Gasket (casing)

CONTINUOUS DUTY

Number	Description
2	Impeller
6	Shaft
7	Casing Ring
14	Shaft Sleeve
26	Impeller Screw
40	Deflector
65	Mechanical Seal
	All Hardware (not shown)
73	Gasket (casing)

Attn = Larry

From: JACK (M.W.S.) please call me back



Typical Assembly Section, Type HVES-CC

ITEM	DESCRIPTION	MATERIAL	ITEM	DESCRIPTION	MATERIAL
1	CASING	Cast Iron - ASTM A48-CL30	24	IMPELLER WASHER	Stainless Steel
2	IMPELLER	Bronze - ASTM B584-875	26	IMPELLER SCREW	Stainless Steel - Type 304
6	MOTOR SHAFT	Alloy Steel - AISI 1045	32	IMPELLER KEY	Stainless Steel - ASTM Type 304
7	CASING RING	Bronze - ASTM B505-932	40	DEFLECTOR	Nitrile
11	VOLUTE COVER	Cast Iron - ASTM A48-CL30	65	MECHANICAL SEAL	316 S.S. / Carbon VS. Silicon Carbide
14	SHAFT SLEEVE	Bronze - ASTM B505-932	65	MECHANICAL SEAL (OPTIONAL)	316 S.S. / Tungsten Carbide VS. Tungsten Carbide
14	SHAFT SLEEVE (OPTIONAL)	416 S.S.	73	GASKET	Vellumoid
19	MOTOR	Manufacturer's Standard	127	SEAL PIPING	Polymer



**Integral Horsepower
AC Induction Motors
ODP, WPI, WP II Enclosure
TEFC Enclosure
Explosion Proof**

Installation & Operating Manual

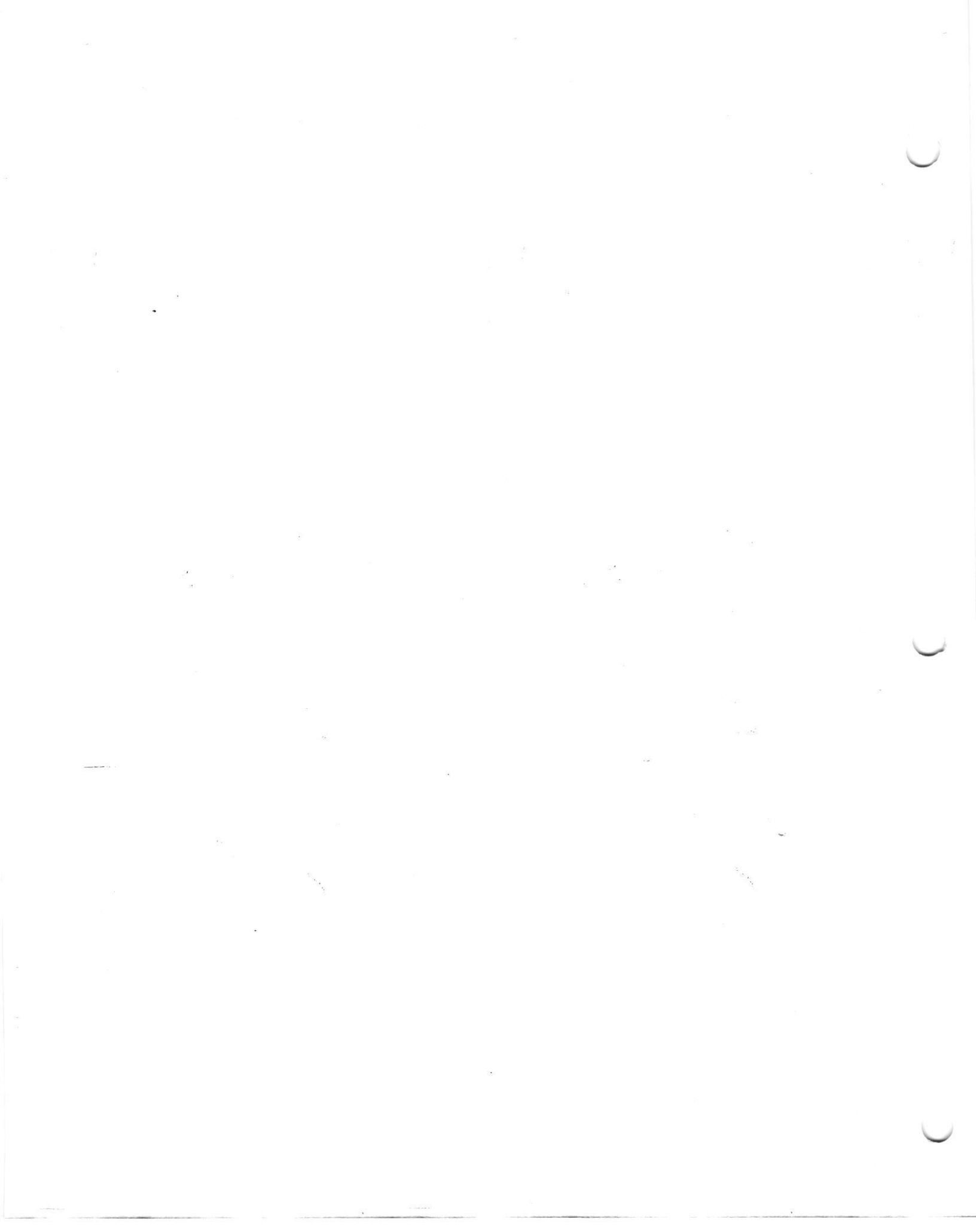


Table of Contents

Section 1	
General Information	1-1
Overview	1-1
Limited Warranty	1-1
Safety Notice	1-2
Receiving	1-4
Storage	1-4
Unpacking	1-4
Handling	1-4
Section 2	
Installation & Operation	2-1
Overview	2-1
Location	2-1
Mounting	2-1
Alignment	2-1
Doweling & Bolting	2-2
Power Connection	2-2
Conduit Box	2-2
AC Power	2-2
First Time Start Up	2-4
Coupled Start Up	2-4
Jogging and Repeated Starts	2-4
Section 3	
Maintenance & Troubleshooting	3-1
General Inspection	3-1
Lubrication & Bearings	3-1
Type of Grease	3-1
Relubrication Intervals	3-1
Relubrication Procedure	3-3
Accessories	3-4
Troubleshooting Chart	3-5

Section 1 General Information

Overview This manual contains general procedures that apply to Baldor Motor products. Be sure to read and understand the Safety Notice statements in this manual. For your protection, do not install, operate or attempt to perform maintenance procedures until you understand the Warning and Caution statements. A Warning statement indicates a possible unsafe condition that can cause harm to personnel. A Caution statement indicates a condition that can cause damage to equipment.

Important: **This instruction manual is not intended to include a comprehensive listing of all details for all procedures required for installation, operation and maintenance. This manual describes general guidelines that apply to most of the motor products shipped by Baldor. If you have a question about a procedure or are uncertain about any detail, Do Not Proceed. Please contact your Baldor distributor for more information or clarification.**

Before you install, operate or perform maintenance, become familiar with the following:

- NEMA Publication MG-2, Safety Standard for Construction and guide for Selection, Installation and Use of Electric Motors and Generators.
- The National Electrical Code
- Local codes and Practices

Limited Warranty

1. Most Baldor products are warranted for 18 months from the date of shipment to Baldor's customer from Baldor's district warehouse or, if applicable, from Baldor's factory. Baldor Standard-E® standard efficient motors are warranted for 24 months. Standard-E is limited to three phase, general purpose, 1-200 HP ratings that fall under the Energy Policy Act (EPAAct). Baldor Super-E® premium efficient motors are warranted for 36 months. Baldor IEEEE841 motors are warranted for 60 months. All warranty claims must be submitted to a Baldor Service Center prior to the expiration of the warranty period.
2. Baldor will, at its option repair or replace a motor which fails due to defects in material or workmanship during the warranty period if:
 - a. the purchaser presents the defective motor at or ships it prepaid to, the Baldor plant in Fort Smith, Arkansas or one of the Baldor Authorized Service Centers and
 - b. the purchaser gives written notification concerning the motor and the claimed defect including the date purchased, the task performed by the Baldor motor and the problem encountered.
3. Baldor will not pay the cost of removal of any electric motor from any equipment, the cost of delivery to Fort Smith, Arkansas or a Baldor Authorized Service Center, or the cost of any incidental or consequential damages resulting from the claimed defects. (Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above exclusion may not apply to you.) Any implied warranty given by laws shall be limited to the duration of the warranty period hereunder. (Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so the above limitation may not apply to you.)
4. Baldor Authorized Service Centers, when convinced to their satisfaction that a Baldor motor developed defects in material or workmanship within the warranty period, are authorized to proceed with the required repairs to fulfill Baldor's warranty when the cost of such repairs to be paid by Baldor does not exceed Baldor's warranty repair allowance. Baldor will not pay overtime premium repair charges without prior written authorization.
5. The cost of warranty repairs made by centers other than Baldor Authorized Service Centers **WILL NOT** be paid unless first authorized in writing by Baldor.
6. Claims by a purchaser that a motor is defective even when a failure results within one hour after being placed into service are not always justified. Therefore, Baldor Authorized Service Centers must determine from the condition of the motor as delivered to the center whether or not the motor is defective. If in the opinion of a Baldor Authorized Service Center, a motor did not fail as a result of defects in material or workmanship, the center is to proceed with repairs only if the purchaser agrees to pay for such repairs. If the decision is in dispute, the purchaser should still pay for the repairs and submit the paid invoice and the Authorized Service Center's signed service report to Baldor for further consideration.
7. This warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights which vary from state to state.

Safety Notice:

This equipment contains high voltage! Electrical shock can cause serious or fatal injury. Only qualified personnel should attempt installation, operation and maintenance of electrical equipment.

Be sure that you are completely familiar with NEMA publication MG-2, safety standards for construction and guide for selection, installation and use of electric motors and generators, the National Electrical Code and local codes and practices. Unsafe installation or use can cause conditions that lead to serious or fatal injury. Only qualified personnel should attempt the installation, operation and maintenance of this equipment.

WARNING: Do not touch electrical connections before you first ensure that power has been disconnected. Electrical shock can cause serious or fatal injury. Only qualified personnel should attempt the installation, operation and maintenance of this equipment.

WARNING: Be sure the system is properly grounded before applying power. Do not apply AC power before you ensure that all grounding instructions have been followed. Electrical shock can cause serious or fatal injury. National Electrical Code and Local codes must be carefully followed.

WARNING: Avoid extended exposure to machinery with high noise levels. Be sure to wear ear protective devices to reduce harmful effects to your hearing.

WARNING: This equipment may be connected to other machinery that has rotating parts or parts that are driven by this equipment. Improper use can cause serious or fatal injury. Only qualified personnel should attempt to install operate or maintain this equipment.

WARNING: Do not by-pass or disable protective devices or safety guards. Safety features are designed to prevent damage to personnel or equipment. These devices can only provide protection if they remain operative.

WARNING: Avoid the use of automatic reset devices if the automatic restarting of equipment can be hazardous to personnel or equipment.

WARNING: Be sure the load is properly coupled to the motor shaft before applying power. The shaft key must be fully captive by the load device. Improper coupling can cause harm to personnel or equipment if the load decouples from the shaft during operation.

WARNING: Use proper care and procedures that are safe during handling, lifting, installing, operating and maintaining operations. Improper methods may cause muscle strain or other harm.

WARNING: Before performing any motor maintenance procedure, be sure that the equipment connected to the motor shaft cannot cause shaft rotation. If the load can cause shaft rotation, disconnect the load from the motor shaft before maintenance is performed. Unexpected mechanical rotation of the motor parts can cause injury or motor damage.

WARNING: Disconnect all electrical power from the motor windings and accessory devices before disassembly of the motor. Electrical shock can cause serious or fatal injury.

WARNING: Do not use non UL/CSA listed explosion proof motors in the presence of flammable or combustible vapors or dust. These motors are not designed for atmospheric conditions that require explosion proof operation.

Safety Notice Continued

WARNING: Motors that are to be used in flammable and/or explosive atmospheres must display the UL label on the nameplate along with CSA listed logo.

Specific service conditions for these motors are defined in NFPA 70 (NEC) Article 500.

WARNING: UL Listed motors must only be serviced by UL Approved Authorized Baldor Service Centers if these motors are to be returned to a hazardous and/or explosive atmosphere.

Caution: To prevent premature equipment failure or damage, only qualified maintenance personnel should perform maintenance.

Caution: Do not over-lubricate motor as this may cause premature bearing failure.

Caution: Do not lift the motor and its driven load by the motor lifting hardware. The motor lifting hardware is adequate for lifting only the motor. Disconnect the load from the motor shaft before moving the motor.

Caution: If eye bolts are used for lifting a motor, be sure they are securely tightened. The lifting direction should not exceed a 20° angle from the shank of the eye bolt or lifting lug. Excessive lifting angles can cause damage.

Caution: To prevent equipment damage, be sure that the electrical service is not capable of delivering more than the maximum motor rated amps listed on the rating plate.

Caution: If a HI POT test (High Potential Insulation test) must be performed, follow the precautions and procedure in NEMA MG1 and MG2 standards to avoid equipment damage.

If you have any questions or are uncertain about any statement or procedure, or if you require additional information please contact your Baldor distributor or an Authorized Baldor Service Center.

Receiving

Each Baldor Electric Motor is thoroughly tested at the factory and carefully packaged for shipment. When you receive your motor, there are several things you should do immediately.

1. Observe the condition of the shipping container and report any damage immediately to the commercial carrier that delivered your motor.
2. Verify that the part number of the motor you received is the same as the part number listed on your purchase order.

Storage

If the motor is not put into service immediately, the motor must be stored in a clean, dry and warm location. Several precautionary steps must be performed to avoid motor damage during storage.

1. Use a "Megger" periodically to ensure that the integrity of the winding insulation has been maintained. Record the Megger readings. Immediately investigate any significant drop in insulation resistance.
2. Do not lubricate bearings during storage. Motor bearings are packed with grease at the factory. Excessive grease can damage insulation quality.
3. Rotate motor shaft at least 10 turns every two months during storage (more frequently if possible). This will prevent bearing damage due to storage.
4. If the storage location is damp or humid, the motor windings must be protected from moisture. This can be done by applying power to the motors' space heater (if available) while the motor is in storage.

Unpacking

Each Baldor motor is packaged for ease of handling and to prevent entry of contaminants.

1. To avoid condensation inside the motor, do not unpack until the motor has reached room temperature. (Room temperature is the temperature of the room in which it will be installed). The packing provides insulation from temperature changes during transportation.
2. When the motor has reached room temperature, remove all protective wrapping material from the motor.

Handling

The motor should be lifted using the lifting lugs or eye bolts provided.

1. Use the lugs or eye bolts provided to lift the motor. Never attempt to lift the motor and additional equipment connected to the motor by this method. The lugs or eye bolts provided are designed to lift only the motor. Never lift the motor by the motor shaft or the hood of a WP11 motor.
2. When lifting a WP11 (Weather Proof Type 2) motor, do not lift the motor by inserting lifting lugs into holes on top of the cooling hood. These lugs are to be used for hood removal only. A spreader bar should be used to lift the motor by the cast lifting lugs located on the motor frame.
3. If the motor must be mounted to a plate with the driven equipment such as pump, compressor etc., it may not be possible to lift the motor alone. For this case, the assembly should be lifted by a sling around the mounting base. The entire assembly can be lifted as an assembly for installation. Do not lift using the motor lugs or eye bolts provided.

If the load is unbalanced (as with couplings or additional attachments) additional slings or other means must be used to prevent tipping. In any event, the load must be secure before lifting.

Section 2 Installation & Operation

Overview

Installation should conform to the National Electrical Code as well as local codes and practices. When other devices are coupled to the motor shaft, be sure to install protective devices to prevent future accidents. Some protective devices include, coupling, belt guard, chain guard, shaft covers etc. These protect against accidental contact with moving parts. Machinery that is accessible to personnel should provide further protection in the form of guard rails, screening, warning signs etc.

Location

It is important that motors be installed in locations that are compatible with motor enclosure and ambient conditions. Improper selection of the motor enclosure and ambient conditions can lead to reduced operating life of the motor.

Proper ventilation for the motor must be provided. Obstructed airflow can lead to reduction of motor life.

1. **Open Drip-Proof/WPI** motors are intended for use indoors where atmosphere is relatively clean, dry, well ventilated and non-corrosive.
2. **Totally Enclosed and WPII** motors may be installed where dirt, moisture or dust are present and in outdoor locations.

Severe Duty, IEEE 841 and Washdown Duty enclosed motors are designed for installations with high corrosion or excessive moisture conditions. These motors should not be placed into an environment where there is the presence of flammable or combustible vapors, dust or any combustible material, unless specifically designed for this type of service.

Mounting

The motor must be securely installed to a rigid foundation or mounting surface to minimize vibration and maintain alignment between the motor and shaft load. Failure to provide a proper mounting surface may cause vibration, misalignment and bearing damage.

Foundation caps and sole plates are designed to act as spacers for the equipment they support. If these devices are used, be sure that they are evenly supported by the foundation or mounting surface.

After installation is complete and accurate alignment of the motor and load is accomplished, the base should be grouted to the foundation to maintain this alignment.

The standard motor base is designed for horizontal or vertical mounting. Adjustable or sliding rails are designed for horizontal mounting only. Consult your Baldor distributor or authorized Baldor Service Center for further information.

Alignment

Accurate alignment of the motor with the driven equipment is extremely important.

1. **Direct Coupling**

For direct drive, use flexible couplings if possible. Consult the drive or equipment manufacturer for more information. Mechanical vibration and roughness during operation may indicate poor alignment. Use dial indicators to check alignment. The space between coupling hubs should be maintained as recommended by the coupling manufacturer.

2. **End-Play Adjustment**

The axial position of the motor frame with respect to its load is also extremely important. The motor bearings are not designed for excessive external axial thrust loads. Improper adjustment will cause failure.

3. **Pulley Ratio**

The pulley ratio should not exceed 8:1.

4. **Belt Drive**

Align sheaves carefully to minimize belt wear and axial bearing loads (see End-Play Adjustment). Belt tension should be sufficient to prevent belt slippage at rated speed and load. However, belt slippage may occur during starting.

Caution: Do not over tension belts.

5. Sleeve bearing motors are only suitable for coupled loads.

Doweling & Bolting

After proper alignment is verified, dowel pins should be inserted through the motor feet into the foundation. This will maintain the correct motor position should motor removal be required. (Baldor motors are designed for doweling.)

1. Drill dowel holes in diagonally opposite motor feet in the locations provided.
2. Drill corresponding holes in the foundation.
3. Ream all holes.
4. Install proper fitting dowels.
5. Mounting bolts must be carefully tightened to prevent changes in alignment. Use a flat washer and lock washer under each nut or bolt head to hold the motor feet secure. Flanged nuts or bolts may be used as an alternative to washers.

Power Connection

Motor and control wiring, overload protection, disconnects, accessories and grounding should conform to the National Electrical Code and local codes and practices.

Conduit Box

For ease of making connections, an oversize conduit box is provided. The box can be rotated 360° in 90° increments. Auxiliary conduit boxes are provided on some motors for accessories such as space heaters, RTD's etc.

AC Power

Connect the motor leads as shown on the connection diagram located on the name plate or inside the cover on the conduit box. Be sure the following guidelines are met:

1. AC power is within $\pm 10\%$ of rated voltage with rated frequency. (See motor name plate for ratings).
OR
2. AC power is within $\pm 5\%$ of rated frequency with rated voltage.
OR
3. A combined variation in voltage and frequency of $\pm 10\%$ (sum of absolute values) of rated values, provided the frequency variation does not exceed $\pm 5\%$ of rated frequency.

Performance within these voltage and frequency variations are shown in Figure 2-2.

Figure 2-1 Accessory Connections

HEATERS



One heater is installed in each end of motor.
Leads for each heater are labeled H1 & H2.
(Like numbers should be tied together).

THERMISTERS



Three thermistors are installed in windings and tied in series.
Leads are labeled T1 & T2.

WINDING RTDS



Winding RTDs are installed in windings (2) per phase.
Each set of leads is labeled W1, W2, W3, W4, W5, & W6.

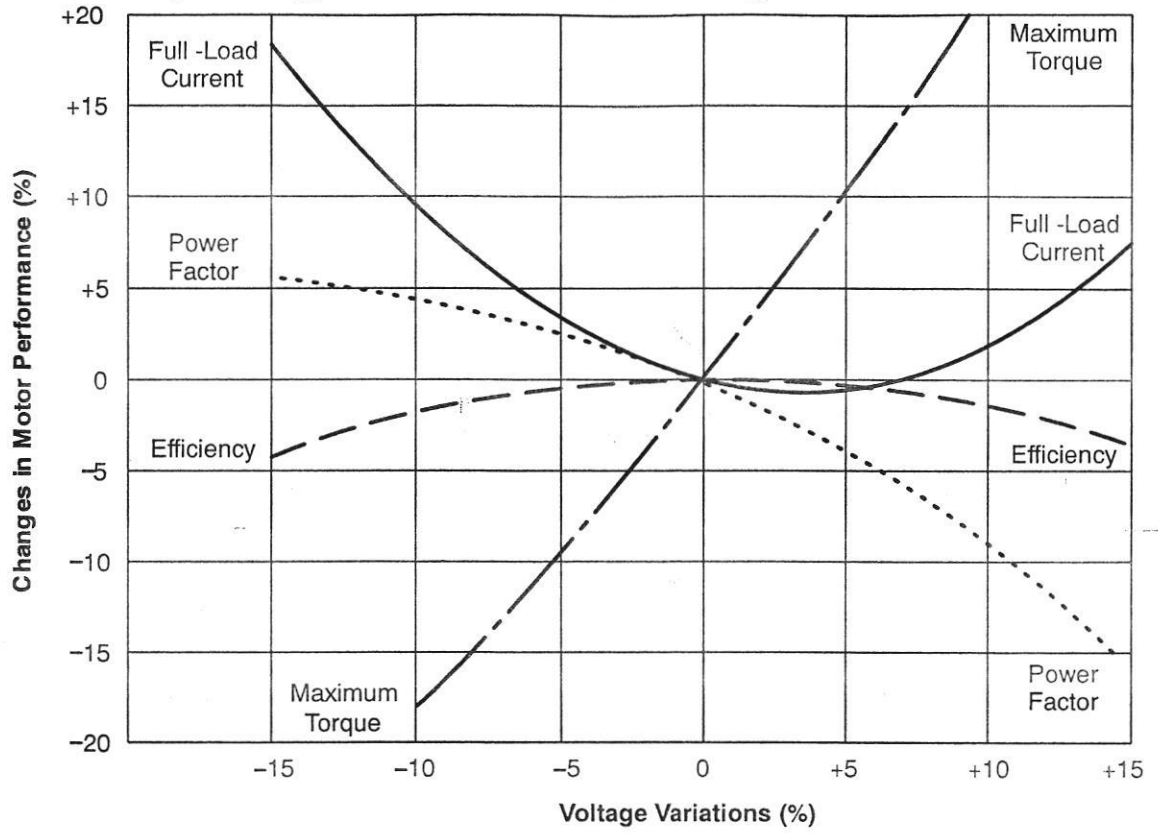
BEARING RTD



- * One bearing RTD is installed in Drive endplate (PUEP), leads are labeled RTDDE.
- * One bearing RTD is installed in Opposite Drive endplate (FREP), leads are labeled RTDODE.

* Note RTD may have 2-Red/1-White leads; or 2-White/1-Red Lead.

Figure 2-2 Typical Motor Performance VS Voltage Variations



First Time Start Up

Be sure that all power to motor and accessories is off. Be sure the motor shaft is disconnected from the load and will not cause mechanical rotation of the motor shaft.

1. Make sure that the mechanical installation is secure. All bolts and nuts are tightened etc.
2. If motor has been in storage or idle for some time, check winding insulation integrity with a Megger.
3. Inspect all electrical connections for proper termination, clearance, mechanical strength and electrical continuity.
4. Be sure all shipping materials and braces (if used) are removed from motor shaft.
5. Manually rotate the motor shaft to ensure that it rotates freely.
6. Replace all panels and covers that were removed during installation.
7. Momentarily apply power and check the direction of rotation of the motor shaft.
8. If motor rotation is wrong, be sure power is off and change the motor lead connections. Verify rotation direction before you continue.
9. Start the motor and ensure operation is smooth without excessive vibration or noise. If so, run the motor for 1 hour with no load connected.
10. After 1 hour of operation, disconnect power and connect the load to the motor shaft. Verify all coupling guards and protective devices are installed. Ensure motor is properly ventilated.

Coupled Start Up

This procedure assumes a coupled start up. Also, that the first time start up procedure was successful.

1. Check the coupling and ensure that all guards and protective devices are installed.
2. Check that the coupling is properly aligned and not binding.
3. The first coupled start up should be with no load. Apply power and verify that the load is not transmitting excessive vibration back to the motor through the coupling or the foundation. Vibration should be at an acceptable level.
4. Run for approximately 1 hour with the driven equipment in an unloaded condition.

The equipment can now be loaded and operated within specified limits. Do not exceed the name plate ratings for amperes for steady continuous loads.

Jogging and Repeated Starts Repeated starts and/or jogs of induction motors generally reduce the life of the motor winding insulation. A much greater amount of heat is produced by each acceleration or jog than by the same motor under full load. If it is necessary to repeatedly start or jog the motor, it is advisable to check the application with your local Baldor distributor or Baldor Service Center.

Heating - Duty rating and maximum ambient temperature are stated on the motor name plate. Do not exceed these values. If there is any question regarding safe operation, contact your local Baldor distributor or Baldor Service Center.

Section 3 Maintenance & Troubleshooting

WARNING: UL Listed motors must only be serviced by UL Approved Authorized Baldor Service Centers if these motors are to be returned to a hazardous and/or explosive atmosphere.

General Inspection

Inspect the motor at regular intervals, approximately every 500 hours of operation or every 3 months, whichever occurs first. Keep the motor clean and the ventilation openings clear. The following steps should be performed at each inspection:

WARNING: Do not touch electrical connections before you first ensure that power has been disconnected. Electrical shock can cause serious or fatal injury. Only qualified personnel should attempt the installation, operation and maintenance of this equipment.

1. Check that the motor is clean. Check that the interior and exterior of the motor is free of dirt, oil, grease, water, etc. Oily vapor, paper pulp, textile lint, etc. can accumulate and block motor ventilation. If the motor is not properly ventilated, overheating can occur and cause early motor failure.
2. Use a "Megger" periodically to ensure that the integrity of the winding insulation has been maintained. Record the Megger readings. Immediately investigate any significant drop in insulation resistance.
3. Check all electrical connectors to be sure that they are tight.

Relubrication & Bearings

Bearing grease will lose its lubricating ability over time, not suddenly. The lubricating ability of a grease (over time) depends primarily on the type of grease, the size of the bearing, the speed at which the bearing operates and the severity of the operating conditions. Good results can be obtained if the following recommendations are used in your maintenance program.

Type of Grease

A high grade ball or roller bearing grease should be used. Recommended grease for standard service conditions is Polyrex EM (Exxon Mobil).

Equivalent and compatible greases include:

Texaco Polystar, Rykon Premium #2, Pennzoil Pen 2 Lube and Chevron SRI.

Relubrication Intervals

Recommended relubrication intervals are shown in Table 3-1. It is important to realize that the recommended intervals of Table 3-1 are based on average use.

Refer to additional information contained in Tables 3-2, 3-3 and 3-4.

Table 3-1 Relubrication Intervals *

NEMA / (IEC) Frame Size	Rated Speed - RPM					
	10000	6000	3600	1800	1200	900
Up to 210 incl. (132)	**	2700 Hrs.	5500 Hrs.	12000 Hrs.	18000 Hrs.	22000 Hrs.
Over 210 to 280 incl. (180)		**	3600 Hrs.	9500 Hrs.	15000 Hrs.	18000 Hrs.
Over 280 to 360 incl. (225)		**	* 2200 Hrs.	7400 Hrs.	12000 Hrs.	15000 Hrs.
Over 360 to 5800 incl. (300)		**	*2200 Hrs.	3500 Hrs.	7400 Hrs.	10500 Hrs.

* Relubrication intervals are for ball bearings.

For vertically mounted motors and roller bearings, divide the relubrication interval by 2.

** For motors operating at speeds greater than 3600 RPM, contact Baldor for relubrication recommendations.

Table 3-2 Service Conditions

Severity of Service	Hours per day of Operation	Ambient Temperature Maximum	Atmospheric Contamination
Standard	8	40° C	Clean, Little Corrosion
Severe	16 Plus	50° C	Moderate dirt, Corrosion
Extreme	16 Plus	>50° C* or Class H Insulation	Severe dirt, Abrasive dust, Corrosion, Heavy Shock or Vibration
Low Temperature		<-29° C **	

* Special high temperature grease is recommended (Dow Corning DC44). Note that Dow Corning DC44 grease does not mix with other grease types. Thoroughly clean bearing & cavity before adding grease.

** Special low temperature grease is recommended (Aeroshell 7).

Table 3-3 Relubrication Interval Multiplier

Severity of Service	Multiplier
Standard	1.0
Severe	0.5
Extreme	0.1
Low Temperature	1.0

Some motor designs use different bearings on each motor end. This is normally indicated on the motor nameplate. In this case, the larger bearing is installed on the motor Drive endplate. For best relubrication results, only use the appropriate amount of grease for each bearing size (not the same for both).

Table 3-4 Bearings Sizes and Types

Frame Size NEMA (IEC)	Bearing Description (These are the "Large" bearings (Shaft End) in each frame size)			
	Bearing	Weight of Grease to add * oz (Grams)	Volume of grease to be added	
			in ³	teaspoon
56 to 140 (90)	6203	0.08 (2.4)	0.15	0.5
140 (90)	6205	0.15 (3.9)	0.2	0.8
180 (100-112)	6206	0.19 (5.0)	0.3	1.0
210 (132)	6307	0.30 (8.4)	0.6	2.0
250 (160)	6309	0.47 (12.5)	0.7	2.5
280 (180)	6311	0.61 (17)	1.2	3.9
320 (200)	6312	0.76 (20.1)	1.2	4.0
360 (225)	6313	0.81 (23)	1.5	5.2
400 (250)	6316	1.25 (33)	2.0	6.6
440 (280)	6319	2.12 (60)	4.1	13.4
5000 to 5800 (315-450)	6328	4.70 (130)	9.2	30.0
5000 to 5800 (315-450)	NU328	4.70 (130)	9.2	30.0
360 to 449 (225-280)	NU319	2.12 (60)	4.1	13.4
AC Induction Servo				
76 Frame 180 (112)	6207	0.22 (6.1)	0.44	1.4
77 Frame 210 (132)	6210	0.32 (9.0)	0.64	2.1
80 Frame 250(160)	6213	0.49 (14.0)	0.99	3.3

* Weight in grams = .005 DB of grease to be added

Note: Not all bearing sizes are listed. For intermediate bearing sizes, use the grease volume for the next larger size bearing.

Caution: To avoid damage to motor bearings, grease must be kept free of dirt. For an extremely dirty environment, contact your Baldor distributor or an authorized Baldor Service Center for additional information.

Relubrication Procedure Be sure that the grease you are adding to the motor is compatible with the grease already in the motor. Consult your Baldor distributor or an authorized service center if a grease other than the recommended type is to be used.

Caution: Do not over-lubricate motor as this may cause premature bearing failure.

With Grease Outlet Plug

1. With the motor stopped, clean all grease fittings with a clean cloth.
2. Remove grease outlet plug.

Caution: Over-lubricating can cause excessive bearing temperatures, premature lubrication breakdown and bearing failure.

3. Add the recommended amount of grease.
4. Operate the motor for 15 minutes with grease plug removed. This allows excess grease to purge.
5. Re-install grease outlet plug.

Without Grease Provisions

Note: Only a Baldor authorized and UL or CSA certified service center can disassemble a UL/CSA listed explosion proof motor to maintain it's UL/CSA listing.

1. Disassemble the motor.
2. Add recommended amount of grease to bearing and bearing cavity. (Bearing should be about 1/3 full of grease and outboard bearing cavity should be about 1/2 full of grease.)
3. Assemble the motor.

Sample Relubrication Determination

Assume - NEMA 286T (IEC 180), 1750 RPM motor driving an exhaust fan in an ambient temperature of 43° C and the atmosphere is moderately corrosive.

1. Table 3-1 list 9500 hours for standard conditions.
2. Table 3-2 classifies severity of service as "Severe".
3. Table 3-4 shows that 1.2 in³ or 3.9 teaspoon of grease is to be added.

Note: Smaller bearings in size category may require reduced amounts of grease.

Table 3-5 Troubleshooting Chart

Symptom	Possible Causes	Possible Solutions
Motor will not start	Usually caused by line trouble, such as, single phasing at the starter.	Check source of power. Check overloads, fuses, controls, etc.
Excessive humming	High Voltage.	Check input line connections.
	Eccentric air gap.	Have motor serviced at local Baldor service center.
Motor Over Heating	Overload. Compare actual amps (measured) with nameplate rating.	Locate and remove source of excessive friction in motor or load. Reduce load or replace with motor of greater capacity.
	Single Phasing.	Check current at all phases (should be approximately equal) to isolate and correct the problem.
	Improper ventilation.	Check external cooling fan to be sure air is moving properly across cooling fins. Excessive dirt build-up on motor. Clean motor.
	Unbalanced voltage.	Check voltage at all phases (should be approximately equal) to isolate and correct the problem.
	Rotor rubbing on stator.	Check air gap clearance and bearings. Tighten "Thru Bolts".
	Over voltage or under voltage.	Check input voltage at each phase to motor.
	Open stator winding.	Check stator resistance at all three phases for balance.
	Grounded winding.	Perform dielectric test and repair as required.
	Improper connections.	Inspect all electrical connections for proper termination, clearance, mechanical strength and electrical continuity. Refer to motor lead connection diagram.
Bearing Over Heating	Misalignment.	Check and align motor and driven equipment.
	Excessive belt tension.	Reduce belt tension to proper point for load.
	Excessive end thrust.	Reduce the end thrust from driven machine.
	Excessive grease in bearing.	Remove grease until cavity is approximately $\frac{3}{4}$ filled.
	Insufficient grease in bearing.	Add grease until cavity is approximately $\frac{3}{4}$ filled.
	Dirt in bearing.	Clean bearing cavity and bearing. Repack with correct grease until cavity is approximately $\frac{3}{4}$ filled.
Vibration	Misalignment.	Check and align motor and driven equipment.
	Rubbing between rotating parts and stationary parts.	Isolate and eliminate cause of rubbing.
	Rotor out of balance.	Have rotor balance checked and repaired at your Baldor Service Center.
	Resonance.	Tune system or contact your Baldor Service Center for assistance.
Noise	Foreign material in air gap or ventilation openings.	Remove rotor and foreign material. Reinstall rotor. Check insulation integrity. Clean ventilation openings.
Growling or whining	Bad bearing.	Replace bearing. Clean all grease from cavity and new bearing. Repack with correct grease until cavity is approximately $\frac{3}{4}$ filled.

Suggested bearing and winding RTD setting guidelines

Most large frame AC Baldor motors with a 1.15 service factor are designed to operate below a Class B (80°C) temperature rise at rated load and are built with a Class H winding insulation system. Based on this low temperature rise, RTD (Resistance Temperature Detectors) settings for Class B rise should be used as a starting point. Some motors with 1.0 service factor have Class F temperature rise.

The following tables show the suggested alarm and trip settings for RTDs. Proper bearing and winding RTD alarm and trip settings should be selected based on these tables unless otherwise specified for specific applications.

If the driven load is found to operate well below the initial temperature settings under normal conditions, the alarm and trip settings may be reduced so that an abnormal machine load will be identified.

The temperature limits are based on the installation of the winding RTDs imbedded in the winding as specified by NEMA. Bearing RTDs should be installed so they are in contact with the outer race on ball or roller bearings or in direct contact with the sleeve bearing shell.

Winding RTDs – Temperature Limit In °C (40°C Maximum Ambient)

Motor Load	Class B Temp Rise ≤ 80°C (Typical Design)		Class F Temp Rise ≤ 105°C		Class H Temp Rise ≤ 125°C	
	Alarm	Trip	Alarm	Trip	Alarm	Trip
≤ Rated Load	130	140	155	165	175	185
Rated Load to 1.15 S.F.	140	150	160	165	180	185

Note: • Winding RTDs are factory production installed, not from Mod-Express.

• When Class H temperatures are used, consider bearing temperatures and relubrication requirements.

Bearing RTDs – Temperature Limit In °C (40°C Maximum Ambient)

Bearing Type Oil or Grease	Anti-Friction		Sleeve	
	Alarm	Trip	Alarm	Trip
Standard*	95	100	85	95
High Temperature**	110	115	105	110

Note: * Bearing temperature limits are for standard design motors operating at Class B temperature rise.

** High temperature lubricants include some special synthetic oils and greases.

Greases that may be substituted that are compatible with Polyrex EM (but considered as "standard" lubricants) include the following:

- | | | |
|--------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| - Texaco Polystar | - Rykon Premium #2 | - Chevron SRI #2 |
| - Mobilith SHC-100 | - Pennzoil Pennzlube EM-2 | - Chevron Black Pearl |
| - Darmex 707 | - Darmex 711 | - Petro-Canada Peerless LLG |

See the motor nameplate for replacement grease or oil recommendation.
Contact Baldor application engineering for special lubricants or further clarifications.

Baldor District Offices Baldor District Offices Baldor District Offices

UNITED STATES
ARIZONA
 PHOENIX 4211 S 43RD PLACE
 PHONE: 602 470 0407
 FAX: 602 470 0407
ARKANSAS
 CLARKSVILLE 1001 COLLEGE AVE
 CLARKSVILLE AR 72830
 PHONE: 479 754 9108
 FAX: 479 754 9205
CALIFORNIA
 LOS ANGELES 6480 FLOTTILA
 COMMERCE CA 90040
 PHONE: 763 428 3533
 FAX: 763 428 4551
MISSOURI
 ST LOUIS 422 INDUSTRIAL DRIVE
 MARLAND HEIGHTS, MO 63043
 PHONE: 314 298 1800
 FAX: 314 298 7550
KANSAS
 KANSAS CITY 1501 BEDFORD AVENUE
 NORTH KANSAS CITY MO 64116
 PHONE: 816 587 0272
 FAX: 816 587 3735
NEW YORK
 AUBURN 303 995 3772
 DENVER, CO 80204
 2520 W BARBERRY PLACE
 DENVER
 PHONE: 303 623 0127
 FAX: 303 995 3772
CONNECTICUT
 WALLINGFORD 66 SOUTH TURNPIKE ROAD
 WALLINGFORD, CT 06492
 PHONE: 203 269 1354
 FAX: 813 241 2964
GEORGIA
 ATLANTA 62 TECHNOLOGY DR.
 ALPHARETTA, GA 30005
 PHONE: 770 772 7000
 FAX: 770 772 7200
ILLINOIS
 CHICAGO 1601 FRONTENAC ROAD
 NAPERVILLE, IL 60563
 PHONE: 630 848 5100
 FAX: 630 848 5110
INDIANA
 INDIANAPOLIS 5525 W. MINNESOTA STREET
 INDIANAPOLIS, IN 46241
 PHONE: 317 246 5100
 FAX: 317 246 5110
OREGON
 PORTLAND 20393 SW AVERY COURT
 TUALATIN, OR 97062
 PHONE: 503 691 9010
 FAX: 503 691 9012
PENNSYLVANIA
 PHILADELPHIA 1035 THOMAS BUSCH
 MEMORIAL HIGHWAY
 PENNSAUKEN, NJ 08110
 PHONE: 856 661 1442
 FAX: 856 663 6363
PITTSBURGH
 158 PROMINENCE DRIVE
 NEW KENSINGTON, PA 15068
 PHONE: 724 889 0092
 FAX: 724 889 0094
TENNESSEE
 MEMPHIS 4000 WINCHESTER ROAD
 MEMPHIS, TN 38118
 PHONE: 901 365 2020
 FAX: 901 365 3914

MICHIGAN
 DETROIT 33782 STERLING PONDS BLVD
 STERLING HEIGHTS, MI 48312
 PHONE: 586 978 9800
 FAX: 586 978 9989
GRAND RAPIDS
 668 THREE MILE ROAD NW
 GRAND RAPIDS, MI 49504
 PHONE: 616 785 1784
 FAX: 616 785 1788
MINNESOTA
 MINNEAPOLIS 21080 134TH AVE, NORTH
 ROGERS, MN 55374
 PHONE: 763 428 3533
 FAX: 763 428 4551
UTAH
 SALT LAKE CITY 2230 SOUTH MAIN STREET
 SALT LAKE CITY, UT 84115
 PHONE: 801 832 0127
 FAX: 801 832 8911
WISCONSIN
 MILWAUKEE 2725 SOUTH 163RD STREET
 NEW BERLIN, WI 53151
 PHONE: 262 784 5940
 FAX: 262 784 1215
INTERNATIONAL SALES
 FORT SMITH, AR
 P.O. BOX 2400
 FORT SMITH, AR 72902
 PHONE: 479 646 4711
 FAX: 479 646 5895
CANADA
 EDMONTON, ALBERTA 4053 92 STREET
 EDMONTON, ALBERTA T6E 6R8
 PHONE: 780 434 9000
 FAX: 780 438 2600
OKLAHOMA
 TULSA 2 EAST DAWES
 BIXBY, OK 74008
 PHONE: 918 366 9320
 FAX: 918 366 9338
PORTLAND
 20393 SW AVERY COURT
 TUALATIN, OR 97062
 PHONE: 503 691 9010
 FAX: 503 691 9012
PENNSYLVANIA
 PHILADELPHIA 1035 THOMAS BUSCH
 MEMORIAL HIGHWAY
 PENNSAUKEN, NJ 08110
 PHONE: 856 661 1442
 FAX: 856 663 6363
PITTSBURGH
 158 PROMINENCE DRIVE
 NEW KENSINGTON, PA 15068
 PHONE: 724 889 0092
 FAX: 724 889 0094
TENNESSEE
 MEMPHIS 4000 WINCHESTER ROAD
 MEMPHIS, TN 38118
 PHONE: 901 365 2020
 FAX: 901 365 3914

CHINA
 HOUSTON 4647 PINE TIMBERS
 SUITE # 135
 HOUSTON, TX 77041
 PHONE: 713 885 7062
 FAX: 713 890 4540
DALLAS
 3040 QUEBEC
 DALLAS, TX 75247
 PHONE: 214 634 2271
 FAX: 214 634 8874
UTAH
 SALT LAKE CITY 2230 SOUTH MAIN STREET
 SALT LAKE CITY, UT 84115
 PHONE: 801 832 0127
 FAX: 801 832 8911
WISCONSIN
 MILWAUKEE 2725 SOUTH 163RD STREET
 NEW BERLIN, WI 53151
 PHONE: 262 784 5940
 FAX: 262 784 1215
INTERNATIONAL SALES
 FORT SMITH, AR
 P.O. BOX 2400
 FORT SMITH, AR 72902
 PHONE: 479 646 4711
 FAX: 479 646 5895
CANADA
 EDMONTON, ALBERTA 4053 92 STREET
 EDMONTON, ALBERTA T6E 6R8
 PHONE: 780 434 9000
 FAX: 780 438 2600
OKLAHOMA
 TULSA 2 EAST DAWES
 BIXBY, OK 74008
 PHONE: 918 366 9320
 FAX: 918 366 9338
PORTLAND
 20393 SW AVERY COURT
 TUALATIN, OR 97062
 PHONE: 503 691 9010
 FAX: 503 691 9012
PENNSYLVANIA
 PHILADELPHIA 1035 THOMAS BUSCH
 MEMORIAL HIGHWAY
 PENNSAUKEN, NJ 08110
 PHONE: 856 661 1442
 FAX: 856 663 6363
PITTSBURGH
 158 PROMINENCE DRIVE
 NEW KENSINGTON, PA 15068
 PHONE: 724 889 0092
 FAX: 724 889 0094
TENNESSEE
 MEMPHIS 4000 WINCHESTER ROAD
 MEMPHIS, TN 38118
 PHONE: 901 365 2020
 FAX: 901 365 3914

TAIWAN
 NANJUN DISTRICT, TAICHUNG CITY 408
 TAINAN R.O.C
 PHONE: (866) 4 238 04235
 FAX: (886) 4 238 04463
UNITED KINGDOM
 6 BRISTOL DISTRIBUTION PARK
 HAWKLEY DRIVE
 BRISTOL BS32 0BF U.K.
 PHONE: +44 1454 850000
 FAX: +44 1454 859001

AUSTRALIA
 2 KB WAREHOUSE COMPLEX
 SINGAPORE
 PHONE: 647 590 6547
 FAX: 647 590 5587
SINGAPORE
 2 KB WAREHOUSE COMPLEX
 SINGAPORE
 PHONE: 647 590 6547
 FAX: 647 590 5587
AUSTRALIA
 51 KAKI BUKIT ROAD
 SINGAPORE
 PHONE: 647 590 6547
 FAX: 647 590 5587
SWITZERLAND
 POSTFACH 73
 SCHUTZENSTRASSE 59
 CH 8245 FEUER THALEN
 SWITZERLAND
 PHONE: +41 52 847 4700
 FAX: +41 52 859 2394
AMERICA DEL SUR
 APTDO. 0818 00440
 CIUDAD DE PANAMA, PANAMA
 PHONE: +507 261 5347
 FAX: +507 261 5355
CENTRO AMERICA Y CARIBE
 RESIDENCIAL PINARES DE SUIZA
 POL. 15 #44,
 NVA. SAN SALVADOR, EL SALVADOR
 PHONE: +503 2288 1619
 FAX: +503 2288 1518

MEXICO
 KM. 20 BLVD. AL AEROPUERTO,
 LEON 37545, GUANAJUATO,
 MEXICO
 PHONE: 52 477 761 2030
 FAX: 52 477 761 2010
MIDDLE EAST & NORTH AFRICA
 VSE INTERNATIONAL CORP
 3233 NORTH ARLINGTON HEIGHTS
 SUITE 100W
 ARLINGTON HEIGHTS, IL 60004
 PHONE: 847 590 6547
 FAX: 847 590 5587
AUSTRALIA
 2 KB WAREHOUSE COMPLEX
 SINGAPORE
 PHONE: 647 590 6547
 FAX: 647 590 5587
SINGAPORE
 2 KB WAREHOUSE COMPLEX
 SINGAPORE
 PHONE: 647 590 6547
 FAX: 647 590 5587
AUSTRALIA
 51 KAKI BUKIT ROAD
 SINGAPORE
 PHONE: 647 590 6547
 FAX: 647 590 5587
SWITZERLAND
 POSTFACH 73
 SCHUTZENSTRASSE 59
 CH 8245 FEUER THALEN
 SWITZERLAND
 PHONE: +41 52 847 4700
 FAX: +41 52 859 2394
AMERICA DEL SUR
 APTDO. 0818 00440
 CIUDAD DE PANAMA, PANAMA
 PHONE: +507 261 5347
 FAX: +507 261 5355
CENTRO AMERICA Y CARIBE
 RESIDENCIAL PINARES DE SUIZA
 POL. 15 #44,
 NVA. SAN SALVADOR, EL SALVADOR
 PHONE: +503 2288 1619
 FAX: +503 2288 1518



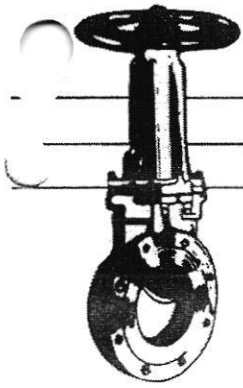
* 4 0 0 - 0 2 0 7 *

BALDOR[®]

BALDOR ELECTRIC COMPANY
P.O. Box 2400
Ft. Smith, AR 72902-2400
(479) 646-4711
Fax (479) 648-5792
www.baldor.com

SECTION III

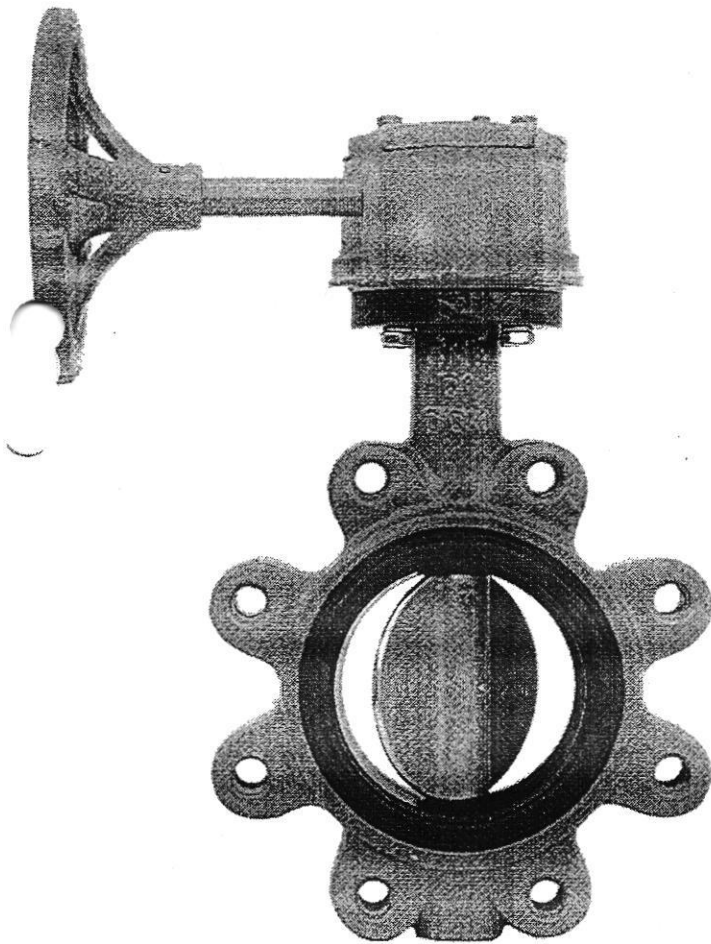
MISCELLANEOUS



FNW

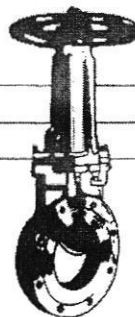
VALVE CO.

RESILIENT SEAT BUTTERFLY VALVES



- ▶ **Cartridge Type Seat**
Offers easy change of seat at site without special tools
- ▶ One piece body is ribbed to assure high strength and minimum weight
- ▶ **Retainer Plate**
Secured retainer plate on top stem, allows removal of operator while valve is in service under pressure, providing blow-out proof stem and positive pressure against stem and gland seal
- ▶ **Dead-end Service**
Lug body valves are recommended for lines where dead-end service is required. Lug style butterfly valves in dead-end service are rated at 200 psi
- ▶ **Low Maintenance**
- ▶ **Manufactured in ISO 9001 facility**

YOUR COMPLETE VALVE SOURCE



FNW

VALVE CO.

4120 N.E. Columbia Blvd.
Portland, Oregon USA 97211
Phone: 503-287-8383
Fax: 503-281-9677
www.fnwvalve.com

FNW

VALVE CO.

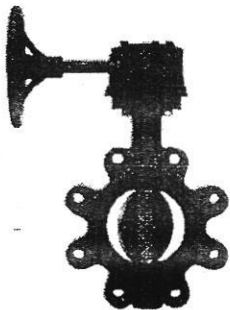
BUTTERFLY VALVE

Figure 731 Wafer
Figure 732 Lug

The FNW Cartridge Resilient Seated Butterfly Valves conform to API 598. Body pressure tested at 150% and seat at 110% of maximum working pressure.

The FNW Cartridge Resilient Seated Butterfly Valve is manufactured in accordance with the specifications from MSS SP-67. Both Lug and Wafer series valves are designed for ANSI 125/150 lb. class flanges and are rated at 200 P.S.I. WOG service.

FNW Cartridge Resilient Seated Butterfly Valves are 100% factory tested in both directions of operation to assure a zero leakage rate for many years of bubble tight service.

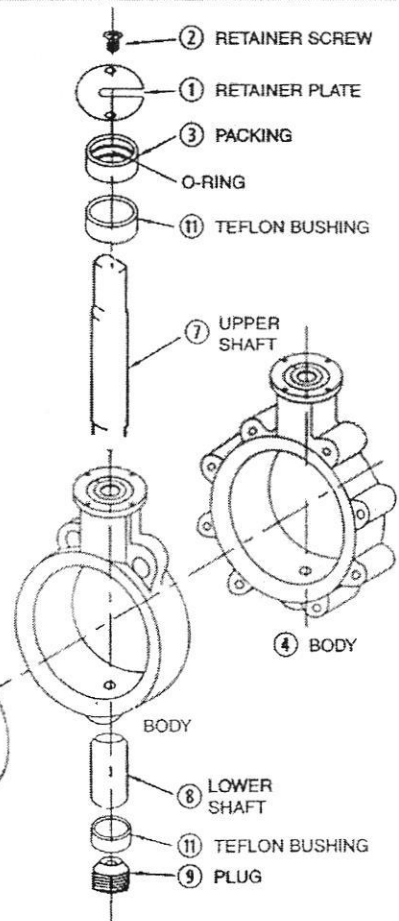
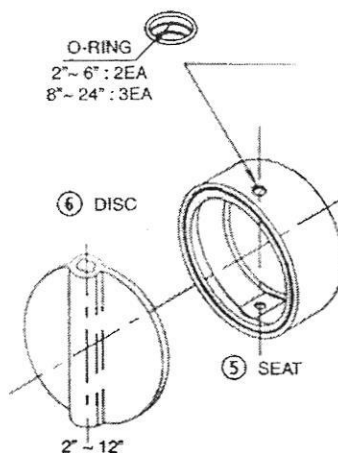
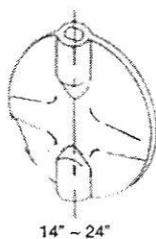
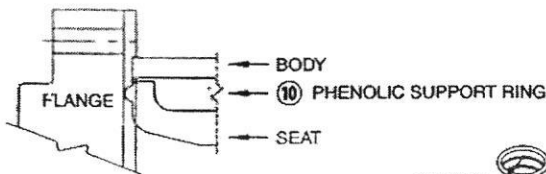
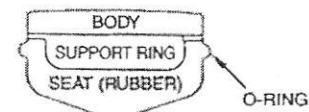


FNW Butterfly Options:

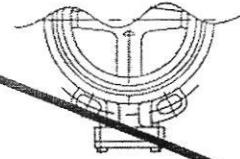
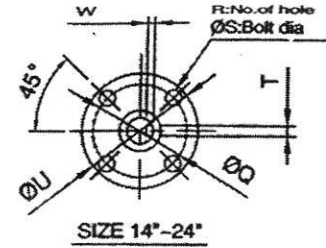
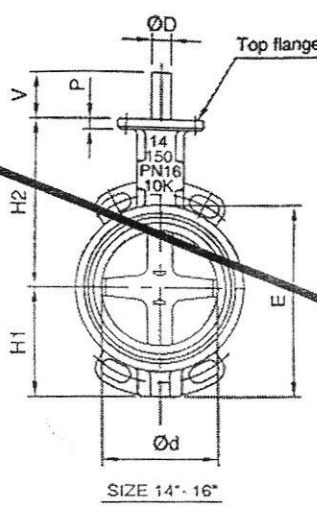
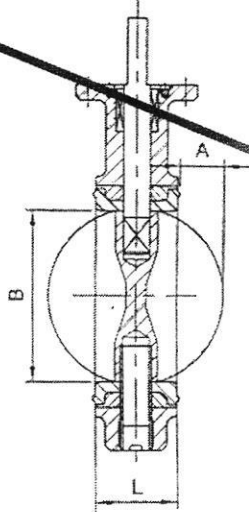
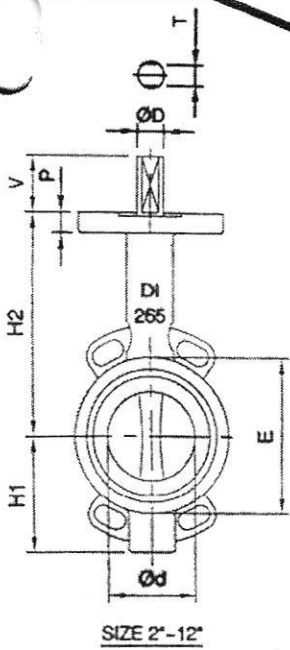
- Body materials: cast iron wafer
ductile iron lug
- Disc materials: 316SS standard
- Seat materials: BUNA-N and EPDM are standard, Viton upon request
- 10 position lever
- Gear operators
- Electric operators
- Pneumatic actuators
- Stem extension
- Chain wheel operators, square operating nuts



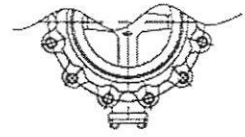
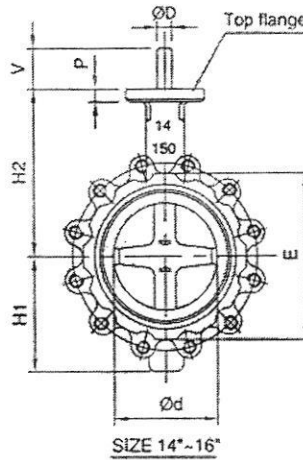
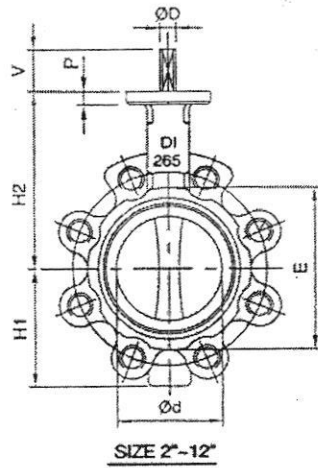
CARTRIDGE TYPE BUTTERFLY VALVE PARTS



**MODEL: 731
WAFFER-CARTRIDGE TYPE
ANSI 150LBS**



**MODEL: 732
LUG-CARTRIDGE TYPE
ANSI 150LBS**



SIZE 18"-24"

SIZE	STEM					TOP FLANGE				OUTLINE DIMENSION						
	ØD	T	V	W	P	ØQ	R	ØS	ØU	L	Ød	H1	H2	E	A	B
2"	0.55	0.39	1.30	-	0.55	2.76	0.16	0.35	3.54	1.69	2.05	2.62	5.28	3.90	0.18	1.93
2.5"	0.55	0.39	1.30	-	0.55	2.76	0.16	0.35	3.54	1.81	2.56	2.80	5.63	4.33	0.41	2.52
3"	0.55	0.39	1.30	-	0.55	2.76	0.16	0.35	3.54	1.81	3.15	3.27	5.71	5.12	0.69	3.11
4"	0.63	0.47	1.30	-	0.63	2.76	0.16	0.35	3.54	2.05	3.94	3.74	6.56	5.98	0.96	3.90
5"	0.75	0.59	1.30	-	0.63	2.76	0.16	0.35	3.54	2.20	4.92	4.33	7.66	7.09	1.40	4.88
6"	0.75	0.59	1.30	-	0.63	2.76	0.16	0.35	3.54	2.20	5.91	4.88	8.13	7.99	1.87	5.87
8"	0.75	0.59	1.30	-	0.67	2.76	0.16	0.35	3.54	2.36	7.80	6.42	9.41	10.00	2.87	7.83
10"	0.87	0.71	1.38	-	0.79	4.02	0.16	0.47	4.92	2.68	9.76	8.94	11.38	12.87	3.62	9.80
12"	1.10	0.87	1.38	-	0.79	4.02	0.16	0.47	4.92	3.07	11.73	9.92	12.56	14.49	4.41	11.77
14"	1.10	0.39	2.76	0.20	0.79	4.02	0.16	0.47	4.92	3.07	13.03	10.41	13.60	16.34	4.96	12.83
16"	1.26	0.39	2.95	0.20	0.91	5.51	0.16	0.71	6.89	4.02	14.96	12.03	13.76	18.31	5.49	14.57
18"	1.50	0.47	2.95	0.20	0.91	5.51	0.16	0.71	6.89	4.49	16.93	13.78	15.75	20.98	6.36	16.54
20"	1.77	0.47	2.95	0.20	0.91	6.50	0.16	0.87	8.27	5.00	18.98	14.96	17.32	22.83	7.15	18.50
24"	2.17	0.55	2.95	0.20	0.91	6.50	0.16	0.87	8.27	6.06	22.83	17.32	20.08	26.77	8.35	21.89

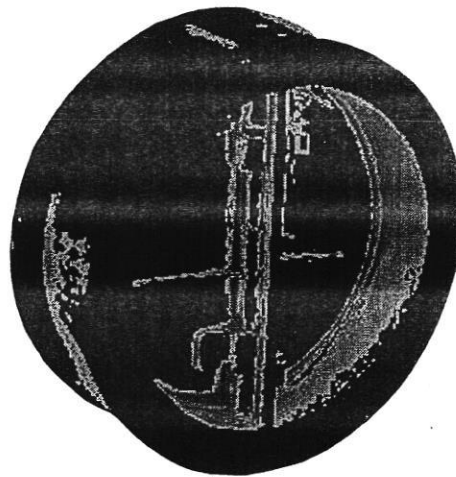
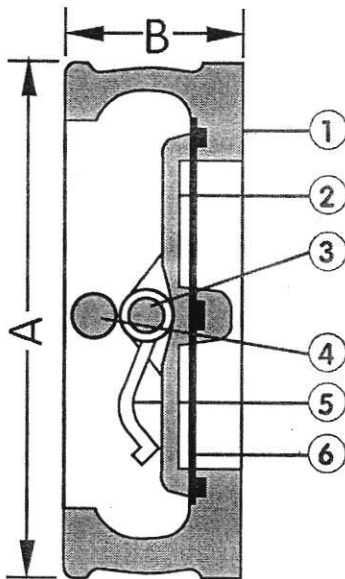
CVC CAST IRON CHECK VALVE



- ❖ Spring Loaded, Double Door Wafer Style Body
 - ❖ Fits Flanges That Conform to ANSI B16.1
 - ❖ Minimal Pressure Stainless Steel Spring
 - ❖ 6", 8", 10", 12" Approved as Chemigation Valve*
- 200 PSI NON-SHOCK WOG**
- Applications: Pump Systems & Irrigation Systems

Install Between Class 125 Flanges

NOTE: *Chemigation valves are tested and approved by the Center for Irrigation Technology, California State University, Fresno, California



DIMENSIONS & WEIGHTS

SIZE INCH	A	B	APPROX. WT. LBS.
2"	4.00	1.69	3.5
2.5"	4.75	1.81	5
3"	5.28	2.52	8
4"	6.38	2.52	12.5
5"	7.56	2.75	16
6"	8.59	3.00	20
8"	10.76	3.50	37.5
10"	12.92	4.50	57
12"	14.89	4.50	92
14"	17.26	5.00	121
16"	19.27	5.50	165

MATERIAL SPECIFICATIONS

NO.	PART	MATERIAL	ASTM DESIGNATION
1	Body	Cast Iron	A126 CLB
2	Disc	Aluminum/Bronze	B954
3	Hinge Pin	Stainless Steel	GRADE 304
4	Spring Stop Shaft	Stainless Steel	GRADE 304
5	Spring	Stainless Steel	GRADE 304
6	Elastomer	BUNA-N	Commercial

Product Spec Sheet



Brewster, NY Toll Free:
TEL: 800-431-2082
FAX: 800-640-2252

Houston, TX Toll Free:
TEL: 800-935-5456
FAX: 800-683-4247

La Palma, CA Toll Free:
TEL: 866-532-8306
FAX: 866-532-8307

e-mail: mail@matco-norca.com

www.matco-norca.com

Series WBV-3

2-Piece Standard Port Brass Ball Valves

Sizes: 1/8" through 4" (3-100mm) FIP x FIP
3/8" through 3" (10-80mm) C x C

FEATURES

- Suitable for full range of liquids and gases
- Bottom loaded, pressure retaining stem
- Pressure rated at 400 psi (28 bars) WOG (non-shock)
- Virgin TFE Stem Packing Seal
- Adjustable stem packing gland
- Vinyl insulator on heavy duty zinc plated carbon steel handles
- Quarter-turn open or close operation
- Low operating torque

SPECIFICATIONS

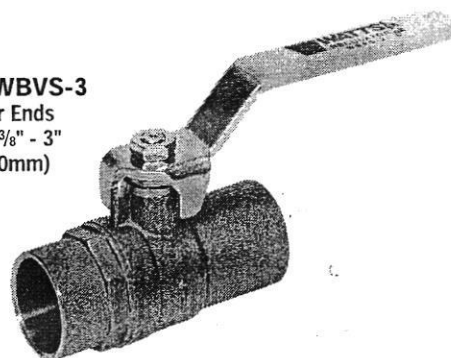
Approved valves shall be standard port and have bottom loaded pressure retaining stem, virgin PTFE seats and stem packing, and adjustable stem packing nut. Valves shall be pressure rated at 400 psi (28 bars) WOG (non-shock). Specify Watts Regulator Company WGV-3 threaded or WBVS-3 solder end.

Watts product specifications in U.S. customary units and metric are approximate and are provided for reference only. For precise measurements, please contact Watts Technical Service. Watts reserves the right to change or modify product design, construction, specifications, or materials without prior notice and without incurring any obligation to make such changes and modifications on Watts products previously or subsequently sold.



Series WBV-3
FIP Ends
Sizes: 1/8" - 4"
(3-100mm)

Series WBVS-3
Solder Ends
Sizes: 3/8" - 3"
(10-80mm)



This valve is designed to be soft soldered into lines without disassembly, using a low temperature solder 420°F (216°C). Other solders such as 95/5 tin antimony 460°F (238°C) or 96/4 tin silver 430°F (221°C) can be used. However, extreme caution must be used to prevent seat damage. Higher temperature solders will damage the seat material. ANSI B16.18 states that the maximum operating pressure of 50-50 solder connections is 200 psi (13.78 bars) for 1/4" to 1" (8-25mm) sizes, 175 psi (12.06 bars) for 1 1/4" to 2" (32-50mm) sizes and 150 psi (10.34 bars) for 2 1/2" to 4" (65-100mm) sizes at 100°F (38°C), and decreases with higher temperatures.

Apply heat with the flame directed AWAY from the center of the valve body. Excessive heat can harm the seats. After soldering, the packing nut may have to be tightened.

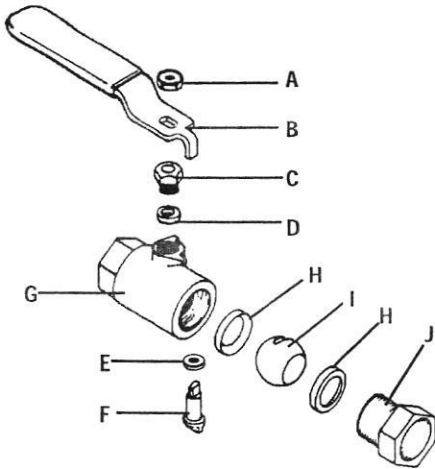
A LEADER IN VALVE TECHNOLOGY

WATTS
REGULATOR
 Since 1874 Watts Industries, Inc.
 Water Products Division • Safety & Control Valves

USA: 815 Chestnut St., No. Andover, MA 01845-6098; www.wattsreg.com
 Canada: 5435 North Service Rd., Burlington, ONT. L7L 5H7; www.wattsca.com

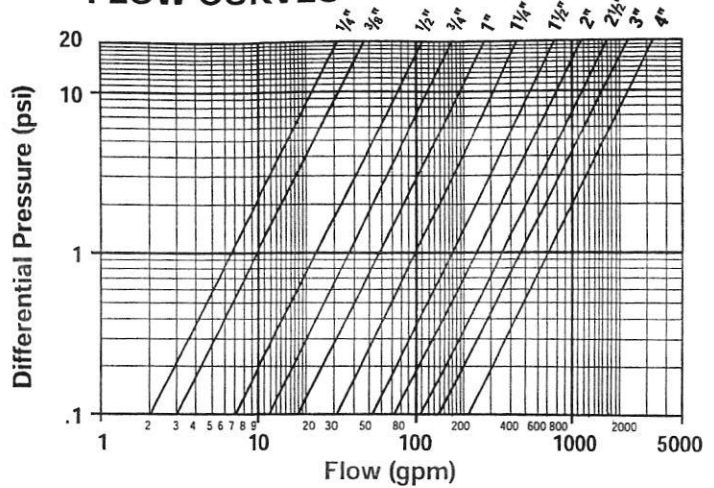
ISO 9001
 CERTIFIED

MATERIALS

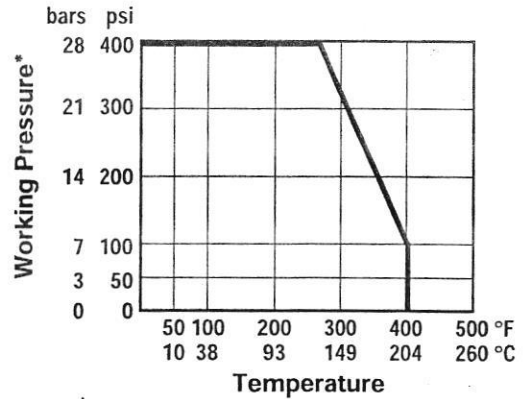


- A. Screw - Zinc plated steel
- B. Handle - Zinc plated carbon steel with vinyl insulator
- C. Packing Nut - Brass
- D. Stem Packing - PTFE
- E. Thrust Washer - PTFE
- F. Stem - Brass
- G. Body - Forged Brass
- H. Seats - PTFE
- I. Ball - Chrome plated brass
- J. Adapter - Forged Brass

FLOW CURVES

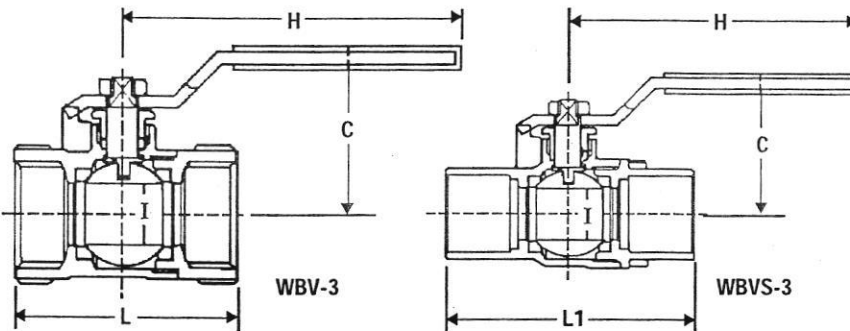


TEMPERATURE/PRESSURE RATING



*See applicable note on reverse side for solder end valves with regards to pressure/temperature rating.

DIMENSIONS

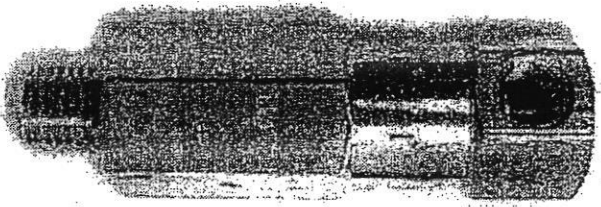


Size (DN)	in.	mm	WBV-3 EDP No.	WBVS-3 EDP No.	Dimensions (approx.)										Weight	
					C	H	I	L	L1	lbs.	kg.					
1/8	6	750200	—	1.40	36	3.20	81	.31	8	1.67	42	—	—	.25	.11	
1/4	8	750201	—	1.40	36	3.20	81	.31	8	1.67	42	—	—	.25	.11	
3/8	10	750202	750212	1.40	36	3.20	81	.31	8	1.67	42	1.62	41	.25	.11	
1/2	15	750203	750213	1.62	41	3.20	81	.47	12	1.97	50	2.05	52	.34	.15	
3/4	20	750204	750214	1.75	44	3.65	93	.59	15	2.30	58	2.78	71	.50	.23	
1	25	750205	750215	2.25	57	4.60	117	.79	20	2.72	69	3.27	83	.88	.40	
1 1/4	32	750206	750216	2.45	62	4.60	117	.99	25	3.07	78	3.48	88	1.28	.58	
1 1/2	40	750207	750217	2.85	72	5.00	127	1.22	31	3.42	87	4.03	102	2.00	.91	
2	50	750208	750218	3.00	76	6.00	152	1.54	39	3.89	99	4.80	122	2.78	1.26	
2 1/2	65	750209	750219	3.40	86	5.60	142	1.93	49	4.42	112	5.88	149	4.42	2.00	
3	80	750210	750220	4.35	110	8.00	203	2.38	60	5.35	136	6.96	177	6.88	3.12	
4	100	750211	—	4.75	121	8.00	203	2.92	74	5.97	152	—	—	10.10	4.59	

MECHANICAL
 THERMAL
 PURGE VALVE

OPERATION

To prevent overheating and pump failure a thermal relief valve is installed in each pump casing, discharge head, or discharge piping. The valve will automatically sense the rise in temperature and discharge some of the hot fluid allowing cooler fluid to enter the pump casing. The valve will then close. Thermal relief valves should be piped to a common discharge tube and piped to a nearby drain. The discharge tube should be piped in a manner that discharge and leaks are visible to maintenance personnel.



SPECIFICATIONS	
Pressure Rating:	600 psi
Temperature Setting:	140° F

MATERIALS OF CONSTRUCTION	
Body:	Brass
Internal Seal:	Viton
External Seal:	Buna
Spring:	Stainless Steel
Mounting Connection:	3/8" MPT
Tubing Connection:	1/4" FPT



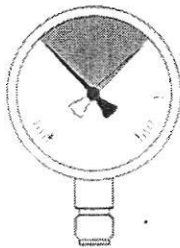
Installation and Operating Instructions for Mechanical Pressure Gauges

Technical Information

Pressure range selection

To insure proper operation and long service life, the proper pressure range should be selected. For applications with constant, steady pressure, the measured pressure should be no more than 75% of the full scale range of the gauge. For applications with fluctuating pressure, the measured pressure should be no more than two-thirds of the full scale range of the gauge.

In general, it is best to choose a range that is roughly 2X the average measured pressure. This gives good over pressure protection and the highest accuracy.



Installation

The pressure gauge should be installed where exposure to heat and vibration are minimal and where the dial can be easily read. It is also important to install the gauge in a location with undisturbed and continuous flow of the pressure medium.

It is recommended that an isolating device, such as a needle valve or gauge cock, be installed between the process and the pressure gauges. This allows the gauge to be taken out of service without interruption of the process.

Connections with tapered threads, such as NPT, should be sealed by using PTFE tape (or an equivalent sealing compound) on the thread. Metric threads such as G1/4A or 1/4BSP should be sealed by using the appropriate sealing washer.

The gauge should be tightened and loosened using the wrench flats on the gauge socket. Never grasp the case to thread the gauge into the pressure system fitting. Doing so may cause irreparable damage to the gauge.

For pressure gauges with flanged connections, care must be taken not to accidentally loosen the bolts that hold the upper and lower housings together.

A pressure gauge should never be removed when it is pressurized. Make sure the pressure system has been fully vented prior to removing a gauge.

Residues from the pressure medium may remain inside the pressure gauge after it has been removed from service. If these residues are hazardous or toxic, take the necessary precautions when handling and storing used gauges.

Isolating devices

The isolating device may be either a pressure gauge cock or a needle valve, depending on operating conditions and requirements.

Pressure gauge cocks

Pressure gauge cocks have three handle positions:

- OFF The pressure medium is blocked and the pressure gauge system is open to the atmosphere.
- ON The pressure gauge is open to the pressure medium.
- VENT The pressure gauge is isolated but the pressure system is vented and the medium can escape into the atmosphere.

Pressure gauge cocks should be installed so that when vented, the pressure medium is directed away from the operator.

Needle valves

Needle valves also isolate the pressure gauge from the pressure medium, but they usually do not have any venting capabilities. Needle valves do have the advantage of restricting the flow of the pressure into the gauge which helps reduce damage by pressure spikes.

Mounting options

If the pressure system or tee-extension cannot support the weight of the instrument, then surface or wall mounting brackets or mounting flanges (front flange or rear flange) should be used.

Vibration protection

If the pressure gauge is exposed to vibration or pulsating pressure or both, then a liquid filled pressure gauge is recommended. The liquid dampens the effects of vibration making the pointer easier to read.

Temperature limits

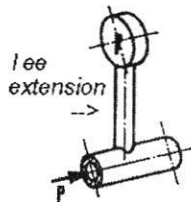
The pressure gauge should not be used outside of its rated temperature limits as noted on the Data Sheet specific to that gauge. At temperatures above or below these limits, the gauge accuracy will be significantly reduced and the possibility of gauge failure may exist.

Overpressure limits

WIKAI gauges are generally designed to withstand up to a 130% overpressure without damage to the pressure system. For applications with overpressure spikes, a snubber or restrictor should be used. Snubbers and restrictors reduce the inlet size of the pressure gauge which causes the pressure to increase or decrease more slowly into the gauge. For applications with periods of constant overpressure, an overpressure protector should be used. The overpressure protector isolates the gauge when the pressure reaches a preset pressure value.

Tee extensions

Tee extensions should have a diameter of at least 0.24 in. (6mm) to avoid clogging from solids in the pressure medium. WIKA recommends that long, horizontal tee extensions be sloped to about 1:15.



With a gaseous pressure medium, the extension should have a drain plug at its lowest point, while a line with a liquid medium should have an air bleeding valve at its highest point. A filter or separator should be used when the pressure medium contains suspended matter.

If a static head of liquid is acting on the gauge, then this causes a zero offset which affects the reading of the gauge.

The corresponding indication will be lower by the value of Δp if the gauge is mounted above, but higher by the value of Δp if the gauge is mounted below the pressure tapping point.

Pressure gauges in service

Always open isolating devices slowly. Opening them too fast may generate sudden pressure surges that could damage the gauge.

Calibration can be confirmed in larger diameter gauges ($\geq 4"$) by checking the position of the zero point. To do so, close the isolating device and vent the gauge to zero pressure. The pointer must over the zero box \pm . Unless the gauge temperature is significantly higher or lower than 68°F (20°C), a pointer not returning to zero may indicate that the gauge has been seriously damaged.

Storage

The pressure gauge should remain in its original packing until installation.

Storage temperature should not exceed -4°F (-20°C) or 140°F (60°C) unless specified otherwise. Consult the data sheet pertaining to the pressure gauge model.

Pressure gauges removed from service should be protected from dust and humidity, preferably by using the original packing material. Residue from the pressure medium may remain in the gauge and is susceptible to temperature influences (i.e. freezing). This should be considered when storing the removed pressure gauge.

Pressure gauge safety

Pressure media such as:

- Oxygen
- Acetylene
- Flammable gases or liquids
- Toxic gases or liquids
- Steam
- Ammonia and other refrigerants

as well as portable or stationary pressure systems like:

- Air compressors
- Welding equipment
- Pressure vessels and boilers
- Life support equipment

may require pressure gauges that have been tested and/or certified to national standards and/or local safety codes. Your local WIKA representative will be able to assist you in selecting the proper gauge model.

Standards for Pressure Gauges

U.S. & Canadian Standards are set forth by The American Society of Mechanical Engineers, which publishes pressure gauge specifications in their document ASME B40.1. This document specifies standard pressure gauge types, sizes, materials, ranges, and accuracies. Copies of this standard can be purchased directly from ASME:

ASME
22 Law Drive, Box 2900
Fairfield, NJ 07007-2900
1-800-THE-ASME or (973) 882-1167
Fax: (973) 882-1717
E-mail: infocentral@asme.org

European Standards are developed and published by the European Committee for Standardization (CEN) and replace the individual standards formerly used in each European country (such as DIN standards in Germany). Copies of these standards can be obtained through:

Comité Européen de Normalisation (CEN)
Central Secretariat
rue de Stassart 36
B-1050 Brussels
Belgium

THE MEASURE OF

Total Performance™

Ordering Information:

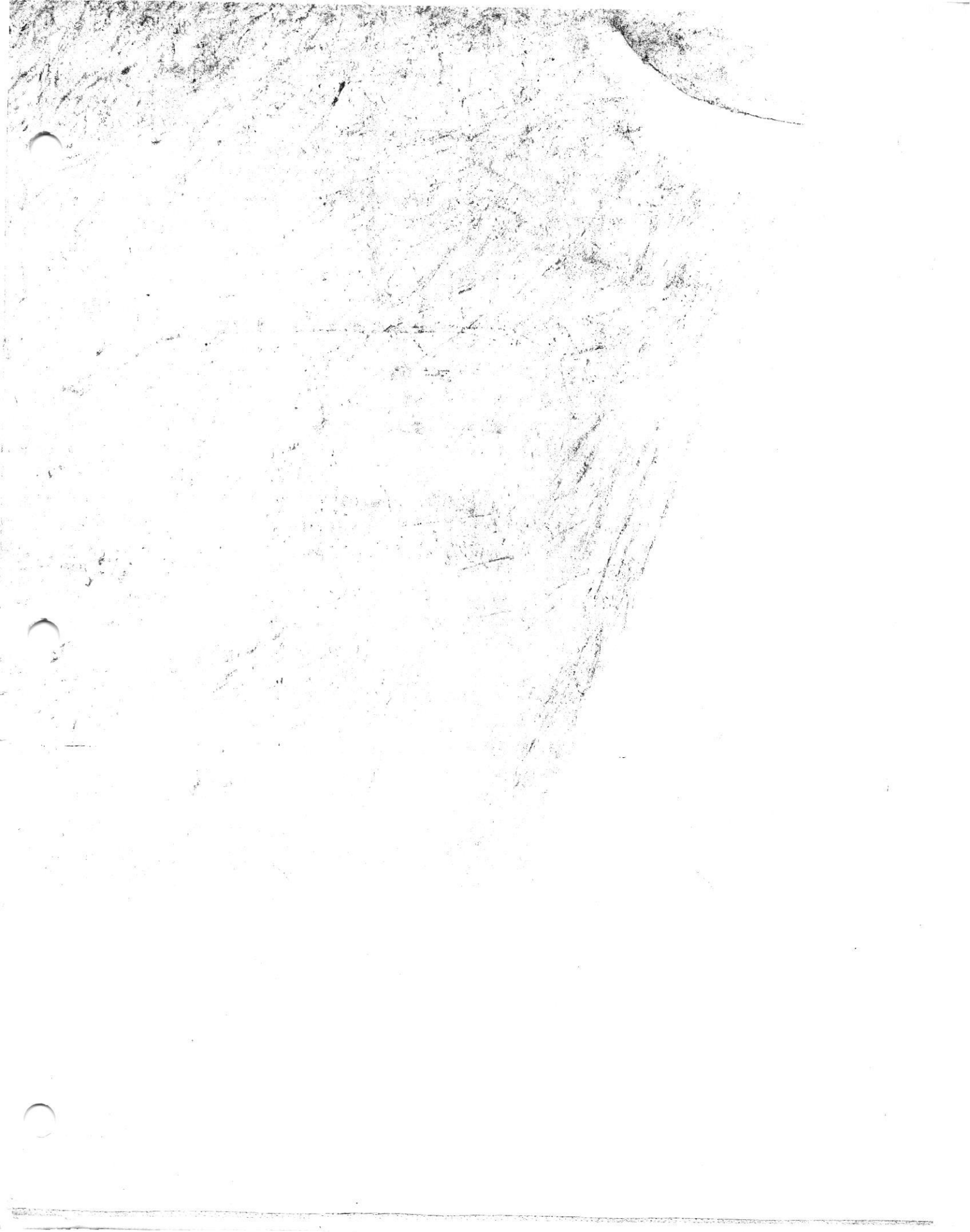
State computer part number (if available) / model number / size / range / connection size and location / options required.

Specifications given in this price list represent the state of engineering at the time of printing. Modifications may take place and the specified materials may change without prior notice.



WIKAL Instrument Corporation

1000 Wiegand Boulevard
Lawrenceville, Georgia 30043-5868
Tel: 770-513-8200 Fax: 770-338-5118
<http://www.wika.com> e-mail: info@wika.com



Flo-Pak, Inc.
P.O. Box 790
Toccoa, Georgia 30577
Telephone: 706-886-2101
Fax: 706-886-0023
www.flo-pak.com

A Business Unit of Patterson Pump Company

**FLO-PAK**[®]
INC.
A BUSINESS UNIT OF PATTERSON PUMP, INC.

